



DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT

Closer to everywhere.

**DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
BID PACKAGE 1 – Sitework, Structure & Enclosure
ISSUED FOR BID – NOT FOR CONSTRUCTION**

FAA AIP No. - 3-27-0024-48-10
RS&H PROJ. No. – 213.1882.091
CITY OF DULUTH BID No. – 10-4401

**PROJECT MANUAL
VOLUME 2 OF 2**

Date: MAY 17, 2010



Architects and Civil Engineers:
**REYNOLDS SMITH AND HILLS,
INC.**

4525 Airport Approach Road
Duluth, MN 55811
TEL: (218) 722-1227 /
FAX: (218) 722-1052

M/E/P/FP Engineers:
COSENTINI ASSOCIATES INC.
1 South Wacker Drive, 37th Floor,
Chicago IL 60606
TEL: (312) 201-7408 /
FAX: (312) 201-0031

Structural Engineers:
MBJ CONSULTING ENG.

501 Lake Avenue South, Suite 300,
Duluth MN 55802
TEL: (218) 722-1056 /
FAX: (218) 722-9306

Interior Architects:
SJA ARCHITECTS
11 E Superior Street Suite 340, Duluth
MN 55802
TEL: (218) 724-8578 /
FAX: (218) 724-8717



Construction Managers:
**KRAUS-ANDERSON CONSTRUCTION
COMPANY**

3716 Oneota Street, Duluth MN 55807
TEL: (218) 722-3775 /
FAX: (218) 722-3778

Landscaping Consultants:
APPOLD DESIGN
2432 East First Street, Duluth MN 55812
TEL: (218) 591-5079

**TABLE OF CONTENTS
VOLUME I**

INDEX OF PAGES

PART 1 – TITLE

Title Page	
Table of Contents.....	TOC 1-7
Certification Page.....	1

PART 2 - BID INFORMATION AND PROPOSAL FORMS

Invitation to Bid	INV 1-4
Notice to Bidders.....	1
City of Duluth Instructions to Bidders	IB 1-3
00100 Kraus-Anderson Construction Company Instructions to Bidders	6
00305 Bid Form	9
General Specifications	1
00500 List of Contract Documents	1
Bid Bond	1
Contract	7
Payment Bond	3
Performance Bond	3
Non-Collusion Affidavit.....	1
Data for Labor Cost Bidding	1
00829 Project Labor Agreement	13
00830 Wage Determination Schedule.....	1
Prevailing Wage Statement.....	1
Prevailing Wage Rates, Highway, Heavy, Building Commercial and State.....	22
01014 Work Scope Descriptions	30
Bid Certifications	CERT 1-8
Department of Transportation DBE Program (49 CFE Part 26)	1-25
Minnesota Department of Revenue Requirements IC134	1-2
Request to Sublet	1-2
Notice of Certification of Truck Rental Rates	1-2
Disbarred Contractor List	1
Locate Utilities Requirement	1

PART 3 - MANDATORY CONTRACT PROVISIONS

Special Instruction to Bidders Regarding EEO	MCP 1-3
Buy American Certification	MCP 4-9
Certification to Bidder Regarding EEO	MCP 10-11
Section A-Wage, Labor, EEO, Safety and General Requirements	MCP 12-14
Section B-Davis-Bacon Act Requirement	MCP 15-19
Section C-Contract Workhours and Safety Standards Act Requirements.....	MCP 20
Section D-Clean Air and Water Pollution Control Requirements	MCP 21
Section E-Contractor Contractual Requirements Pursuant to Civil Rights Act of 1964, Title VI (49 CFR Part 21)	MCP 22-23

PART 3 - MANDATORY CONTRACT PROVISIONS – continued

Section F-Termination of Contract (49 CFR Part 18).....	MCP 24
Section G-Buy American - Steel and Manufactured Products for Construction Contracts.....	MCP 25
Section H-Equal Employment Opportunity (41 CFR Part 60-1.4(b))	MCP 26-27
Section I-Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications (41 CFR 60-4.3)	MCP 28-32
Section J-Mandatory Requirement for all AIP Funded Construction Projects Involving Electrical Energy or Other Hazardous Energy Sources	MCP 33
Section K-Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Contract Provisions (49 CFR Part 26)	MCP 34-35
Section L-Energy Conservation Requirements (49 CFR Part 18.36(i)(13)).....	MCP 36
Section M-Lobbying and Influencing Federal Employees (49 CFR Part 20, Appendix A).....	MCP -37

PART 4 - GENERAL PROVISIONS

Section 10	Definition of Terms	GP 10-1-5
Section 20	Proposal Requirements & Conditions	GP-20-6-9
Section 30	Award and Execution of Contract	GP-30-10-11
Section 40	Scope of Work	GP-40-12-14
Section 50	Control of Work	GP-50-15-22
Section 60	Control of Materials	GP-60-23-26
Section 70	Legal Relations and Responsibility to Public	GP-70-27-33
Section 80	Prosecution and Progress	GP-80-34-40
Section 90	Measurement and Payment	GP-90-41-48
Section 100	Contractor Quality Control Program	GP-100-49-55
Section 110	Method of Estimating Percentage of Material	GP-110-56-63
Section 120	Nuclear Gages	GP-120-64-65

PART 5 – SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS

City of Duluth - Part II - Supplementary General Conditions.....	1-18
Insurance Requirements	1-2
EEO Compliance Certificate.....	1-3

PART 6 - SAFETY & SECURITY

Construction Safety & Security Compliance for Aircraft Operations Area.....	1-51
Airfield Lighting Electrical Safety Program.....	1-69
FAA Advisory Circular 150/5200-18C-Airport Safety Self-Inspection.....	1-31
FAA Advisory Circular 150/5210-5D-Painting, Marking and Lighting of Vehicles Used on an Airport.....	1-12
FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-2E-Operational Safety on Airports During Construction	1-13
Appendices to 150/5370-2E	A1-7
FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-12A-Quality Control of Construction for Airport Grant Projects.....	1-4

PART 7 - SPECIAL CONDITIONS

Section	1	Project Information	SC 1-10
Section	2	(Deleted)
Section	3	Miscellaneous	SC 12-16
Section	4	Listing of Duties, Responsibilities and Limitations of Authority of the Resident Project Representative	SC 17-20
Section	5	Shop Drawing Submittal Summary	SC 21

PART 8 – TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

P-100	Mobilization & General Conditions	P-100-1-1
P-102	Safety and Security	P-102-1-5
P-104	Project Survey and Stakeout	P-104-1-3
P-105	Temporary Construction Items	P-105-1-2
F-162	Chain-Link Fences	F-162-1-5

PART 9 – SPECIAL PROVISIONS

S-1	Scope of Work	SP-1
S-2	Governing Specifications	SP-1
S-3	Award of Contract	SP-1-2
S-4	Requirement of Contract Bond	SP-2
S-5	Execution and Approval of Contract	SP-2
S-6	Correction Period	SP-2
S-7	Utility Property and Service	SP-3
S-8	Employee Health and Welfare	SP-3
S-9	Traffic Control Devices	SP-3
S-10	Prosecution of Work	SP-3
S-11	Erosion Control	SP-4
S-12	Determination of Contract Time	SP-4
S-13	Failure to Complete Work on Time	SP-4
S-14	Air, Land and Water Pollution	SP-4-5
S-15	Use of Water from City Hydrants	SP-5
S-16	Public Works & Utilities Department Regulations	SP-5
S-17	Materials and Work to be furnished by Public Works & Utilities Dept	SP-5
S-18	Inspection of Materials	SP-5
S-19	Drug and Alcohol Testing for Gas Work	SP-5
S-20	Operator Qualification for Gas Work	SP-6
S-21	Final Payment	SP-6
S-22	Remove Pipe Sewer	SP-6
S-23	Remove Manhole or Catch Basin	SP-6
S-24	Corrugated HDPE Pipe Sewer	SP-7
S-25	8 Inch PVC Sewer Service Pipe	SP-7
S-26	Connection to Existing Storm Manhole	SP-7-8
S-27	Connect to Existing Sanitary Sewer	SP-8
S-28	Cured In-Place Pipe Lining	SP-8
S-29	Plug, Fill & Abandon Pipe	SP-8-9

PART 9 – SPECIAL PROVISIONS-continued

S-30	Water Main and Service Line Installation	SP-9
S-31	Gas Main	SP-9-10
S-32	4" PVC Irrigation Conduit-SDR 35	SP-10
S-33	Construct Drainage Structure.....	SP-10
S-34	Random Riprap Class IV	SP-10-11
S-35	Storm Drain Inlet Protection	SP-11
S-36	Seed Mixture Type 250.....	SP-11
S-37	Rock Construction Entrance	SP-11
S-38	Install Type "C" Light w/Foundation.....	SP-11-12
S-39	Install Type "A2" Light w/Foundation.....	SP-12
S-40	Relocate Checkpoint Access & Control System for East	
	Assess /New Red Beacon Light & Loop.....	SP-12
S-41	Provide and Install Checkpoint Access & Control System for West Basement Access w/New Red Beacon Light & Loop	SP-12-13
S-42	Salvage Gate Operator	SP-13
S-43	Salvage Ticket Dispenser	SP-13
S-44	Remove Light and Base.....	SP-13
S-45	Wall & Small Post Mounted Light Removal	SP-13
S-46	Site Power Allowance	SP-13-14
S-47	Communications Allowance	SP-14
S-48	Traffic Control/Signing Allowance	SP-14
S-49	Terminal Building Work.....	SP-14
S-50	Private Utility Locating Service.....	SP-14
S-51	Bituminous Paving	SP-14
S-52	Increased or Decreased Quantities.....	SP-15
S-53	Forms and Regulations.....	SP-15

PART 10 - APPENDIX

1)	Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan	1—16
2)	Twin Ports Testing Subsurface Soil Investigation Report	1—45
3)	AET Report of Geotechnical Exploration and Review	1—41
4)	Addendum to AET Report of Geotechnical Exploration and Review	1—7

END VOLUME I of II TABLE OF CONTENTS

**TABLE OF CONTENTS
VOLUME II**

PART 11 – DIVISIONS 1-16 TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

<u>DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</u>		Pages
01010	Summary of Work	3
01027	Applications for Payment	5
01035	Modification Procedures	4
01040	Coordination	5
01041	Schedules	3
01045	Cutting and Patching	2
01050	Field Engineering	3
01200	Project Meetings	3
01270	Unit Prices	1
01300	Submittals	5
01361	Sustainable Design Requirements	29
01400	Quality Control - Testing Services	3
01421	Standards and Definitions	4
01450	Structural Tests and Special Inspections	10
01500	Construction Facilities and Temporary Controls	8
01631	Products and Substitutions	5
01700	Contract Closeout	7
01710	Cleaning Up	2
01720	Project Record Documents	4
01732	Selective Demolition	8
01740	Warranties	3
01742	Construction Waste Management	11
 <u>DIVISION 02 – SITE WORK</u>		
02220	Building Earthwork	8
*** Note: For additional Sitework information refer to Civil specifications in Volume 1 of 3.		
 <u>DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE</u>		
03100	Concrete Formwork	5
03200	Concrete Reinforcement	7
03300	Cast-In-Place Concrete	33
 <u>DIVISION 04 – MASONRY</u>		
04200	Unit Masonry	14
 <u>DIVISION 05 – METALS</u>		
05120	Structural Steel	15
05310	Steel Roof Deck	6
05360	Composite Steel Deck	6
05400	Cold-Formed Metal Framing	10
05500	Metal Fabrications	8
05510	Metal Stairs	8
05521	Pipe and Tube Railings	10
05530	Metal Gratings	5

DIVISION 06 – CARPENTRY, WOODS AND PLASTICS

06100	Rough Carpentry	5
06160	Sheathing	3

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

07131	Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing.....	5
07210	Thermal Insulation	6
07241	Polymer-Based Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS)	11
07260	Reinforced Underslab Vapor Retarders	3
07413	Insulated Core Metal Wall Panels	12
07415	Composite Wall Panels.....	11
07543	Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing	11
07610	Sheet Metal Roofing	11
07620	Flashing and Trim	9
07710	Roof Specialties.....	9
07920	Joint Sealants	11

DIVISION 08 – DOORS AND WINDOWS

08800	Glazing	15
08911	Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls	12

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

09960	High-Performance Coatings.....	7
-------	--------------------------------	---

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

10200	Louvers and Vents.....	6
-------	------------------------	---

DIVISION 15 – MECHANICAL

15010	Basic Mechanical Requirements	28
15050	Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods	28
15051	Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods	39
15140	Plumbing Domestic Water Piping.....	10
15150	Plumbing Sanitary, Vent and Storm Drainage Piping	12
15194	Plumbing – Fuel Gas Piping.....	15
15250	Mechanical Insulation	13
15430	Plumbing Specialties	23
15500	Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning Piping	47
15881	Underground Ductwork.....	7
15991	Plumbing Testing, Adjusting and Balancing	7

DIVISION 16 – ELECTRICAL

16050	Basic Electrical Materials and Methods.....	20
16060	Grounding and Bonding	9
16075	Electrical Identification	8
16119	Underground Ducts and Utility Structures	14
16120	Conductors and Cables	8
16130	Raceways and Boxes	15
16190	Supporting Devices.....	6
16424	Feeders and Branch Circuitry	6

DIVISION 16 – ELECTRICAL-continued

16496	Provisions for Elevators	3
16670	Lightning Protection.....	4
16721	Fire Protective Alarm Systems	33
16741	Telecommunication Distribution Systems	4

**END VOLUME II of II
TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 01010 - SUMMARY OF WORK

1. GENERAL

- A. All work furnished under this Project Manual shall be installed at the following location in accordance with the Contract Documents:
 - 1. At: Duluth International Airport
New Passenger Terminal
Bid Package 1
Duluth, Minnesota
 - 2. For: Duluth Airport Authority
4701 Grinden Drive
Duluth, MN 55811
- B. The provisions of Part 2 through Part 10 of the specifications, and Division 1, General Requirements, shall apply to all work of the Contract.
- C. The Scope of Work for the Duluth International Airport, New Passenger Terminal, Bid Package 1 includes all work required for complete construction in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- D. Construction Contract: Construction will be accomplished under Multiple Prime Contracts as described in Section 01014 – Work Scope Descriptions.
- E. Coordination: Project will require close cooperation and coordination with Owner, Owner's Construction Manager (CM) and Contractor and Subcontractors. Contractor shall: consider such coordination in his work; schedule the Work with subcontractors and the Owner and Construction Manager, particularly near the end of the Project, keep the Owner and Construction Manager advised of his schedule to complete the Work.
- F. Examination of Site and Documents: In submitting a bid and in accepting a Contract award, the Contractor represents he has examined the site, existing conditions as well as the entire set of documents, in accordance with the General Conditions and agrees to be bound by all conditions of the site, existing conditions and all documents, without additional cost.
 - 1. Contractor's questions regarding this project must be directed to the Architect of record submitted through the Construction Manager. The Owner's employees are not authorized to make decisions or give direction regarding any aspect of this project.
- G. Construction Limits: Except as specifically indicated or as may be necessary to complete the work under the contract, activities of the contract shall be limited to within the limits designated on the drawings.

2. USE OF BUILDING BY OWNER

- A. Owner reserves the right to let other contracts in connection with this Project or in connection with existing buildings. Contractor shall afford other contractors reasonable opportunity for the introduction and storage of their materials and execution of their work, and shall properly connect and coordinate his work with theirs.
- B. Owner reserves the right to jointly occupy the premises with the Contractor in the performance of his duties and functions. The Owner also reserves the right to: enter into the Project and premises at all times; make installations of materials and equipment at appropriate times as the Work progresses; install equipment, furniture and furnishings when spaces are at appropriate stages of completion. Contractor shall coordinate work with the Owner and cooperate with the Owner to minimize undue interferences. Any activities required by the Contractor that may interfere with the Owner's occupation of the premises or Project during the work must be coordinated with the Owner and Construction Manager and may be required to be completed during alternate time periods.
- C. If any part, unit, phase, or the entire Project is substantially complete or ready for occupancy, the Owner may, upon notice to the Contractor, enter into and make use of the Work that is substantially complete.

3. CONTRACTOR'S USE OF PREMISES

- A. General: During the construction period the Contractor shall have full use of the premises for construction operations, including use of the site. The Contractor's use of the premises is limited only by the Owner's right to perform construction operations with its own forces or to employ separate contractors on portions of the project.
 - 1. Confine operations to areas within Contract limits indicated. Portions of the site beyond areas in which construction operations are indicated are not to be disturbed.
 - 2. Keep driveways and entrances serving the premises clear and available to the Owner at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on site.
- B. Site Storage Areas: As determined by Construction Manager. The Construction Manager shall establish and govern the use of available space.
- C. Site Protection: Protect existing trees and other plantings which are not to be removed and all features of adjacent buildings, paved surfaces which are to remain and are susceptible to damage from ordinary operations of the Contractor, trucking or other activity.
- D. Restoration: All improvements on or about the site and adjacent property which are not shown to be altered, removed or otherwise changed, and which have been damaged or disturbed by any work or operations under this contract, shall be restored to the conditions which existed previous to starting work. All existing buildings, structures, or other features shall be protected from damage by any operation in connection with the Project. The Contractor shall replace or repair, at his own expense (and to the satisfaction of the Owner), all damage to existing buildings, sidewalks, curbs, drives, fencing, lawns, plants, trees, shrubbery and other property resulting from work of this Contract, from whatever cause.

4. CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Refer to Section 01041 – Schedules.

END OF SECTION 01010

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01027 - APPLICATIONS
FOR PAYMENT**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements governing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.
 - 1. Coordinate the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment with the Contractor's Construction Schedule, Submittal Schedule, and List of Subcontracts.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section.
 - 1. Schedules: The Contractor's Construction Schedule and Submittal Schedule are specified in Division 1 Section 01300 - SUBMITTALS.

1.3 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the Schedule of Values with preparation of the Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 1. Correlate line items in the Schedule of Values with other required administrative schedules and forms, including:
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - b. Application for Payment forms, including Continuation Sheets.
 - c. List of subcontractors.
 - d. Schedule of allowances.
 - e. Schedule of alternates.
 - f. Schedule of submittals.
 - 2. Submit 3 copies of the Schedule of Values to the Construction Manager for approval at the earliest possible date but no later than 21 days before the date scheduled for submittal of the initial Applications for Payment.
 - 3. Subschedules: Where Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values correlated with each phase of payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual Table of Contents as a guide to establish the format for the Schedule of Values.
 - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the Schedule of Values:
 - a. Project name and location.
 - b. Name of the Architect.
 - c. Project number.
 - d. Contractor's name and address.
 - e. Date of submittal.

2. Arrange the Schedule of Values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
 - b. Description of Work / generic name of the item.
 - c. Name of subcontractor.
 - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
 - e. Name of supplier.
 - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
 - g. Dollar value.
 - h. Percentage of Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in sufficient detail, acceptable to the Architect, to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Break principal subcontract amounts down into several line items.
4. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; the total shall equal the Contract Sum.
5. Provide a separate line item in the Schedule of Values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment, purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
 - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. Include requirements for insurance and bonded warehousing, if required.
6. Provide separate line items on the Schedule of Values for initial cost of the materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
7. Margins of Cost: Show line items for indirect costs and margins on actual costs only when such items are listed individually in Applications for Payment. Each item in the Schedule of Values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include the total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit margin for each item.
 - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the Schedule of Values or distributed as general overhead expense, at the Contractor's option.
8. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the Schedule of Values prior to the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.4 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by the Construction Manager and paid for by the Owner.
 1. The initial Application for Payment, the Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and the final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: The "date" for each progress payment is as indicated in the Owner-Contractor Agreement or, if none is indicated therein, it is the 25th day of each month. The period of construction work covered by each payment request is the period indicated in the Owner-Contractor agreement or, if none is indicated therein, starting the day following the end of the preceding period. Refer to General Conditions and other Contract Documents for other dates related to payment application times.

- C. Payment-Application Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and Continuation Sheets G703 as the form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on the form. Include notarization and execution by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of the Contractor. The Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
 - 1. Entries shall match data on the Schedule of Values and the Contractor's Construction Schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 - 2. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued prior to the last day of the construction period covered by the application.
- E. Transmittal: Submit five (5) signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to the Construction Manager by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall be complete, including waivers of lien and similar attachments, when required.
 - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information related to the application, in a manner acceptable to the Construction Manager.
 - 2. Each Application for Payment must be submitted directly to the Construction Manager's office at 8625 Rendova Street N.E., P.O. Box 158, Circle Pines, MN 55014 for processing. Do not submit to jobsites or branch offices.
- F. Waivers of Mechanics Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanics liens from every entity who may lawfully be entitled to file a mechanics lien arising out of the Contract, including but not limited to subcontractors, sub-subcontractors and suppliers, for the construction period covered by the previous application.
 - 1. Submit partial waivers on each item for the amount requested, prior to deduction for retainage, on each item.
 - 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit final or full waivers.
 - 3. The Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
 - 4. Waiver Delays: Submit each Application for Payment with the Contractor's waiver of mechanics lien for the period of construction covered by the application.
 - a. Submit final Applications for Payment with or preceeded by final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
 - 5. Waiver Forms: Submit waivers of lien on forms and executed in a manner acceptable to Owner.
- G. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals, that must precede or coincide with submittal of the first Application for Payment, include the following:
 - 1. List of subcontractors.
 - 2. List of principal suppliers and fabricators.
 - 3. Schedule of Values.
 - 4. Contractor's Construction Schedule (preliminary if not final).
 - 5. Schedule of principal products.
 - 6. Schedule of unit prices.
 - 7. Submittal Schedule (preliminary if not final).

8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
 9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
 10. Copies of building permits.
 11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from governing authorities for performance of the Work.
 12. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
 13. Performance and payment bonds.
 14. Data needed to acquire the Owner's insurance.
 15. Initial settlement survey and damage report, if required.
- H. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: Following issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment.
1. This application shall reflect any Certificates of Partial Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
 2. Administrative actions and submittals that shall precede or coincide with this application include:
 - a. Occupancy permits and similar approvals or certifications by governing authorities, assuring Owners full access and use of the completed work.
 - b. Warranties (guarantees) and maintenance agreements.
 - c. Test / adjust / balance records.
 - d. Maintenance instructions.
 - e. Meter readings.
 - f. Start-up performance reports.
 - g. Change-over information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
 - h. Final cleaning.
 - i. Application for reduction of retainage and consent of surety.
 - j. Advice on shifting insurance coverages, including proof of extended coverages as required.
 - k. Final progress photographs.
 - l. List of incomplete Work recognized to be completed by the Contractor, as exceptions to Architect's Certificate of Substantial Completion.
- I. Final Payment Application: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of the final Application for Payment include the following:
1. Completion of Project closeout requirements.
 2. Completion of items specified for payment application at time of Substantial Completion (regardless of whether such application was made).
 3. Assurance, satisfactory to Owner, that unsettled claims will be settled and that work not actually completed or accepted will be completed without undue delay.
 4. Transmittal of required Project construction records to the Owner.
 5. Certified property survey.
 6. Proof, satisfactory to Owner, that taxes, fees, and similar obligations of the Contractor have been paid.
 7. Removal of temporary facilities and services.
 8. Removal of surplus materials, rubbish, and similar elements.
 9. Change of door locks and other Contractor access to Owner's property.
 10. Consent of Surety for Final Payment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01027

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01035 - MODIFICATION
PROCEDURES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing contract supplements and modifications.
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - 1. Division 1, Section 01027 - APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT for administrative procedures governing Applications for Payment.
 - 2. Division 1, Section 01300 - SUBMITTALS for requirements for the Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 3. Division 1, Section 01631 - PRODUCTS AND SUBSTITUTIONS for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after award of the Contract.

1.3 CONTRACT DOCUMENT SUPPLEMENTS

- A. Clarification / Supplemental Instructions (C-): Shall provide further detail to requirements inferred in the Contract Documents or authorize minor changes in the work, not involving an adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time, and will be issued by the Architect with supplemental or revised drawings and specifications, if necessary. Clarifications / Supplemental Instructions issued by the Architect-Engineer shall become binding and a part of the Contract as minor changes in the work unless the Contractor notifies the Architect-Engineer within 21 days that the instructions result in changes that affect the Contract Cost or Contract Time.
- B. Request for Information / Supplemental Instructions (RFI-): Shall be initiated by the Contractor when necessary for performance of the work. The Architect's reply will constitute further detail to requirements if inferred in the Contract Documents or interpretations of the requirements. Requests for information must describe all document references that pertain to the issue and any conflicts and must include the contractor's interpretation or proposed action that would be made if there was not a process to obtain the information from the Architect. Requests for information that do not include this, or that request information already included in the contract documents without conflict, will be returned without action (RWA). The Architect will record the time expended to process such requests and notify the Contractor of the charges. The owner shall deduct any such compensation due the Architect from the Contractor's monthly periodic pay requests in accordance with the compensation terms for cost, overhead and profit in the Owner / Architect agreement. Use forms provided by the Architect. The Contractor shall maintain a sequentially numbered log of all such requests.

- C. Contractor Corrective Action Proposals (CCA-): Shall be initiated by the Contractor when deviation from the contract requirements has been constructed. The Contractor shall provide a fully detailed proposal for his corrective or remedial work. The Architect's reply will indicate approval of the proposed action as detailed, approval with certain modifications, or rejection of the proposal. Use forms provided by the Architect. The Contractor shall maintain a sequentially numbered log of all such proposals. Upon notification of a deviation and request for a CCA the Contractor shall submit one promptly. Should this not occur in a timely fashion which, in the judgment of the Architect, will allow time for processing and correction ahead of other advancing elements of work, the Architect will initiate a CCA giving direction for correction. If the Architect initiates the CCA or must provide significant direction to a Contractor initiated CCA, due to a lack of a fully detailed proposal, the Architect will record the time expended and notify the Contractor of the charges. The owner shall deduct any such compensation due the Architect from the Contractor's monthly periodic pay requests in accordance with the compensation terms for cost, overhead and profit in the Owner / Architect agreement.

1.4 PROPOSAL / CHANGE ORDER REQUESTS

- A. Request for Proposal (RFP-): The Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that will require adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
1. Proposal requests issued by the Architect are for information only. Do not consider them as an instruction either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 2. Unless otherwise indicated in the proposal request, within 20 days of receipt of a proposal request, submit an estimate of cost necessary to execute the change to the Architect for the Owner's review.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products to be purchased and unit costs, along with the total amount of purchases to be made. Where requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - b. Itemize labor charges by time and category.
 - c. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - d. Indicate overhead and profit charges.
 - e. Include a statement indicating the effect the proposed change in the work will have on the Contract Time.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Change Order Requests (RCO-): When latent or unforeseen conditions require modifications to the Contract, the Contractor may propose changes by submitting a request for a change to the Architect.
1. Include a statement outlining the reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and Contract Time.
 2. Include a list of quantities of products to be purchased and unit costs along with the total amount of purchases to be made. Where requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.

4. Comply with requirements in Section 01631 - PRODUCTS AND SUBSTITUTIONS if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for a product or system specified.
5. Change Order Request Form: Use forms provided by the Architect. The Contractor shall maintain a sequential log of all Requests for Change Orders.

1.5 ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: For allowance-cost adjustment, base each Change Order Proposal on the difference between the actual purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by the final measurement of work-in-place. Where applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
 1. Include installation costs in the purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
 2. When requested, prepare explanations and documentation to substantiate the margins claimed.
 3. The Owner reserves the right to establish the actual quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
- B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or the Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit. Submit claims within 20 days of receipt of the Change Order or Construction Change Directive authorizing work to proceed. The Owner will reject claims submitted later than 20 days.
 1. Do not include the Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in Contract Documents.
 2. No change to the Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: When the Owner and the Contractor are not in total agreement on the terms of a Change Order Proposal Request, the Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Form G714. The Construction Change Directive instructs the Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 1. The Construction Change Directive will contain a complete description of the change in the work and designate the method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
 1. After completion of the change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

1.7 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. Upon the Owner's approval of a Change Order Proposal Request, the Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of the Owner and the Contractor on AIA Form G701, as provided in the Conditions of the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01035

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 01040 – COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes administrative and supervisory requirements necessary for coordinating construction operations including, but not necessarily limited to, the following:
 - 1. General project coordination procedures.
 - 2. Coordination Drawings.
 - 3. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
 - 4. Cleaning and protection.
- B. Related Sections: Refer to other Division 1 sections for coordination requirements regarding field engineering services, project meetings, Contractor's construction schedule, general installation and contract closeout.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction operations included in various sections of these Specifications to assure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the work. Coordinate construction operations included under different sections that are dependent upon each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
 - 1. Schedule construction operations in the sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to assure maximum accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 - 3. Make provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Where necessary, prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and attendance at meetings.
 - 1. Prepare similar memoranda for the Owner and separate contractors where coordination of their work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and assure orderly progress of the work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Preparation of schedules.
 - 2. Installation and removal of temporary facilities.
 - 3. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 - 4. Progress meetings.

5. Project closeout activities.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Prepare coordination drawings as careful coordination is needed for installation of products and materials fabricated by separate entities. Prepare coordination drawings where limited space availability necessitates maximum utilization of space for efficient installation of different components.
 - 1. Show the relationship of components shown on separate Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - 3. Comply with requirements contained in Section 01300 - SUBMITTALS.
 - 4. Refer to Divisions 15 and 16 for additional requirements.
- B. Staff Names: Within fifteen (15) days of commencement of construction operations, submit a list of the Contractor's principal staff assignments, including the superintendent and other personnel in attendance at the Project Site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities. List their addresses and telephone numbers.
 - 1. Post copies of the list in the Project meeting room, the temporary field office, and each temporary telephone.
- C. Subcontractor / Supplier Names: Within fifteen (15) days of commencement of construction operations, submit a listing of Contractor's principal subcontractors and suppliers, naming persons and listing their addresses and phone numbers.

1.5 SITE USE PLAN

- A. Within ten (10) working days of Contract award, the Contractor shall develop and submit for Owner's approval a site use plan. This plan shall clearly describe the proposed temporary facilities, staging areas, ramps and major traffic ways, hazardous material storage, provisions for site services, safety and security. Changes to the site plan shall be submitted for review and approval five (5) working days prior to effecting the changes.

1.6 TRADESPERSONS AND WORKMANSHIP STANDARDS

- A. General: Instigate and maintain procedures to ensure that persons performing work at site are skilled and knowledgeable in methods and craftsmanship needed to produce required quality levels for workmanship in completed work. Remove and replace work which does not comply with workmanship standards as specified and as recognized in the construction industry for applications indicated. Remove and replace other work damaged or deteriorated by faulty workmanship or its replacement.
- B. Availability of Tradespersons: At each progress or coordination meeting, review availability of tradespersons and projected needs to accomplish work as scheduled. Require each entity employing personnel to report on events which might affect progress of work. Where possible, consider alternatives and take actions to avoid disputes and delays.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL COORDINATION PROVISIONS

- A. Inspection of Conditions: Require the Installer of each major component to inspect both the substrate and conditions under which work is to be performed. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in an acceptable manner.
- B. Coordinate temporary enclosures with required inspections and tests to minimize the necessity of uncovering completed construction for that purpose.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Comply with manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations, to the extent that those instructions and recommendations are more explicit or stringent than requirements contained in Contract Documents.
- D. Inspect materials or equipment immediately upon delivery and again prior to installation. Reject damaged and defective items.
- E. Provide attachment and connection devices and methods necessary for securing work. Secure work true to line and level. Allow for expansion and building movement.
- F. Visual Effects: Provide uniform joint widths in exposed work. Arrange joints in exposed work to obtain the best visual effect. Refer questionable choices to the Architect for final decision.
- G. Recheck measurements and dimensions, before starting each installation.
- H. Install each component during conditions of temperature, humidity, exposure, forecasted weather and status of project completion that will ensure the best possible results, in coordination with entire work. Isolate each part of the completed construction from incompatible material as necessary to prevent deterioration.
- I. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, install individual components at standard mounting heights recognized within the industry for the particular application indicated. Refer questionable mounting height decisions to the Architect for final decision.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials in place, during handling and installation. Apply protective covering where required to assure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- B. Clean and maintain completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to assure operability without damaging effects.
- C. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period. Where applicable, such exposures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Excessive static or dynamic loading.
 - 2. Excessive internal or external pressures.
 - 3. Excessively high or low temperatures.

4. Thermal shock.
5. Excessively high or low humidity.
6. Air contamination or pollution.
7. Water or ice.
8. Solvents.
9. Chemicals.
10. Light.
11. Radiation.
12. Puncture.
13. Abrasion.
14. Heavy traffic.
15. Soiling, staining, and corrosion.
16. Bacteria.
17. Rodent and insect infestation.
18. Combustion.
19. Electrical current.
20. High-speed operation.
21. Improper lubrication.
22. Unusual wear or other misuse.
23. Contact between incompatible materials.
24. Destructive testing.
25. Misalignment.
26. Excessive weathering.
27. Unprotected storage.
28. Improper shipping or handling.
29. Theft.
30. Vandalism.

3.3 ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

- A. Soil Disposal and / or Borrow: Conduct all soil disposal and / or borrow work in accordance with requirements of local regulatory authorities. Dispose of all excess soil in a legal manner off site.
- B. Solid, Liquid and Gaseous Contaminants: Contractor shall be responsible for the proper disposal of all solid, liquid and gaseous contaminants in accordance with all local codes and regulations, together with the following requirements.
 1. Discharge gaseous contaminants so that they will be sufficiently diluted with fresh air to reduce the toxicity to an acceptable level.
 2. Liquid contaminants may, subject to local utility standards, be diluted with water to a level of quality acceptable in the local sewer system or shall be contained in approved vessels for disposal at approved sites.
- C. Disposal of Refuse: Remove refuse resulting from construction operations from the site. Burning on the site is not permissible.
- D. Hazardous Waste: All hazardous waste generated by the Contractor and the Contractor's subcontractors during the course of construction shall be stored, transported and disposed of in accordance with 40 CFR 260. The Contractor and his subcontractors shall be responsible for all documentation related to hazardous waste generated as a result of this Contract and that documentation shall be in accordance with 40 CFR 260.
- E. Construction Site Maintenance:

1. Store all supplies and equipment on project site so as to preclude mechanical and climatic damage. Maintain site in a neat and orderly manner.
 2. Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining the temporary structures and construction enclosure (fence) in good repair and visually pleasant. Contractor shall further provide adequate security, supplementing the existing fencing as necessary, to prevent the presence of unauthorized persons on the site and to keep gates secured when not in actual use to ensure the integrity of the barrier as well as for property security.
- F. Noise Control: Comply with all applicable state and local laws, ordinances and regulations relative to noise control.

END OF SECTION 01040

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 01041 - SCHEDULES

GENERAL

1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specifications, apply to work of this Section.

2. COORDINATION

- A. The Contractor shall coordinate scheduling with the Construction Manager. In particular, the Contractor shall provide close coordination of progress schedule, schedule of values, listing of subcontractors, schedule of submittals, progress reports and payment requests.
- B. Close coordination will be required between all construction trades in order that individual areas of construction can be completed by their scheduled time. Consult the proposed construction sequence schedule for start and completion dates of individual work areas.

3. PRELIMINARY SCHEDULE

- A. The Construction Manager has developed a Preliminary Schedule included at the end of this section, showing work areas of the project which directly impact the orderly use of the facility during construction. The timing of these activities has been approved by the Owner.
- B. The Preliminary Schedule may not list the work completely and may vary from the drawings and specifications.

4. CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. The Construction Manager shall computerize a Precedence Diagram Method (PDM) Network using data supplied by the Contractor and all subcontractor(s). The Contractor will be responsible for his own methods and procedures and the performance of the work consistent with good practice.
- B. Neither the Construction Manager nor the Owner warrants the information supplied by the Contractors is accurate or correct or that the project can be performed as scheduled based upon data supplied by the Contractors.
- C. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing all data to develop and update the schedule. The Contractor shall supervise all work activities to maintain progress in accordance with the schedule.
- D. The Contractor and Subcontractor shall provide their own data to the Construction Manager reflecting the actual plan of operation for the Project. Schedule input data shall include a comprehensive list of all activities of the construction phase of the

project, including submittals (shop drawings, samples, product data), procurement of material, and on-site activity (erection, installation, construction). Activities for procurement of materials shall be included to delineate between material purchasing and fabrication/delivery.

- E. The Contractor shall assign durations and sequencing to each activity. Submittal activities shall be listed with the anticipated date of submittal. Procurement activities shall be listed with the duration required for fabrication and delivery from date of purchase. The Construction Manager shall computerize a PDM network using input data supplied by the Contractor. The Construction Manager will meet with the Contractor to revise and expand the Schedule and resolve conflicts. The revised schedule shall conform to the specific plan of operation envisioned by the Contractor.

The Construction Manager will guide the Contractor in determining the level of detail to be included in the PDM Networks. The schedule shall be adequate enough to evaluate progress, cost of work in place and serve as a control technique for the Contractor's Field Superintendent.

- F. The Contractor and all subcontractors shall be obligated to perform in accordance with the Construction Schedule and to participate in updating the schedule. The Contractor shall include provisions in all subcontracts binding Subcontractors to participate in revisions of the schedule as are necessary, and to supply data throughout the project.
- G. Upon request, the Contractor shall submit to the Construction Manager purchase orders and subcontracts. Such information shall be submitted as soon as available so the Construction Manager will be aware of the progress being made by the Contractor in the placing of orders and the status of material. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for expediting the delivery of all material furnished by him and coordinating his subcontractors so construction progress shall be maintained according to Contract Schedule.

5. COMPLIANCE WITH THE CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. If the Contractor shall fail to adhere to the Construction Schedule or to the said schedule as revised, he must promptly adopt such other or additional means and methods of construction as will make up for the time lost and will assure completion of the work in accordance with said Construction Schedule at no additional cost to the Owner, except in accordance with the provision of the contract governing such costs. If the Owner or the Construction Manager notifies the Contractor of any change in the contract or any extra work performed, or if any other conditions arise which are likely to cause delays, the Contractor shall notify the Construction Manager in writing within five (5) days of the receipt of such notice or occurrence of such condition. This notice shall document the effect, if any, of such change, or extra work, of suspension or other condition upon the Construction Schedule. No time extensions will be granted due to a delay in any activity unless the Owner deems the length of the delay exceeds the float time associated with the activity at the time the delay occurs.

6. FLOAT TIME

- A. The Contractor, in directing the compliance with Construction Schedule shall cooperate with the Owner and the Construction Manager in utilizing float time. Full control over use of total float time in the Schedule rests with the Owner and will be utilized by him in any necessary rescheduling of the Construction Schedule occasioned by design changes, field conditions, strikes, Acts of God, or unavoidable equipment and material delays. If rescheduling of any activity adversely affects the Contractor's operation, he shall advise the Construction Manager in writing no later than five (5) days after the receipt of the revised schedule or Notice of Intent to revise the schedule.

7. PRELIMINARY SCHEDULE DATES

- A. All work shall be completed as follows:

- 1. Start Construction: On or about July 12, 2010, but within 5 days of notice to proceed as directed by the Construction Manager.
- 2. Substantial Completion: October 1, 2011.
- 3. Final Completion: October 15, 2011.

END OF SECTION 01041

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 01045 - CUTTING AND PATCHING

1. WORK INCLUDED

- A. Refer to Section 01010 and 01500 for special requirements, protection, constraints, timing of work, scheduling of work, enclosures and similar requirements relating to this Section.
- B. This Section covers cutting, demolition, removal work, patching and restoration of work as necessary to accomplish and complete all work under the Contract, including any relocation or reuse of existing materials, equipment, systems, or other work, as well as the disposition of salvaged materials or debris. This Section applies to all work under the Contract, including general construction, mechanical and electrical work.
- C. Drawings generally indicate the extent of demolition, removals, relocations and cutting. The drawings shall not be construed as indicating all required work, nor indicating all conditions or details which might be encountered to accomplish the work of this Contract. The Contractor and his subcontractors shall examine the spaces themselves to determine the actual conditions and requirements. All removals, demolition, cutting, restoration, new installations and other work shall be accomplished to transform the existing spaces and conditions to the new conditions required under the Contract, as well as to accomplish all tie-in work of new to existing.
- D. It is the intent that unless specially shown on the general construction type drawings (i.e.; architectural and structural) and schedules, or inherent in the work to be accomplished under the general construction work of the area, that the mechanical and electrical Contractors shall perform the demolition, cutting, removals, relocations, patching and restoration as will be required to accomplish the work under their contracts. All work shown or indicated on the general construction drawings and schedules shall be accomplished by the associated Contractor.
- E. Except for general demolition of entire areas, it is the intent that at each area, or space, the Contractor and each subcontractor shall make the removals, perform cutting or demolition and accomplish relocations of work normal to his trades (i.e., Mechanical Contractor removes or relocates piping, ductwork and similar; Electrical Contractor removes or relocates panelboards, conduit lighting and similar). At areas of general demolition of the entire spaces, the Mechanical and Electrical shall make removals of work normal to their trades or as may be called for, for reuse or relocation, make any relocations and cut-off, terminate, cap or otherwise discontinue services that will be abandoned or removed in the space.

2. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accomplish all work of cutting, removal, demolition, relocation, patching and other restoration by using only mechanics skilled in the trade. If necessary, sublet the work to skilled contractors or subcontractors.
- B. The Contractor shall coordinate all work of this Section with all subcontractors so the work will progress without interruption and minimum delays. The Contractor shall also coordinate and schedule the work with the Owner and Construction Manager where possible disturbance may occur and where relocations or other potential disruptions of the Owner's functions and services may occur. All work affecting the Owner's functions and services shall be performed at times acceptable to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 01045

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01050 – FIELD
ENGINEERING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. General: This section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for field-engineering services including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Land survey work.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates: Submit a certificate signed by the land surveyor or professional engineer certifying the location and elevation of improvements.
- B. Final Property Survey: Submit 10 copies of the final property survey of the new terminal complex portion of the overall site.
- C. Project Record Documents: Submit a record of work performed and record survey data as required under provisions of Section 01300 - SUBMITTALS and Section 01700 - CONTRACT CLOSEOUT sections.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surveyor Qualifications: Engage a land surveyor registered in the state where the Project is located, to perform required land-surveying services.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify layout information shown on the Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks, before proceeding to lay out the work. Locate and protect existing benchmarks and control points. Preserve permanent reference points during construction.
 - 1. Do not change or relocate benchmarks or control points without prior written approval. Promptly report lost or destroyed reference points or requirements to relocate reference points because of necessary changes in grades or locations.
 - 2. Promptly replace lost or destroyed Project control points. Base replacements on the original survey control points.

3. Failure to verify layout information before proceeding to lay out the work shall not be grounds for a claim for an increase in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. The Architect will in no case assume any responsibilities related to laying out the work.
- B. Establish and maintain a minimum of four (4) permanent benchmarks on the site, referenced to data established by survey control points.
 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
- C. Existing Utilities and Equipment: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities and other construction.
 1. Prior to construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping.

3.2 PERFORMANCE

- A. Work from lines and levels established by the property survey. Establish benchmarks and markers to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of the Project. Calculate and measure required dimensions within indicated or recognized tolerances. Do not scale Drawings to determine dimensions.
 1. Advise entities engaged in construction activities of marked lines and levels provided for their use.
 2. As construction proceeds, check every major element for line, level, and plumb.
- B. Surveyor's Log: Maintain a surveyor's log of control and other survey work. Make this log available for reference.
 1. Record deviations from required lines and levels, and advise the Architect when deviations that exceed indicated or recognized tolerances are detected. On Project Record Drawings, record deviations that are accepted and not corrected.
 2. On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and site work.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, stakes for grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and invert elevations by instrumentation and similar appropriate means.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out batter boards for structures, building foundations, column grids and locations, floor levels, and control lines and levels required for mechanical and electrical work.
- E. Existing Utilities: Furnish information necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with local authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Final Property Survey: Before Substantial Completion, prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for the new terminal complex portion of the overall site. Include on the survey a certification, signed by the

Surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of the Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.

END OF SECTION 01050

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

01200 - PROJECT MEETINGS

1. GENERAL

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for project meetings including but not limited to:
1. Pre-Construction Conference.
 2. Pre-Installation Conference.
 3. Progress Meetings.

2. PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

- A. Pre-Construction Conference shall be scheduled as directed by Construction Manager. Conduct the meeting to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
- B. Attendees: Construction Manager, the Owner, Architect and their consultants, the Contractor and its superintendent, major subcontractors, manufacturers, suppliers and other concerned parties shall each be represented at the conference by persons familiar with and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- C. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress including such topics as:
1. Construction schedule.
 2. Critical work sequencing.
 3. Designation of responsible personnel.
 4. Procedures for processing field decisions and change orders.
 5. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 6. Distribution of contract documents.
 7. Submittal of shop drawings, product data and samples.
 8. Preparation of record documents.
 9. Use of the premises.
 10. Office, work and storage areas.
 11. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 12. Safety procedures.
 13. First aid.
 14. Security.
 15. Housekeeping.
 16. Working hours.

3. PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCES

- A. The Contractor shall conduct a preinstallation conference at the Project Site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
- B. Attendees: The Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation, and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advice the Architect at least ten (10) working days in advance of scheduled meeting dates.

- C. Do not schedule conferences until the submittals required by the Contract Documents for work associated with the construction activity requiring the conference have been approved and returned to the Contractor.
- D. Review the progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration at each preinstallation conference, including requirements for the following:
 - 1. Contract Documents.
 - 2. Options.
 - 3. Related Change Orders.
 - 4. Purchases.
 - 5. Deliveries.
 - 6. Shop Drawings, Product Data, and quality-control samples.
 - 7. Review of mockups.
 - 8. Possible conflicts.
 - 9. Compatibility problems.
 - 10. Time schedules.
 - 11. Weather limitations.
 - 12. Manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 13. Warranty requirements.
 - 14. Compatibility of materials.
 - 15. Acceptability of substrates.
 - 16. Temporary facilities.
 - 17. Space and access limitations.
 - 18. Governing regulations.
 - 19. Safety.
 - 20. Inspecting and testing requirements.
 - 21. Required performance results.
 - 22. Recording requirements.
 - 23. Protection.
- E. The Contractor shall record the results of the meeting and distribute copies to attendees and other interested parties.
- F. Do not proceed with the installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of work and reconvene the conference at the earliest feasible date.

4. PROGRESS MEETINGS

- A. Construction Manager shall conduct regular progress meetings at the Project site. Time of meeting to be scheduled by Construction Manager.
- B. Attendees: In addition to representatives of the Owner, Construction Manager and Architect, each prime contractor, subcontractor, supplier or other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings by persons familiar with the Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to progress.
- C. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to the current status of the Project.

1. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine where each activity is in relation to the Contractor's Construction Schedule, whether on time or ahead or behind schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 2. Review the present and future needs of each entity present, including such items as:
 - a. Interface requirements.
 - b. Time.
 - c. Sequences.
 - d. Deliveries.
 - e. Off-site fabrication problems.
 - f. Access.
 - g. Site utilization.
 - h. Temporary facilities and services.
 - i. Hours of work.
 - j. Hazards and risks.
 - k. Housekeeping.
 - l. Quality and work standards.
 - m. Change orders.
 - n. Documentation of information for payment requests.
- D. Reporting: No later than three (3) days after each progress meeting date, the Construction Manager shall distribute copies of minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties as applicable.
1. Schedule Updating: The construction schedule shall be revised after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. The revised schedule shall be issued to all applicable parties.

END OF SECTION 01200

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01270 – UNIT
PRICES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
 - 2. Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements" for general testing and inspecting requirements.
 - 3. See Civil Drawing Sheet C001 for a Summary of Estimated Quantities for Civil Work.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unit price is an amount proposed by bidders, stated on the Bid Form, as a price per unit of measurement for materials or services added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: Refer to individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: Refer to Section "01014 Work Scope Descriptions" and the Bid Form Package in Volume 1 of the Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01270

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 01300 - SUBMITTALS

1. GENERAL

- A. This Section defines procedures for the following submittals required by the Contract Documents.

2. SCHEDULE OF SUBMITTALS - REQUIRED

- A. The following documents are required to be submitted to the Construction Manager for review at the times indicated.

1. Prior to Bidding (ten days prior to bid opening):
Request for approval of substitute material and equipment.
2. Within 10 days of Letter of Contract Award:
Performance and Payment Bonds
Insurance Certificate
Schedule of Values (based on specification sections)
List of materials and equipment
List of subcontractors
Shop drawings and required submittals
3. During Progress of Project as specified:
Samples
Test results
Application for Payment (see Specifications Section 01027)
4. Upon receipt of Substantial Completion Certificate, submit the following documents within 30 days:
Equipment and material guarantees
Operations manuals
As-built drawing notes
Completed punch lists
Final payment request accompanied by:
Affidavit of Payment of Claims Affidavit of Release of Liens
Withholding Tax Affidavit Consent of Surety to Final Payment

Note: No final retainage payment will be released without the receipt and approval of the above referenced documents.

3. SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. Six copies of shop drawings prepared specifically for this work shall be submitted to the Construction Manager for submittal to the Architect. Contractors are to review and stamp shop drawings or they will be returned. At least 40 square inches of space in the lower right hand corner of each sheet shall be left blank for approval stamps and notes. After the Architect has checked and approved each drawing, he will so stamp it, make such copies as he requires and return it through the Construction Manager to the Contractor who shall make and distribute such copies as he requires. In instances where minor corrections are required, they will be so noted on the drawing and it will be stamped "Make Corrections Noted" and returned to the Contractor as above. Where major corrections are required, the shop drawings will be returned to the Contractor who shall make a new drawing incorporating the required corrections and resubmit six copies of the revised drawings for approval.
- B. Shop drawings in the form of printed descriptive information shall be bound together with a title and index sheet listing each sheet in the binding. The title and index sheet shall have a blank rectangular space of at least 4" x 8" for notes and approval stamps. Six copies are to be submitted to the Construction Manager.
- C. Shop drawings and samples shall be dated and contain: Names of project, description or names of equipment, materials and items; and complete identification of locations at which materials or equipment are to be installed.
- D. Submission of shop drawings shall be accompanied by transmittal letter, containing project name, Contractor's name, number of drawings, titles and other pertinent data such as section and article numbers.

4. SAMPLES

- A. Deliver samples of materials, equipment, assemblies and components as required by specifications to Construction Manager for submittal to the Architect (or other designated location) with delivery costs prepaid. At Construction Manager's direction, remove samples after approval. Samples shall be of like kind to the products to be provided for building and shall have finish and other characteristics required by work. Samples shall indicated type of construction and quality proposed for installation in the project.
- B. Where the Contractor requires approved samples to be returned, submit the number of samples required by the Contractor plus three (3) which shall be retained by the Architect and Construction Manager.

5. LIST OF MATERIALS

- A. Within ten (10) days after the award of the contract (notice to proceed or letter of intent), the Contractor shall submit three (3) copies of a complete list of all materials, products, and equipment proposed to be used in construction to the Construction Manager for acceptance. Materials shall not be ordered until the proposed listed materials, products and equipment proposed to be used in construction are reviewed by the Architect for acceptance and the listed materials are accepted.
- B. Where two or more makes or kinds of items are named in the specifications (or additional names are called for in addendum), the Contractor shall state which particular make or kind of each item he proposes to provide. If the Contractor fails

to state a preference, the Owner shall have the right to select any of the makes of kinds named without change in price.

- C. This list shall be arranged in order of specification sections. The items listed shall fully conform to project requirements and specifications. All materials are subject to the Architect's acceptance. After acceptance, there shall be no changes or substitutions.
- D. The list shall clearly identify the material, product or equipment by manufacturer and brand by listing the names, for all items, including those where only one material or product is specified. Each and all material, products and equipment shall be specifically names, not listed "as specified".

6. LIST OF SUBCONTRACTORS

- A. Within ten (10) days after the award of the contract (notice to proceed) and prior to the execution of the Contract, the Contractor shall submit three (3) copies of a complete list of all work he proposes to subcontract and the subcontractors (and major material suppliers) he proposes to use in performance of the Contract to the Construction Manager for review by the Architect, Construction Manager and Owner. The list shall include Sub-subcontractors. No subcontracts shall be executed until the proposed list of subcontractors is accepted.
- B. Reasonable objection shall be deemed to have been exercised when, in the opinion of the Architect or Owner, objections have been made based on their reasonable belief that the proposed Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or material supplier: (1) cannot provide materials, equipment, facilities or other products as specified or required by the Contract Documents; (2) cannot provide labor and skill necessary to accomplish the part of Work for which he is proposed, including but not limited to quality of workmanship; (3) lacks adequate and appropriate experience for the part of the Work for which he is proposed, including materials or methods required; (4) has previously failed to perform timely or satisfactorily, including in cooperation and in necessary services after project completion; (5) proposed deviations in material or methods that are unacceptable to the Architect or Owner, such as proposing materials or methods that were not specified or not listed in addenda; (6) there is reasonable doubt he can satisfactorily perform the part of the Work for which he is proposed, within the time schedule, due to size of organization or existing work load; (7) cannot demonstrate his ability through quality or representative work to perform the part of the Work for which he is being considered; (8) of questionable integrity; (9) or other similar considerations bearing on the possibility of unsatisfactory performance. If the Owner, Construction Manager or the Architect has a reasonable objection to any person or entity proposed by a substitute to whom neither the Owner, Construction Manager, nor the Architect has any reasonable objection and no increase in the Contract Sum shall be allowed as a result of any such substitution.
- C. After review of the proposed list, no change of any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or supplier not objected to by the Architect, Construction Manager or Owner, shall be made, except for cause acceptable to all parties. In the event of a proposed change, the Contractor shall submit the reasons for the change, in writing, along with the alternate proposed Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or material supplier. The proposed change is subject to the conditions of this Article and the requirements of the General Conditions.

7. GUARANTEES AND WARRANTIES

- A. Refer to Section 01740 - Warranties.
- B. Special Warranties: Contractor shall complete all manufacturer's warranty registrations and shall submit same to Construction Manager for transmittal to Owner.

8. INSTRUCTION MANUALS

- A. For all items of mechanical equipment and electrical apparatus, the Contractor shall obtain from the manufacturer and furnish to the Construction Manager three (3) copies of the following:
 - 1. Operating instructions.
 - 2. Parts lists (including name and address of nearest vendor or service agent).
 - 3. Maintenance instructions.
 - 4. Shop Drawings.
- B. These items are separate from and in addition to the operating placards required to be attached to or posted near the equipment.
- C. Contractor shall provide field instruction to Owner's personnel as required to fully instruct them in correct operating and maintenance procedure, for all equipment installed under this contract.
- D. Manual shall be submitted in 8-1/2" x 11" form in adequately sized three (3) ring loose leaf binders with entire contents indexed and thumb-tabbed.

9. RECORD SET OF DRAWINGS

- A. Contractor shall provide the record set of drawings to the Construction Manager at the completion of Contract.
- B. During construction, Contractor shall maintain a clean set of drawings for the sole purpose of recording changes and actual "as installed" information.
- C. As a general guide, the type of information to be recorded on the record set includes: (1) changes, deviations or revisions made, except minor or noncritical dimensions, including those made by Change Order or Supplementary Instructions; (2) omissions, including work omitted by accepted alternates; (3) dimensioned locations of major or main utility lines, such as main conduit runs, piping mains and similar work; (4) locations of control valves; (5) additions to the work; (6) changes in significant details; (7) changed footing or other elevations; (8) changes in locations of panelboards, outlets, drains, piping, opening, dampers and similar features; (9) other similar data. Refer to Section 01720 – Project Record Documents.

END OF SECTION 01300

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01361 - SUSTAINABLE DESIGN
REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Construction Waste Management - Section 01524
- B. Construction IAQ Management - Section 01525
- C. Soil Erosion and Sedimentation Control Plan - Section 02125

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. The Owner requires the Contractor to implement practices and procedures to meet the Project's environmental performance goals, which include obtaining a LEED Silver certification based on LEED-NC, Version 2.2. Specific project features include (but are not limited to): materials and equipment that reduce the facility's energy and water consumption; recycled-content materials, locally-manufactured materials, low-emitting materials, construction waste recycling, and the implementation of a construction indoor air quality management plan. The Contractor shall ensure that the requirements related to these goals, as defined in this section and throughout the contract documents, are implemented to the fullest extent. Substitutions or other changes to the work proposed by the Contractor or their subcontractors shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED Requirements.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Certificates of Chain-of-Custody: Certificates signed by manufacturers verifying that the wood used to make products was obtained from forests certified by a Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) accredited certification body to comply with FSC "Principles and Criteria." Certificates shall include evidence that the mill is certified for chain-of-custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- B. LEED: The Leadership in Energy & Environmental Design rating system developed by the United States Green Building Council (USGBC). LEED-NC, New Construction, Version 2.2, is the rating system used for this project.
- C. Green Label Plus: The Carpet & Rug Institute's testing/certification program for carpet VOC emissions. Certification numbers guarantee product is within allowable VOC emission rates. Approved products are listed under the manufacturer's name at www.carpet-rug.com/.

1.5 LEED OVERVIEW AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. OVERVIEW:

1. LEED certification is determined by a system of assigned points (credits) based on sustainable building goals being met by a project.
2. There are some prerequisites for a project to qualify for LEED certification.
3. Some prerequisites and credits depend on material selections and may not be specifically identified as LEED requirements in this document. Refer to Item 1.7, LEED Prerequisites.
4. Some prerequisites and credits depend on the Architect's design and other aspects of the project that are not part of the work of the contractor.
5. LEED New Construction (NC) v. 2.2 Reference Guide is available at www.usgbc.org/.

B. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS:

For specific contractor requirements refer to Item 1.7, LEED Prerequisites and LEED ACTION PLANS under Item 1.9, LEED SUBMITTALS.

1. Erosion and Sedimentation Control (ESC)
 - a. Refer to Items 1.7 LEED Prerequisites and 1.9 LEED Submittals (Action Plans)
 - b. Typical precautions are:
 - 1) Silt fences, hay bales, and water retention areas to prevent sediment runoff
 - 2) Graveled truck wash-off areas
 - 3) Construction fencing to prevent dust from escaping the site
 - 4) Installation and maintenance of sump pumps
 - 5) Use of mulching and seeding, sometimes on a temporary basis
 - c. Refer to Civil Engineer's documents for project specific information
 - d. The Contractor shall in part:
 - 1) Develop an Erosion and Sedimentation Control (ESC) Plan in accordance with Section 02125
 - 2) Maintain ESC measures throughout the project
 - 3) Take dated photographs of the ESC measures in place
 - 4) Log maintenance activities, inspections and repairs after major rain falls
2. Construction Waste Management (CWM)
 - a. Refer to Item 1.9 LEED Submittals (Action Plans).
 - b. CWM is the reuse of materials that otherwise would have been sent to a landfill.
 - c. The project requires that at least 50% of the construction waste be recycled.

- d. Reused site materials such as stone, excavated soil and land-clearing debris cannot count towards the recycled percent.
 - e. The contractor shall in part:
 - 1) A Construction Waste Management Plan shall be developed in accordance with Section 01524, Construction Waste Management outlining methods, goals and strategies.
 - 2) Maintain a spreadsheet with weight, category (e.g. concrete, metal, wood, paper), percent (%) diverted from landfill, method of diversion (i.e. recycled, reused, sold), dated, name of the hauler, and site of disposal.
 - 3) Keep back-up documentation (e.g. hauler's tickets, receipts from recycling centers, sales receipts).
3. Materials with Recycled Content
- a. LEED Recycled Content is the percent of a product that comes from recycled material. The percentage by weight of constituents that have been recovered or otherwise diverted from the solid waste stream, either during the manufacturing process (pre-consumer), or after consumer use (post-consumer)
 - 1) Spills and scraps from the original manufacturing process that are combined with other constituents after a minimal amount of reprocessing for use in further production of the same product are not recycled materials.
 - 2) Discarded materials from one manufacturing process that are used as constituents in another manufacturing process are pre-consumer recycled materials.
 - b. The project requirement is that at least 10% of the value of the project materials (without labor and equipment) be from recycled materials.
 - c. The manufacturer must provide the recycled content of the product.
 - d. To determine Recycled Content:
 - 1) The recycled content is determined by weight. 100% of post-consumer recycled content contributes, and 50% of pre-consumer (also called post-industrial) content contributes.
 - a) "Post-consumer" material is defined as waste material generated by households or by commercial, industrial, and institutional facilities in their role as end users of the product, which can no longer be used for its intended purpose.
 - b) "Pre-consumer" material is defined as material diverted from the waste stream during the manufacturing process. Excluded is reutilization of materials such as rework, regrind, or scrap generated in a process and capable of being reclaimed within the same process that generated it.

- 2) Determine the percentage of recycled content by weight:
 - a) Determine the total weight of the material or product.
 - b) Determine the weight of the recycled content contained in the product (100% post-consumer + 50% pre-consumer).
 - c) Divide the recycled content weight by the total weight to get a percentage (%) of recycled content by weight.
- 3) Determine the value of recycled content:
 - a) Determine the total value of the product (without labor and equipment)
 - b) Multiply the total value of the product by the percentage of recycled content to get the value of the recycled content.
- e. The contractor shall in part:
 - 1) Maintain a spreadsheet showing the recycled materials purchased, including the material name, supplier, percentage of pre-consumer and percentage of post consumer recycled material, the weight of the material, the value of the material (without labor and equipment), and the source of the recycled content information.
 - 2) Maintain records of recycled materials, including cut sheets, published product information and cost back up.
 - 3) Submit a completed "Green Building Materials Reporting Form" (GBMRF) in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals for each product, along with back up. A blank copy of the GBMRF is included at the end of this document.
4. Regional Materials
 - a. To qualify as LEED Regional Content a material must:
 - 1) Be manufactured within a 500 mile radius, AND
 - 2) Be extracted or harvested within a 500 mile radius.
 - b. The project goal is that at least 10% of the value of the project materials (without labor and equipment) be from regional materials.
 - c. The manufacturer must provide the location of manufacture and the location of extraction/harvest.
 - d. To determine Regional Content for LEED:
 - 1) Determine that the product is manufactured regionally
 - 2) Determine the percentage (%) of regional material weight:
 - a) Determine the total weight of the material or product
 - b) Determine the weight of the regional harvested/extracted component
 - 3) Divide the regionally harvested weight by the total weight to get a percentage (%) of regionally manufactured and harvested material.

- e. Determine the value of the regional content:
 - 1) Determine the total cost of the product (without labor and equipment).
 - 2) Multiply the total value of the product by the percentage (%) of regionally manufactured and harvested material content to get the value of the Regional Content.
 - f. The contractor shall in part:
 - 1) Maintain a spreadsheet showing the Regional Materials purchased, including the material name, supplier, percentage (%) of locally extracted/harvested materials (by weight), the total weight of the material, the cost of the material (without labor and equipment), and the source of the regional content information.
 - 2) Maintain records of Regional Materials, including cut sheets, published product information and cost back up.
 - 3) Submit a completed "Green Building Materials Reporting Form" (GBMRF) in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals for each product, along with back up. A blank copy of the GBMRF is included at the end of this document.
5. Low-Emitting Materials
- a. Refer to Items 1.9 LEED Submittals (Action Plans) and 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., "VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials".
 - b. Carpet Systems
 - 1) Use carpets and carpet backing that meet the requirements for the Carpet and Rug Institute's Green Label Plus Program.
 - 2) Use carpet adhesives that do not have Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) contents in excess of 50 grams/liter
 - c. Adhesives, Sealants, Paints and Coatings
 - 1) Use adhesives, sealants paints and coating that have a Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limit below certain thresholds.
 - 2) Chemical component limitations are also defined for some categories of paint and primer.
 - 3) Maintain records of adhesives, sealants, paints and coatings including the manufacturer, product name and VOC content in grams per liter or pound per gallon.
 - d. Non-Urea-formaldehyde Resins (Engineered Wood Products and Laminate Adhesives)
 - 1) Do not use engineered wood, composite wood or agrifiber board that contains urea-formaldehyde glue for any permanently installed materials or assemblies.
 - 2) Do not use adhesives containing urea-formaldehyde resins for bonding veneers and other laminates to substrates, both on-site and for shop work.

- 3) Examples of materials included in this restriction are plywood, medium density fiberboard, door cores, wheat-board, strawboard, and panel substrates.
- 4) Maintain records of engineered wood products with manufacturer, product name and manufacturer's written statement that product does not contain urea-formaldehyde resin.
- e. Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) Certified Materials
 - 1) To qualify as FSC wood material must:
 - a) Have its own FSC label and Chain of Custody (COC) Certificate (Certificates signed by manufacturers certifying that wood used to make products was obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD 01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship." Certificates shall include evidence that manufacturer is certified for Chain of Custody by an FSC-accredited certification body), OR
 - b) Be manufactured in a shop that has its own FSC Certificate out of at least 70% FSC Certified wood.
 - 2) The FSC wood content of the project can be determined by material costs (without labor and equipment), weight, or volume, but the same criteria must be applied consistently.
 - 3) The Contractor shall in part:
 - a) Maintain a spreadsheet showing the new wood materials purchased, including the material name, supplier, percentage (%) FSC Certified content, the total cost/weight/volume of the material, the cost of the material (without labor and equipment), the supplier and the COC Certificate number.
 - b) Maintain records of FSC wood, including COC Certificates, cut sheets, published product information and cost back up.
 - c) Submit a completed "Green Building Materials Reporting Form" (GBMRF) in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals for each product, along with back up. A blank copy of the GBMRF is included at the end of this document.
- 6. Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) During Construction
 - a. IAQ during construction addresses the reduction of pollutants in the project.

- b. Comply with Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning National Contractors' Association (SMACNA) Guidelines, as stated in Chapter 3 of the referenced "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction". The Construction IAQ Management Plan shall be organized in accordance with the SMACNA format, and shall address measures to be implemented by the Contractor and/or Subcontractors in each of the five categories (including subsections).
 - c. The Contractor Shall in part:
 - 1) Develop an IAQ Management Plan in accordance with Section 01525, Construction IAQ Management to be implemented by the Construction Manager, and by their subcontractors throughout the duration of the project construction, under the direction of the Construction Manager, and shall be documented per the Submittal Requirements of Item 1.9, LEED Submittals.
 - 2) Take Photographs (18 Total) that document the implementation of the Construction IAQ Management Plan throughout the course of the project construction. Examples include photographs of ductwork sealing and protection, temporary ventilation measures, and conditions of on-site materials storage (to prevent moisture damage). Photographs shall include integral date stamping, and shall be submitted with brief descriptions, or a reference to project meeting minutes or similar project documents.
- 7. Commissioning of Building Systems
 - a. The project is required to meet the LEED requirements for Enhanced Commissioning
 - b. Coordinate and support the efforts of the Commissioning Agent.

1.6 REFERENCES, STANDARDS, AND REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Comply with the applicable provisions of the referenced standards except as modified by governing codes and the Contract Documents. Where a recommendation or suggestion occurs in the referenced standards, such recommendation or suggestion shall be considered mandatory. In the event of conflict between referenced standards, this specification or within themselves, the more stringent standard or requirement shall govern.
 - 1. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)
 - 2. Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI)
 - 3. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)
 - 4. Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)
 - 5. Green Seal (GS)
 - 6. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America (IESNA)
 - 7. Sheet Metal and Air-Conditioning National Contractor Association (SMACNA)

8. South Coast Air Quality Management District (SQAMD)
 9. United States Green Building Council (USGBC): Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) Green Building Rating System, Version CS- 2.0.
- B. Rule 1168 – “Adhesive and Sealant Applications”, effective dated of July 1, 2005 and Rule Amendment date of January 7, 2005: South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD), State of California, www.aqmd.gov.
 - C. “Green Seal Standard for Commercial Adhesives”, GS-36, requirements in effect October 19, 2000, www.greenseal.org/.
 - D. “Green Seal Standard for Architectural Coating”, GS-11, plus “Green Seal Standard for Anti-Corrosive Paints”, GS-03, www.greenseal.org/.
 - E. Rule 1113 “Architectural Coatings”, amended 7/9/04: South Coast Air Quality Management District (SQAMD), State of California, www.aqmd.gov.
 - F. SMACNA IAQ “Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction”: Sheet Metal and Air-Conditioning National Contractor Association (SMACNA) November 1995, www.smacna.org.
 - G. ANSI/ASHRAE 52.2, “Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size”. www.ashrae.org.

1.7 LEED PREREQUISITES

- A. The following LEED Prerequisites are required in order to achieve the project’s targeted LEED rating. Compliance with all applicable prerequisite criteria, as defined in this specification and the contract drawings, is mandatory.
 1. Prerequisite SS 1, Construction Activity Pollution Prevention
The contractor and their subcontractors shall develop and implement a site Erosion and Sediment Control Plan which complies with all applicable regulatory requirements and the applicable control measures established in Chapter 3, “Sediment and Erosion Control” of the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) document No. 832R92005, Storm Water Management for Construction Activities, September 1992.
 2. Prerequisite EA 1, Fundamental Commissioning of the Building Energy Systems
Building systems including HVAC, lighting, electrical, domestic hot water and renewable energy systems (if applicable) shall be commissioned, with oversight provided by a third-party Commissioning Authority contracted directly to the Owner. Commissioning requirements shall be defined under Divisions 1, 15, 16 and 17.

3. Prerequisite EA 2, Minimum Energy Performance
The project is designed to meet or exceed the energy conservation requirements of the standard ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, "Energy Standard for Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings".
4. Prerequisite EA 3, CFC Fundamental Refrigerant Management
Chlorofluorocarbon (CFC) refrigerants are prohibited from all HVAC&R systems installed as part of the project.
5. Prerequisite MR 1, Storage & Collection of Recyclables
The project includes dedicated storage/collection facilities for recyclable materials, including paper, corrugated cardboard, glass, plastics and metals.
6. Prerequisite EQ 1, Minimum IAQ Performance
The project is designed to meet or exceed the ventilation performance requirements of standard ASHRAE 62.1-2004, "Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality", including approved Addenda.
7. Prerequisite EQ 2, Environmental Tobacco Smoke (ETS) Control
Smoking shall be prohibited in the public areas of the building and exterior designated smoking areas shall be 25 feet from entries, air intakes and operable windows. No applicable contractor/subcontractor requirements.

1.8 LEED PERFORMANCE CRITERIA FOR MATERIALS

- A. The following sub-sections, organized by CSI Division, list the required LEED performance criteria for materials used in this project. Product substitutions, if proposed by the Contractor or their subcontractors, shall not be allowed if such changes compromise the stated LEED requirements. The percentages should be adjusted to reflect availability of products with the greatest amount of recycled content within the S. Korean market.
 1. It is the responsibility of the contractors to bring to the attention of the Architect any conflicts between the LEED Performance criteria listed in this section and any additional performance criteria or "acceptable products" listed in other sections of the contract documents (specifications or drawings). These conflicts shall be brought to the Architect's attention for resolution prior to the purchase or installation of the materials in question. LEED criteria will not be waived unless specifically approved, in writing, by the Architect.

B. DIVISION 2 – SITE CONSTRUCTION

1. Recycled Content Materials:

- a. While there is no minimum requirement for the use of flyash, ground granulated blast furnace (GGBF) slag, or other recycled materials within the concrete mix designs, the use of such products is encouraged where: 1) it is readily available; 2) it does not negatively impact the performance characteristics of the concrete; and 3) it does not add to the product cost. Any use of flyash, GGBF slag, or other recycled materials within the concrete mix designs shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the project's Structural Engineer.
- b. Recycled materials within the concrete mix designs shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the project's Structural Engineer.
- c. Steel reinforcing bar, rods, wire, and welded wire fabric shall contain a minimum of 25% combined post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

2. Regionally-manufactured/Harvested Materials

- a. The manufacturing locations for concrete and bituminous pavement materials shall be within 500 miles (by air) of the project site, and shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. The location of the nursery or other source for all landscape plantings shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

C. DIVISION 3 - CONCRETE

1. Recycled Content Materials:

- a. While there is no minimum requirement for the use of flyash, ground granulated blast furnace (GGBF) slag, or other recycled materials within the concrete mix designs, the use of such products is encouraged where: 1) it is readily available; 2) it does not negatively impact the performance characteristics of the concrete; and 3) it does not add to the product cost. Any use of flyash, GGBF slag, or other recycled materials within the concrete mix designs shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. All design mixes are subject to review and approval by the project's Structural Engineer.

- b. Steel reinforcing bar, rods, wire, welded wire fabric, anchors, and ties shall contain a minimum of 25% combined post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

2. Regionally-manufactured/Harvested Materials

- a. The manufacturing location(s) for cast-in-place concrete shall be within 500 miles (by air) of the project site, and shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. The manufacturing location(s) for steel reinforcing products shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- c. The origin of the raw materials from which the concrete and steel reinforcing products were manufactured shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

3. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., "VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials". Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

D. DIVISION 4 – MASONRY

1. Recycled Content Materials:

- a. Steel reinforcing bar, rods, wire, anchors, and ties shall contain a minimum of 25% combined post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

2. Regionally-manufactured/Harvested Materials

- a. The manufacturing location(s) for all concrete masonry units shall be within 500 miles (by air) of the project site, and shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. The manufacturing location(s) for dimensional stone and for steel reinforcing products shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

- c. The origin of the raw materials from which the concrete masonry units and dimensional stone products were manufactured shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

3. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., "VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials". Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

E. DIVISION 5 – METALS

1. Recycled Content Materials:

- a. Structural Steel, steel deck and miscellaneous steel shall contain a minimum of 35% combined post-industrial/post consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

2. Regionally-manufactured/Harvested Materials

- a. The manufacturing location(s) for all structural steel products shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. For the purposes of this LEED credit, the steel fabricator can be considered the manufacturer.
- b. The origin of the raw materials from which the structural steel and steel deck was manufactured shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. For the purposes of this LEED credit, the steel mill can be considered the source of the raw material.

3. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., "VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials". Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

F. DIVISION 6 – WOODS, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES

1. Certified Wood:

- a. The use of “FSC Certified” products is encouraged in all wood products as listed under Item 1.11, Products. Any use of “FSC Certified” wood products (except recycled or salvaged wood) which have been harvested in accordance with the “FSC Principles and Criteria” for well-managed forests developed by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

2. Low-emission Products:

- a. All composite wood, engineered wood, or agrifiber products (e.g., plywood, particleboard, and medium-density fiberboard) shall contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins. Acceptable resins and binders include, but are not limited to, phenol formaldehyde and methyl diisocyanate (MDI). Certification of these products shall be in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., “VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials”. Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

G. DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

1. Recycled Content Materials:

- a. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of fiberglass insulation products shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of Mineral-wool insulation products shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- c. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of metal wall panels shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- d. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of metal roof panels shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- e. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of Cementitious and/or fibrous fireproofing shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. Metal lath and reinforcing fabric shall contain a minimum of 25% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

- f. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of Polystyrene Insulation products shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. Certification of recycled content shall be in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

2. Regionally-manufactured/Harvested Materials

- a. The manufacturing location(s) for metal wall panels shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. For the purposes of this LEED credit, the steel fabricator can be considered the manufacturer.
- b. The manufacturing location(s) for metal roof panels shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. For the purposes of this LEED credit, the steel fabricator can be considered the manufacturer.
- c. The origin of the raw materials from which the metal wall panels were manufactured shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. For the purposes of this LEED credit, the steel mill can be considered the source of the raw material.
- d. The origin of the raw materials from which the metal roof panels were manufactured shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below. For the purposes of this LEED credit, the steel mill can be considered the source of the raw material.
- e. Energy Star roof materials manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

3. Energy Star Roofing

- a. All exposed roofing products including membranes and pavers shall be ENERGY STAR® compliant and have a Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) of at least 78 when tested in accordance with ASTM E-1980. Any selected product with an SRI less than 78 requires the Architect's approval.

4. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., "VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials". Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

H. DIVISION 8 – DOORS AND WINDOWS

1. Recycled Content Materials:

- a. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of Aluminum curtain wall shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. Steel doors with recycled content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9 (LEED Submittals) below.

2. Regionally-manufactured/Harvested Materials

- a. Aluminum curtain wall systems manufactured within a 500 mile radius of the project shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. Steel doors manufactured within a 500 mile radius of the project shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

3. Certified Wood

- a. Wood doors made from “FSC Certified” products (except recycled or salvaged wood) which have been harvested in accordance with the “FSC Principles and Criteria” for well-managed forests developed by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

4. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., “VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials”. Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. All composite wood, engineered wood, or agrifiber products (e.g., plywood, particleboard, and medium-density fiberboard) shall contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins. Acceptable resins and binders include, but are not limited to, phenol formaldehyde and methyl diisocyanate (MDI). Certification of these products shall be in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

I. DIVISION 9 – FINISHES

1. Recycled Content Materials:

- a. Gypsum wallboard shall contain “synthetic” gypsum produced with a minimum of 90% post-industrial recycled content, if readily available. Recycled content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. Steel studs, track, and miscellaneous framing shall contain a minimum of 25% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Recycled content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- c. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of Mineral Fiber Acoustical Ceiling Panels shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- d. Steel ceiling grid and suspension system shall have a minimum of 25% (combined) post-industrial/post-consumer recycled content (the percentage of recycled content is based on the weight of the component materials). Recycled content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- e. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of Carpet tile face fibers and/or backings shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- f. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of Broadloom carpet shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

2. Regionally-manufactured/Harvested Materials

- a. Gypsum wallboard products manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. The origin of the raw materials from which the gypsum wallboard was manufactured shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- c. The manufacturing location(s) for steel studs, track, and miscellaneous framing shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9 LEED Submittals below. For the purposes of this LEED credit, the steel fabricator can be considered the manufacturer.
- d. Acoustical panel ceiling products manufactured within 500 miles (by air) of the project site shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- e. The origin of the raw materials from which the miner fiber acoustical ceiling panels were manufactured shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

3. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., "VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials". Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. Carpet, Carpet Backing and Carpet tiles and adhesives shall meet or surpass all criteria of the "Green Label Plus" Indoor Air Quality Test Program established by the Carpet and Rug Institute (CRI) of Dalton, Georgia.

J. DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

1. Recycled Content Materials:

- a. The post-industrial and/or post-consumer recycled content (by weight) of Plastic toilet partitions shall be reported and documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

2. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., "VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials". Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

K. DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT

1. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., "VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials". Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

L. DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

1. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., “VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials”. Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. All composite wood, engineered wood, or agrifiber products (e.g., plywood, particleboard, and medium-density fiberboard) shall contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins. Acceptable resins and binders include, but are not limited to, phenol formaldehyde and methyl diisocyanate (MDI). Certification of these products shall be in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals.

M. DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

1. Low-emission Products:

- a. All composite wood, engineered wood, or agrifiber products (e.g., plywood, particleboard, medium density fiberboard) in fixed audience seating shall contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins. Acceptable resins and binders include, but are not limited to, phenol formaldehyde and methyl diisocyanate (MDI). Certification of these products shall be in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.
- b. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., “VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials”. Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

N. DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING SYSTEMS

1. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., “VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials”. Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

O. DIVISION 15 – MECHANICAL

1. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., “VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials”. Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

P. DIVISION 16 – ELECTRICAL

1. Low-emission Products:

- a. Field-applied adhesives, sealants, and paints shall meet the requirements of Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., “VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials”. Only those products used on the interior of the building (inside of the weatherproofing system) are required to comply with these requirements. VOC content shall be documented in accordance with Item 1.9, LEED Submittals below.

1.9 LEED SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED submittals are required for all installed materials in specification Divisions 2 through 12 and adhesives, sealants, and paints through Divisions 16. The GREEN BUILDING Submittal information shall be assembled into one (1) package per Specification section or sub-contractor. Two (2) copies of the submittals are required. Incomplete or inaccurate LEED Submittals may be used as the basis for rejecting the submitted products or assemblies. Contractor and/or subcontractors shall submit the following LEED BUILDING reporting items:

- 1. A completed GREEN BUILDING MATERIALS REPORTING FORM (GBMRF) for each trade (sample to be provided by architect). Information to be supplied for this form shall include:
 - a. Cost breakdowns for the materials included in the contractor’s or subcontractor’s work. Cost breakdowns shall include total installed cost and itemized material costs.
 - b. The amount of post consumer and/or post industrial recycled content in the supplied products.*
 - c. Identification (Y/N) of materials manufactured within 500 miles of the project site.*
 - d. Identification (Y/N) of materials harvested or extracted within 500 miles of the project site.*
 - e. Identification (Y/N) of “FSC Certified” wood products used.*
 - f. VOC content of all field applied adhesives, sealants, and paints used in interior applications.

*If applicable – see Item 1.8 (LEED Performance Criteria for Materials) above to determine the applicable reporting based on the material type.

2. **MATERIALS REPORTING FORM BACK-UP DOCUMENTATION:** These documents are used to validate the information provided on the Green Building Materials Reporting Form (except cost data). For each material listed on the form, provide documentation to certify the material's LEED BUILDING attributes, as applicable:
 - a. **Recycled content:** Provide published product literature or letter of certification on the manufacturer's letterhead certifying the amounts of post-consumer and/or post-industrial content.
 - b. **Regional manufacturing (within 500 miles):** Provide published product literature or letter of certification on the manufacturer's letterhead indicating the city/state where the manufacturing plant is located and the distance in miles from the project site.
 - c. **Regional raw materials (within 500 miles):** Provide published product literature or letter of certification on the manufacturer's letterhead indicating the city/state from which each of the raw materials in the product were extracted, harvested or recovered, and the distance in miles from the project site.
 - 1) If only some of the raw materials for a particular product or assembly originate within 500 miles of the project site, provide the percentage (by weight) that these materials comprise in the complete product.
 - d. **FSC Certified Wood:**
 - 1) Provide vendor invoices for each wood product that has been harvested in accordance with the "FSC Principles and Criteria" for well-managed forests developed by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) of Bonn, Germany. Invoices shall include chain-of-custody certificate numbers and itemized costs for all certified products.
 - 2) For assemblies, provide the percentage (by cost and by weight) of the assembly that is FSC-certified wood.
 - e. **VOC content:** Provide Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) certifying the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) content of the adhesive, sealant, paint, or coating products. VOC content is to be reported in grams/liter or lbs/gallon. If the MSDS does not show the product's VOC content, this information must be provided through other published product literature from the manufacturer, or stated in a letter of certification from the product manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead.

3. **PRODUCT CUT SHEETS:** Provide product cut sheets with the Contractor's or sub-contractor's stamp, confirming that the submitted products are the products installed in the Project.
4. **CRI GREEN LABEL CERTIFICATION:** For carpets and carpet cushions, provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying that the products comply with the "Green Label Plus" IAQ testing program of the Carpet and Rug Institute of Dalton, GA.
5. **CARPET COMPONENT IDENTIFICATION:** For all synthetic carpets, provide documentation from the manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead of the specific carpet component identification code that is printed on, or attached to, the carpet supplied for the project. The code must identify the carpet face fiber, and may identify its primary backing, secondary backing, adhesive, adhesive filler, and dyes
6. **CERTIFICATION OF COMPOSITE WOOD OR AGRIFIBER RESINS:** For all composite wood, engineered wood and agrifiber products, provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying that that the products do not contain added urea-formaldehyde resins.
7. **CERTIFICATION OF COMPOSITE WOOD OR AGRIFIBER LAMINATING ADHESIVES:** For all composite wood, engineered wood and agrifiber products, provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead verifying that the products do not contain added urea-formaldehyde or phenol-formaldehyde resins.
8. **GREEN SEAL COMPLIANCE:** Provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer (on the manufacturer's letterhead) verifying that the following product types comply with the VOC limits and chemical component restrictions developed by the Green Seal organization of Washington, DC (www.greenseal.org/):
 - a. Topcoat paints: refer to Green Seal standard GS-11 (1st edition, May 1993)
 - b. Anti-corrosive and Anti-rust paints: refer to Green Seal standard GS-03 (2nd Edition, January 1997)
 - c. Aerosol Adhesives: refer to Green Seal standard GS-36 (1st edition, October 2000)
9. **ENERGY STAR ROOFING:** For exposed roofing materials, including membranes and pavers, provide certification from the manufacturer of ENERGY STAR compliance for the Solar Reflectance Index (SRI). (An SRI of at least 78 when tested in accordance with ASTM E-1980).

10. **HIGH ALBEDO ROOFING:** For exposed roofing membranes, pavers, and ballast products, provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead verifying the following minimum Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) values:
 - a. 78 for low-sloped roofing applications (slope \leq 2:12)
 - b. 29 for steep-sloped roofing applications (slope \geq 2:12)
 - c. SRI values shall be calculated according to ASTM E 1980. Reflectance shall be measured according to ASTM E 903, ASTM E 1918, or ASTM C 1549. Emittance shall be measured according to ASTM E 408 or ASTM C 1371.
 - d. Vegetated roof surfaces are exempt from the SRI criteria.
11. **HIGH ALBEDO PAVEMENT AND WALKWAYS:** For paving and walkway materials made from concrete or brick provide published product literature or letter from the manufacturer on the manufacturer's letterhead verifying a minimum Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) value of 29. SRI values shall be calculated according to ASTM E 1980. Reflectance shall be measured according to ASTM E 903, ASTM E 1918, or ASTM C 1549. Emittance shall be measured according to ASTM E 408 or ASTM C 1371.

B. CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS

Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit reports comparing actual construction and purchasing activities with LEED action plans for the following:

1. Waste Reduction Progress Reports complying with Division 01524 Section "Construction Waste Management".
2. Regional Materials. Provide updated spreadsheet to track Regional Materials.
3. Recycled Content Materials. Provide updated spreadsheet to track Recycled Content.
4. FSC Certified Wood Products. Provide updated spreadsheet to track FSC Certified Wood Materials.
5. Low Emitting VOC Content Materials. Provide updated spreadsheet to track Low Emitting VOC Content Materials.
6. Low Emitting Composite Wood. Provide updated spreadsheet to track low emitting (non-urea-formaldehyde) composite and engineered wood products.

C. LEED ACTION PLANS

The following plans are to be prepared by the Contractor and refer to work reviewed in Items 1.5, LEED Overview and General Requirements of this section.

1. Erosion and Sedimentation Control Plan (ESC): Indicate what ESC for site work measures are anticipated and how they will be documented.

2. Construction Waste Management (CWM):
 - a. General: Develop a plan consisting of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and progress reporting per the requirements of Section 01524, Construction Waste Management. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
3. Construction Indoor Air Quality Management (IAQ): A copy of the draft and final versions of the Construction IAQ Management Plan, as defined below.
 - a. General: Develop a plan in accordance with Section 01525, Construction IAQ Management where construction activities are planned to meet or exceed standards included in Chapter 3 of the SMACNA "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction", First Edition, 1995.
 - b. Upon the Plan's approval by the Owner and Consultant, the Contractor and subcontractors shall implement the Plan through the duration of the construction process.
 - 1) Develop a construction schedule outlining the start-up date and expected duration of all Construction IAQ Management Plan control measures.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor's Quality Control Responsibilities: Contractor is solely responsible for the quality control of the work.
- B. Contractor's LEED Representative: Designate a Representative that is LEED accredited by the USGBC. Contractor's LEED Representative shall oversee the sustainable building for the project, shall instruct workers concerning these goals, and shall be present on site when work is in progress.
- C. LEED Certification Meetings: Schedule and conduct LEED Certification meetings monthly in addition to those outlined in Division 1 "Project Management and Coordination". Meeting attendees shall include at least the following: Owner's Representative, Architect, Contractor's Project Manager, Contractor's LEED Representative, and Sub-Contractor Representatives as appropriate to the stage of work. Discuss LEED Certification at Pre-bid, Pre-construction, and regular job site meetings.
- D. LEED Training: Provide environmental training for workers performing work on the project site. Training shall include the following:
 1. Overview of environmental issues related to the building industry
 2. LEED Building System – Requirements for this project

1.11 PRODUCTS

- A. Materials with Recycled Content
 - 1. Provide recycled content and/or report recycled content as indicated in Items 1.8, LEED Performance Criteria for Materials and 1.9, LEED Submittals.
- B. Regional Materials
 - 1. Report regional content as indicated in Items 1.8, LEED Performance Criteria for Materials and 1.9, LEED Submittals.
- C. Forest Stewardship Council Certified Materials
 - 1. Track and report (by cost) of permanently all installed wood-based materials that are produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
 - a. Wood-based materials included, but are not limited to, the following materials when made from wood, engineered wood products, or wood based panels products:
 - 1) Rough carpentry
 - 2) Miscellaneous carpentry
 - 3) Heavy timber construction
 - 4) Wood decking
 - 5) Metal-plate-connected wood trusses
 - 6) Structural glued-laminated timber
 - 7) Finish carpentry
 - 8) Architectural woodwork
 - 9) Wood paneling
 - 10) Wood veneer wall covering
 - 11) Wood flooring
 - 12) Wood lockers
 - 13) Wood cabinets
- D. VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials
 - 1. Field-Applied Adhesives and Sealants:
 - a. The VOC content of adhesives, adhesive bonding primers, or adhesive primers used in this project shall not exceed the limits defined in Rule 1168 "Adhesives and Sealant Applications" of the South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD) of the State of California.
 - b. The VOC content of aerosol adhesives shall not exceed the limits defined in the Green Seal Standards for Commercial Adhesives GS-36, requirements in effect October 19, 2000.
 - c. Sealants used as filler must meet or exceed California Bay Area Air Resources Board Reg. 8, Rule 51, Organic Compounds: Adhesive and Sealant Products (Adopted November 18, 1992, with Amendments through January 7, 1998).
 - d. The VOC limits defined by SCAQMD (based on 1/7/05 amendments) are as follows. All VOC limits are defined in grams per liter, less water and less exempt compounds.

e. General: Unless otherwise specified below, the VOC content of all adhesives, adhesive bonding primers, or adhesive primers shall not be in excess of 250 grams per liter.

f. Non-General: For specified applications, the allowable VOC content is as follows (in grams/liter):

- 1) Architectural Applications

a)	Indoor carpet adhesive	50
b)	Carpet pad adhesive	50
c)	Outdoor carpet adhesive	150
d)	Wood flooring adhesive	100
e)	Rubber floor adhesive	60
f)	Sub-floor adhesive	50
g)	Ceramic tile adhesive	65
h)	VCT and asphalt tile adhesive	50
i)	Drywall and panel adhesive	50
j)	Cove base adhesive	50
k)	Multipurpose construction adhesive	70
l)	Structural glazing adhesive	100
m)	Single ply roof membrane adhesives	450
- 2) Specialty Applications:

a)	PVC welding	510
b)	CPVC welding	490
c)	ABS welding	325
d)	Plastic cement welding	250
e)	Adhesive primer for plastic	550
f)	Contact adhesive	80
g)	Special purpose contact adhesive	250
h)	Structural wood member adhesive	140
i)	Sheet applied rubber lining operations	850
- 3) Substrate Specific Applications:

a)	Metal to metal	30
b)	Plastic foams	50
c)	Porous material (except wood)	50
d)	Wood	30
e)	Fiberglass	80

2. If an adhesive is used to bond dissimilar substrates together, the adhesive with the highest VOC content shall be allowed.

3. VOC limits for aerosol adhesives (defined as % of VOC weight in grams per liter less water):

- | | | |
|----|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| a. | General purpose mist spray | 65% VOC by weight |
| b. | General purpose web spray | 55% VOC by weight |
| c. | Special purpose aerosol adhesives | 70% VOC by weight |

4. The VOC content of sealants or sealant primers used in this project shall not exceed the limits defined in Rule 1168 "Adhesives and Sealant Applications" of the South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD) of the State of California.
5. The VOC limits defined by SCAQMD Rule 1168 are as follows. All VOC limits are defined in grams per liter, less water and less exempt compounds.
 - a. Sealants

1)	Architectural	250
2)	Marine deck	760
3)	Roadways	250
4)	Single ply roof material installation/repair	450
5)	Non-membrane roof installation/repair	300
6)	Other	420
 - b. Sealant Primer

1)	Architectural - nonporous	250
2)	Architectural – porous	775
3)	Other	750
6. Paints and Coatings:
 - a. Paints and primers (non-specialized applications): Paints and primers used in non-specialized interior and exterior applications (i.e. For wallboard, plaster, wood, metal doors and frames, etc.) shall meet the VOC and chemical component limitations of the Green Seal Paint Standard GS-11, and anti-corrosive paints (IE used in preventing the corrosion of ferrous metal substrates) shall meet the VOC and chemical component limitations of Green Seal Standard GC-03 of Green Seal, Inc., Washington, DC. Product-specific environmental requirements are as follows:
 - 1) VOC concentrations (in grams per liter) of the product shall not exceed those listed below as determined by U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) Reference Test Method 24. The calculation of VOC shall exclude water and tinting color added at the point of sale.
 - a) Interior coatings
 - i. Non-flat 150
 - ii. Flat 50
 - b) Interior anti-corrosive paints
 - i. Gloss 250
 - ii. Semi-gloss 250
 - iii. Flat 250
 - c) Exterior coatings
 - i. Non-flat 200
 - ii. Flat 100

- b. Chemical Component Limitations – Aromatic Compounds: The product must contain no more than 1.0% by weight of the sum total of aromatic compounds. Testing for the concentration of these compounds will be performed if they are determined to be present in the product during a material audit.
- c. Chemical Component Limitations – Other Chemicals: The manufacturer shall demonstrate that the following chemical compounds are not used as ingredients in the manufacture of the product.
 - 1) Halomethanes: methylene chloride
 - 2) Chlorinated ethanes: 1,1,1-trichloroethane
 - 3) Aromatic solvents: benzene, toluene (methylbenzene), ethylbenzene
 - 4) Chlorinated ethylenes: vinyl chloride
 - 5) Polynuclear aromatics: naphthalene
 - 6) Chlorobenzenes: 1,2-dichlorobenzene
 - 7) Phthalate esters: di (20ethylhexyl) phthalate, butyl benzyl phthalate, di-n-butyl phthalate, di-n-octyl phthalate, diethyl phthalate, dimethyl phthalate
 - 8) Miscellaneous semi-volatile organics: isophorone
 - 9) Metals and their compounds: antimony, cadmium, hexavalent chromium, lead, mercury
 - 10) Preservatives (antifouling agents): formaldehyde
 - 11) Ketones: methyl ethyl ketone, methyl isobutyl ketone
 - 12) Miscellaneous volatile organics: acrolein, acrylonitrile
- d. Paints and other Architectural Coatings (specializes applications): Paints and other architectural coatings used in specialized interior and exterior applications (as defined below) shall meet the VOC limitations defined in Rule 1113, "Architectural Coatings" of SCAQMD, of the State of California. The VOC limits defined by SCQMD, based on 7/9/04 amendments, are as follows. VOC limits are defined in grams per liter (g/L), less water and less exempt compounds.
 - 1) Clear wood finishes:
 - a) Varnish 350
 - b) Lacquer 550
 - 2) Sealers
 - a) Sanding 275
 - b) Waterproofing 250
 - 3) Floor Coatings 100
 - 4) Stains 250
- e. Low-Emitting Carpet Systems
 - 1) Document that the installed carpets products and carpet backing are CRI Green Plus Certified.
 - 2) Document that all carpet adhesives contain fewer than 50 grams per liter VOC content.

- f. Non-Urea-Formaldehyde Resins in Engineered Woods
 - 1) Document that the bonding resins in all engineered wood products do not contain added urea-formaldehyde or phenol-formaldehyde resins.
 - 2) Document that the adhesives used for field and shop applied laminations (veneers, plastics, metals) do not contain added urea-formaldehyde resins.

1.12 EXECUTION

- A. EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL (ESC)
 - 1. Comply with requirements for Construction Activity Pollution Prevention as outlined in the Sedimentation and Erosion Control Plan.
- B. CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT (CWM)
 - 1. Comply with Section 01524, Construction Waste Management.
 - 2. Maintain spreadsheet tracking waste material description, hauler or recycling location and tabulation of material diverted or recycled based on weight or volume.
- C. RECYCLED CONTENT
 - 1. Maintain a spreadsheet to track Recycled content of materials specified in Divisions 02-10. Include material description, material costs (without labor and equipment), post consumer recycled content, pre consumer recycled content and recycled content information source. Recycled content is based on the cost of qualifying materials as a percent of overall materials costs for Divisions 02 –10.
- D. REGIONAL MATERIALS
 - 1. Maintain a spreadsheet to track Regional Materials specified in Divisions 02-10. Include the product name, manufacturer, material cost (without labor and equipment), direct line distance from project to extraction/harvest location, direct line distance from project to manufacturer's location and source of information regarding harvest/extraction and manufacturing locations.
- E. (FSC) MATERIALS
 - 1. Maintain a spreadsheet listing all new wood on the project. Identify which components are FSC certified, the source of the materials, the value of all FSC certified wood materials (as a % of total product value), and the COC number. Recycled wood fiber that qualifies as contributing to recycled content shall be excluded.

F. LOW EMITTING VOC CONTENT MATERIALS

1. Maintain a spreadsheet of all adhesives, sealants, and sealant primers, paints and coatings used on the project. Include product manufacturer, product name/model, VOC content, allowable VOC content as per Item 1.11, Products, Sub-Item D., VOC Limits for Low-Emitting Materials, the source of the VOC data, an estimated quantity of the product used on the project and an estimated cost for each product.

G. LOW EMITTING CARPET

1. Maintain a spreadsheet of all installed carpets and carpet backings. Include manufacturer, recycled content, manufacturing location, and confirmation that the product meets the requirements of the CRI 'Green Label Plus' program. Maintain a listing of all carpet adhesives including the manufacturer, product name and VOC content as reported by the manufacturer.
2. For all synthetic carpets maintain a spreadsheet including the manufacturer, the product name, the specific carpet component identification code that is printed on, or attached to, the carpet supplied for the project.

H. LOW EMITTING COMPOSITE WOOD

1. Maintain a spreadsheet of all install composite wood, engineered wood and agrifiber, including manufacturer, product name and confirmation that the product does not contain any added urea formaldehyde resins. Maintain a listing of the glues used for bonding veneers and laminates to substrates with confirmation that they do not contain any added urea-formaldehyde resins.

I. CONSTRUCTION INDOOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT

1. Comply with the requirements for indoor air quality during construction activity as outlined in the Construction IAQ Management Plan, Section 01525.

END OF SECTION 01361

GREEN BUILDING MATERIALS REPORTING FORM							PROJECT NAME:			
CONTRACTOR:				TEL. NO:			SPEC SECTION:			
CONTACT NAME:				SUBMITTAL NO:						
Product	Vendor or Manufacturer	REQUIRED for ALL products identified in specifications (except MEPS)		Is the product salvaged, refurbished or reused? ¹ (Y/N)	If contains Recycled Content		100% Extracted & Manufactured ⁴ w/n 500 mile radius of site (Y/N)	Partially Extracted & Manufactured ⁵ w/n 500 mile radius of site (Enter % by weight)	For Wood Products: FSC Certified (Y/N) ⁷	VOC Content ⁸ (for adhesives, sealants, paints and coatings)
		Total COST	Installed		Material COST (excluding labor & equipment)	% post consumer ²				
1.										
2.										
3.										
4.										
5.										
6.										
7.										

- Salvaged: Material or product which has been recovered from existing buildings or construction sites and reused in other buildings (e.g., structural beams, doors, brick).
- Post-Consumer Recycled Content: Portion of material or product which derives from discarded consumer waste that has been recovered for use as a raw material (e.g., plastic bottles, newspaper)
- Pre-Consumer Recycled Content: Portion of material or product which derives from recovered industrial and mfg. materials that are diverted from municipal solid waste for use in a different mfg. process, prior to use by a consumer (e.g., fly-ash in concrete or synthetic gypsum board, both of which are by-products of coal-burning power plants). Note that spills and scraps from the original mfg. process that are combined with other constituents after a minimal amount of reprocessing for use in further production of the same product do not qualify.
- Regional Extraction/Manufacture: Extracted: Extraction, harvesting or recovery of materials that are used for manufacturing of products to be installed in the building. Manufactured: Final assembly of components into a finished product that is furnished and installed by trades (e.g., If the lumber is from Missoula, MT, and the joist (the finished product in this case) is assembled in Kent, WA; then the location of final assembly is Kent, WA). Since Missoula, MT is within a 500 mile radius of Kent, WA the answer for this example would be 'Yes'
- Partial Extraction/Manufacture: If only a fraction of the material is extracted/harvested/recovered and manufactured within a 500 mile radius then (only) that percentage (by weight) contributes to the regional value.
- Rapidly Renewable: Materials and products made from raw materials that are harvested within a 10-year cycle (e.g., bamboo, cork, linoleum, fast-growing poplar, wheatboard, wool carpet)
- FSC Certified: Wood-based products which are certified by the Forest Stewardship Council and carry a Chain-of-Custody certificate number from the vendor or manufacturer.
- VOC Content: The quantity of volatile organic compounds contained in products such as adhesives, sealants and architectural coatings. VOC content is to be reported in grams/liter or lbs/gallon

Contractor Certification:

I, _____ a duly authorized representative of _____ hereby certify that the material information contained herein is an accurate representation of the material qualifications to be provided by us, as components of the final building construction. Furthermore, I understand that any change in such qualifications during the purchasing period will require prior written approval from the Construction Manager and Owner.

SIGNATURE OF AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE: _____ Date: _____ p. ____ of ____

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01400 - QUALITY CONTROL -
TESTING SERVICES**

1. GENERAL

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this Section.
- B. This section specifies the general requirements for testing and inspection services.
- C. Cooperate with Owner's testing laboratory and all others responsible for testing and inspecting the Work.
- D. Provide other testing and inspecting as specified to be furnished by the Contractor in this Section and/or elsewhere in these Specifications.
- E. Provide quality control by the observation and acceptance of work by others being built upon.
- F. Related work described elsewhere:
 - 1. Requirements for testing are described in Divisions 2, 3, 4 and 5 product sections of these Specifications.
 - 2. Where no testing requirements are described, but the Construction Manager decides that testing is required, he may direct that such testing be performed under current standards for testing and Section 7.7 of the General Conditions.
- G. Selection of testing laboratory: The Owner shall hire and pay for an independent testing laboratory.

2. CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. Testing, when required, will be in accordance with pertinent codes and regulations and with selected standards of the American Society for Testing and Materials.

3. REVIEW OF THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. On all Project Drawings, figures take precedence over measurement by scale, and any scaling is done at the Contractor's own risk. Before ordering any materials or performing any Work, the Contractor shall verify all measurements at the project site and be responsible for the correctness of same.
- B. Promptly respond to test reports and related instructions to ensure necessary retesting and replacement of materials with the least possible delay in progress of the Work.

4. FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. The Contractor shall take field measurements and verify field conditions and shall carefully compare such field measurements and conditions with the Contract

QUALITY CONTROL - TESTING SERVICES

Bid Package 1

01400 - 1

Documents and any shop drawings and product data before commencing any related work. Errors, inconsistencies or omissions shall be reported to the Construction Manager and the Architect at once.

5. PAYMENT FOR TESTING

- A. Initial Services: The Owner's Testing Laboratory shall be responsible for initial testing services as outlined in various sections and Section 7.7 of the General Conditions.
- B. Re-Testing Services: When initial tests indicate non-compliance with the Contract Documents, all subsequent retesting occasioned by the non-compliance shall be performed by the same testing agency and the costs thereof will be borne by the Contractor responsible for the work that is non-compliant.

6. TESTING

- A. Code Compliance Testing: Inspections and tests required by codes or ordinances, or by a plan approval authority, and which are made by a legally constituted authority, shall be the responsibility of and shall be paid for by the Contractor, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents.
- B. Contractor's Convenience Testing: Inspecting and testing performed exclusively for the Contractor's convenience shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor.

7. INSPECTION

- A. Inspection by Owner's Personnel: From time to time, personnel in the employ of the Owner may inspect the Work where the Work is in progress, but shall have no authority to direct the Contractor or request changes in the Work except through the Construction Manager and the Architect.
- B. Inspection of Work by Others: Each Contractor shall inspect Work of others which will receive or is adjacent to his Work before commencing his Work. Do not proceed until conditions which would result in a less than first class installation are satisfactorily corrected. Commencing Work shall be construed as acceptance of the Work of others, by the Contractor, as satisfactory to receive his Work. The Contractor shall bear all costs to correct the unsatisfactory Work.

8. COOPERATION WITH TESTING LABORATORY

- A. Representatives of the testing laboratory shall have access to the Work at all times. Provide facilities for such access in order that the laboratory may properly perform its function.
- B. Specimens and samples for testing, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, will be taken by the testing personnel. Sampling equipment and personnel will be provided by the testing laboratory. Deliveries of specimens and samples to the testing laboratory will be performed by the testing laboratory.
- C. Test results and reports shall be furnished simultaneously to the Engineer (2 copies) and the Construction Manager (1 copy) within one week of testing.

9. TESTING SCHEDULE

- A. The Owner shall pre-qualify and identify qualified independent inspection agencies in a timely manner, allowing Engineer adequate time for review and approval.
- B. Special Structural Testing Schedule to be implemented per specifications.
- C. When changes of construction schedule are necessary during construction, the Construction Manager shall coordinate such changes of schedule with the testing laboratory as required.
- D. When the testing laboratory is ready to test according to the established schedule, but is prevented from testing or taking specimens due to incompleteness of the Work, all extra charges for testing attributable to the delay may be backcharged to the Contractor and shall not be borne by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 01400

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01421 – STANDARDS
AND DEFINITIONS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Indicated": The term "indicated" refers to graphic representations, notes, or schedules on the Drawings; or to other paragraphs or schedules in the Specifications and similar requirements in the Contract Documents. Terms such as "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" are used to help the user locate the reference. No limitation on location is intended.
- C. "Directed": Terms such as "directed," "requested," "authorized," "selected," "approved," "required," and "permitted" mean directed by the Architect, requested by the Architect, and similar phrases. However, no such implied meaning will be interpreted to extend the Architect's responsibility into Contractor's area of construction supervision.
- D. "Approved": The term "approved," when used in conjunction with the Architect's action on the Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, is limited to the Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- E. "Regulations": The term "regulations" includes laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, as well as rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": The term "furnish" means to supply and deliver to the Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": The term "install" describes operations at the Project site including the actual unloading, temporary storage, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.
- H. "Provide": The term "provide" means to furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Installer": An installer is the Contractor or another entity engaged by the Contractor, either as an employee, subcontractor, or contractor of lower tier, to perform a particular construction activity, including installation, erection, application, or similar operations. Installers are required to be experienced in the operations they are engaged to perform.

1. Trades: Using a term such as "carpentry" does not imply that certain construction activities must be performed by accredited or unionized individuals of a corresponding generic name, such as "carpenter." It also does not imply that requirements specified apply exclusively to tradespersons of the corresponding generic name.
- J. "Project Site" is the space available to the Contractor for performing construction activities, either exclusively or in conjunction with others performing other work as part of the Project. The extent of the Project site is shown on the Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which the Project is to be built.
- K. "Testing Agencies, Laboratories or Service": All terms interchangeably refer to an independent entity engaged to perform specific inspections or tests, either at the Project site or elsewhere, and to report on and, if required, to interpret results of those inspections or tests.
- L. "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories": The term "nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL)" shall mean a firm or organization which is recognized by OSHA in accordance with 29 CFR Part 1910.7 to test and approve (i.e., certify, label or list) equipment or materials as being safe for the intended use. Labeling and / or listing of products by NRTL is acceptable wherever a reference to the UL or FMRC label is made in the specifications.
- M. "Label": The label must be provided by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. The Contractor shall provide a statement from the testing laboratory attesting that the laboratory has been approved by OSHA to certify the category of product(s) being submitted for approval.

1.3 SPECIFICATION FORMAT AND CONTENT EXPLANATION

- A. Specification Content: These Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 1. Abbreviated Language: Language used in the Specifications and other Contract Documents is abbreviated. Words and meanings shall be interpreted as appropriate. Words implied, but not stated, shall be interpolated as the sense requires. Singular words shall be interpreted as plural and plural words interpreted as singular where applicable as the context of the Contract Documents indicates.
 2. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. Requirements expressed in the imperative mood are to be performed by the Contractor. At certain locations in the Text, subjective language is used for clarity to describe responsibilities that must be fulfilled indirectly by the Contractor or by others when so noted.
 - a. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.

1.4 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
 - 1. Reference standards (standards referenced directly in the contract documents) take precedence over standards that are not referenced but generally recognized in the industry for applicability to the work.
 - 2. Unreferenced Standards: Except as otherwise limited by the contract documents, standards not referenced but recognized in the construction industry as having direct applicability will be enforced for performance of the work. The decision as to whether an industry code or standard is applicable, or as to which of several standards are applicable, is the sole responsibility of the Architect.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with the standards in effect as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Updated Standards: Submit a change order proposal where an applicable industry code or standard has been revised and reissued after the date of the Contract Documents and before the performance of the work affected. The Architect will decide whether to issue a change order to proceed with the updated standard.
- C. Conflicting Requirements: Where compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer uncertainties and requirements that are different but apparently equal to the Architect for a decision before proceeding.
 - 1. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of the requirements. Refer uncertainties to the Architect for a decision before proceeding.
 - 2. The Architect is the sole interpreter of what constitutes "minimum requirements" in any given situation. Exceeding minimum requirements in one or more aspects of any given specification does not cancel or replace the need to meet minimum requirements of any other aspect of that specification.
- D. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on the Project must be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, the Contractor shall obtain copies directly from the publication source and make them available on request.
- E. Abbreviations and Names: Trade association names and titles of general standards are frequently abbreviated. Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in the Specifications or other Contract Documents, they mean the recognized name of the trade association, standards-generating organization, authorities having jurisdiction, or other entity applicable to the context of the text provision. Refer to Gale

Research's "Encyclopedia of Associations" or Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the U.S.," which are available in most libraries.

1.5 GOVERNING REGULATIONS AND AUTHORITIES

- A. The Architect has contacted authorities having jurisdiction where necessary to obtain information necessary for preparation of Contract Documents. Contact authorities having jurisdiction directly for information and decision having a bearing on the work.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For the Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01421

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01450 – STRUCTURAL TESTS
AND SPECIAL INSPECTIONS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 INTENT AND CONDITIONS

- A. Intent:
 - 1. For compliance with the Minnesota State Building Code, the Owner shall employ and pay for a special inspector (or inspectors) as required by Chapter 17 of the International Building Code.
 - 2. Duties and responsibilities of the special inspector(s) shall be as outlined in Chapter 17 of the International Building Code and as herein specified.
 - 3. Define and coordinate structural tests and special inspection services.
 - 4. Define and coordinate conventional testing and inspection services.
 - 5. Testing and Inspection services are intended to assist in determining probable compliance of the work with requirements specified. These services do not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Conditions:
 - 1. If inspection of fabricator's work is required, the Owner's representative may require testing and inspection of the work at the plant, before shipment. Owner, Architect and Structural Engineer of Record (SER) reserve the right to reject material not complying with Contract Documents.
 - 2. Perform testing and inspection in accordance with industry standard used as reference for specific material or procedure unless other criteria are specified. In the absence of a referenced standard, accomplish tests in accordance with generally accepted industry standards.
 - 3. Failure to detect defective work or materials shall in no way prevent later rejection if defective work or materials are discovered.

1.3 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Refer to individual technical specification sections for additional qualifications, inspections, tests, frequency and standards required.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Testing: Evaluation of systems, primarily requiring physical manipulation and analysis of materials, in accordance with approved standards.
- B. Inspection: Evaluation of systems, primarily requiring observation and judgment.
- C. Structural Tests and Special Inspections: Structural Tests and Special Inspection Services herein include items required by Chapter 17 of the International Building Code

as adopted by the current Minnesota State Building Code, and other items which in the professional judgment of the Structural Engineer of Record, are critical to the integrity of the building structure.

- D. Conventional Testing and Inspections: Conventional Testing and Inspection Services herein describe those items not specially required by Code but may be considered essential to the proper performance of the building systems.
- E. Architect of Record: The prime consultant in charge of overall design and coordination of the Project.
- F. Structural Engineer of Record (SER): The Licensed Engineer in responsible charge of the structural design for the Project.
- G. Licensed Structural Engineer: A professional engineer with education and experience in the design of structures similar to this Project and licensed in Minnesota.
- H. Testing Agency (TA):
 - a. Testing Agency: Approved independent testing agency acceptable to the Owner, Architect, SER and as noted below:
 - b. Authorized to operate in the State of Minnesota and experienced with the requirements and testing methods specified in the Contract Documents.
 - c. Meeting applicable requirements of references stated in paragraph 1.4.
 - d. Calibrate testing equipment at reasonable intervals by devices of accuracy traceable to either the National Bureau of Standards, or to accepted values of natural physical constants.
- I. Special Inspector (SI): A properly qualified individual or firm performing special inspections.
- J. The categories of special inspector are:
 - 1. Special Inspector - Technical I, II and III: Usually an employee of a testing agency:
 - a. Technical I (Division 02) - Technician shall be under the direct supervision of a licensed civil/geotechnical engineer regularly engaged in this type of work. Work shall be performed in a qualified geotechnical/testing laboratory.
 - b. Technical I (Division 03)
 - 1) ACI Certified Concrete Field Testing Technician – Grade I.
 - 2) ACI Certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician.
 - 3) ACI Certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician – Grade 1.
 - 4) ACI Certified Concrete Construction Inspector-In-Training.
 - 5) Inspector shall be employed by a testing laboratory, experienced in the type of work being performed, and under the direct supervision of a licensed civil/structural engineer.
 - c. Technical I (Division 04) - Technician shall be under the direct supervision of a licensed civil/structural engineer regularly engaged in testing and inspection of this type of work. The licensed engineer shall review and approve all inspection reports.
 - d. Technical I (Division 05) - Non-destructive Testing Technician SNT-TC-1A Level I, and/or AWS Certified Associate Weld Inspector (CAWI).
 - e. Technical I (Division 07) - Shall be familiar with the interpretation and use of ASTM E 605, and have prior field experience in testing and inspection of

- spray-applied fireproofing. Shall be supervised by an engineer licensed to practice in the state of Minnesota.
- f. Technical II (Division 02) - Technician with a minimum of 2 years' experience, or a graduate engineer, and is an employee of a qualified and approved geotechnical/technical laboratory, under the direct supervision of a licensed civil/geotechnical engineer regularly engaged in this type of work.
 - g. Technical II (Division 03)
 - 1) ACI Certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.
 - 2) ACI Certified Laboratory Aggregate Testing Technician.
 - 3) ACI Certified Concrete Construction Inspector.
 - 4) Inspector shall be employed by a testing laboratory, experienced in the type of work being performed, and under the direct supervision of a licensed civil/structural engineer.
 - h. Technical II (Division 04) - Graduate civil/structural engineer, with experience in this type of work. Supervised by a licensed civil/structural engineer. The licensed engineer shall review and approve all inspection reports.
 - i. Technical II (Division 05) - Non-destructive Testing Technician ASNT TC-1A Level II, (NDE Technician II), AWS/CAWI, with minimum 3 years' experience, or an AWS/CWI.
 - j. Technical III (Division 02) - A civil/geotechnical engineer regularly engaged in this type of work with a minimum of 4 years' experience, licensed in the state of Minnesota, and is an employee of a qualified and approved geotechnical/testing laboratory. This licensed engineer shall review and approve all final field reports.
 - k. Technical III (Division 03) - A civil/structural engineer regularly engaged in this type of work, with a minimum of 4 years' experience and licensed in the state of Minnesota and is an employee of a qualified and approved testing laboratory. The licensed engineer shall review and approve all reports.
 - l. Technical III (Division 05) - ASNT Level III with a minimum of 10 years' experience or an AWS/CWI with a minimum of 10 years' experience.
2. Special Inspector - Structural I and II: Usually an employee of the Structural Engineer of Record.
- a. Structural I (Division 03) - Graduate civil/structural engineer, or other personnel acceptable to the SER, with experience in the design of structural systems of this type. Inspections shall be performed under the direct supervision of a licensed civil/structural engineer.
 - b. Structural II (Division 03) - Civil/structural engineer regularly engaged in the design of structural systems of this type, licensed in the state of Minnesota. The licensed engineer shall review and approve all inspection reports.
- K. Building Official: The Officer or duly authorized representative charged with the administration and enforcement of the State Building Code.

1.5 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM E329 – Standard Specification for Agencies Engaged in the Testing and/or Inspection of Materials Used in Construction.
- B. ASTM E543 – Standard Practice for Agencies Performing Non-destructive Testing.

- C. ASTM C1077 – Standard Practice for Laboratories Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Laboratory Evaluation.
- D. ASTM C1093 – Standard Practice for the Accreditation of Testing Agencies for Unit Masonry.
- E. ANSI/ASTM D3740 - Standard Practice for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Engaged in the Testing and/or Inspection of Soil and Rock as Used in Engineering Design and Construction.
- F. Minnesota State Building Code.
- G. International Building Code.
- H. See technical specification sections for specific references.

1.6 RESPONSIBILITIES/AUTHORITY

- A. Structural Tests and Special Inspections:
 - 1. Special Inspector:
 - a. Attend all pre-installation meetings to review scope of structural tests and special inspections.
 - b. Test and/or inspect the work assigned for conformance with the building department approved plans, specifications, and applicable material and workmanship provisions of the code. Perform testing and inspection in a timely manner to avoid delay of work.
 - c. Bring nonconforming items to the immediate attention of the Contractor for correction, then, if uncorrected after a reasonable period of time, to the attention of the Structural Engineer of Record, the Building Official, and to the Architect.
 - d. Submit test and/or inspection reports to the Building Official, Contractor, the Structural Engineer of Record, and other designated persons in accordance with the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule.
 - e. Submit a final signed report stating whether the work requiring special inspection was, to the best of the inspector's knowledge, in conformance with the approved plans, specifications and the applicable workmanship provisions of the code.
 - f. Sign the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule in conjunction with other responsible parties prior to commencing construction.
 - 2. Architect:
 - a. Coordinate the flow of reports and related information to expedite resolution of construction issues.
 - b. Attend pertinent pre-installation meetings to review scope of structural testing and special inspection.
 - c. Complete and sign the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule in conjunction with other responsible parties prior to commencing construction. Provide a completed copy of the schedule to all signed parties including Building Official.
 - 3. Structural Engineer of Record:
 - a. Identify items requiring structural testing and special inspection including special cases.
 - b. Define "type" of special inspector required for "description" of work indicated on the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule.

- c. Attend pertinent pre-installation meetings to review scope of structural testing and special inspection.
 - d. Complete and sign the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule in conjunction with other responsible parties prior to commencing construction.
 - e. Review reports issued by all special inspectors.
 - f. If engaged as a special inspector, provide structural testing and special inspection services as noted in Article 1.6.A.1.
4. Testing Agency:
- a. When engaged as a special inspector, provide structural testing and special inspection services as noted in Item 1.6.A.1.
 - b. Sign the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule in conjunction with other responsible parties prior to commencing construction.
 - c. Attend pertinent pre-installation meetings to review scope of structural testing and special inspection.
5. Contractor:
- a. Arrange and attend all pre-installation meetings to review scope of structural testing and special inspection. Include the Building Official, Owner, Architect, SER, Testing Agency and other parties concerned.
 - b. Post or make available the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule within project site office. Provide timely notification to those parties designated on the schedule so they may properly prepare for and schedule their work.
 - c. Provide special inspector access to the approved plans and specifications at the project site.
 - d. Review all reports issued by special inspectors.
 - e. Retain at the project site all reports submitted by the special inspectors for review by the building official upon request.
 - f. Correct in a timely manner, deficiencies identified in inspection and/or testing reports.
 - g. Provide safe access to the work requiring inspection and/or testing.
 - h. Provide labor and facilities to provide access to the work and to obtain, handle and deliver samples, to facilitate testing and inspection and for storage and curing of test samples.
 - i. Sign the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule in conjunction with other responsible parties prior to commencing construction.
 - j. Verification of conformance of work within specified tolerances is solely the responsibility of the Contractor.
6. Fabricator:
- a. Submit a Certificate of Compliance to the Building Official, Special Inspector, and Structural Engineer of Record stating the work was performed in accordance with the Contract Documents.
 - b. Sign the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule in conjunction with other responsible parties prior to commencing construction.
7. Building Official:
- a. Review all special inspector qualifications.
 - b. Review all fabricators who perform work in their shop, which requires special inspection.
 - c. Accept and sign completed Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule.
 - d. Review reports and recommendations submitted by special inspector.
 - e. Review the "final signed reports" submitted by special inspector. These documents must be accepted and approved by the building department prior to issuance of a Certificate of Occupancy.

- f. Determine work, which, in the Building Officials opinion, involves unusual hazards or conditions.
- 8. Owner:
 - a. Provide and pay cost of structural testing and special inspection services.
 - b. Provide special inspector with Contract Documents and accepted shop drawings.
 - c. Provide special inspectors and testing agencies with full access to the site at all times.
 - d. Sign the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule in conjunction with other responsible parties prior to commencing construction.
- B. Inspections by Building Official: provide timely notice for inspections performed by the building official, as required by IBC Chapter 17, the State Building Code, and local ordinance.

1.7 INSPECTION NOTICES

- A. Contractor: Provide minimum of 24 hours notice for all items requiring testing or inspection. Do not place items requiring testing and inspection services prior to or during placement until testing and inspection services are available. Do not enclose or obscure items requiring testing and inspection services after placement until testing and inspection services are performed.

1.8 REPORTS

- A. Testing agency and/or special inspectors shall submit a report in accordance with the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule and shall conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether; (1) test specimens and observations comply with Contract Documents, and specifically state any deviations, (2) record types and locations of defects found in work, (3) record work required and performed, to correct deficiencies.
- B. Submit reports for structural testing and special inspection, in timely manner to the Contractor, Building Official, SER, and Architect.
 - 1. Submit reports for ongoing work, to provide the information noted below:
 - a. Date issued.
 - b. Project title and number.
 - c. Firm name and address.
 - d. Name and signature of tester or inspector.
 - e. Date and time of sampling.
 - f. Date of test or inspection.
 - g. Identification of product and specification section.
 - h. Location in project, including elevations, grid location and detail.
 - i. Type of test or inspections.
 - j. Results of tests or inspections and interpretation of same.
 - k. Observations regarding compliance with Contract Documents or deviations there from.
 - 2. Submit final signed report stating that, to the best of the special inspector's knowledge, the work requiring testing and/or inspection conformed to the Contract Documents.

1.9 FREQUENCY OF TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. For detailed requirements see individual technical specification sections, and Part 3 of this section.

1.10 PROTECTION AND REPAIR

- A. Upon completion of testing, sample-taking, or inspection, repair damaged work and restore substrates and finishes to eliminate deficiencies, including deficiencies in the visual qualities of exposed surfaces, as judged solely by the Architect/Engineer of Record. Protect work exposed by or for testing and/or inspection and protect repaired work. Repair and protection is the Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for testing and/or inspection.

1.11 TESTS TO DEMONSTRATE QUALIFICATION

- A. If the Contractor proposes a product material, method, or other system that has not been pre-qualified, the Architect or SER may require applicable tests, to establish a basis for acceptance or rejection. These tests will be paid for by the Contractor.
- B. The Architect or SER reserves the right to require certification or other proof that the system proposed, is in compliance with any tests, criteria or standards called for. The certificate shall be signed by a representative of an independent testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

2.1

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCOPE OF STRUCTURAL TESTS AND SPECIAL INSPECTIONS

- A. Refer to individual specification section articles for Quality Control testing and inspection items.

3.2 STRUCTURAL TESTS AND SPECIAL INSPECTIONS PROGRAM SUMMARY

- A. The parties involved shall complete and sign the Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule. The completed schedule is an element of the Contract Documents and after permit issuance, becomes part of the building department approved plans and specifications. The completed schedule shall include the following:
 1. Specific listing of items requiring inspection and testing.
 2. Associated specification section which defines applicable standards by which to judge conformance with approved plans and specifications in accordance with IBC Chapter 17 as adopted by the State Building Code. The specification section should also include the degree or basis of inspection and testing; i.e., intermittent/will-call or full-time/continuous.
 3. Frequency of reporting, i.e., intermittent, weekly, monthly, per floor, etc.
 4. Parties responsible for performing inspection and testing work.
 5. Required acknowledgments by each designated party.
- B. See attached "Structural Testing and Special Inspection Schedule".

END OF SECTION 01450

Structural Tests and Special Inspections Schedule

Project Name: _____

Location: _____

Permit No.: _____ (1)

STRUCTURAL TESTS AND SPECIAL INSPECTIONS				
Specification Reference (2)	Description (3)	Type of Inspector (4)	Report Frequency (5)	Assigned Firm (6)
03100	Concrete Formwork	Tech II	Periodic	
03200	Concrete Reinforcement Footings, Foundation Walls, and Columns	Tech II	Periodic	
03300	Cast-In-Place Concrete Material Sampling & Testing	Tech I	Daily	
03300	Cast-In-Place Concrete Concrete Mix Verification	Tech I	Daily	
03300	Cast-In-Place Concrete Concrete Placement	Tech I	Daily	
03300	Cast-In-Place Concrete Protection & Curing	Tech II	Daily	
03300	Cast-In-Place Concrete Embedded Items	Tech II	Periodic	
04200	Unit Masonry Material Testing	Tech II	Periodic	
04200	Unit Masonry Preparation & Placement	Tech II	Periodic	
04200	Unit Masonry Reinforcement	Struc I	Periodic	
04200	Unit Masonry Grouting	Tech II	Daily	
05120	Structural Steel High Strength Bolting	Tech II	Periodic	
05120	Structural Steel Welding	Tech I / Tech II	Periodic	
05120	Structural Steel Headed Shear Studs	Tech I	Periodic	
05120	Structural Steel Mechanical Fasteners	Tech I	Periodic	
05 20	Structural Steel General Configuration	Struc I	Periodic	
05310	Steel Roof Deck Welding	Tech II	Periodic	
02220	Earthwork	Tech II	Daily	

Notes: This schedule to be filled out and included in the project specification. Information unavailable at that time shall be filled out when applying for a building permit.

Permit No. to be provided by the Building Official.

Reference to specific technical scope section in program.

Use descriptions per IBC Chapter 17, as adopted by State Building Code.

Special Inspector – Technical, Special Inspector – Structural.

Weekly, monthly, per test/inspection, per floor, etc.

Firm contracted to perform services.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Each appropriate representative shall sign below:

Owner:	Firm:	Date:
Contractor:	Firm:	Date:
Architect:	Firm:	Date:
SER:	Firm:	Date:
SI-S:	Firm:	Date:
TA:	Firm:	Date:
SI-T:	Firm:	Date:
TA:	Firm:	Date:
SI-T:	Firm:	Date:
F:	Firm:	Date:
F:	Firm:	Date:

* The individual names of all prospective special inspectors and the work they intend to observe shall be identified. (Use reverse side of form, if more room is needed.).

LEGEND:

SER = Structural Engineer of Record

SI-S = Special Inspector – Structural

TA = Testing Agency

SI-T = Special Inspector – Technical

F = Fabricator.

Accepted for the Building Department By _____

Date. _____

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01500 - CONSTRUCTION
FACILITIES AND TEMPORARY
CONTROLS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes requirements for temporary services and facilities, including temporary utilities, support facilities, security and protection.
- B. Temporary utilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Water service and distribution.
 - 2. Temporary electric power and light.
 - 3. Temporary heat.
 - 4. Ventilation.
 - 5. Telephone service.
 - 6. Sanitary facilities, including drinking water.
 - 7. Storm and sanitary sewer.
- C. Temporary construction and support facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Field offices and storage sheds.
 - 2. Temporary roads and paving.
 - 3. Dewatering facilities and drains.
 - 4. Temporary enclosures.
 - 5. Temporary project identification signs and bulletin boards.
 - 6. Waste disposal services.
 - 7. Rodent and pest control.
 - 8. Construction aids and miscellaneous services and facilities.
- D. Security and protection facilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Temporary fire protection.
 - 2. Barricades, warning signs, and lights.
 - 3. Sidewalk bridge or enclosure fence for the site.
 - 4. Environmental protection.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulations: Comply with industry standards and applicable laws and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Building Code requirements.
 - 2. Health and safety regulations.
 - 3. Utility company regulations.
 - 4. Police, Fire Department, and Rescue Squad rules.
 - 5. Environmental protection regulations.

- B. Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to inspect and test each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Conditions of Use: Keep temporary services and facilities clean and neat in appearance. Operate in a safe and efficient manner. Relocate temporary services and facilities as the work progresses. Do not overload facilities or permit them to interfere with progress. Take necessary fire-prevention measures. Do not allow hazardous, dangerous, or unsanitary conditions, or public nuisances to develop or persist on-site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Use qualified personnel for installation of temporary facilities. Locate facilities where they will serve the Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the work. Relocate and modify facilities as required.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Maintain and modify as required. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Engage the appropriate local utility company to install temporary service or connect to existing service. Where company provides only part of the service, provide the remainder with matching, compatible materials and equipment. Comply with company recommendations.
 1. Arrange with company and existing users for a time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
 2. Provide adequate capacity at each stage of construction. Prior to temporary utility availability, provide trucked-in services.
 3. Obtain easements to bring temporary utilities to the site where the Owner's easements cannot be used for that purpose.
 4. Use Charges: Cost or use charges for temporary facilities are not chargeable to the Owner or Architect. Neither the Owner nor Architect will accept cost or use charges as a basis of claims for Change Orders.
- B. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping of sizes and pressures adequate for construction until permanent water service is in use.
 1. Sterilization: Sterilize temporary water piping prior to use.
 2. When nonpotable water is used, mark each outlet with hazardous warning signs.
- C. Temporary Electric Power Service: For temporary power alignment and cost, contractor shall contact applicable local electrical utility.
 1. Provide weatherproof, grounded electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics during

- construction period. Include meters, transformers, overload-protected disconnects, automatic ground-fault interrupters, and main distribution switch gear.
2. Power Distribution System: Install wiring overhead and rise vertically where least exposed to damage. Where permitted, wiring circuits not exceeding 125 Volts, AC 20 Ampere rating, and lighting circuits may be nonmetallic sheathed cable where overhead and exposed for surveillance.
- D. Temporary Lighting: When overhead floor or roof deck has been installed, provide temporary lighting with local switching.
1. Install and operate temporary lighting that will fulfill security and protection requirements without operating the entire system. Provide temporary lighting that will provide adequate illumination for construction operations and traffic conditions.
- E. Temporary Heat: Provide temporary heat required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protection of installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select safe equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce the ambient condition required and minimize consumption of energy.
- F. Heating Facilities: Except where the Owner authorizes use of the permanent system, provide vented, self-contained, LP-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open flame, or salamander heating units is prohibited.
- G. Temporary Telephones: Provide temporary telephone service throughout the construction period for all personnel engaged in construction activities. Install telephone on a separate line for each temporary office and first-aid station.
1. Separate Telephone Lines: Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
 - a. Where an office has more than 2 occupants, install a telephone for each additional occupant or pair of occupants.
 - b. Provide a dedicated telephone line for a fax machine in the field office.
 - c. Provide a separate line for the Owner's use.
 2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
- H. Sanitary facilities include temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking-water fixtures. Comply with regulations and health codes for the type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities. Install where facilities will best serve the Project's needs.
1. Provide toilet tissue, paper towels, paper cups, and similar disposable materials for each facility. Provide covered waste containers for used material.
- I. Toilets: Install self-contained toilet units. Shield toilets to ensure privacy. Use of pit-type privies will not be permitted.
1. Provide separate facilities for male and female personnel.
- J. Wash Facilities: Install wash facilities supplied with potable water at convenient locations for personnel involved in handling materials that require wash-up for a

healthy and sanitary condition. Dispose of drainage properly. Supply cleaning compounds appropriate for each condition.

1. Provide safety showers, eyewash fountains, and similar facilities for convenience, safety, and sanitation of personnel.
- K. Drinking-Water Facilities: Provide containerized, tap-dispenser, bottled-water drinking-water units, including paper supply.
1. Where power is accessible, provide electric water coolers to maintain dispensed water temperature at 45 to 55 deg F.
- L. Sewers and Drainage: If sewers are available, provide temporary connections to remove effluent that can be discharged lawfully. If sewers are not available or cannot be used, provide drainage ditches, dry wells, stabilization ponds, and similar facilities. If neither sewers nor drainage facilities can be lawfully used for discharge of effluent, provide containers to remove and dispose of effluent off-site in a lawful manner.
1. Filter out excessive amounts of soil, construction debris, chemicals, oils, and similar contaminants that might clog sewers or pollute waterways before discharge.
 2. Connect temporary sewers to the municipal system, as directed by sewer department officials.
 3. Maintain temporary sewers and drainage facilities in a clean, sanitary condition. Following heavy use, restore normal conditions promptly.
- M. Provide earthen embankments and similar barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction, sufficient to prevent flooding by runoff of storm water from heavy rains.

3.3 TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION AND SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Locate field offices, storage sheds, and other temporary construction and support facilities for easy access.
1. Maintain support facilities until near Substantial Completion. Remove prior to Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to the Owner.
- B. Contractor=s Facilities: Provide a field office building and sheds adequate in size and accommodation for all Contractor=s offices, supply and storage.
1. Within the Contractor=s facilities, provide enclosed space adequate for holding project meetings. Furnish with all required tables, chairs and utilities.
 2. The entire facilities, including furniture, will remain the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the site after completion of the work.
- C. Architect=s Field Office: Per Owner=s directive, Architect shall use third floor of existing terminal building.
- D. Temporary Paving: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paving to adequately support the indicated loading and to withstand exposure to traffic during the construction period. Locate temporary paving for roads, storage areas, and parking where the same permanent facilities will be located. Review proposed modifications to permanent paving with the Architect.
1. Paving: Comply with Division 2 sections for construction and maintenance of temporary paving.

2. Coordinate temporary paving development with subgrade grading, compaction, installation and stabilization of subbase, and installation of base and finish courses of permanent paving.
 3. Install temporary paving to minimize the need to rework the installations and to result in permanent roads and paved areas without damage or deterioration when occupied by the Owner.
 4. Delay installation of the final course of permanent asphalt concrete paving until immediately before Substantial Completion. Coordinate with weather conditions to avoid unsatisfactory results.
 5. Extend temporary paving in and around the construction area as necessary to accommodate delivery and storage of materials, equipment usage, administration, and supervision.
- E. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Provide drainage and dewatering facilities as required by conditions and applicable requirements. Maintain the site, excavations, and construction free of water.
- F. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities.
1. Where heat is needed and the permanent building enclosure is not complete, provide temporary enclosures where there is no other provision for containment of heat or as required by conditions to allow continuation of scheduled construction activities. Coordinate enclosure with ventilating and material drying or curing requirements to avoid dangerous conditions and effects.
 2. Protection and temporary closures shall be provided at all exterior openings in the building including doors, walls and roof to maintain the building weather and dust tight. All protection shall be substantial so that it will not be disturbed by wind and weather normal to the area and season.
 3. Openings in floors shall be protected and closures provided to prevent floor to floor transfer of dust, debris and conditioned air. Conform to fire and safety regulations of the authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Furnish and install and maintain one project identification sign of the size, graphic design, style of lettering and construction as shown on the drawings or included at the end of this section.
1. Finishes and painting materials shall be adequate to resist weathering and fading for the scheduled construction period.
 2. Location: Unless noted otherwise, erect on the site at a lighted location of high public visibility, adjacent to the main entrance to the site, as approved by the Architect.
 3. Informational Signs: Provide informational signs with painted lettering, or standard products. Size of signs and lettering shall be as required by regulatory agencies, or as appropriate to the usage. Colors as required by regulatory agencies, otherwise of uniform colors throughout the project. Erect at appropriate locations to provide the required information and at a height for optimum visibility.
 4. Materials: Structure and framing may be preservative-treated wood or steel, in sound condition and structurally adequate to the work and suitable specified finish. Paint is specified in Division 9.
 5. Maintenance: Maintain signs and supports in a neat, clean condition, and repair damages to structure, framing or sign as required.
 6. Relocate informational signs as required by progress of the work.

- 7. Remove signs, framing, supports and foundations at project completion.
- H. No other signs or advertising of any kind shall be allowed on the job site, except as specifically approved by the Architect.
- I. Temporary Exterior Lighting: Install exterior yard and sign lights so signs are visible when work is being performed.
- J. Rodent and Pest Control: Before deep foundation work has been completed, retain a local exterminator or pest control company to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests. Employ this service to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so the Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Except for use of permanent fire protection as soon as available, do not change over from use of temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion, or longer, as requested by the Architect.
- B. Temporary Fire Protection: Until fire-protection needs are supplied by permanent facilities, install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of the types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 10 "Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers" and NFPA 241 "Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alterations, and Demolition Operations."
 - 1. Locate fire extinguishers where convenient and effective for their intended purpose, but not less than one extinguisher on each floor at or near each usable stairwell.
 - 2. Store combustible materials in containers in fire-safe locations.
 - 3. Maintain unobstructed access to fire extinguishers, fire hydrants, temporary fire-protection facilities, stairways, and other access routes for fighting fires. Prohibit smoking in hazardous fire-exposure areas.
 - 4. Provide supervision of welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition.
- C. Permanent Fire Protection: At the earliest feasible date in each area of the Project, complete installation of the permanent fire-protection facility, including connected services, and place into operation and use. Instruct key personnel on use of facilities.
- D. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with standards and code requirements for erection of structurally adequate barricades. Paint with appropriate colors, graphics, and warning signs to inform personnel and the public of the hazard being protected against. Where appropriate and needed, provide lighting, including flashing red or amber lights.
- E. Enclosure Fence: Before excavation begins, install an enclosure fence with lockable entrance gates. Locate where indicated, or enclose the entire site or the portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations. Install in a manner that will prevent people, dogs, and other animals from easily entering the site, except by the entrance gates.

1. Provide open-mesh, chainlink fencing, minimum 6 feet high and complete with all required bracing, with posts set in a compacted mixture of gravel and earth.
 2. Maintain fence and gates throughout the construction period and remove at the end of the project, unless otherwise indicated by Architect.
 3. Repair any damage caused by installation and removal, and restore area to original or specified condition.
- F. Covered Walkway: Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction as necessary if determined required by applicable codes erect a structurally adequate, protective covered walkway for passage of persons along the adjacent public street. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions.
1. Construct covered walkways using scaffold or shoring framing. Provide wood plank overhead decking, protective plywood enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage. Extend the back wall beyond the structure to complete the enclosure fence. Paint and maintain in a manner acceptable to the Owner and the Architect.
- G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install substantial temporary enclosure of partially completed areas of construction. Provide locking entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security.
- H. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction in ways and by methods that comply with environmental regulations, and minimize the possibility that air, waterways, and subsoil might be contaminated or polluted or that other undesirable effects might result. Avoid use of tools and equipment that produce harmful noise. Restrict use of noise-making tools and equipment to hours that will minimize complaints from persons or firms near the site.

3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. Limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses to minimize waste and abuse.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal. Protect from damage by freezing temperatures and similar elements.
1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
 2. Protection: Prevent water-filled piping from freezing. Maintain markers for underground lines. Protect from damage during excavation operations.
- C. Termination and Removal: Unless the Architect requests that it be maintained longer, remove each temporary facility when the need has ended, when replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with the temporary facility. Repair damaged work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are the Contractor's property. The Owner reserves the right to take possession of project identification signs.

2. Remove temporary paving not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent paving. Where the area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil in the area. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at the temporary entrances, as required by the governing authority.
3. At Substantial Completion, clean and renovate permanent facilities used during the construction period including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Replace air filters and clean inside of ductwork and housings.
 - b. Replace significantly worn parts and parts subject to unusual operating conditions.
 - c. Replace lamps burned out or noticeably dimmed by hours of use.

END OF SECTION 01500

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL TERMINAL
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01631 – PRODUCTS
AND SUBSTITUTIONS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling requests for substitutions made after award of the Contract.
- B. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section:
 - 1. Division 1, Section 01421 - REFERENCE STANDARDS AND DEFINITIONS specifies the applicability of industry standards to products specified.
 - 2. Division 1, Section 01300 - SUBMITTALS specifies requirements for submitting the Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Submittal Schedule.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in this Article do not change or modify the meaning of other terms used in the Contract Documents.
 - 1. "Products" are items purchased for incorporation in the work, whether purchased for the Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - a. "Named Products" are items identified by the manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation, shown or listed in the manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. "Materials" are products substantially shaped, cut, worked, mixed, finished, refined or otherwise fabricated, processed, or installed to form a part of the work.
 - 3. "Equipment" is a product with operational parts, whether motorized or manually operated, that requires service connections, such as wiring or piping.
- B. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction required by the Contract Documents proposed by the Contractor after award of the Contract are considered to be requests for substitutions. The following are not considered to be requests for substitutions:
 - 1. Substitutions requested by bidders during the bidding period, and accepted prior to award of Contract, are considered as included in the Contract Documents and are not subject to requirements specified in this section for substitutions.
 - 2. Revisions to the Contract Documents requested by the Owner or Architect.

PRODUCTS AND SUBSTITUTIONS

3. Specified options of products and construction methods included in the Contract Documents.
4. The Contractor's determination of and compliance with governing regulations and orders issued by governing authorities.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Materials, products, equipment and systems are specified in the Contract Documents by manufacturer, trade name or distributor to establish a standard of the required criteria, including function, performance, dimension, appearance and quality to be met by any proposed substitution. Unless otherwise specified, application for substitutions will be considered by the Owner and the Architect after execution of the agreement. The burden of proof of merit of proposed substitute is upon the proposer. Substitute items shall not be incorporated in the work without prior written approval of the item by the Architect.
- B. Where an item is specified by one or more manufacturer's model number or specific item identification and "or approved equal" is included, only the item(s) that is specified by manufacturer's model number or specific identification is approved and any other item must be submitted for approval as a substitution.
- C. Where an item is specified by a referenced standard, the item must be submitted for approval same as a substitute.
- D. Submit three (3) copies of each request for substitution for consideration. Submit requests in the form and according to procedures required for change-order proposals.
- E. Identify the product or the fabrication or installation method to be replaced in each request. Include related Specification Section and drawing numbers.
- F. Provide complete documentation showing compliance with the requirements for substitutions, and the following information, as appropriate:
 1. Coordination information, including a list of changes or modifications needed to other parts of the work and to construction performed by the Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate the proposed substitution.
 2. A detailed comparison of significant qualities of the proposed substitution with those of the work specified. Significant qualities may include elements such as performance, weight, size, durability, and visual effect.
 3. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 4. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 5. A statement indicating the substitution's effect on the Contractor's Construction Schedule compared to the schedule without approval of the substitution. Indicate the effect of the proposed substitution on overall Contract Time.
 6. Cost information, including a proposal of the net change, if any in the Contract Sum.
 7. The Contractor's certification that the proposed substitution conforms to or exceeds requirements in the Contract Documents in every respect and is appropriate for the applications indicated. Include the Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of the failure of the substitution to perform adequately.

- G. Architect's Action: If necessary, the Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a request for substitution. The Architect will notify the Contractor of acceptance or rejection of the substitution within two (2) weeks of receipt of the request, or one week of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later. Acceptance will be in the form of a change order. If a decision on use of a proposed substitute cannot be made or obtained within the time allocated, use the product specified.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, that are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, new at the time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, safety guards, and other devices and details needed for a complete installation and the intended use and effect.
 2. Standard Products: Where available, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 3. Compliance with Standards, Codes, and Regulations: Where Specifications only require compliance with an imposed code, standard, or regulation, select a product that complies with the standards, codes, or regulations specified.
 4. Visual Matching: Where Specifications require matching an established Sample, the Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches satisfactorily.
 - a. Where no product available within the specified category matches satisfactorily and complies with other specified requirements, comply with provisions of the Contract Documents concerning "substitutions" for selection of a matching product in another product category.
 5. Visual Selection: Where specified product requirements include the phrase "... as selected from manufacturer's standard colors, patterns, textures ..." or a similar phrase, select a product and manufacturer that complies with other specified requirements. The Architect will select the color, pattern, and texture from the product line selected.
- B. Nameplates: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturers or producer's nameplates or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on concealed surfaces or, where required for observation after installation, on accessible surfaces that are not conspicuous.
 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service-connected or power-operated equipment. Locate on an easily accessible surface that is inconspicuous in occupied spaces. The nameplate shall contain the following information and other essential operating data:
 - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
 - b. Model and serial number.
 - c. Capacity.

- d. Speed.
- e. Ratings.

2.2 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Conditions: The Architect will receive and consider the Contractor's request for substitution when one or more of the following conditions are satisfied, as determined by the Architect. If the following conditions are not satisfied, the Architect will return the requests without action except to record noncompliance with these requirements.
 - 1. The specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time. The Architect will not consider the request if the product or method cannot be provided as a result of failure to pursue the work promptly or coordinate activities properly.
 - 2. The request is directly related to an "or-equal" clause or similar language in the Contract Documents.
 - 3. The requested substitution offers the Owner a substantial advantage, in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting offsetting responsibilities the Owner may be required to bear. The Owner's additional responsibilities may include additional compensation to the Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by the Owner or separate Contractors, and similar considerations.
 - 4. The specified product or method of construction cannot receive necessary approval by a governing authority, and the requested substitution can be approved.
 - 5. The specified product or method of construction cannot be provided in a manner that is compatible with other materials and where the Contractor certifies that the substitution will overcome the incompatibility.
 - 6. The specified product or method of construction cannot be coordinated with other materials and where the Contractor certifies that the proposed substitution can be coordinated.
 - 7. The specified product or method of construction cannot provide a warranty required by the Contract Documents and where the Contractor certifies that the proposed substitution provides the required warranty.
- B. The Contractor's submittal and the Architect's acceptance of shop drawings, product data, or samples for construction activities not complying with the Contract Documents do not constitute an acceptable or valid request for substitution, nor do they constitute approval.
- C. Whether or not the Architect and Owner accept a proposed substitution, the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the Architect's cost for the Architect and the Architect's consultants for evaluating any proposed substitute including changes required in the Contract Documents for the substitute.
- D. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.
- E. All costs that may be incurred associated with a substitution proposed by the Contractor shall be borne by the Contractor. This shall apply to all interfacing components recognized prior to or after approval of the substitution by the Architect.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01631

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01700 - CONTRACT
CLOSEOUT**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 - 3. General installation of products.
 - 4. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
 - 5. Progress cleaning.
 - 6. Starting and adjusting.
 - 7. Protection of installed construction.
 - 8. Correction of the Work.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination" for procedures for coordinating field engineering with other construction activities.
 - 2. Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
 - 3. Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching" for procedural requirements for cutting and patching necessary for the installation or performance of other components of the Work.
 - 4. Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.
- D. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.
- E. Final Property Survey: Submit ten copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of site improvements, utilities, and other construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning work, investigate and verify the existence and location of mechanical and electrical systems and other construction affecting the Work.
 - 1. Before construction, verify the location and points of connection of utility services.
- B. Existing Utilities: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities and other construction affecting the Work.
 - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; and underground electrical services.
 - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- C. Acceptance of Conditions: Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
 - 1. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
 - a. Description of the Work.
 - b. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 - c. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 - d. Recommended corrections.
 - 2. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
 - 3. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 4. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect. Include a detailed description of problem encountered, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
 - 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 - 2. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 - 3. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 - 4. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 - 5. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 - 6. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and

types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
 - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
 - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
 - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
 - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
 - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- E. Final Property Survey: Prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
 - 1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
 - 2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 - 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 - 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 - 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas, unless otherwise indicated.

4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 7 feet in spaces without a suspended ceiling.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- F. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- G. Anchors and Fasteners: Provide anchors and fasteners as required to anchor each component securely in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work.
 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- H. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- I. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

3.6 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction forces.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction forces.
 1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.

2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction forces at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction forces if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where more than one installer has worked. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
 1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold materials more than seven (7) days during normal weather or three (3) days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Burying or burning waste materials on-site will not be permitted. Washing waste materials down sewers or into waterways will not be permitted.
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding. Adjust equipment for proper operation.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: If a factory-authorized service representative is required to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, comply with qualification requirements in Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements."

3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

3.10 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

- A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Restore damaged substrates and finishes. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching."
 - 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.
- B. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- C. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- D. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
- E. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

END OF SECTION 01700

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MN**

SECTION 01710 - CLEANING UP

1. GENERAL

- A. The Contractors shall furnish all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and perform all work and services necessary for cleaning up required in conjunction with work performed, as shown on drawings and as specified, in accordance with provisions of the Contract Documents and completely coordinated with work of all other trades.
- B. Although such work is not specifically indicated, furnish and install all supplementary or miscellaneous items, appurtenances and devices incidental to or necessary for a sound, secure and complete installation.
- C. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for final cleaning at Substantial Completion.
 - 1) Special cleaning requirements for specific elements of the Work are included in appropriate Sections of Divisions 2 through 16.
 - 2) Multiple Prime Contracts: Except as otherwise indicated, each Prime Contractor is responsible for coordination of final cleaning where more than one Prime Contractor is involved in final cleaning a single area or piece of equipment.
 - 3) Environmental Requirements: Conduct cleaning and waste disposal operations in compliance with local laws and ordinances. Comply fully with federal and local environmental and anti-pollution regulations.
 - a. Do not dispose of volatile wastes such as mineral spirits, oil or paint thinner in storm or sanitary drains.
 - b. Burning or burying of debris, rubbish or other waste material on the premises will not be permitted.
 - 4) Related work specified elsewhere:
 - a. Section 01700 - Contract Closeout, include general project closeout requirements.
 - b. Section 01500 - Temporary Facilities, include general cleanup and waste removal requirements.

2. MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by the manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property, or that might damage finished surfaces.

3. DURING CONSTRUCTION

- A. Oversee cleaning and ensure that building and grounds are maintained free from accumulation of waste and rubbish.

- 1) Special attention shall be given to cleaning up the site of debris, waste and rubbish. The Owner is extremely concerned over items left in the open that can be thrown through windows.
- B. Sprinkle dusty debris with water.
- C. At reasonable intervals, minimum once a week, clean up site and access and dispose of debris.
- D. Provide metal containers for collection of debris.
- E. Remove debris from site. Legally dispose of off Owner's site.
- F. Vacuum interior areas when ready for painting.
- G. Handle waste materials in a controlled manner. Do not drop or throw materials from heights.
- H. Schedule cleaning operations so that contaminants resulting from cleaning do not fall on wet painted surfaces.

END OF SECTION 01710

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**01720 - PROJECT RECORD
DOCUMENTS**

1. GENERAL

- A. This section covers the furnishing of all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and performing all work and services to provide record documents as specified, in accordance with the provisions of the Contract Documents, and completely coordinated with work of all other trades.
- B. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents.
 - 1) Project Record Documents required include:
 - a. Marked-up copies of Contract Drawings.
 - b. Marked-up copies of Shop Drawings.
 - c. Newly prepared Drawings.
 - d. Marked-up copies of Specifications, addenda and Change Orders.
 - e. Marked-up Product Data submittals.
 - f. Record Samples.
 - g. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - h. Record information on Work that is recorded only schematically.
 - 2) Maintenance of Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from Contract Documents used for construction. Do not permit Project Record Documents to be used for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order, and in a clean, dry, legible condition. Make documents and Samples available at all times for inspection by the Architect.
- C. Related work specified elsewhere:
 - 1) Section 01700 - Contract Closeout, includes general project closeout requirements.
 - 2) Section 01300 - Submittals, includes general requirements for submittal of Project Record Documents.

2. RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Mark-up Procedure: During the construction period, maintain a set of blue- or black-line white-prints of Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings for Project Record Document purposes. Include the printed designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS" in a prominent location on each Drawing.
 - 1) Mark these Drawings to indicate the actual installation where the installation varies appreciably from the installation shown originally. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements which would be difficult to identify or measure and record later. Items required to be marked include but are not limited to:
 - a. Dimensional changes to the Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on the Drawings.

- c. Changes made by Change Order.
 - d. Details not on original Contract Drawings.
 - e. RFPs, SIs, PCOs.
- 2) Mark completely and accurately record prints of Contract Drawings or Shop Drawings, whichever is most capable of showing actual physical conditions. Where Shop Drawings are marked, show cross-reference on Contract Drawings location.
 - 3) Mark record sets with red erasable colored pencil; use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at the same location.
 - 4) Mark important additional information which was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - 5) Note construction change directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers and similar identification.
 - 6) Responsibility for Markup: Where feasible, the individual or entity who obtained record data, whether the individual or entity is the installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, is required to prepare the mark-up on record Drawings.
 - a. Accurately record information in an understandable Drawing technique.
 - b. Record data as soon as possible after it has been obtained. In the case of concealed installations, record and check the mark-up prior to concealment.
 - c. At time of Substantial Completion, submit three (3) copies of the record Drawings to Construction Manager for the Architect's approval. Upon Architect's approval, the Drawings will then become the Owner's records. Organize into sets, bind and label sets for Owner's continued use.

3. RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. During the construction period, maintain one copy of the Project Specifications, including addenda and modifications issued, for Project Record Document purposes.
 - 1) Mark the Specifications to indicate the actual installation where the installation varies substantially from that indicated in Specifications and modifications issued. Note related Project Record Drawing information, where applicable. Give particular attention to substitutions, selection of product options, and information on concealed installations that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - a. In each Specification Section where products, materials or units of equipment are specified or scheduled, mark the copy with the proprietary name and model number of the product furnished.
 - 2) Upon completion of mark-up, submit record Specifications to the Construction Manager for Owner's records.

4. RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. During the construction period, maintain one copy of each Product Data submittal for Project Record Document purposes.

- 1) Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where the installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submitted. Include significant changes in the product delivered to the site, and changes in manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation.
- 2) Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
- 3) Note related Change Orders and mark-up of record Drawings, where applicable.
- 4) Upon completion of mark-up, submit a complete set of record Product Data to the Construction Manager for the Owner's records.
- 5) Where record Product Data is required as part of maintenance manuals, submit marked-up Product Data as an insert in the manual, instead of submittal as record Product Data.
- 6) Each prime Contractor is responsible for mark-up and submittal of record Product Data for its own Work.

5. MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Immediately prior to Substantial Completion, complete miscellaneous records and place in good order, properly identified and bound or filed, ready for use and reference. Submit to the Construction Manager for the Owner's records.

- 1) Categories of requirements resulting in miscellaneous records include, but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Field records on excavations and foundations.
 - b. Field records on underground construction and similar Work.
 - c. Survey showing locations and elevations of underground lines.
 - d. Invert elevations of drainage piping.
 - e. Surveys establishing building lines and levels.
 - f. Authorized measurements utilizing unit prices or allowances.
 - g. Records of plant treatment.
 - h. Ambient and substrate condition tests.
 - i. Certifications received in lieu of labels on bulk products.
 - j. Batch mixing and bulk delivery records.
 - k. Testing and qualification of tradesmen.
 - l. Documented qualification of installation firms.
 - m. Load and performance testing.
 - n. Inspections and certifications by governing authorities.
 - o. Leakage and water-penetration tests.
 - p. Fire resistance and flame spread test results.
 - q. Final inspection and correction procedures.

6. RECORDING

A. Post changes and modifications to the Documents as they occur. Do not wait until the end of the Project.

END OF SECTION 01720

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01732 – SELECTIVE
DEMOLITION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1) Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
 - 2) Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
 - 3) Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1) Division 1 Section "Summary" for restrictions on the use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
 - 2) Division 2 Section "Site Clearing" for site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Carefully detach from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be permanently removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
 - 1) Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-demolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1) Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
- 2) Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
- 3) Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
- 4) Review requirements of work performed by other trades that may rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
- 5) Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.
- 6) Review and finalize protection requirements.
- 7) Review procedures for noise control and dust control.
- 8) Review procedures for protection of adjacent buildings.
- 9) Review items to be salvaged and returned to Owner.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property for environmental protection, dust control and for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- B. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
 - 1) Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's and other tenants' on-site operations are uninterrupted.
 - 2) Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
 - 3) Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
 - 4) Use of elevator and stairs.
 - 5) Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- C. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to Owner prior to start of demolition.
- D. Pre-demolition Photographs or Video: Submit before Work begins.
- E. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.
- B. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
 - 1) Provide not less than seventy-two (72) hours notice of activities that will affect operations of adjacent occupied buildings.
 - 2) Maintain access to existing walkways, exits, and other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings.
 - a) Do not close or obstruct walkways, exits, or other facilities used by occupants of adjacent buildings without written permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - 1) Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
 - a) If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
 - 1) Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's on-site operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review record documents of existing construction provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in record documents.
- C. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.
- D. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
- E. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.
- F. Engage a professional engineer licensed in the State of Minnesota to perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.
 - 1. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.
 - 1) Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs and / or preconstruction video.
- G. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services / Systems to Remain: Maintain Services / Systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for existing Services / Systems interruptions specified in Division 1 Section "Summary".
- B. Existing Services / Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated Services / Systems when requested by Contractor.
- 2. If Services / Systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary Services / Systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of Services / Systems to other parts of building.

3. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1) Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2) Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3) Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 4) Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - 5) Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
 - 6) Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 - 7) Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
- C. Refrigerant: Remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment to be selectively demolished according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 PREPARATION

1. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- B. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- C. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
- D. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
- E. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
- F. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
- G. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
- H. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- I. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.

1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
- B. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
- C. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
- D. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
- E. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
- F. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
- G. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
- H. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
- I. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
- J. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Construction Waste Management."
- K. Removed and Salvaged Items:
 1. Clean salvaged items.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- L. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
 1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.
- M. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Using power-driven saw, cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) at junctures with construction to remain. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.
- B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- C. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
- D. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings." Do not use methods requiring solvent-based adhesive strippers.
- E. Roofing: Remove existing roofing so that interior of building to remain remains weathertight.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
 4. Comply with requirements specified in Division 1 Section "Construction Waste Management."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 01732

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 01740 – WARRANTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section specifies general administrative and procedural requirements for warranties required by the Contract Documents, including manufacturer's standard warranties on products and special warranties.
 - 1. Refer to the General Conditions for terms of the Contractor's period for correction of the work and special warranty of workmanship and materials.
- B. The Contractor will provide a warranty on all project work (including that added by subsequent change order after execution of the construction contract) for a period of one (1) year following the formal declaration of Substantial Completion. This one (1) year warranty will be separate from and in no way affect other standard product / manufacturer or workmanship warranties that extend beyond this one (1) year period for goods and services provided to this project.
- C. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section:
 - 1. Division 1, Section 01300 - SUBMITTALS specifies procedures for submitting warranties.
 - 2. Division 1, Section 01700 - CONTRACT CLOSEOUT specifies contract closeout procedures.
 - 3. Divisions 2 through 16 sections for specific requirements for warranties on products and installations specified to be warranted.
 - 4. Certifications and other commitments and agreements for continuing services to Owner are specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
- D. Disclaimers and Limitations: Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve the Contractor of the warranty on the work that incorporates the products. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve suppliers, manufacturers, and subcontractors required to countersign special warranties with the Contractor.

1.3 WARRANTY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Related Damages and Losses: When correcting failed or damaged warranted construction, remove and replace other work that has been damaged as a result of such failure or must be removed and replaced to provide access for correction of warranted construction.
- B. Reinstatement of Warranty: When work covered by a warranty has failed and been corrected by replacement or rebuilding, reinstate the warranty by written

endorsement. The reinstated warranty shall be equal to the original warranty with an equitable adjustment for depreciation.

- C. Replacement Cost: Upon determination that work covered by a warranty has failed, replace or rebuild the work to an acceptable condition complying with requirements of the Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of replacing or rebuilding defective work regardless of whether the Owner has benefited from use of the work through a portion of its anticipated useful service life.
- D. Owner's Recourse: Expressed warranties made to the Owner are in addition to implied warranties and shall not limit the duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise available under the law. Expressed warranty periods shall not be interpreted as limitations on the time in which the Owner can enforce such other duties, obligations, rights, or remedies.
 - 1. Rejection of Warranties: The Owner reserves the right to reject warranties and to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
- E. Where the Contract Documents require a special warranty, or similar commitment on the work or part of the work, the Owner reserves the right to refuse to accept the work, until the Contractor presents evidence that entities required to countersign such commitments are willing to do so.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit written warranties to the Architect prior to the date certified for Substantial Completion. If the Architect's Certificate of Substantial Completion designates a commencement date for warranties other than the date of Substantial Completion for the work, or a designated portion of the work, submit written warranties upon request of the Architect.
 - 1. When a designated portion of the work is completed and occupied or used by the Owner, by separate agreement with the Contractor during the construction period, submit properly executed warranties to the Architect within fifteen (15) days of completion of that designated portion of the work.
- B. When the Contract Documents require the Contractor, or the Contractor and a subcontractor, supplier or manufacturer to execute a special warranty, prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution by the required parties. Submit a draft to the Owner, through the Architect, for approval prior to final execution.
 - 1. Refer to Divisions 2 through 16 sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Form of Submittal: At Final Completion compile two (2) copies of each required warranty properly executed by the Contractor, or by the Contractor, subcontractor, supplier, or manufacturer. Organize the warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.
- D. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, commercial-quality, durable 3-ring, vinyl-covered loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
 - 1. Provide heavy paper dividers with celluloid covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark the tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed

- description of the product or installation, including the name of the product, and the name, address, and telephone number of the Installer.
2. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES AND BONDS," Project title or name, and name of the Contractor.
 3. When warranted construction requires operation and maintenance manuals, provide additional copies of each required warranty, as necessary, for inclusion in each required manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01740

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 01742 - CONSTRUCTION
WASTE MANAGEMENT**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Salvaging non-hazardous demolition and construction waste
 - 2. Recycling non-hazardous demolition and construction waste
 - 3. Disposing of non-hazardous demolition and construction waste
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "Summary of Multiple Contracts" for coordination of responsibilities for waste management
 - 2. Division 1 Section "Sustainable Design Requirements"
 - 3. Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for environmental-protection measures during construction
 - 4. Division 2 Section "Demolition" for disposition of waste resulting from demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Clean: Untreated and unpainted; not contaminated with oils, solvents, caulk, paint, or the like
- B. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- C. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations
- D. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction
- E. Diversion: Avoidance of demolition and construction waste sent to landfill or incineration. Diversion does not include using materials for landfill, alternate daily cover on landfills, or materials used as fuel in waste-to-energy processes
- F. Hazardous: Exhibiting the characteristics of hazardous substances, i.e., ignitability, corrosiveness, toxicity or reactivity

- G. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse
- H. Recycling: The process of sorting, cleansing, treating, and reconstituting solid waste and other discarded materials for the purpose of using the altered form. Recycling does not include burning, incinerating, or thermally destroying waste.
- I. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent reuse or sale in another facility
- J. Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work
- K. Source Separation: The act of keeping different types of waste materials separate beginning from the first time they become waste
- L. Toxic: Poisonous to humans either immediately or after a long period of exposure
- M. Trash: Any product or material unable to be reused, returned, recycled, or salvaged
- N. Waste: Extra material or material that has reached the end of its useful life in its intended use. Waste includes salvageable, returnable, recyclable, and reusable material.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. The Owner has established that this Project shall generate the least amount of waste possible and that processes that ensure the generation of as little waste as possible due to error, poor planning, breakage, mishandling, contamination, or other factors shall be employed.
- B. Of the waste that is generated, as many of the waste materials as economically feasible shall be reused, salvaged, or recycled. Waste disposal in landfills or incinerators shall be minimized, thereby reducing disposal costs.
- C. Develop a construction waste management plan that results in end-of-Project rates for salvage / recycling of 95% (by weight) of construction and demolition waste.
- D. Salvage / Recycle Requirements: Salvage and recycle as much non-hazardous demolition and construction waste as possible, including the following materials:
 - 1. Demolition Waste:
 - a. Asphaltic concrete paving
 - b. Concrete
 - c. Concrete reinforcing steel
 - d. Brick
 - e. Concrete masonry units
 - f. Wood studs
 - g. Wood joists
 - h. Plywood and oriented strand board
 - i. Wood paneling
 - j. Wood trim
 - k. Structural and miscellaneous steel

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

Bid Package 1

01742 - 2

- l. Rough hardware
- m. Roofing
- n. Insulation
- o. Doors and frames
- p. Door hardware
- q. Windows
- r. Glazing
- s. Metal studs
- t. Gypsum board
- u. Acoustical tile and panels
- v. Carpet
- w. Carpet pad
- x. Demountable partitions
- y. Equipment
- z. Cabinets
- aa. Plumbing fixtures
- bb. Piping
- cc. Supports and hangers
- dd. Valves
- ee. Sprinklers
- ff. Mechanical equipment
- gg. Refrigerants
- hh. Electrical conduit
- ii. Copper wiring
- jj. Lighting fixtures
- kk. Lamps
- ll. Ballasts
- mm. Electrical devices
- nn. Switchgear and panelboards
- oo. Transformers
- 2. Construction Waste:
 - a. Masonry and CMU
 - b. All untreated wood, including lumber and finish materials
 - c. Wood sheet materials
 - d. Wood trim
 - e. Metals
 - f. Roofing
 - g. Insulation
 - h. Carpet and pad
 - i. Gypsum board
 - j. Unused (leftover) paint
 - k. Piping
 - l. Electrical conduit
 - m. Packaging: Regardless of salvage / recycle goal indicated above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
 - 1) Paper
 - 2) Cardboard
 - 3) Boxes
 - 4) Plastic sheet and film
 - 5) Polystyrene packaging
 - 6) Wood crates
 - 7) Plastic pails

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

Bid Package 1

01742 - 3

n. Beverage and packaged food containers

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Construction Waste Management Plan (CWMP): It is the intent of this specification to maximize the diversion of demolition and construction waste from landfill disposal. Accordingly, not more than 30 days after receipt of Notice to Proceed and prior to the generation of any waste, prepare and submit a draft Construction Waste Management Plan in accordance with Section 01742 including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Procedures for Recycling / Reuse Program to divert a minimum of 95% (by weight) of construction and demolition waste from landfill disposal, including waste resulting from demolition of any existing building and site paving scheduled for demolition; any site paving is required to be ground on site and reused as granulated fill on site.
 2. Approval of the Contractor's CWMP shall not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for adequate and continuing control of pollutants and other environmental protection measures.
- B. Submit a 3-ring binder with calculations on end-of-project recycling rates, salvage rates, and landfill rates itemized by waste material, demonstrating that a minimum of 75% of construction wastes were recycled or salvaged and diverted from landfill. Include documentation of recovery rate (if commingled); waste hauling certificates or receipts, and a brief narrative explaining how and to where each waste type has been diverted.
- C. Construction Waste Management Plan: Submit four copies of plan within forty-five (45) days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.
- D. Waste Reduction Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit four (4) copies of report. Include separate reports for demolition and construction waste. Include the following information:
1. Material category
 2. Generation point of waste
 3. Total quantity of waste in tons
 4. Quantity of waste salvaged, both estimated and actual in tons
 5. Quantity of waste recycled, both estimated and actual in tons
 6. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) in tons
 7. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) as a percentage of total waste
 8. Include up-to-date records of donations, sales, recycling and landfill / incinerator manifests, weight tickets, hauling receipts, and invoices.
- E. Waste Reduction Calculations: Before request for Substantial Completion, submit four copies of calculated end-of-project rates for salvage, recycling, and disposal as a percentage of total waste generated by the Work. Complete a table similar to the example below.

Recycled / Salvaged / Diverted Materials	Hauler or Location	Quantity of Material (tons)

Total Construction Waste Diverted		
Landfilled Materials		
Total Construction Waste Landfilled		

Total Construction Waste		Total Construction Waste Diverted + Total Construction Waste Landfilled
Percentage of Construction Waste Diverted from Landfill		$(\text{Total Construction Waste Diverted} / \text{Total Construction Waste}) * 100$

- F. Records of Donations: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste donated to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax-exempt.
- G. Records of Sales: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste sold to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax-exempt.
- H. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- I. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills (or transfer stations) and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with all applicable local ordinances and regulations.
- B. Waste Management Meetings: Conduct an initial conference at Project Site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Contractor shall include discussions on construction waste management requirements in the preconstruction meeting. Contractor shall include discussions on construction waste management requirements in the regular job meetings conducted during the course of the Project; at these meetings, review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of the Waste Management Coordinator.

2. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
3. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
4. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
5. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. General: Develop and implement a CWMP consisting of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Include separate sections in plan for demolition and construction waste. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use the same units of measure throughout the CWMP.
- B. Draft Construction Waste Management Plan: Within 30 days after receipt of Notice to Proceed, or prior to any waste removal, whichever occurs sooner, the Contractor shall submit to the Owner and Architect a Draft Waste Management Plan.
- C. Final Construction Waste Management Plan: Once the Owner has determined which of the recycling options addressed in the draft Waste Management Plan are acceptable, the Contractor shall submit, within 10 calendar days, a Final Waste Management Plan.
- D. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of demolition, site-clearing, and construction waste generated by the Work. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.
- E. Landfill Options: Indicate the name of the landfill(s) and / or transfer station(s) and / or incinerator(s) where trash will be disposed of, the applicable landfill tipping fee(s), and the projected cost of disposing of all Project waste in the landfill(s).
- F. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, reused, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.
 1. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work.
 2. Salvaged Materials for Sale: For materials that will be sold to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
 3. Salvaged Materials for Donation: For materials that will be donated to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
 4. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
 5. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
 6. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Describe method that will be used for separating recyclable waste, including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location on Project Site where materials separation will be located.

- G. Materials: The following list of required materials, at a minimum, must be included for salvaging / recycling:
1. Cardboard
 2. Clean dimensional wood
 3. Beverage and food containers
 4. Paper
 5. Concrete
 6. Concrete Masonry Units (CMUs)
 7. Asphalt: Include the approximate weight of the asphalt paving to be crushed and utilized as granulated fill from the existing paving as a component of waste material diverted from the landfill.
 8. Ferrous and non-ferrous metals (banding, stud trim, ductwork, piping, rebar, roofing, other trim, steel, iron, galvanized sheet steel, stainless steel, aluminum, copper, zinc, lead, brass, and bronze)
 9. Stretch and shrink wrap
 10. Gypsum wallboard
 11. Paint containers and other clean, empty plastic containers
- H. Meetings: Provide a description of the regular meetings to be held to address waste management.
- I. Materials Handling Procedures: Provide a description of the means by which any waste materials identified will be protected from contamination, and a description of the means to be employed in recycling the above materials consistent with requirements for acceptance by designated facilities.
- J. Transportation: Provide a description of the means of transportation of the recyclable materials (whether materials will be site-separated and self-hauled to designated centers, or whether mixed materials will be collected by a waste hauler and removed from the site) and destination of materials.

1.8 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT RESOURCES

- A. General information contacts regarding construction and demolition waste:
1. EPA Construction and demolition (C&D) debris website:
<http://www.epa.gov/epaoswer/non-hw/debris-new/bytype.htm>
 2. Directory of Wood-Framed Building Deconstruction and Reused Building Materials Companies:
http://www.fpl.fs.fed.us/documnts/fplgtr/fpl_gtr150.pdf
 3. Additional resources to be developed by Contractor with assistance from Owner and Architect, as requested.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement waste management plan as approved by Architect and Owner. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other

items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.

1. Comply with Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for operation, termination, and removal requirements.
- B. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan. Coordinator shall be present at the Project Site full-time for duration of Project.
- C. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work occurring at Project Site.
1. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
 2. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
- D. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
1. Designate and label specific areas on Project Site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
 2. Recycling and waste bin areas are to be kept neat, and clean, and clearly marked in order to avoid contamination of materials.
 3. Comply with Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.
- E. Hazardous Wastes: Hazardous wastes shall be separated, stored, and disposed of according to local regulations and should not be included in Construction Waste Management Plan's calculations of waste.

3.2 SALVAGING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work:
1. Clean salvaged items.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Store items in a secure area until installation.
 4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 5. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
- B. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use:
1. Clean salvaged items.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 6. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.

CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

Bid Package 1

01742 - 8

3.3 RECYCLING DEMOLITION AND CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL

- A. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
- B. Recycling Receivers and Processors: List below is provided for information only; available recycling receivers and processors include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. List to be developed by Contractor.
- C. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Contractor.
- D. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project Site to the maximum extent practical.
 - 1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until they are removed from Project Site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
 - a. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
 - 2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
 - 3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
 - 4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
 - 5. Remove recyclable waste off Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.

3.4 RECYCLING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Asphaltic Concrete Paving: Break up and transport paving to asphalt-recycling facility or recycle on-site into new paving.
- B. Concrete: Remove reinforcement and other metals from concrete and sort with other metals.
 - 1. Pulverize concrete to maximum 4-inch (100-mm) size.
 - 2. Crush concrete and screen to comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for use as satisfactory soil for fill or subbase.
- C. Masonry: Remove metal reinforcement, anchors, and ties from masonry and sort with other metals.
 - 1. Pulverize masonry to maximum 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) size.
 - a. Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for use as general fill or subbase.
 - b. Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Exterior Plants" for use as mineral mulch.
 - 2. Clean and stack undamaged, whole masonry units on wood pallets.
- D. Wood Materials: Sort and stack members according to size, type, and length. Separate lumber, engineered wood products, and panel products for reuse and /

or recycling. Separate wood material treated with heavy metal preservatives for reuse or landfill disposal.

- E. Metals: Separate metals by type.
 - 1. Structural Steel: Stack members according to size, type of member, and length.
 - 2. Remove and dispose of bolts, nuts, washers, and other rough hardware.
- F. Asphalt Shingle Roofing: Separate organic and glass-fiber asphalt shingles and felts for recycling into asphalt paving or by other recycling entities.
- G. Gypsum Board: Stack large, clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location for recycling off-site. Remove edge trim and sort with other metals. Remove and dispose of fasteners.
 - 1. Moisture-damaged gypsum board with evidence of significant mold growth shall be disposed of in accordance with New York City's "Guidelines on Assessment and Remediation of Fungi in Indoor Environments": <http://www.nyc.gov/html/doh/html/epi/moldrpt1.shtml>
- H. Acoustical Ceiling Panels and Tile: Stack large, clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
 - 1. Separate suspension system, trim, and other metals from panels and tile and sort with other metals.
- I. Carpet and Pad: Roll large pieces tightly after removing debris, trash, adhesive, and tack strips.
 - 1. Store clean, dry carpet and pad in a closed container or trailer provided by a carpet recycler or manufacturer-related carpet reclamation agency.
- J. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
- K. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
- L. Piping: Reduce piping to straight lengths and store by type and size. Separate supports, hangers, valves, sprinklers, and other components by type and size.
- M. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
- N. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.
- O. Conduit: Reduce conduit to straight lengths and store by type and size.

3.5 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE

- A. Packaging:
 - 1. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
 - 2. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
 - 3. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project Site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.

4. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
- B. Site-Clearing Wastes: Chip brush, branches, and trees on-site.
 1. Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Exterior Plants" for use of chipped organic waste as organic mulch.
- C. Wood Materials:
 1. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into material appropriate for mulch or erosion control.
 2. Lumber Treated with Heavy-Metal Preservatives: Do not grind, chip, or incinerate; must be reused or landfilled.
- D. Gypsum Board: Stack large, clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location for recycling and / or reuse on-site or off-site.
 1. Moisture-damaged gypsum board with evidence of significant mold growth shall be disposed of in accordance with New York City's "Guidelines on Assessment and Remediation of Fungi in Indoor Environments": <http://www.nyc.gov/html/doh/html/epi/moldrpt1.shtml>
 2. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.
 - a. Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section "Exterior Plants" for use of clean ground gypsum board as inorganic soil amendment.
- E. Miscellaneous: Anything called out to be ground and used on site should utilize an on-site grinder.
 1. Grinder should be able to accommodate a variety of materials including masonry, asphalt shingles, wood, and drywall.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project Site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of to accumulate on site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
 3. Do not burn or bury waste materials on or off site. Appropriate on-site topical application of ground gypsum or wood, or use of site paving as granulated fill is considered reuse, not waste.

END OF SECTION 01742

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 02220 - BUILDING
EARTHWORK**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Provide building excavation, dewatering, fill, backfill and compaction specified and shown on the drawings. Included is preparation of subgrade for footings, slabs and pavement within the general building area.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Test Reports: The independent testing lab shall submit copies of the following reports to the Architect-Engineer and Owner:
 - 1. Report and certification of backfill and fill materials.
 - 2. Test reports on borrow material.
 - 3. Verification of each footing subgrade.
 - 4. Field density test reports.
 - 5. One optimum moisture-maximum density curve for each type of soil encountered.
 - 6. Other tests and material certificates, as required.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Codes and Standards: Comply with the provisions of the following codes, specifications and standards except as otherwise shown or specified:
 - 1. Governing Local Building Code.
 - 2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) C136 -- Standard Test for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
 - 3. ASTM D 698 – Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft³)
 - 4. ASTM D1556 Standard Test method for Density and Unit Weight of Soil in Place by the Sand-Cone Method
 - 5. ASTM D 1557 – Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort (56,000 ft-lbf/ft³)
 - 6. ASTM D 2487 – Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)
 - 7. ASTM D 2922 – Standard Test Methods for Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth)
- B. Regulations: Perform excavation work in compliance with applicable requirements of governing authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Inspection Testing Laboratory: The Owner shall employ and pay an independent geotechnical testing laboratory, acceptable to the Architect-Engineer, to perform sampling and testing of soil materials proposed for use in the work, field observation and testing for quality control during earthwork operations. All testing and inspection shall be performed by an Inspector Type Technical II as indicated in Division 01 Structural Tests and Special Inspections.

1.4 PROJECT / SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Site Information: The data on subsurface conditions shall be as interpreted in the Project Geotechnical Report and the General Conditions. Additional test borings and other exploratory operations may be made at no cost to the Owner.
- B. Verify that survey bench marks and intended elevations for the Work are as indicated in the Contract Documents.
- C. Existing Utilities: Locate existing underground utilities in the areas of work. If utilities are to remain in place, provide adequate means of protecting during excavation operations.
 - 1. Should uncharted, or incorrectly charted, piping or other utilities be encountered during excavation, consult the utility owner immediately for directions. Cooperate with the Owner, the public and private utility companies in keeping their respective services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities to the satisfaction of the utility Owner.
 - 2. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied and used by the Owner or others, except when permitted in writing by the Architect-Engineer and then only after acceptable temporary utility services have been provided.
 - 3. Demolish and completely remove from the site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with local utility companies for shut-off of services if lines are active.
- D. Use of explosives is not permitted.
- E. Protection: Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements and other facilities from damages caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout and other hazards created by excavation operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Non-Frost Susceptible (NFS) Engineered Fill: Gradation as defined in the Project Geotechnical Report.
- B. General Engineered Fill: Non-organic granular material as defined in the Project Geotechnical Report. Excavated on-site soils can also be used as engineered fill under conditions noted in the Project Geotechnical Report.
- C. Future Aircraft Pavement Backfill: As defined in the Contract Documents.

2.2 COMPACTION EQUIPMENT

- A. Vibratory Rollers: The vibratory drum roller shall have the following minimum requirements:
 - 1. Drum Roller: 36 to 48 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Static at Drum Weight: 6,000 to 10,000 pounds.
 - 3. Approved compactors include Galion, Dynapac and Bros.
 - 4. Vibratory compaction shall be performed so as not to damage existing structures. Rollers shall not be used adjacent to the existing structures or within a distance which will have an adverse effect. When compacting within 15 feet of the existing structure, a lightweight walk-behind sled or roller compactor should be used. Use mechanical hand equipment or alternate compaction equipment as needed.

- B. Alternate Compaction Equipment: Steel wheeled or pneumatic-tired nonvibratory rollers capable of meeting the compaction requirements specified herein. Use for clayey fine sands and adjacent to existing structures.
- C. Mechanical Hand Equipment: Hand vibratory sleds, rollers and tampers shall be capable of meeting the compaction requirements specified herein. Total weight shall be on the order of 100 to 500 pounds.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: The independent testing laboratory shall perform the following:
 - 1. Test soil materials proposed for use in the work and promptly submit test result reports.
 - 2. Provide one optimum moisture-maximum density curve for each type of soil encountered in subgrade and fills under building slabs and foundations and paved areas. Determine maximum densities in accordance with ASTM D1557.
 - 3. For backfill and fill materials, perform a mechanical analysis, AASHTO T88; plasticity index, AASHTO T90; and moisture-density curve, AASHTO T180 or ASTM D1557.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which building excavation and fill is to be performed and do not proceed with the work prior to correcting unsatisfactory conditions.

3.2 CLEARING AND STRIPPING BUILDING AREAS

- A. Clear and strip the entire building area to at least 10 feet beyond perimeter to building footings and foundation, walks and slabs to remove existing vegetation, concrete and asphalt pavement layers and other obstructions to the work.
- B. Strip topsoil from areas within the building and slab areas and stockpile on the site for future use in site grading.

3.3 COMPACTION OF EXPOSED SOILS

- A. No compactive effort should be used on exposed soils.

3.4 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavation consists of the removal and disposal of materials encountered when establishing the required grade elevations for the site including footings, utilities and all other items indicated in the drawings and specifications.
- B. If any existing or former building foundations or any other unexpected subsurface conditions are encountered in the required excavation, notify the Architect-Engineer immediately.

- C. Earth excavation includes the removal and disposal of pavement and other obstructions visible on the ground surface, under-ground structures and utilities to be demolished and removed, material of any classification indicated in data on subsurface conditions, and other materials encountered that are not classified as unauthorized excavation.
- D. Unauthorized excavation consists of removal of materials beyond indicated subgrade elevations or side dimensions –indicated in the Project Geotechnical Report. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work shall be at the Contractor's expense. Backfill and compact unauthorized excavations as specified for authorized excavations of the same classification, unless otherwise directed by the Architect - Engineer.
- E. Additional Excavation:
1. When excavation has reached required subgrade elevations, notify the independent testing laboratory which shall make an inspection of conditions.
 2. If unsuitable bearing materials are encountered at the required subgrade elevations, carry excavations deeper and replace the excavated material as directed by the Geotechnical Engineer.
 3. If an excavation extends below the bottom of footing elevation in suitable bearing material, a 1H:1V excavation oversize shall be required for every foot of new fill placed below the base of the footing. The contractor shall not receive additional compensation.
 4. Removal of unsuitable material in excess of one foot in depth and its replacement as directed will be paid on the basis of contract conditions relative to changes in the work.
- F. Stability of Excavations:
1. Comply with local codes and ordinances and requirements of agencies having jurisdiction. Slope sides of excavations as necessary for stability and compliance. Shore and brace where sloping is not possible either because of space restrictions or stability of material excavated. Maintain sides and slopes of excavations in a safe condition until completion of backfilling. Refer to the Geotechnical Report for further excavation stability requirements.
 2. Shoring and Bracing: Provide shoring and bracing designed for and adequate to resist all imposed loads.
- G. Dewatering:
1. Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from flowing into the excavations and flooding the project site and surrounding area.
 2. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Remove water from excavations to prevent softening of foundation bottoms, undercutting footings and soil changes detrimental to the stability of subgrades and foundations. Provide and maintain pumps, well points, sumps, suction and discharge lines and other dewatering system components necessary to convey the water away from excavations.
 3. Convey water removed from excavations and rainwater to collecting or run-off area. Establish and maintain temporary drainage ditches and other diversions outside the excavation limits for each structure. Do not use trench excavations for site utilities as temporary drainage ditches.
 4. Provide groundwater control as required to maintain groundwater levels at least 12 inches below the bottom of any excavation made during construction and at least 24 inches below the surface of any vibratory compaction operations.

- H. Material Storage:
 - 1. Stockpile excavated materials classified as satisfactory soil material where directed, until required for backfill or fill. Place, grade and shape stockpiles for proper drainage.
 - 2. Locate and retail fill materials away from edges of excavations.
 - 3. Dispose of excess soil material and waste materials as herein specified.
- I. Excavation for Structures:
 - 1. Conform to the elevations and dimensions shown on the drawings, within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.10 foot, and extending a sufficient distance from footings and foundations to permit placing and removal of concrete formwork, installation of services, other construction and for inspection.
 - 2. After excavating footings and foundations to approximate bearing elevations, perform final excavation in the presence of the Inspection and Testing Service Representative.
 - a. In excavating for final grading of footings and foundations, take care not to disturb the bottom of the excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before concrete reinforcement is placed. Trim bottoms to the required lines and grades to leave a solid base to receive concrete.
- J. Excavation for Trenches: Dig trenches to the uniform width required for the particular item to be installed, sufficiently wide to provide ample working room.
 - 1. Excavate trenches to the depth indicated or required. Carry the depth of trenches for piping to establish the indicated flow lines and invert elevations. Beyond the building perimeter, keep bottoms of trenches sufficiently below finish grade to avoid freeze-ups.
 - 2. Grade bottom of trenches as indicated, notching under pipe bells to provide solid bearing for the entire body of the pipe.
 - 3. Backfill trenches with concrete where trench excavations pass within 18 inches of column or wall footings and which are carried below the bottom of such footings, or which pass under wall footings. Place concrete to the level of the bottom of adjacent footing. Concrete is specified in Division 3.
 - 4. Do not backfill trenches until tests and inspections have been made and backfilling authorized by the Architect-Engineer. Use care in backfilling to avoid damage or displacement of pipe systems.
- K. Closing Abandoned Underground Utilities: Fully grout any abandoned underground utilities not indicated to be removed.
- L. Cold Weather Protection: Protect excavation bottoms against freezing when the atmospheric temperature is less than 35 degrees F.

3.5 BACKFILL AND FILL

- A. General:
 - 1. In all excavations, use satisfactory excavated or borrow material that has been sampled, tested and approved by the soil testing agency.
 - 2. Backfill excavations as promptly as the work permits, but not until completion of the following:
 - a. Completion of construction below finish grade including, where applicable, dampproofing, waterproofing and perimeter insulation.
 - b. Inspection, testing, approval and recording locations of underground utilities.

- c. Removal of concrete framework.
 - d. Removal of shoring and bracing, and backfilling of voids with satisfactory materials. Cut off temporary sheet piling driven below bottom of structures and remove in manner to prevent settlement of the structure or utilities, or leave in place if required.
 - e. Removal of trash and debris.
 - f. Permanent or temporary horizontal bracing is in place on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Placement and Competition:
- 1. Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8 to 10 inches in loose depth for material compacted by vibratory compaction equipment and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
 - 2. Before compaction, moisten or aerate each layer as necessary to provide the optimum moisture content of the soil material. Compact each layer to the required percentage of maximum dry density or relative dry for each area classification. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen or contain frost or ice.
 - 3. Place backfill and fill materials evenly adjacent to structures, to the required elevations. Take care to prevent wedging action of the backfill against structures by carrying the material uniformly around the structure to approximately the same elevation in each lift. Do not overcompact against retaining walls and structures. Provide temporary bracing for retaining walls which are backfilled prior to construction of any restraining slab or other element.
- C. Backfill at Specific Locations:
- 1. Building footings shall bear directly on undisturbed native soils or lean-mix concrete over undisturbed native soil as defined by the Addendum to the Project Geotechnical Report dated January 29, 2010, and the Contract Documents. Determination of all footing bearing elevations shall be made in the field by a qualified geotechnical engineer.
 - 2. Floor slabs shall bear on a 6 inch thick clean sand layer over engineered fill as defined in the Project Geotechnical Report.
 - 3. Retaining Wall Backfill: Backfill within 6 horizontal feet of retaining walls shall consist of NFS sand fill with gradation as defined in the Project Geotechnical Report.

3.6 COMPACTION

- A. General: Control soil compaction during construction for compliance with the percentage of density specified.
- B. Percentage of Maximum Density Requirements: Compact soil to the following percentages of maximum dry density determined in accordance with ASTM D1557:
 Typical Floor Slab Supporting Areas: Prepare slab subgrade areas as defined in the Project Geotechnical Report. Compact each layer of engineered fill material to not less than 95 percent maximum dry density determined in accordance with ASTM D1557.2. Against Retaining Structures: Compact to not less than 95 percent maximum dry density determined in accordance with ASTM D1557.

3. Lawn and Planting Areas: Compact top 6 inches of subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 90 percent maximum dry density.
- C. Moisture Control:
1. Where the subgrade or layer or soil material must be moisture conditioned before compaction uniformly apply water to the surface of subgrade, or layer of soil material, to prevent free water appearing on the surface during or subsequent to compaction operations.
 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, soil material that is too wet to permit compaction to specified density.
 3. Soil material that has been removed because it is too wet to permit compaction may be stockpiled or spread and allowed to dry. Assist drying by discing, harrowing or pulverizing, until the moisture content is reduced to a satisfactory value.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Allow independent testing laboratory to inspect and approve subgrades and fill layers before further construction work is performed.
- B. The independent testing laboratory shall perform the following:
 1. Field density tests in accordance with ASTM D1556 (sand cone method) or ASTM D2922 (nuclear method).
 2. Footing Subgrade: For each strata of soil on which footings will be placed, conduct, at least one density test to verify the required design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of each footing subgrade may be based on a visual comparison of each subgrade with the related tested strata, when acceptable to the Architect-Engineer.
 3. Paved Areas and Building Slab Subgrade: Make at least one field density test of the subgrade and each lift of compacted fill for every 5,000 square feet of paved area or building slab, but in no case less than three tests at each level.
- C. If, in the opinion of the Architect-Engineer, based on testing service reports and inspection, the subgrade or fills which have been placed are below the specified density, provide additional compaction and testing at no additional expense.
 1. The results of density tests will be considered satisfactory when the average of any four consecutive test are each instance equal to or greater than the specified density, and if not more than one density test out of five has a value greater than two percent below the required density.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protection of Graded Areas:
 1. Protect newly graded areas from traffic and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
 2. Repair and re-establish grades in settled, eroded and rutted areas to the specified tolerances.
- B. Reconditioning Compacted Areas: Where completed compacted areas are disturbed by subsequent construction operations or adverse weather, scarify the surface, re-shape and compact to the required density prior to further construction. Use hand tamping for re-compaction over underground utilities and underfloor subdrains, if any.

3.9 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS AND WASTE MATERIAL

- A. Removal from Owner's Property: Remove all waste materials, including excavated material classified as unsatisfactory soil material, trash and debris, and legally dispose of it off the Owner's property.

3.10 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. General: Inspection and testing of soils shall conform to the requirements of Section 1704.7 of the International Building Code, 2006 Edition in addition to other requirements as stated herein.

END OF SECTION 02220

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 03100 - CONCRETE
FORMWORK**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies formwork for cast-in-place concrete for the following:
 - 1. Footings.
 - 2. Foundation walls.
 - 3. Slabs-on-grade.
 - 4. Concrete toppings.
 - 5. Building walls.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Structural Testing and Special Inspections".
 - 2. Division 03 Section "Concrete Reinforcement".
 - 3. Division 03 Section "Cast-In-Place Concrete".
 - 4. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel" for embedded items.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ACI 117 – Specifications for Tolerance for Concrete Construction and Materials
- B. ACI 301 – Specification for Structural Concrete for Buildings.
- C. ACI 318 – Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.
- D. ACI 347 – Guide to Formwork for Concrete.
- E. PS1 – Construction and Industrial Plywood.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a Specialty Structural Engineer detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.
 - 1. Engineering Responsibility: Formwork, bracing, shoring, and reshoring design for construction loads are sole responsibility of Installer's Specialty Structural Engineer.
- C. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Form materials and form-release agents.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule for all action submittal items.
- B. Minutes of Pre-Installation conference.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For adhesives, including printed statement of VOC content.
 - 2. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For composite-wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
 - 3. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates certifying that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include evidence that mill is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
 - a. Include statement indicating costs for each certified wood product.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed concrete work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Specialty Structural Engineer Qualifications: Employ professional Engineer, registered in the State of Minnesota, to perform design of formwork and shoring for construction loads. Sign and seal design Shop Drawings submitted to Owner for review.
- C. Mockups: See Specification Section 03300 "Cast in Place Concrete."
- D. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
 - 1. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, forms and form removal limitations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 - 2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
 - 1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.

2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
 - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
 - c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
 - d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
- D. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
- E. Soil Retainers: Material to be rigid and non-degradable.
- F. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips.
- G. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
- H. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- I. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
 1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Work shall conform to ACI 117 and ACI 301, except as modified by requirements of these Contract Documents.
- B. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- C. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated.

- D. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 - 1. Class B, 1/4 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces exposed to view and as indicated by the Architect.
 - 2. Class C, 1/2 inch, for rough-formed finished surfaces unless noted otherwise.
- E. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- F. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- G. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- H. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- I. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete. Size chamfer as indicated on drawings.
- J. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- K. Fastening Devices for Other Work:
 - 1. Provide for installation of inserts, reglets, hangers, metal ties, anchor bolts and other fastening devices required for attachment of other work.
 - 2. Properly locate fastening devices in cooperation with other trades and secure position before concrete is placed.
 - 3. Where concrete surfaces are veneered with masonry, install masonry anchor slots.
 - a. In concrete forms set vertically 2'-0" on center.
 - b. Install two continuous slots per face at each column face wider than 1'-4".
 - 4. Where masonry abuts concrete surface, install one continuous masonry anchor slot in concrete forms set vertically for each eight inches width of masonry, centered in masonry width.
- L. Install sleeves in concrete piers, columns, beams or joists only upon approval of the Architect.
- M. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- N. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- O. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VOID FORMS AND SOIL RETAINERS

- A. Placement:
 - 1. Place forms on smooth, level, firm, dry surface.
 - 2. Butt carton forms tightly end to end and side to side, seam side down.
 - 3. Place cover sheets on carton forms and staple.
- B. Moisture Protection:
 - 1. Do not let carton forms become wet.
 - 2. Remove and replace wet cartons.
- C. Place soil retainers at edge of grade beams.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
 - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 75 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
 - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector and independent testing agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports. Cooperate with testing agency to facilitate the execution of its duties.
- B. Inspect formwork prior to concrete placement to verify resulting element width, depth and length correspond to those indicated on formwork installation drawings and Contract Documents.
- C. Where special formed surface finish requirements are required, verify forming materials comply with requirements.
- D. Adequacy of formwork, shoring, and reshoring to support vertical and lateral loads during construction is sole responsibility of Contractor.

END OF SECTION 03100

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 03200 - CONCRETE
REINFORCEMENT**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Reinforcing bars for cast-in-place concrete.
 - 2. Smooth bar dowels and diamond dowels and dowel baskets for concrete slab joints.
 - 3. Deformed bar anchors and headed shear connectors.
 - 4. Stud rails.
 - 5. Couplers for reinforcing bars.
 - 6. Welded wire fabric.
 - 7. Ties and supports for reinforcement.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Structural Testing and Special Inspections".
 - 2. Division 03 Section "Concrete Formwork".
 - 3. Division 03 Section "Cast-In-Place Concrete".
 - 4. Division 03 Section "Unbonded Post-Tensioned Concrete".

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ACI 117 - Specification for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.
- B. ACI 301 – Specification for Structural Concrete.
- C. ACI 315 - Standards on Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement.
- D. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.
- E. AWS D1.4 - Structural Welding Code Reinforcing Steel.
- F. CRSI - Manual of Standard Practice.
- G. CRSI - Placing Reinforcing Bars.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: Submit in accordance with ACI 315, "Standards on Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement"
 - 1. Provide necessary plan, elevation and section detail placing drawings that illustrate fabrication, bending, and placement of reinforcement.
 - 2. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
- C. Welding certificates – signed by contractor certifying that welders comply with requirements of Article 1.5 – "Quality Assurance."

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Minutes of Pre-Installation conference.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittal:
 - 1. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR4.2 (if required): For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator utilizing experienced detailers who have successfully completed CRSI's Reinforcing Bar Detailer Program.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
- D. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
 - 1. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, steel reinforcement installation, and protection during concrete placement.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage. Avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706, deformed.
- C. Deformed Bar Anchors (DBA): Standard fluxed ASTM A496 deformed bars prepared for stud welding.
 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Erico Fastening.
 - b. Nelson Stud Welding.
- D. Headed Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.
 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Erico Fastening.
 - b. Nelson Stud Welding.
- E. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed bars, ASTM A 775, epoxy coated.
- F. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, galvanized.
- G. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.
- H. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

2.3 JOINT DOWELS

- A. Dowel Caps: Plastic material of size recommended for rod diameter.
- B. Smooth Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burr. Provide dowel ends that are sawn with round ends, not sheared with crimped ends.
- C. Smooth Dowel Support Baskets:
 1. Available Manufactures:
 - a. American Highway Technology.
- D. Smooth Dowel Coating: Grease or bituminous coating.
- E. Diamond Plate Dowels: Saw cut from ASTM A 36 hot rolled plate.
 1. Available Products:
 - a. Diamond Dowel™ by PNA, Inc.
- F. Smooth Plate Dowels and Baskets:
 1. Approved Manufacturers:
 - a. PNA, Inc.

- G. Epoxy-Coated Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, ASTM A 775 epoxy coated.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Epoxy Repair Coating: Liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating; compatible with epoxy coating on reinforcement and complying with ASTM A 775.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. 3M Scotchkote 213PC or liquid, two-part, epoxy repair coating or approved equal.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, or plastic according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," and as follows:
 - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
 - 2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
- C. Rebar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire fabric in place. Chairs are to be stable and resist tipping.
 - 1. Dayton Richmond: Aztec E-Z Chair – PEZ and Tower Chair PTC.
 - 2. General Technologies, Inc.: Composite Chairs and Composite Slab-Beam Bolsters.
- D. Supports for slabs-on-grade with steel reinforcement: Use supports with sand plates or horizontal runners.
 - 1. Dayton Richmond: Aztec E-Z Chair – PEZ with E-Z Chair Sand Plate PSP.
 - 2. General Technologies, Inc.: Composite Chairs on Sand Plates.
- E. Compression Couplers: Use only where explicitly referenced on Drawings.
 - 1. Speed sleeve by Erico.
 - 2. G-Loc by Gateway Erectors.
- F. Tension Couplers: Use only where explicitly referenced on Drawings.
 - 1. Lenton Couplers by Erico.
 - 2. MRC 150 by Dayton Superior.
 - 3. No-Slip Coupler by Fox-Howlet.

2.5 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" and accepted shop drawings.
- B. Do not re-bend or straighten steel reinforcement except where specifically accepted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" and accepted shop drawings for placing reinforcement. Adjust reinforcing to avoid sleeves, blockouts and other voids in concrete.
- B. Underfloor Vapor Retarders: When chairing reinforcement on top of underfloor vapor retarders, use only supports with integral sand plates.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
 - 2. Repair damage and reseal cuts or punctures in vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- C. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- D. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement by formwork, construction, or concrete placement operations. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
 - 1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.
- E. Provide bar supports in sufficient number and heavy enough to carry steel they support. Place no bar more than 2 inches beyond last leg of continuous bar support. Do not use bar supports to support runways for concrete buggies, or similar loads.
 - 1. Maximum support bar spacing shall not exceed 48 inches.
 - 2. Maximum bolster spacing shall not exceed 36 inches for #4 support bar or 48 inches for #5 support bar.
- F. Bar supports on ground may be concrete block for slab depth of 7 inches or less and if positioned in staggered pattern. Provide bar chairs with sand feet where slab thickness exceeds 7 inches.
- G. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- H. Steel reinforcement partially embedded in concrete shall not be field bent, except as indicated or permitted by Structural Engineer.
- I. For walls reinforced on both faces, provide spreader bars and chairs to surfaces of forms on each side at spacings not to exceed 8 feet in either direction. For walls with single layer of reinforcing, provide chairs each side at spacings not to exceed 8 feet in either direction.
- J. Install epoxy coated reinforcing bars using either epoxy or plastic coated tie wires. Place epoxy coated steel on epoxy coated bar supports. Patch cut ends and areas of damage.
- K. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.
- L. Center smooth dowel bars on joints, position dowels at center of slab depth and align perpendicular to face of joints both vertically and horizontally. Within 30 minutes

before placement of adjacent concrete along doveled joints, apply dowel coating on free ends of dowels.

- M. Install diamond plate dowels in concrete slab-on-grade joints where shown. Install diamond plate dowels per manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 PROTECTION AND REPAIR

- A. Install additional bar supports at locations where reinforcement position is not maintained due to collapsed chairs or construction activity from time of original placement.
- B. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963. Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated steel reinforcement.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Assign individual to monitor reinforcement position during concrete placement and reposition bars that are displaced due to construction activity.
- B. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector and material testing agency to perform field quality control inspections and testing in accordance with Division 01 Section "Structural Tests and Inspections" and as specified herein.
- C. Submit reports of inspections and material testing as soon as practical after they are made.
- D. Inspect reinforcement in all cast-in-place concrete footings, foundation frost walls, basement walls, retaining walls, and columns, slabs on grade, and topping slabs.
- E. Verify reinforcing bar grade.
- F. Verify reinforcing bars are free of dirt, excessive rust and damage.
- G. Verify reinforcing bars are adequately tied, chaired and supported to prevent displacement during concrete placement.
- H. Verify proper clear distances between bars and to surfaces of concrete.
- I. Verify reinforcing bar size and placement.
- J. Verify bar laps for proper length and stagger and bar bends for minimum diameter, slope and length.
- K. Verify mechanical splices are placed in accordance with Contract Documents and reviewed shop drawings.
- L. Verify epoxy coating is present at locations noted on the Contract Documents; include tie wires, chairs, bolsters, etc. Verify coating damage is repaired in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- M. Verify installation of anchor rods, embedded plates and angles are placed in accordance with the Contract Documents.

- N. Correct work that does not comply with specified requirements prior to scheduling concrete placement.
- O. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 03200

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL TERMINAL
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 03300 -
CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, vapor retarder, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, finishes and all related accessories, for the following:
 - 1. Footings.
 - 2. Foundation walls and piers.
 - 3. Slabs-on-grade.
 - 4. Columns.
 - 5. Concrete toppings.
 - 6. Base slabs.
 - 7. Miscellaneous concrete items.
 - 8. Placement of embedded items provided by other trades
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Structural Tests and Special Inspections."
 - 2. Division 03 Section "Concrete Formwork."
 - 3. Division 03 Section "Concrete Reinforcement."
 - 4. Division 03 Section "Concrete Topping."
 - 5. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for wedge type inserts and dovetail slots.
 - 6. Division 05 Sections for items cast into concrete.
 - 7. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ACI 117 – Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.
- B. ACI 214 - Recommended Practice for Evaluation of Strength Test Results of Concrete.
- C. ACI 223 – Standard Practice for the Use of Shrinkage Compensation Concrete.
- D. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings.
- E. ACI 302 – Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.
- F. ACI 304 - Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting and Placing Concrete.
- G. ACI 305 - Hot Weather Concreting.

- H. ACI 306 - Cold Weather Concreting.
- I. ACI 308 – Standard Practice for Curing Concrete.
- J. ACI 309 - Guide for Consolidation of Concrete.
- K. ACI 318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete.
- L. ASTM E 1155 – Standard Test Method for Determining F_F Floor Flatness and F_L Floor Levelness Numbers.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Floor Flatness Number, F_F , measures floor curvature or flatness per ASTM E 1155.
- B. Floor Levelness Number, F_L , measures floor inclination from a horizontal plane per ASTM E 1155.
 - 1. Floor Levelness, (F_L), tolerances only apply to nonsloping slabs-on-grade and suspended slabs shored at time of testing. Floor Levelness tolerances shall not apply to slabs placed on unshored form surfaces, shored surfaces after removal of shores, or pitched slab surfaces per ACI 302.
- C. Overall F_F/F_L numbers represent minimum values acceptable for all combined local floor test sections representing the specified floor finish area per ACI 302.
- D. Local F_F/F_L test areas shall be defined as follows per ACI 302.
 - 1. Areas bounded by construction or control joints for slabs-on-grade.
 - 2. Areas bounded by columns and / or wall lines for elevated structural slabs.
 - 3. No less than one-half bay size.
- E. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. Form-release agents
 - 2. Concrete Admixtures.
 - 3. Curing Materials.
 - 4. Joint Fillers.
 - 5. Waterstops.
 - 6. Floor and Slab Treatments.
 - 7. Bonding Agents.
 - 8. Adhesives.
 - 9. Repair Materials
- B. Concrete Mix Designs: Each concrete mix design submittal shall contain the following information:

1. Mix Number (which will correspond to mix ticket on trucks delivered to site).
 2. Application for which concrete is designed (i.e. – footings, slabs, etc...)
 3. Applicable mix performance criteria including:
 - a. Final Design strength at 28 days.
 - b. Unit Weight.
 - c. Air Content.
 - d. Slump (with water only and after addition of WRA and / or HRWRA).
 - e. For shrinkage compensating concrete, provide results of restrained prism expansion tests, ASTM C878, with mix design.
 4. Applicable mix ingredients including quantities, ASTM designations, and sources for:
 - a. Cementitious materials.
 - b. Aggregate source, geological type, size, and shape.
 - 1) Include total gradation for combined coarse and fine aggregates for mixes specified to contain Well Graded Aggregate.
 - 2) Included calculated Coarseness Factor and Workability Factor for mixes specifying limits on these values.
 - c. Water.
 - 1) Indicate amount of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
 - d. Water cementitious materials ratio, w/cm.
 - e. Admixtures.
 - f. Fibers, color pigments, and other additions.
 5. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- C. Proposed construction joint and saw-cut contraction joint locations for slabs-on-grade.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule for all action submittal items.
- B. Manufacturer's Instructions for each type of product indicated:
1. Curing and Sealing Compounds.
 2. Joint Fillers.
 3. Waterstops.
 4. Floor and Slab Treatments.
 5. Bonding Agents.
 6. Adhesives.
 7. Repair Materials.
- C. Preconstruction Material Test Reports:
1. Cementitious Materials.
 2. Compressive strength results of trial batches or historical test data, in accordance with ACI 318 Chapter 5, indicating following:
 - a. Specified compressive strength, f'_c .
 - b. Average compressive strength, f'_{cr} .
 - c. Number of consecutive tests.
 - d. Overall standard deviation.

- e. Overall coefficient of variation.
 - f. Minimum moving average of three consecutive strength tests.
- 3. Aggregate gradation, specific gravity, and absorption.
- 4. Aggregate potential alkali-silica reactivity (ASR) for concrete in exterior, corrosive, or wet environments in accordance with ASTM C 289.
- D. Minutes of Pre-Installation conference.
- E. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2 if required: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating weights, costs, and percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating material weights and costs for each product having recycled content.
 - b. Design Mixtures for Credit ID 1.1: For each concrete mixture containing recycled pozzolanic or cementitious materials as a replacement for portland cement and for equivalent concrete mixtures that do not contain portland cement replacements.
 - 2. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 5.1 and Credit MR 5.2 if required: For products having Regional content (Extracted, and processed or manufactured within 500 miles of site), documentation indicating total weights, costs and percentages by weight of regional content.
 - a. Include statement indicating material weights, and costs for each product having regional content.
- F. Construction Test Reports:
 - 1. Concrete tests.
 - 2. Floor tolerance measurement.
 - 3. Industrial floor joint filler inspection.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Floor Correction Agreement: Submit written floor slab extended correction period agreement in duplicate within ten days after date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Maintenance Contracts:
 - 1. Curing and Sealing Compounds.
 - 2. Floor and Slab Treatments.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data:
 - 1. Curing and Sealing Compounds.
 - 2. Floor and Slab Treatments.
- D. Bonds.
- E. Warranty Documentation.
- F. Record Documentation.
- G. Sustainable Design Closeout Documentation.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **Installer Qualifications:** An experienced installer who has completed concrete work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. **Testing Agency Qualifications:** An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- D. **Source Limitations:** Obtain materials from same source throughout Work.
- E. **Mockups:** Construct mockups as directed by the Architect to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 - 1. **Exposed Concrete Panel Samples:** Cast concrete formed-surface panels to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, and standard of workmanship for review and acceptance by Architect and Owner.
 - a. Build panel to size and in the location as directed by the Architect.
 - b. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work and shall remain exposed to view for duration of work as basis for quality of final construction.
 - c. Sample mockups not selected for incorporation shall be demolished and removed from site.
- F. Contractor shall assign a qualified staff member to perform quality control on their own work in the field on a daily basis, for each day work is performed. The Contractor's quality control staff shall review their own work for compliance with contract documents before the Contractor notifies the design team of readiness for required inspections, tests and observations to be provided by the Owner's Representatives.
- G. **Pre-Installation Conference:** Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination" and Division 01 Section "Structural Tests and Special Inspections".
 - 1. Review installer qualifications, methods, scheduling and testing procedures before work is started.
 - 2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, steel reinforcement installation, concrete finishes and finishing, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, semirigid joint fillers, vapor-retarder installation, anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances, floor and slab flatness and levelness measurement, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.

3. Authorized representatives of concrete supplier, industrial floor supplier and installer, floor finisher, testing and inspection agency, admixture supplier, steel fiber reinforcement supplier, Engineer, Owner and Construction Manager.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.
- B. Joint Filler, Joint Sealers and Curing Materials: Deliver in original factory packaging and unopened containers and protect from damage and contamination.

1.10 SITE CONDITIONS

- A. Provide total building enclosure including weather tight roof and walls before placing interior concrete slabs.
- B. During installation of interior slabs on grade, close openings in exterior walls and roofs enclosing areas.
- C. Provide minimum interior temperature 50 degrees F during installation and curing.
- D. Vent heaters or combustion equipment to outside.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious and Pozzolan Materials: Use the following materials, of the same type, brand, and source for each required type of concrete and on which selection of concrete proportions was based:
 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type 1 or Type I/II.
 2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F, and as specified herein.
 - a. Available Alkalies, as Na₂O equivalent: 1.5% maximum
 - b. Loss On Ignition (LOI): 1% maximum
 - c. Calcium Oxide Limit (CaO): 20% maximum
 3. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag (GGBFS): ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
 4. Microsilica: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.

5. Replacement Ratio: Portland cement shall be replaced on an equal mass (not weight) basis. Material replacements shall be expressed as a percent, by mass, of the total cementitious materials content, with proportions selected for 28 day compressive strengths equal to those specified. The change in volume resulting from the substitutions shall be determined and an adjustment in both coarse and fine aggregate proportions shall be determined in order to ensure a unit volume.
- Fly Ash replacement shall not exceed 30% for Class C, 20% for Class F, or as specified for a particular mix design.
 - GGBFS replacement shall not exceed 30% unless specified otherwise.
 - Microsilica replacement shall not exceed 10%.
 - Maximum cement replacement of concrete mixes containing pozzolan, and / or GGBFS combinations shall not exceed 50% unless specified otherwise.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33. Do not use aggregates containing soluble salts or other substances which can cause stains on exposed surfaces. Use aggregates from one source of supply corresponding to that on which selection of concrete proportions was based.

- Coarse Aggregate: Minimum Class Designation:
 - Class 3S Typical
 - Class 4S Exterior horizontal concrete
 - Maximum absorption 1.7%
 - Class 5S Exterior exposed architectural concrete
 - Maximum absorption 1.7%
- Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- Aggregate Gradation: Conform to ASTM C 33 and as specified herein.
 - Well Graded Aggregate: Provide in concrete mixes indicated with the combined coarse and fine aggregates meeting the following criteria:

Sieve Size	Top Size Aggregate		
	1 1/2"	1"	3/4"
% Retained on Sieve			
1 1/2"	0% - 8%		
1"	8% - 18%	0% - 8%	0% - 6%
3/4"	8% - 18%	8% - 22%	6% - 22%
1/2"	8% - 18%	8% - 22%	6% - 22%
3/8"	8% - 18%	8% - 22%	6% - 22%
No. 4	8% - 18%	8% - 22%	6% - 22%
No. 8	8% - 18%	8% - 22%	6% - 22%
No. 16	8% - 18%	8% - 22%	6% - 22%
No. 30	8% - 18%	8% - 22%	6% - 22%
No. 50	3% - 12%	3% - 12%	3% - 12%
No. 100	0% - 8%	0% - 8%	0% - 8%
No. 200	0% - 5%	0% - 5%	0% - 5%

- At least 55% by weight shall be retained on or above the #4 sieve.
- A maximum of two non-adjacent sieves between 1 inch and No. 50 may fall outside the prescribed limits above with a minimum of 5% retained and a maximum of 22% retained on these nonconforming sieves.

4. Aggregates for Exposed Architectural Finish Concrete: Aggregates shall be specially selected for color and size as selected by Architect.

C. Water: ASTM C 94 and potable.

2.3 ADMIXTURES

- A. General: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride or thiocyanates.
- B. Air-Entraining Admixture (AEA): ASTM C 260.
 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: MB AE 90 or Micro Air.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company: Air-Mix.
 - c. General Resource Technology: Polychem AE.
 - d. Grace Construction Products: Daravair series or Darex series.
 - e. Protex Industries: Protex AES.
- C. Water-Reducing Admixture (WRA): ASTM C 494, Type A.
 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: Pozzolith 210 or Pozzolith 322 N
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company: Eucon WR-75.
 - c. General Resource Technology: Polychem 1000.
 - d. Grace Construction Products: WRDA.
- D. Mid-Range Water-Reducing Admixture (MRWRA): ASTM C 494, Type A.
 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: Polyheed 997 or Polyheed FC100.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company: Eucon A+.
 - c. General Resource Technology: KB-1000.
 - d. Grace Construction Products: Daracem-65.
- E. Polycarboxylate High-Range Water-Reducing Admixture (HRWRA): ASTM C 494, Type F.
 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: Glenium 3000 NS, 3030 NS, or 3200 HES.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company: Plastol 5000.
 - c. Grace Construction Products: ADVA.
- F. Whelan Gum or Methylcellulose Viscosity Modifying Admixture (VMA):
 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: Rheomac VMA 358, 362, or 450.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company: Viscrol.
- G. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B and D.
 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: Pozzolith 80 or Pozzolith 200 N.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company: Eucon Retarder-75.
 - c. General Resource Technology: Polychem R.
 - d. Grace Construction Products: Daratard 17.
- H. Non-Corrosive, Non-Chloride Accelerator: ASTM C494, Type C or E.

1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: Pozzolith NC 534.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company: Accelguard 80.
 - c. General Resource Technology: Polychem Super Set.
 - d. Grace Construction Products: Polarset.

- I. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494, Type C.
 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: Rheocrete CNI.
 - b. Boral Material Technologies, Inc.: Boral BCN.
 - c. Euclid Chemical Company: Eucon CIA.
 - d. Grace Construction Products: DCI.

- J. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.
 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: Rheocrete 222+.
 - b. Axim Concrete Technologies: Catexol 1000CI.
 - c. Boral Material Technologies, Inc.: Boral BCN2.
 - d. Cortec Corporation: MCI 2000 or 2005NS.
 - e. Grace Construction Products: DCI-S.

- K. Integral Water Repellant Admixtures:
 1. Available Products:
 - a. Grace Construction Products: Darapel
 - b. Xypex Chemical Corporation: Admix C-1000 or C-2000.

- L. Prohibited Admixtures: Calcium chloride, thiocyanates or admixtures effectively containing chloride ions (more than 0.05 percent) are not permitted.

2.4 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch.
 1. Available Products:
 - a. Colloid Environmental Technologies Company; Volclay Waterstop-RX.
 - b. Concrete Sealants Inc.; Conseal CS-231.
 - c. Greenstreak; Swellstop.
 - d. Henry Company, Sealants Division; Hydro-Flex.
 - e. JP Specialties, Inc.; Earthshield Type 20.
 - f. Progress Unlimited, Inc.; Superstop.
 - g. TCMiraDRI; Mirastop.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight.
 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon steel.

2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
 3. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
- B. Miscellaneous angles, channels, and plates: ASTM A 36.
- C. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.0217-inch- thick (26-ga.), galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Gateway Building Products.
 - b. Heckman Building Products.
 - c. Hohmann-Bernard.
- D. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch thick (22-ga.), with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Gateway Building Products: Beehive Slot.
 - b. Heckman Building Products: No. 100.
- E. Stair Nosings:
1. Available Products:
 - a. Wooster Products: Spectra Type WP4C.

2.6 CURING, CLEANING, AND SEALING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF: Confilm
 - b. Burke by Edoco; BurkeFilm.
 - c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
 - d. Conspec; Aquafilm.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company; Eucobar.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
- B. Water Cure:
1. Waterproof paper.
 2. Reef Industries: Transguard Economy Grade. (ASTM C 171, 20-mils thick, polypropylene sheet with nonperforated white coating.)
 3. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz. /sq. yd. when dry.
 4. Dayton Bag and Burlap: Burlene.
 5. Reef Industries: Transguard 4000; 42-mil thick, fiber mat with polyethylene sheet backing.
- C. Water: ASTM C 94 and potable.
- D. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Burke by Edoco; Aqua Resin Cure.
 - b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.

- c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company; Kurez DR VOX.
 - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
 - f. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF; Kure-N-Seal
 - b. Burke by Edoco; Spartan Cote WB II 20 Percent.
 - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
 - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-19).
 - e. Euclid Chemical Company; Diamond Clear VOX.
 - f. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
 - g. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
- F. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A, minimum 25 percent total solids.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Burke by Edoco; Cureseal 1315.
 - b. ChemMasters; Spray-Cure & Seal Plus.
 - c. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Cure and Seal (J-22UV).
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company; Super Diamond Clear.
 - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal Plus.
 - f. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; CS-309/30.
- G. Clear, Non-yellowing, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A, minimum 25 percent total solids.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. BASF; Kure 1315
 - b. Burke by Edoco; Cureseal 1315 WB.
 - c. ChemMasters; Polyseal WB.
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company; Super Diamond Clear VOX.
 - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal WB Plus.
 - f. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-30.
- H. Concrete Floor Cleaner and Stripper:
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Burke by Edoco; Burke Klean.
 - b. Dayton Superior Corporation; Citrus Peel (J-48).
 - c. Euclid Chemical Company; Euco Clean & Strip.
 - d. Kaufman Products, Inc.; K Pro CD.
 - e. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Citrex.
- I. Penetrating Liquid Densifier and Sealer: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Burke by Edoco; Titan Hard.
 - b. ChemMasters; Chemisil Plus.
 - c. Curecrete Distribution Inc.; Ashford Formula.
 - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Sure Hard.
 - e. Euclid Chemical Company; Euco Diamond Hard.

- f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; SureHard.
- g. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Seal Hard.

2.7 JOINT MATERIALS

- A. Equipment Control joint saw:
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Soff-Cut International; "Soff-Cut System," early-entry dry-cut saw with Skid Plate.
- B. Expansion Joint Material: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. W.R. Meadows.
 - b. BASF.
- C. Joint Backer Rod: Flexible, compressible, closed-cell polyethylene foam, not less than 10 psi compression deflection.
- D. Joint Filler-Industrial Slabs: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, per ASTM D 2240.
 - 1. Metzger/McGuire, MM80.
 - 2. Metzger/McGuire, SPAL-PRO RSF at freezers.
- E. Interior Joint Sealer: Mameco, Vulkem 45.
- F. Interior Bond Breaker Joint: 30 pound asphalt felt, unperforated.

2.8 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- B. Under Slab Vapor Retarder: ASTM E1745, Class A.
 - 1. Manufacturers and Products:
 - a. Barrier Bac, Inc., VB250 or VB350.
 - b. Raven Industries, Vapor Block 10 or 15.
 - c. Reef Industries, Inc., Vaporguard.
 - d. Stego Industries, Stego Wrap Vapor Barrier 15 mil.
 - 2. Accessories:
 - a. Seam tape: High density polyethylene tape with pressure sensitive adhesive, minimum 4 inches wide.
 - b. Pipe boots: Constructed from vapor barrier membrane and seam tape.

2.9 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.

3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.10 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
- B. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94, with exceptions specified herein, and ASTM C 1116 where fibers are used, and furnish batch ticket information.
1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
- C. Admixtures: Use approved admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use chemical admixtures in concrete, as required, for placement, workability, durability, and controlled set time.
- D. Air Content: Do not allow air content of hard-troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.
- E. Concrete Slump Limits: Measured according to ASTM C 143 at point of placement.
1. 4 inches without water reducing admixtures
 2. 5 inches after addition of WRA or MWRA.
 3. 7 inches after addition of HRWRA.
 4. A tolerance of up to one inch above indicated maximum will be allowed for one batch in any five consecutive batches tested.
 5. If the maximum water-cement ratio is not exceeded, concrete arriving at the jobsite within 60 minutes of the initial batching that has a slump less than the maximum allowed may have water added when accepted by the project inspector.
 6. Water reducing admixtures will not be incorporated in combination with shrinkage compensating concrete unless approved by the Engineer.
 7. Water reducing admixtures may be added to increase the slump when water can not be added and additional slump is necessary for workability when accepted by the project inspector.

8. Water shall not be added to the mix after any supplemental water reducing admixtures have been dosed into the mixer.
- F. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

Item	Requirements
Compressive Strength at 56 days (min), f'_c	4000 psi
Maximum Cementitious Content	520 lb/cy
Maximum water/cementitious materials ratio, w/cm	0.50
Cementitious Materials	
Portland Cement, Type I or Type I/II	50%-100%
Supplementary Cementitious Materials	0%-50%
Top Size Aggregate	1-1/2 inch

- B. Foundation Walls and Piers: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

Item	Requirements
Compressive Strength at 28 days (min), f'_c	4000 psi
Maximum Cementitious Content	520 lb/cy
Maximum water/cementitious materials ratio, w/cm	0.45
Cementitious Materials	
Portland Cement, Type I or Type I/II	60%-100%
Supplementary Cementitious Materials	0%-40%
Top Size Aggregate	1-1/2 inch
Air Content (at point of placement) at un-insulated exterior foundation walls	5.5% ($\pm 1.5\%$)

- C. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

Item	Requirements
Compressive Strength at 28 days (min), f'_c	4000 psi
Maximum Cementitious Content	520 lbs/yd ³
Maximum water/cementitious materials ratio, w/cm	0.44
Cementitious Materials	
Portland Cement, Type I or Type I/II	70%-100%
Fly Ash, Class C or F	20% - 30%
GGBFS	10% - 20%
Maximum Top Size Aggregate	1-1/2 inch
Aggregate Gradation	Well Graded
Coarseness Factor	52 - 70
Workability Factor	32 - 40
Multifilament Synthetic Fibers	1.5 lbs/yd ³
Air Content (at point of placement)	5.5% ($\pm 1.5\%$)

for slabs exposed to freezing and thawing	
---	--

- D. Suspended Slabs-On-Metal Deck: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

Item	Requirements
Compressive Strength at 28 days (min), f'_c	4000 psi
Equilibrium Unit Weight	150 lbs/ft ³ (\pm 3 lbs/ft ³)
Cementitious Materials Content	520 lbs/yd ³
Maximum water/cementitious materials ratio, w/cm	0.44
Cementitious Materials Portland Cement, Type I or Type I/II Fly Ash, Class C or F GGBFS	60% maximum 20% - 30% 10% - 20%
Top Size Aggregate	1.5 inch
Coarseness Factor	52-70
Workability Factor	32-40
Aggregate Gradation	Well Graded
Air Content (at point of placement)	3% maximum
Strux 90/40 Synthetic Fiber Reinforcement	5 lbs/yd ³

- E. Concrete Topping Slabs: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

Item	Requirements
Compressive Strength at 28 days (min), f'_c	4000 psi
Maximum Cementitious Content	564 lbs/yd ³
Maximum water/cementitious materials ratio, w/cm	0.42
Cementitious Materials Portland Cement, Type I or Type I/II Fly Ash, Class C or F GGBFS	60% maximum 20% - 30% 10% - 20%
Minimum Top Size Aggregate	1/2 inch
Aggregate Gradation	Well Graded
Multifilament Synthetic Fibers	1.5 lbs/yd ³

- F. Miscellaneous Concrete Items: Concrete stair pan fill, curbs, housekeeping pads, etc. Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:

Item	Requirements
Compressive Strength at 28 days (min), f'_c	3500 psi
Maximum water/cementitious materials ratio, w/cm	0.45
Cementitious Materials Portland Cement, Type I or Type I/II Supplementary Cementitious Materials	60% maximum 40% minimum
Minimum Top Size Aggregate	1/2 inch

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Work shall conform to ACI 117 and ACI 301, except as modified by requirements of these Contract Documents.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Verify actual locations of existing structure, new work previously placed and other construction to which the new work must fit by accurate field measurements before submittal of related shop drawings or fabrication; show recorded measurements on shop drawings submitted for review. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay of Work. Where work will be connected to existing masonry or concrete, contractor shall engage a testing agency to pre-locate hidden embeds and reinforcing steel prior to submittal of shop drawings. Provide templates and dimensions to fabricator for accurate alignment with existing conditions. Show field conditions impacting the work on the shop drawings, prior to submittal.

3.3 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
 3. Install wedge inserts for masonry shelf angle supports and sleeves for pipe and conduit.
 4. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

3.4 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect and Engineer.
 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Form joints with keyways and / or dowels as detailed. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
 3. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 4. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 5. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows where not specifically shown on Drawings:
1. Exterior Slabs:
 - a. Spacing shall not exceed 24 times slab thickness; 10 feet on center, maximum.
 - b. Short: long side ratio shall not be less than 3:4.
 2. Interior Slabs:
 - a. As indicated on drawings.
 - b. Short: long side ratio not less than 2:3.
 3. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 4. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with early-entry dry-cut power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
 - a. Install cuts 0 to 2 hours after final finishing and prior to final set.
 - b. Install joint protector at saw-cut intersections prior to cross cut.
 5. Provide cleanly cut, straight joints in toppings over joints in base slab.
 6. Do not saw cut slabs on metal deck.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install expansion joint material at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend expansion joint material full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Terminate full-width expansion joint material not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 3. Install expansion joint material in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

3.5 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

3.6 INSTALLING UNDER SLAB VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Install according to membrane manufacturer's current published instructions and ASTM E1643.
- B. Install over level granular base and under reinforcing and slabs on grade.
- C. Lap over footings and seal to foundation walls.
- D. Overlap membrane joints minimum 6 inches and seal continuously with seam tape.

- E. Seal penetrations and pipes with pipe boot fashioned from membrane and sealed with seam tape.
- F. Repair damaged membrane with patches of membrane overlapping damage minimum 6 inches and sealing completely with seam tape.

3.7 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
 - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- C. Clean forms, reinforcing and accessories and lubricate forms prior to placing concrete.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 - 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
 - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
 - 4. Do not insert vibrators to bottom of slabs-on-grade with underfloor vapor retarders to avoid damaging this membrane.
 - 5. Do not allow concrete to drop freely more than 4 feet.
 - 6. Use approved chutes equipped with suitable hoppers for placing where required.
 - 7. Place at rate that concrete is always plastic and flows readily into every space.
 - 8. Place beams, girders and haunches monolithically with floor system.
 - 9. Wait until concrete in columns and walls is no longer plastic before casting beams, girders or slabs supported by them.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 - 1. Before concrete slabs on grade are placed, verify that granular base is level and compacted.
 - 2. Sprinkle base to eliminate suction of water from concrete.
 - 3. Allow no freestanding water.

4. Place interior slabs only after permanent walls and roof enclose slab area.
 5. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 6. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 7. Do not insert vibrators to bottom of slabs-on-grade with underfloor vapor retarders to avoid damaging this membrane.
 8. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 9. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 10. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.
- F. Concrete Finish Topping:
1. Prior to placing topping, remove laitance and loose particles of sand and dirt.
 2. Remove oil and grease spots by washing with 10 percent solution of muriatic acid or strong washing soda.
 3. After cleaning, hose down with pressure hose and keep base slab wet for at least twelve (12) hours.
- G. Do not use concrete that has partially hardened or been contaminated by foreign materials, nor concrete that has been retempered or remixed after initial set.
- H. Before depositing new concrete on or against concrete that has set at construction joints, clean, wet and apply bonding agent to existing surfaces. Tighten forms prior to resuming pouring.
- I. Exercise care to prevent splashing of forms or reinforcing with concrete above level of concrete being placed.
- J. Clean reinforcement projecting above or out of concrete immediately after completion of particular unit of pour.
- K. Do not place concrete under adverse weather conditions unless adequate protection is provided. Refer to ACI 301, for weather restrictions and placing temperatures.

3.8 COLD WEATHER CONCRETING

- A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.

3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
4. Ensure minimum temperatures are maintained for the duration of the curing period in accordance with ACI 306.1.
5. Concrete shall be allowed to dry for at least 12 hours before removing temperature protection for water cured or moisture retention cured concrete.

3.9 HOT WEATHER CONCRETING

- A. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
 1. When high temperature, measured on jobsite at concrete placement area, is expected to rise above 90 deg F, maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. When temperature of steel reinforcement, embeds, subgrade, or forms are greater than 120 degrees F, fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
 3. Protect concrete from wind and direct sunlight to avoid rapid drying.
 4. Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if the air temperature exceeds 80 degrees F, the wind speed exceeds 10 mph, or the relative humidity is less than 40%. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions immediately after placing and screeding.
 5. Apply moisture retaining covers or wet cure in accordance with concrete curing and protection methods as specified.

3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. Finish bare concrete floors (adjacent to floors with other surfacing) so concrete surface is level with other finishes, unless otherwise noted.
- B. At areas to receive floor covering, grind smooth joints between slabs on grade and structural slabs and between existing and new surfaces to eliminate unevenness and to provide smooth, level surface across joints.
- C. Wetting the concrete surface during finishing operations is prohibited.
- D. Power floating with troweling machines equipped with normal trowel blades is prohibited.
- E. Use caution when finishing lightweight concrete slabs to maintain trowel blades at shallow angle as possible during final finishing operations.
 1. Do not provide a tight steel trowel finish to lightweight concrete slabs.
- F. Protect finished surfaces from damage. Keep free of abrasive materials.
- G. In areas where water will be present (interior and exterior) place and finish slabs so areas will drain and water will not stand in puddles. Conform to slopes shown. At structural slabs, verify elevations of drains to insure drains will be at low

points. Where elevations and slopes are not indicated, generally slope floors 1/8 inch per foot uniformly to drains, unless otherwise directed by Architect.

- H. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-foot-long straightedge resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/4-inch.
- I. Apply slab finish to Floor Profile Number tolerances listed unless specifically noted otherwise on Drawings, according to ASTM E 1155 "Standard Test Method for Determining F_F Floor Flatness and F_L Floor Levelness Numbers" for randomly trafficked floor surfaces.
 - 1. Refer to ACI 302, Chapter 8 and Table 8.15.3, for recommended typical procedures to attain specified Floor Profile Numbers.
- J. General Finishing Requirements: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces as appropriate to attain slab finish specified.
 - 1. Utilize wet-screed guides, dry-screed guides, and / or edge forms for initial strikeoff set with optical or laser instruments as appropriate to attain specified Floor Profile Number. Check elevation after initial strikeoff and repeat as necessary.
 - 2. Smooth and restraighen surface using 8 to 10 foot wide bull float, darby, or modified highway straightedge.
 - a. Apply in two directions at 45 degree angle to strip for Overall Floor Flatness, F_F 30 or greater.
 - 3. Wait until bleed water sheen has disappeared and concrete can sustain finishing operations employed without digging in or disrupting the levelness of the surface.
 - 4. Float surface with one or more passes using a power float (float shoe blades or pans) or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
- K. CONC FIN-1: Float Finish.
 - 1. Follow General Finishing Requirements for initial procedures.
- L. CONC FIN-2: Light Trowel Finish.
 - 1. Follow General Finishing Requirements for initial procedures.
 - 2. Restraighten surface if required following paste-generating float passes using 10-foot wide highway straightedge.
 - 3. Consolidate concrete surface, uniform in texture and appearance, with one to two passes using power trowel. Hand trowel areas inaccessible by power trowel.
- M. CONC FIN-3: Medium Trowel Finish.
 - 1. Follow General Finishing Requirements for initial procedures.
 - 2. Restraighten surface if required following paste-generating float passes using 10-foot wide highway straightedge. Apply in two directions at 45 degree angle to strip. Use supplementary material to fill low spots.
 - 3. Consolidate concrete surface, uniform in texture and appearance, with two to three passes using power trowel. Hand trowel areas inaccessible by power trowel.

- N. CONC FIN-4: Hard Trowel Finish.
1. Follow General Finishing Requirements for initial procedures.
 2. Restraighten surface if required following paste-generating float passes using 10-foot wide highway straightedge. Apply in two directions at 45 degree angle to strip. Use supplementary material to fill low spots.
 3. Consolidate concrete surface, uniform in texture and appearance, with three or more passes using power trowel. Hand trowel areas inaccessible by power trowel.
- O. CONC FIN-5: Trowel and Fine Broom Finish.
1. Follow General Finishing Requirements for initial procedures.
 2. Consolidate concrete surface, with one pass using a power trowel.
 3. Slightly scarify surface with soft bristled broom while concrete is still plastic.
- P. CONC FIN-6: Scratch Finish.
1. Follow General Finishing Requirements for initial procedures.
 2. While still plastic, scarify slab surface to 1/8-inch amplitude with transverse scored texture by drawing broom, stiff brush, or rake across surface.
- Q. CONC FIN-8: Broom Finish.
1. Surfaces of concrete mixes with silica fume and / or calcium nitrite must be kept moist (not wet) during finishing operations to promote proper texturing. Pressure foggers with a reach capable of covering the entire surface can aid finishing operations.
 2. Follow General Finishing Requirements, steps 1 through 3, for initial procedures.
 3. Scarify surface with a transverse scored texture using a medium bristled broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
 4. Finish Tolerance: Surface shall not vary by more than $\pm 1/2$ inch anywhere from elevation noted on Drawings.
 5. Finish all concrete slabs to proper elevations to insure that all surface moisture will drain freely, and that no puddles exist. Contractor must bear cost of any corrections to provide positive drainage and repairing poorly finished surface areas.
- R. CONC FIN-9: Exposed Aggregate Finish.
1. Aggregate to be exposed to be colorful and uniform size: 1/4 inches to 1/2 inch in size.
 - a. Flat or sliver-shaped particles are not allowed.
 - b. Exposed Aggregate shall not be reactive with cement when tested in accordance with ASTM standard test methods.
 2. Follow General Finishing Requirements, steps 1 through 3, for initial procedures.
 3. As soon as concrete will support weight of workmen on kneeboards, surface shall be hand floated using magnesium float or darby until aggregate is entirely embedded and mortar completely surrounds and slightly covers it, leaving no holes in surface.
 4. After floating surface set retarder may be sprayed or brushed over surface, following manufacturer's recommendations.

5. Exposing operations by using stiff fiber brush and hosing of surface with water shall commence as soon as work can be done without dislodging aggregate.
 6. Kneeboards shall be used to move about on surface and they shall be gently brought into contact and not slid or twisted on surface.
- S. CONC FIN-10: Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish.
1. Apply at rates recommended by the manufacturer, but not less than 25 pounds per 100 square feet.
 2. Verify all procedures noted below are in compliance with manufacturer's written instructions. Notify Architect of any discrepancies requiring resolution.
 3. Follow General Finishing Requirements, steps 1 through 3, for initial procedures.
 4. Break the surface using a power trowel with float shoes or attached pan.
 5. Evenly distribute approximately two-thirds of the specified amount of non-slip aggregate with mechanical spreader.
 6. After applied material has absorbed moisture, float surface using hand wooden floats. Take care not to tear through into the underlying concrete.
 7. Apply remaining one-third of dry-shake hardener. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface. Float surface in a like manner.
 8. If needed, trowel until the desired surface finish is achieved.
 9. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive aggregate.
- T. CONC FIN-11: Industrial Concrete Slabs with Monolithic Mineral Floor Finish.
1. Apply monolithic mineral floor finish to areas indicated on the Drawings.
 2. Installation:
 - a. Apply monolithic floor finish at rate of 1-1/2 pounds per square foot unless approved otherwise by Architect.
 - b. Use mechanical finishing machine to trowel slab surface and follow with additional trowelings to secure smooth hard dense burnished finish.
 - c. For at least ten days after finishing slab, permit only pedestrian traffic.
 3. Wet Produce Areas: After concrete has completed curing cycle, lightly bead blast concrete slab surface in aisles to attain slip resistive surface.
- U. CONC FIN-12: Industrial Concrete Slabs with Two-Stage Floor Finish.
1. Apply monolithic mineral floor finish to areas indicated on the Drawings.
 2. Installation:
 - a. Hold base slab 5/8 to 3/4 inch below finish floor so top of topping is same elevation as rest of floor slab.
 - b. Finish base slab by troweling to smooth, dense finish in areas where concrete panels are to be cast and wire brooming in other areas to expose coarse aggregate and remove cement laitance.
 - c. Keep surface clean and oil free until topping is placed.
 - d. At time of installation of topping, scarify or provide bonding agent to surface of base slab.
 - e. Finish topping by troweling to smooth, dense burnished finish.
 - f. Joints:
 - 1) Saw construction and control joints full depth of topping.
 - 2) Saw joints directly over base joints.

- g. For at least ten days after finishing slab, permit only pedestrian traffic.
- 3. Field Quality Control:
 - a. Qualified representative of supplier will be present during entire installation of topping, directing its mix, testing, placement, finishing and curing.
 - b. Conform to slab installation tolerances and provide floors free from defects of dusting, cracks, tendency toward spalling, pitting or curling as described in industrial floor correction period requirements.
 - c. Propose remedial procedures in writing to Architect within ten days after notification of deficiency.
 - d. Do not proceed without approval of Architect and Owner.
- V. Coordinate final slab texture requirements with Division 9 flooring installer for proper adhesion of final flooring materials.
- W. Summary Slab Finish Schedule:

SLAB USE	SLAB FINISH	OVER ALL F _F /F _L	LOCAL F _F /F _L
Fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing; built-up or membrane; sand-bed terrazzo	CONC FIN-1 Float Finish	F _F 18/F _L 15	F _F 15/F _L 10
Carpet; raised access floor; or base slabs below acoustic concrete topping slabs	CONC FIN-2 Light Trowel Finish	F _F 25/F _L 20	F _F 17/F _L 15
Thin set resilient flooring; paint; or other thin film-finish coating system	CONC FIN-3 Medium Trowel Finish	F _F 30/F _L 25	F _F 24/F _L 15
Exposed to view with light foot traffic or to receive Penetrating Liquid Densifier and Sealer	CONC FIN-4 Hard Trowel Finish	F _F 30/F _L 25	F _F 24/F _L 15
Thin set ceramic or quarry tile; stone flooring; epoxy terrazzo	CONC FIN-5 Trowel and Fine Broom Finish	F _F 18/F _L 15	F _F 15/F _L 10
Below bonded concrete floor topping or mortar setting beds for tile, portland cement terrazzo, and other bonded applied cementitious finish flooring material	CONC FIN-6 Scratch Finish	F _F 18/F _L 15	F _F 15/F _L 10
Parking ramps; exterior concrete pavement (Ramp > 7%)	CONC FIN-8 Broom Finish (Rake Finish)	F _F 18/F _L 15	F _F 15/F _L 10
Where shown on Drawings	CONC FIN-9 Exposed Aggregate Finish	F _F 18/F _L 15	F _F 15/F _L 10
Egress stair exposed concrete treads and landings; where shown on Drawings	CONC FIN-10 Slip-Resistive Aggregate Finish	F _F 25/F _L 20	F _F 17/F _L 15
Monolithic Mineral Floor Finish	CONC FIN-11 Shake On	F _F 30/F _L 25	F _F 24/F _L 15

SLAB USE	SLAB FINISH	OVER ALL F _F /F _L	LOCAL F _F /F _L
	Burnished Finish	F _F 100/ F _L 75 (Super flat)	
Two-Stage Floor Finish	CONC FIN-12 Burnished Finish	F _F 30/F _L 25	F _F 24/F _L 15
Base Slab for support of low temperature insulation	CONC FIN-1 Float Finish	Surface deviation +0" and -1/2" without ridges or bull float marks	

X. Measurement of Floor Tolerance:

1. Frequency: For industrial slabs, conduct floor tolerance measurements for each day's slab placement.
 - a. Report deficient areas to Architect to determine repair procedures appropriate for final required finish.
 - b. Make appropriate adjustments to construction procedures prior to next slab placement when previous slab placement is deficient.
2. Frequency: Conduct floor tolerance or measurements within 72 hours of final finishing operations and prior to removal of forms on elevated slabs for each slab placement.
3. Frequency: Conduct floor tolerance or measurements only if slab appears to be out of tolerance.
4. Floor slab tolerances provided for localized areas shall apply to sections maximum one bay in length and minimum one-half bay.
5. Conduct measurement of floor tolerance for F_F100/F_L75 areas by floor consultant utilizing Face Floor Profileograph, or other system approved by Architect.
6. Conduct measurement of floor tolerance for other slab areas utilizing Dip Stick Floor Profiler.

3.11 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 1. Apply to formed concrete surfaces unless indicated otherwise.
- B. CONC FIN-20: Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
 1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view, to receive a rubbed finish, or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.
- C. CONC FIN-21: Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.

1. Apply to Smooth-Formed Finish as-cast concrete where indicated.
- D. CONC FIN-22: Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
1. Apply to Smooth-Formed Finish as-cast concrete where indicated.
- E. CONC FIN-23: Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix one part portland cement and one part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.
1. Apply to Smooth-Formed Finish as-cast concrete where indicated.
- F. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.12 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces. Before final troweling of exposed treads and landings, apply dampened non-slip shake at a minimum rate of ¼ pound over square foot of surface.

3.13 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Concrete shall be maintained above 50-degrees F and in a moist condition for at least the first seven days after placement. Provide curing and protection immediately after placement in accordance with ACI 301 using materials as specified herein.

- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if the air temperature exceeds 80 degrees F, the wind speed exceeds 10 mph, or the relative humidity is less than 40% before and during finishing operations as measured at the Project site. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 - 1. Wet Curing: Keep surfaces continuously wet for not less than three days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 - d. Protect surface from rapid loss of moisture upon termination of wet curing by covering with moisture-retaining covers for the remainder of the curing period.
 - 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
 - a. After curing period has elapsed, completely remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces using concrete floor cleaner and stripper recommended by curing compound manufacturer.
 - 4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- F. Wet cure or use moisture-retaining covers on all concrete surfaces for first 24 hours, minimum.
 - 1. Continue curing in this manner for as long as Hot Weather Concreting conditions persist.
 - 2. Industrial slabs shall be water cured for entire curing period.

- G. Curing Compounds or Curing and Sealing Compounds shall not be used on concrete surfaces to receive adhered coverings or Penetrating Liquid Densifier and Sealer without prior manufacturer certification that it will not interfere with bonding of floor covering and warranties of flooring installer are validated.
- H. Moisture Condition of Slabs – Following placement of concrete and climatization of building, check to see that any specified tests for moisture emission have been made and a written report submitted prior to floor covering or coating installation.

3.14 PENETRATING LIQUID DENSIFIER AND SEALER

- A. Penetrating Liquid Densifier and Sealer: Prepare, apply, and finish Penetrating Liquid Densifier and Sealer according to manufacturer's written instructions at concrete floors to remain exposed to view.
 - 1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
 - 2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than [seven] [14] [28] days old unless treatment also functions as a curing aid.
 - 3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
- B. Protect finish surface during remainder of construction. Repair immediately any staining of finish concrete surfaces by methods recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Dry buff finish floor surfaces per manufacturer's written instructions to achieve final gloss appearance of liquid densifier and sealer just prior to substantial completion after majority of heavy construction and wet work activities have been completed

3.15 JOINT FILLING

- A. Arrange for on-site supervision by manufacturer's personnel.
- B. Coordinate with Owner that adequate protection or spatial separation is provided to ensure there is not contamination of Owner's stored product during joint filling.
- C. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has cured for 30 to 90 days and space has assumed its normal operating temperature. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- D. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry. Clean inside wall of joints to bare concrete.
- E. Mix filler thoroughly with power equipment according to manufacturer's published instructions.
- F. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

- G. Protect joint completely from traffic for 8 hours and from vehicular traffic for 24 hours.
- H. Touch Up:
 - 1. Within one (1) year after Substantial Completion, touch up joints with additional material and correct for normal joint movement according to manufacturer's published directions.
 - 2. Coordinate schedule for joint touch up with Owner.
 - 3. Touch up joints during Owner's non-working hours as required by Owner.
 - 4. Coordinate with Owner and Architect to ensure there is no contamination of Owner's stored product.

3.16 JOINT SEALING

- A. When concrete has cured 30 to 90 days, and space has assumed its normal operating temperature, rake out loose debris and clean joint with compressed air.
- B. Install backer rod and sealant according to manufacturer's published recommendations.
- C. Protect joint completely from traffic for twenty-four (24) hours.

3.17 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval and in accordance with ACI 301. Repair methods for defects affecting the concrete's structural performance shall be closely coordinated between Contractor and Engineer.
- B. Patching Mortar: Submit proposed patching materials for Architect's review and approval.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.

- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 2. After concrete has cured at least fourteen (14) days, correct high areas by grinding.
 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least seventy-two (72) hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspection agency to provide special inspection and testing services and prepare reports in accordance with Division 01 Section "Structural Tests and Special Inspections", and with IBC 2006 Chapter 17 as adopted by the 2007 MSBC, and the CASE/Mn Guideline for Special Structural Inspection and Testing, and other items which in the

professional judgement of the Structural Engineer of Record, are critical to the integrity of the building structure.

- B. Contractor will cooperate with and assist testing agency in obtaining representative concrete samples as concrete is placed for determining slump and air entrainment and casting test cylinders.
 - 1. Provide suitable space on site for storage for field condition test cylinders.
 - 2. If testing agency is not available, cast compression test cylinders as concrete is placed, determine and record slump of concrete, determine and record air content of concrete and submit cylinders and information to the testing agency.
- C. Inspections:
 - 1. Verification of use of required design mixture.
 - 2. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
 - 3. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
 - 4. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- D. Concrete Tests (Technical 1): Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 - Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete, ASTM C 31 - Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field, and ASTM C 39 - Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens. Evaluation and acceptance of concrete shall be in accordance with ACI 318 and according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture where less than 50 yd³ is placed, plus one additional set for each additional 100 yd³ or fraction thereof.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 - 2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of discharge for each composite sample.
 - a. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 - b. For industrial slabs, slump each truck until slump stabilization is reached then decrease slump frequency to one test per 25 cubic yards.
 - 3. Air Content: When air content is specified, perform test in accordance with ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete and ASTM C 173, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete.
 - a. Where placement is by pump, air content shall be measured at location of placement.
 - b. For concrete exposed to freezing and thawing, concrete from each truck shall be tested and concrete not meeting specified percentages shall not be placed.
 - c. For interior concrete not exposed to freezing and thawing, such as lightweight concrete on metal decking, perform one test for each set of test cylinders.
 - d. Concrete used in performing air content test shall not be used in fabricating test specimens

4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 5. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, equilibrium unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample.
 6. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31.
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - b. Cast and field cure one cylinder specimen for each composite sample.
 - 1) Store field-cured cylinders as near as possible to location of concrete represented by sample and give cylinder, insofar as practicable, same protection and curing as adjacent concrete.
 - c. If additional specimens are required to verify early strength of concrete, contractor must pay for additional testing.
 7. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39.
 - a. Test one cylinder specimen at 7 days for information, and remaining two cylinder specimens at 28 days for acceptance, plus one cylinder to be held until 90 days in the event that the 28 day compressive strengths are not met.
 - b. Deliver field-cured specimens to laboratory at 28 days and test to verify adequacy of curing and protection in field.
 - c. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
- E. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within [24][48] hours of finishing when requested by the Owner's Representative (Technical 1):
1. Measurements shall be made prior to removal of forms and shores at elevated structural slabs.
 2. The Contractor shall be notified immediately after the measurements of any section are complete and a written report of the results shall be submitted within seventy-two (72) hours after finishing operations are complete.
 3. Report deficient areas to Architect to determine repair procedures appropriate for final required finish.

3.19 EVALUATION OF TEST RESULTS

- A. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
- B. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- C. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete supplier, and Contractor within forty-eight (48) hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of

concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.

- D. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- E. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete at the expense of the Contractor when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42 or by other methods as directed by Architect.
- F. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- G. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- H. Fill core holes with concrete specified for location.

END OF SECTION 03300

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 04200 - UNIT
MASONRY**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:
 - 1. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
 - 2. Mortar and grout.
 - 3. Reinforcing steel.
 - 4. Masonry joint reinforcement.
 - 5. Ties and anchors.
 - 6. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
 - 7. Masonry Lintels
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. List below only products, construction, and equipment that the reader might expect to find in this Section but are specified elsewhere.
 - 2. Division 07 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing" for dampproofing applied to cavity face of backup wythes of cavity walls.
 - 3. Division 07 Section "Water Repellents" for water repellents applied to unit masonry assemblies.
 - 4. Coordinate first subparagraph below with referenced Section. Metal through-wall flashing is included in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and in this Section.
 - 5. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for sheet metal flashing.
 - 6. Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping at openings in masonry walls.
 - 7. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for fire-resistive joint systems at heads of masonry walls.
 - 8. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
- C. Products installed, but not furnished, under this Section include the following:
 - 1. Manufactured reglets in masonry joints for metal flashing, furnished under Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

- 1.3 Retain paragraph and subparagraphs below if allowances are specified for brick selection or for masonry testing.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops net-area compressive strengths (f'_m) at 28 days as indicated on drawings.
- B. Determine net-area compressive strength (f'_m) of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 or ASTM C 1314.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
 - 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show elevations of reinforced walls.
 - 3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR4.2: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating weights, costs, and percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating material weights and costs for each product having recycled content.
 - 2. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 5.1 and Credit MR 5.2: For products having Regional content (Extracted, and processed or manufactured within 500 miles of site), documentation indicating total weights, costs and percentages by weight of regional content.
 - a. Include statement indicating material weights, and costs for each product having regional content.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:
 - 1. Decorative concrete masonry units
 - 2. Exposed concrete masonry unit
 - 3. Weep holes/vents.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
 - 1. Exposed and/or Decorative concrete masonry units.
 - 2. Weep holes/vents.
 - 3. Accessories embedded in masonry.
- F. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.

1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.
- G. Material Certificates: Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards. Provide for each type and size of the following:
1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
 - b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
 2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
 3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 5. Reinforcing bars.
 6. Joint reinforcement.
 7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- H. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
1. Include test reports, per ASTM C 780, for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification.
 2. Include test reports, per ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- I. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, through one source from a single manufacturer for each product required.
- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from a single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- C. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below. Retesting of materials that fail to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
1. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, per ASTM C 140.
 2. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, per ASTM C 780.
 3. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix required, per ASTM C 1019.
 4. Prism Test: For each type of construction required, per ASTM C 1314.

- D. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for mockups.
 - 1. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 48 inches by 48 inches.
 - 2. Clean exposed faces of panels with masonry cleaner indicated.
 - 3. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 4. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship; and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - a. Approval of sample panels does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in sample panels unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.

- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and Section 2104.3 in the Uniform Building Code.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 - 3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

- A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to exceed tolerances and to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified dimensions by more than stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry.

2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (CMUs)

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.

2. Provide square-edged or bullnose units for outside corners, as directed by the Architect.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent where indicated.
 1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive according to ASTM E 514, with test period extended to 24 hours, show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.
 - a. Products:
 - 1) Addiment Incorporated; Block Plus W-10.
 - 2) Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block.
 - 3) Master Builders, Inc.; Rheopel.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90.
 1. Net Area Compressive Strength of Concrete Masonry Units: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2800 psi to achieve $f'm = 2000$ psi as specified on drawings
 2. Weight Classification: Normal weight
 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions. Faces of unit shall be nominal 8" x 16" unless otherwise shown. Thickness shall be as shown or as required by code.
 4. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.

2.4 MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam concrete masonry units with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
- D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Capital Materials Corporation.
 - b. Essroc, Italcementi Group.
 - c. Holcim (US) Inc.
 - d. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - e. Lehigh Cement Company.
 - f. National Cement Company, Inc.; Coosa Masonry Cement.
- E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.
 1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Lafarge North America Inc.
- F. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
 - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
 - 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
- G. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- H. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: ASTM C 395, epoxy-resin-based material formulated for use as pointing mortar for structural-clay tile facing units (and approved for such use by manufacturer of units); in color indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's colors.
- I. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Addiment Incorporated.
 - b. Euclid Chemical Company.
 - c. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.
 - d. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex.
- J. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with concrete masonry units, containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Addiment Incorporated.
 - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.
 - c. Master Builders, Inc
- K. Water: Potable.

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615 or ASTM A 996, Grade 60.
- B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951.
 - 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
 - 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
 - 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: As indicated on drawings.
 - 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: As indicated on drawings.
 - 5. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
 - 6. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.

2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in subsequent paragraphs that are made from materials that comply with eight subparagraphs below, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 641, Class 1 coating.

2. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153, Class B-2 coating.
3. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580, Type 304.
4. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
5. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008, Commercial Steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153.
6. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
7. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.
8. Stainless Steel bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

B. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90 degrees and extend 2 inches parallel to face of veneer.

C. Partition Top anchors: As indicated on drawings.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS

A. Anchor Bolts: As indicated on drawings.

B. Postinstalled Anchors: Provide anchors as indicated on drawings.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

D. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.142-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated.

1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division.
- b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.
- c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
- d. Wire-Bond.

2.10 MASONRY CLEANERS

A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
- b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
- c. ProSoCo, Inc.

2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement, mortar cement, and lime.
 - 3. Limit cementitious materials in mortar for exterior and reinforced masonry to portland cement, mortar cement, and lime.
 - 4. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270 Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.
 - 1. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type N.
 - 2. For all other walls, Type S.
- D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
 - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 - 2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

2.12 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform source quality-control testing indicated below:
 - 1. Payment for these services will be made by Owner
 - 2. Retesting of materials failing to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit furnished, per ASTM C 67.
- C. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit furnished, per ASTM C 140.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
 - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.

3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Comply with construction tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:
 1. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
 2. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
 3. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
 4. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch. Do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
 5. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch.
 6. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.
 7. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and

offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4-inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated on architectural drawings. Fasten partitions to structure above with methods indicated on drawings.

3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow concrete masonry units as follows:
 - 1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 - 4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint), unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
 - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.

2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings.
 - a. Reinforcement above is in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.
- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

3.6 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of concrete masonry units on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch.
 1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.7 LINTELS

- A. Install lintels as indicated on drawings.

3.8 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches, unless project special inspector is notified in writing 7 days prior to placement that high lift grout procedures will be used.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspectors: Owner will engage qualified independent inspectors to perform inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform inspections.
 - 1. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections indicated below and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Retesting of materials failing to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- C. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
- D. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 67.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 140.
- F. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 780. Test mortar for compressive strength.
- G. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 1019.
- H. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, per ASTM C 1314 at 7 days and at 28 days.

3.10 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.

2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
6. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
7. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.
8. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.
9. Clean limestone units to comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

3.11 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches in each dimension.
 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04200

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 05120 – STRUCTURAL STEEL
FRAMING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Structural steel framing members and all related accessories such as structural embeds, connections, bolts, welds, fasteners, threaded rods, headed studs, including fabrication, erection and all related work and accessories.
 - 2. Grouting for base plates, seats, and bearing areas.
 - 3. Connections and other performance specified items, including related design by contractor's Qualified Professional Engineer.
 - 4. Temporary bracing and shoring, including related design by contractor's specialty structural engineer.
 - 5. Shop applied finishes and coatings, including preparation, primers, special paint systems or galvanizing on steel exposed to exterior or aggressive environments, and bitumastic coating on steel below grade in soil.
 - 6. The work covered by this Section shall include all labor, material, equipment, permits, engineering and other services necessary for the fabrication and installation of structural steel and related work, complete, in accordance with the drawings and as specified herein.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 – Structural Testing and Special Inspections.
 - 2. Division 01 – Submittal Procedures
 - 3. Division 03 – Cast-In-Place Concrete.
 - 4. Division 05 – Steel Decking.
 - 5. Division 05 – Metal Fabrications
 - 6. Division 05 – Metal Stairs and Ladders
 - 7. Division 07 – Applied Fireproofing.
 - 8. Section 09 – Painting and High Performance Coatings

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. AISC Specification for Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings.
- B. AISC Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.
- C. AISC Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections.
- D. AWS D1.1 – Structural Welding Code.

- E. RCSC Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts.
- F. ASTM Standards in Building Codes.
- G. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC) – PS7.01.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," that support design loads.
- B. The terms "for record" and "submit for record" in this specification are defined as Contractor submittals that do not require a response.

1.5 CONNECTION DESIGN PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections, moment connections, axial connections, splice connections, and brace frame tension/compression connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand service loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
 - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC's "Manual of Steel Construction, Thirteenth Edition Allowable Strength Design." Connection concepts for non-fully detailed connections show only the minimum requirements to convey design intent.
 - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Fabricator's responsibilities include using a Qualified Professional Engineer to prepare structural analysis data for all structural-steel connections that are not completely detailed on the Contract Documents.
 - a. The contractor shall design and provide any stiffener plates, doubler plates, reinforcing plates, etc. and their connections that may be required to develop and/or transfer the forces and/or connection design criteria called for in the Contract Documents.
 - b. Design connections to withstand the combined effects of shears, axial forces, moments and torques and as required by applicable code(s) and the Contract Documents.
 - c. All non-shear forces shown on the drawings are to be assumed reversible unless noted otherwise, and must be checked for both directions. If no transfer/pass-through forces are shown on the Contract Documents, then the most critical combinations of member forces and directions shall be assumed for the connection design.
 - d. All welded connections must utilize pre-qualified joints or joints that have been qualified by AWS D1.1, Section 2.
 - e. Comply with all connection notes on drawings in conjunction with these specifications.
 - f. The connection design calculation submittals shall meet the following criteria:
 - 1. Use a logical numbering system for connections without repeating labels. Cloud all changes to resubmitted calculations.
 - 2. Provide sketches for the results of each calculation, with all the pertinent dimensions to the calculation shown.

3. For repetitive connections a spreadsheet summary may be used, but provide all pertinent input and resulting values plus an example long-hand calculation.
4. Provide drawings/sketches showing the overall locations of the connections that are keyed/referenced to each connection calculation.
5. Provide calculation checks for all forces shown on the drawings. All AISC code requirements apply. "OK by inspection" is not permitted.

1.6 SUBMITTALS – PART A (FOR REVIEW)

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Typical Connection Design Submittal: For each classification of connections (shear, axial, moment, truss and braced frame), submit a proposed typical connection and the supporting calculations for review prior to commencing substantial connection design.
- C. Provide placement plan and details for shear studs on all composite steel framing.
- D. Shop Drawings and related submittals: Show complete information for fabrication and erection of structural steel components.
 1. Submit shop drawings under provisions of Division 1 Section "Submittal Procedures." Phase submittals to match sequence of actual construction to avoid delay of work.
 2. Include overall floor plans with piece marks labeled and erection detail cuts.
 3. Include full height elevations where appropriate for elements such as brace frames.
 4. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent erection data.
 5. Include embedment, anchor bolt and erection drawings.
 6. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
 7. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
 8. List paint manufacturer's name and paint number where painting is required.
 9. Indicate items to be galvanized or coated where required.
 10. Connection design calculations: Submit connection design calculations and location references indicators at the same time that the shop drawings for the related connections are submitted. These shop drawings will be rejected without the following:
 - a. Complete connection calculations.
 - b. References of connection label and required loads on the shop drawings.
 - c. Signed letter from the Connection Engineer that they have already reviewed and incorporated their comments into the submitted shop drawings. This review shall be for all connections that are required to be designed by the Contractor's Engineer.
 11. Submittal Process and Review:
 - a. Submittal of shop and erection drawings and other submittals by the General Contractor shall constitute General Contractor's representation that the General Contractor has verified all quantities, dimensions, materials, catalog numbers and similar data with respect thereto and reviewed or coordinated each drawing with other drawings and other

trades. The General Contractor shall place their shop drawing stamp on all submittals confirming the above.

- b. The Contractor shall submit to the Design Team two (2) black-line prints and one (1) electronic copy (pdf) for shop drawing review.
 - c. The Contractor shall allow at least ten (10) working days between receipt and release by the Design Team for the review of shop and erection drawings, other than connection design calculations, which shall be allowed fifteen (15) working days. The size of the submittals is limited to that which is agreed upon during the submittal schedule required below.
 - d. Resubmittals: Completely address previous comments prior to resubmitting a drawing. Resubmit only those drawings that require resubmittal. All modifications or revisions to submittals, shop drawings, connection design calculations and erection drawings must be clouded, with an appropriate revision number clearly indicated.
 - e. The Contractor shall deliver to the Design Team at the completion of the job two (2) electronic versions of the final as-built shop drawings on a CD-ROM or other media acceptable to the Design Team.
 - f. The review of connection design and the review and approval of shop and erection drawings shall be for general conformance with the design intent of the work and with the information given in the Contract Documents only and will not in any way relieve the Contractor or the Contractor's Engineer from their responsibilities stated herein.
12. Substitution Request:
- a. Requests for any departure from Contract Documents must be submitted in writing by the Contractor and accepted in writing by the Design Team, prior to receipt of submittals.
 - b. Such substitutions or modifications, if acceptable to the Design Team, shall be coordinated and incorporated in the work at the sole expense of the Contractor.
 - c. Compensation for Additional Services: Should additional work by the Design Team, such as design, drafting, meetings and/or visits be required, which are necessitated for the review and/or incorporation of the Contractor-requested substitution, including indirect effects on other portions of the work, the Contractor is responsible for paying for additional work at the standard billing rates plus out-of-pocket expenses incurred at cost + 10%.
 - d. Contractor is responsible for means and methods and any impacts on other portions of the work that may arise from this substitution.

1.7 SUBMITTALS – PART B (FOR RECORD)

- A. Submittal Schedule for all Part A submittal items.
- B. Welding certificates for all welders that will perform work for this project.
- C. Welding Procedures: Submit for record written welding procedures for all joints not prequalified by Section 2 of AWS D1.1. Submit all welding and qualification procedures to the Testing Agency for Approval before submitting to Design Team.
- D. Qualification Data for the Fabricator, Erector and Connection Engineer
- E. Submittal Letter: The Contractor shall submit for record a letter from the Contractor's Engineer supervising the preparation of connection designs on shop

STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

Bid Package 1

05120 - 4

and erection drawings. A letter shall be submitted along with the first submission of Connection design calculations. It shall be signed and sealed by the Contractor's Engineer, and shall include the following:

"All connection design calculations for this project will be designed by me, or by qualified personnel under my direct supervision, to resist the loads and reactions indicated on the Contract Documents, except those connections which are completely designed on the Contract Documents."

- F. Preconstruction Survey: Submit for record. For all steel construction, before steel erection commences, perform and submit a complete survey for position and alignment at all points where construction by other trades will support steel elements, including but not limited to pockets, embedded plates, anchor rods and base plates.
- G. Source quality-control test reports.
- H. Minutes of Pre-Installation conference.
- I. Mill Test Reports: Signed by manufacturers certifying that the following products comply with requirements:
 - 1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
 - 2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 - 3. Direct-tension indicators.
 - 4. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
- J. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Documentation.
- B. Sustainable Design Closeout Documentation.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- a. Fabricator Qualifications; A qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC Certified Plant, Category STD. Fabricator shall be experienced in the preparation of shop drawings using integrated three-dimensional modeling software parametrically linking all major structural piece marks and overall building framing model.
- b. Installer (erector) Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE (minimum).
- c. Fabricator's/Contractor's Qualified Professional Engineer/Specialty Structural Engineer Qualifications: Qualified Professional Engineer(s), licensed in the State of

Minnesota, with 10 years of experience being in responsible charge to work of this nature. The proposed engineer(s) shall be subject to approval of the Design Team.

- d. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design" or "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
 - 3. AISC's "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections."
 - 4. AISC's "Specification for Allowable Stress Design of Single-Angle Members" or "Specification for Load and Resistance Factor Design of Single-Angle Members."
 - 5. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- e. Contractor shall assign a qualified staff member to perform quality control on their own work in the field on a daily basis, for each day work is performed. The Contractor's quality control staff shall review their own work for compliance with contract documents before the Contractor notifies the design team or others, of readiness for required inspections, tests and observations to be provided by the Owner's Representatives.
- f. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- g. Pre-Design/Detailing Meeting: Prior to starting connection design and detailing, the Fabricator shall hold a meeting to verify all connection design assumptions and procedures and shop drawing preparation and submittal procedures. The Contractor shall prepare an agenda and require responsible representatives of every party who is concerned with the connection design and detailing to attend this meeting. The Contractor shall distribute meeting minutes to all parties within 5 working days of the meeting.
- h. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination" and Division 01 – "Structural Tests and Special Inspections".

1.10 TEMPORARY SUPPORT OF STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAME

- A. The structure as shown on the Contract Documents is designed to withstand the design loads only when all structural elements are installed and fully connected. The Contractor shall be responsible for the analysis of all components and assemblies for stresses and displacements that may be imposed by fabrication, shipping, handling, erection, temporary conditions, construction loads, etc. The analysis of such shall be performed by the Contractor's Engineer.

1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.

- B. Store fasteners in a protected place. Bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use shall not be allowed.
- C. Store welding electrodes in hermetically sealed containers. Electrodes exposed to atmosphere for periods greater than those permitted shall be redried in accordance with AWS D1.1.
- D. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.12 OBSERVATIONS BY DESIGN TEAM

- A. Review: The Design Team will observe the construction for general compliance with the provisions of the Contract Documents during various phases of construction.
- B. Compensation for Additional Services: Should additional work by the design team such as design, drafting, meetings and/or visits be required which are necessitated by failure of the Contractor to perform the work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor is responsible for paying for additional work performed at standard billing rates plus out-of-pocket expenses incurred at cost + 10%. Additional costs for testing and inspection by the Owner shall also be compensated by the Contractor.

1.13 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.
- B. Provide structural steel substrate to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials free of paint, lubricants, oils, dirt, or other contaminants which would significantly impair adhesion of sprayed materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified. Contractor may submit alternative product for review and approval by the design team.

2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992, Grade 50
- B. Channels, Angles: ASTM A 36
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36 or ASTM A 572 (Fy = 50 ksi) where indicated on drawings

- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B, structural tubing
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53, Type E or S, Grade B.
- F. Welding Electrodes: E 70 XX, minimum. Comply with AWS requirements.

2.3 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A325 or A490, heavy hex steel structural bolts; All bolts shall be new, not re-used.
 - 1. Finish: Plain – Typical. Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50 - exposed to weather.
- B. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 compressible-washer type.
 - 1. Finish: Plain – Typical. Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50 - exposed to weather.
- C. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, round head steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain – Typical. Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50 – exposed to weather
 - 2. Available Products:
 - a. LeJeune Tension Control Bolts.
 - b. Bethlehem Load Indicator Bolts.
- D. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.
- E. Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade as indicated on General Structural Notes and Contract Drawings, straight.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
 - 3. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.
 - 4. Finish: Plain, unless noted otherwise on Contract Drawings.
- F. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36, unless noted otherwise on Contract Drawings.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Washers: ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
 - 3. Finish: Plain.
- G. Clevises and Turnbuckles: ASTM A108, Grade 1035, cold-finished carbon steel.

2.4 SHOP COATINGS

- A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer. Color to be fabricator's standard.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A780.
- C. Bituminous Protection Coating: Carboline, Bitumastic 50

2.5 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time. $F'c = 4000$ psi minimum at 24 hours.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Five Star Products:
 - 1. Five Star Grout
 - b. Master Builders: Embeco.
 - c. Sonneborn Chemrex Inc.: SonogROUT 10K.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
 - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 - 2. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6 and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
 - 3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 4. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.
- C. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- D. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted and/or not exposed to view or exterior conditions according to SSPC-SP 2 - "Hand Tool Cleaning". For interior steel exposed to view, clean and prepare per SSPC-SP 6 - "Commercial Blast Cleaning". For Exterior steel that is not galvanized, prepare to SSPC-SP-6. For members to be hot Dipped Galvanized, prepare to SSPC-SP-3, "Power Tool Cleaning".
- E. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for passage of other work through steel framing members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 - 2. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.
- F. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

2.7 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type:
 - a. Typical shear connections: Snug Tightened.
 - b. Moment connections: Slip Critical.
 - c. Tension/Compression Connections: Slip Critical.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 - 2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

2.8 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Structural steel to be unpainted unless noted otherwise on the architectural drawings.
- B. For all steel noted as painted on the architectural drawings, shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 - 3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
 - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
 - 5. Galvanized surfaces.
 - 6. Surfaces supporting concrete slabs, composite metal deck or shear connectors.
- C. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces per the requirements in Section 2.6
- D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
 - 1. Apply two coats of shop paint to inaccessible surfaces after assembly or erection.

2.9 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123.
 - 1. Galvanize items indicated in Contract Documents.
 - 2. Fill vent holes and grind smooth after galvanizing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify elevations of concrete bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with steel erector present, for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated. See Section 1.10.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges".
- B. Base Plates: Clean concrete bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base plates. Clean bottom surface of base plates.
 - 1. Set base plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
 - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base plate before packing with grout.
 - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
 - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions. The top flanges of

the beams receiving stud shear connectors shall be free of any substances that might interfere with the welding operations. During welding the steel decking panels shall be free of detrimental substances and rest tightly upon the top flange of the beam.

- I. No trades may field cut or alter structural members without specific approval of the Structural Engineer. Submit dimensioned plan and detail sketch of proposed modification under cover of a "Request for Information" (RFI) or cloud proposed changes on shop drawings.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 1. Joint Type:
 - a. Typical shear connections: Snug Tightened.
 - b. Moment connections: Slip Critical or fully pretensioned.
 - c. Tension/Compression Connections: Slip Critical or fully pretensioned.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
 1. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
 2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
 4. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for AESS will limit distortions to allowable tolerances.
 - a. Grind butt welds flush.
 - b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.
- C. Tension Control Devices:
 1. Install using electric power wrench as recommended by bolt manufacturer.
 2. Tighten until splined end of bolt is sheared off.
- D. Shear Connectors:
 1. Do not weld when the temperature is below 0 degrees F.
 2. Remove standing water in deck ribs so that water is not trapped between beams and deck during welding.
 3. Ensure that surfaces of steel beams to which studs are to be welded are dry and free of paint, dirt and debris and that deck bottom is in firm contact with beam.
 4. Install studs after steel framing and metal decking are in place.
 5. Use automatic welding equipment powered to weld studs satisfactorily under site conditions.
 6. Prior to starting each day's operations, weld at least two shear studs to determine proper generator control unit and stud welder settings.
 7. Test that studs are capable of being bent 45 degrees from vertical without weld failure.
 8. Weld additional trial shear studs at request of Independent Testing Lab.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspection agency to provide special inspection and testing services and prepare reports in accordance with Division 1, Section "Structural Tests and Special Inspections", and IBC Chapter 17 as adopted by the current Minnesota State Building Code, and the CASE/Mn Guideline for Special Structural Inspection and Testing, and other items which in the professional judgment of the Structural Engineer of Record, are critical to the integrity of the building structure.
- B. Special Inspection and Testing Criteria. Refer to Division 1, Section "Structural Tests and Special Inspections" for standard requirements and definitions.
 - 1. Special Testing and Inspection Requirements
 - a. High Strength Bolting (Field Installed).
 - 1) General (Technical II)
 - a) Visually inspect mating surfaces and bolt type for all slip-critical bolted connections for general conformance with the contract documents prior to bolting.
 - b) Determine the requirements for bolts, nuts, washers, paint and installation/tightening standards are met.
 - c) Observe calibration procedures when such procedures are required in the contract documents and verify that selected procedure is used to tighten bolts.
 - 2) Slip Critical Bolts and Tension Bolts (Technical II)
 - a) Test bolt tightening in 10% of all bolts. Test a minimum of two bolts in each connection. Verify that all plies of connected elements have been brought into contact, at 100% of connection. Verify all tips are removed from "twist-off" bolts.
 - 3) Bearing Bolts (Technical II)
 - a) Visually inspect to conform all plies of connected elements have been brought into contact, at 100% of connections. (Applies only to bolts designed for values not requiring exclusion of threads from failure plane, all other bolts require testing as for tension bolts.)
 - 4) Standard
 - a) Test High Strength bolted connections per R.C.S.C. Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts.
 - b. Welding (Field)
 - 1) Fillet Welds (Technical II)
 - a) Visually inspect 100% of all fillet welds for size, length and quality per AWS D1.1.
 - 2) Partial Penetration Welds (Technical II)
 - a) Test 100% of all partial penetration welds exceeding 5/16 inch, using Ultrasonic Tester per AWS D1.1. Test 25% of all partial penetration welds less than 5/16 inch, using Magnetic Particle Testing per ASTM E109, performed on root pass on finished weld.
 - 3) Full Penetration Welds (Technical II)
 - a) Test 100% of all full penetration welds exceeding 5/16 inch, using Ultrasonic Tester per AWS D1.1. Test 25% of all full penetration welds less than 5/16 inch, using Magnetic

Particle Testing per ASTM E109, performed on root pass on finished weld.

- 4) Stud Shear Connector Welds (Technical I)
 - a) Visually inspect 100% of installed studs for full 360 degree flash. Test all questionable studs, not showing full 360 degree flash by bending studs 15 degrees from vertical, away from weld discontinuity, per AWS D1.1. All ceramic welding ferrules shall be removed by contractor. Randomly test all other studs by bending to 15 degrees from vertical as noted:
 - Studs welded through deck: 15%
 - Studs welded to bare steel: 5%
 Alternatively, sound 100% of installed studs, for full penetration weld, using an 8 lb. Maul. Test questionable studs as noted above. Welding ferrules need not be removed.
- 5) Deck Welds and Fasteners (Technical I)
 - a) Visually inspect size, location, length and burn through for 100% of puddle welds on metal deck designed as a structural element, per AWS D1.3.
 - b) Visually inspect sidelap fasteners to meet spacing and size specified.
- 6) Welding of Reinforcing Bars (Technical II)
 - a) Be continuously present during welding and visually inspect 100% of all reinforcing bar welds as the welding is performed, per AWS D1.4. Verify proper joint preparation is provided and proper electrodes are used and properly store and dried.
- c. Mechanical Fasteners (Misc.)
 - 1) Fasteners (Technical I)
 - a) Visually inspect specified size, spacing, embedment, and location of expansion bolts and adhesive bonded bolts in connections shown on the structural drawings.
- d. Structural Configuration
 - 1) Submittals (Structural I)
 - a) Verify mill test reports and other submitted documentation for compliance with contract documents.
 - 2) Materials (Technical I)
 - a) Verify materials delivered to site comply with contract documents and approved shop drawings. Materials include bolts, electrodes, mechanical fasteners and deck gauge.
 - 3) Detail Compatibility (Structural I) On a periodic basis:
 - a) Review project documents affecting integrity of the structure, including contract documents and pertinent submittals (approved shop drawings)
 - b) Visit site, at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, to perform review of the structure and visually confirm general compliance with the project documents.
 - c) Inspect the following to verify member orientation, configuration, type and size comply with details indicated on the contract documents and approved shop drawings:
 - Bracing and stiffening members.

- Proper applications of joint details at connections for structural members.
 - Other work critical to the integrity of the building structure.
 - e. General (Technical I)
 - 1) Verify that all mill certificates and welder certifications comply with the requirements set forth in this specification.
 - 2. Conventional Testing and Inspection Requirements
 - a. High Strength Bolting
 - 1) Bolt Material Test (Technical II)
 - a) Test a minimum of two bolts of each ASTM class specified, for bolt hardness and tensile properties.
 - 2) Fabrication and Erection Tolerances (Owner's Construction Manager)
 - a) Verify in-place structure satisfies specified tolerances.
 - C. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION
- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists and accessories, and abutting structural steel.
 - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
 - 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
 - C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 05120

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 05310 – STEEL ROOF
DECK**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Roof deck.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 Section "Structural Testing and Special Inspections".
 - 2. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel".
 - 3. Division 07 Sections for thermal and moisture protection, and applied fireproofing.
 - 4. Division 09 Sections for painting and coating of exposed deck.

1.3 SUBMITTALS FOR REVIEW

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
 - 1. Include name of deck manufacturer as well as type, depth, gauge and finish of deck.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, attachment patterns, field welding requirements, side lap fastenings, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction required for complete installation of decking.
 - 2. Describe types and locations of acoustical materials and closures.
 - 3. Include deck manufacturer's ICBO Approval Number.
- C. Certificates:
 - 1. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck, signed by product manufacturer.
 - 2. Welding certificates signed by contractor certifying that welders comply with requirements of Article 1.5 – "Quality Assurance."
- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
 - 1. Powder-actuated mechanical fasteners.
 - a. Substitute for deck welds at contractor's option. Product data and test reports shall demonstrate fasteners have equal or greater capacity than welds indicated and are suitable for attachment to base material.
- E. FMG Listings for description of roofing products evaluated to meet minimum requirements for Factory Mutual Research Approval recognition.

F. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR4.2 (if required): For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Sustainable Design Closeout Documentation.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Fabricate panels to comply with dimensional parameters as defined in "Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks, and Roof Decks" in SDI Publication No. 31. Section properties shall be based in accordance with the AISI Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed steel deck similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1 and D1.3 Structural Welding Codes.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- E. FMG Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FMG and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class1-90 windstorm ratings.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.
 1. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.
- C. Keep construction loads and stored materials, including other decking, off steel deck until it is permanently fastened and inspected.
- D. Do not overload deck beyond 75% rated capacity with stored materials or equipment.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in topside ribs of acoustical deck with roofing installation specified in Division 07 Sections for thermal and moisture protection to ensure protection of insulation strips against damage from effects of weather and other causes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Canam Steel Corp.
 2. Epic Metals Corporation.
 3. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Division.
 4. United Steel Deck, Inc.
 5. Verco Manufacturing Co.
 6. Wheeling Corrugating Company.

2.2 ROOF DECK

- A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, and with the following:
1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, Grade 40 minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
 2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Grade 40 zinc coating.
 3. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Grade 40, G60 zinc coating; cleaned, pretreated, and primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's Standard.
 4. Deck Profile: As indicated on Drawings.
 5. Profile Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
 6. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
 7. Design Uncoated-Steel Thicknesses; Deck Unit/Bottom Plate: As indicated on Drawings.
 8. Span Condition: Three span minimum, unless noted otherwise on drawings.
 9. Side Laps: As indicated on drawings.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, austempered, powder-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners with knurled shank.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi, of same thickness, material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Flat Sump Plate: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick (14-ga), of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.

- G. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.
- H. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
 - 1. Align cellular deck panels over full length of cell runs and align cells at ends of abutting panels.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck at contractor's option. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as follows:
 - 1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch, nominal.
 - 2. Weld Spacing: Space welds as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Cover weld burn holes with metallic tape.

- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals as indicated on Drawings, and as follows:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
 - 2. If deck is 0.0474 inches thick (18-ga) or more, fastenings may be welded with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum.
- D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and weld flanges to top of deck. Space welds not more than 8 inches apart with at least one weld at each corner.
 - 1. Install reinforcing channels or zeeps in ribs to span between supports and weld.
- E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
 - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.
- G. Rubber Gaskets: At all roof areas where no roofing materials or insulation is provided over the steel roof decking, such as the canopy area, provide rubber gaskets for all tek screws capable of preventing water leakage through the decking.

3.4 PROTECTION AND REPAIR

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
 - 1. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- D. No hangers, fasteners or loads shall be hung from the underside of the deck unless specifically indicated thus on the structural drawings. Such items as mechanical/electrical equipment, utility lines, architectural bulkheads, ceilings, signage, etc, shall have their own sub-framing designed, supplied and installed by their related trade, as required span to adjacent beams, joists or walls for any support needed.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports in accordance with Division 01 Section "Structural Testing and Special Inspections".
- B. Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect size, location, length and burn-through for 100% of puddle welds on metal deck, per AWS D1.3, Section 6. (Technical I).
 - 2. Visually inspect size, location, and seating for 100% of powder-actuated or pneumatically driven fasteners on metal deck, per AWS D1.3, Section 6. (Technical I).
 - 3. Report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- C. Inspection Procedure:
 - 1. After five to ten squares of roof deck have been erected, arrange for inspection agency to visually inspect fastening system for size, quality and spacing at interior supporting members, perimeter supports and side laps.
 - 2. Demonstrate corrective procedures for deficiencies found by inspection agency to satisfaction of the Architect and inspection agency before erection of roof deck is resumed.
 - 3. Use approved fastening system, including corrective procedures, as standard for comparison for remaining deck fastening.
 - 4. When erection of roof deck is completed, but before placing roofing materials, arrange for inspection agency to make inspection of complete deck installation and submit written report to Architect.
- D. Deck panels shall be clean, dry, and in firm contact with substrate prior to welding.
- E. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.
- F. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 05310

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 05360 – COMPOSITE STEEL
DECK**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Composite steel deck.
 - 2. Related accessories.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 – Structural Testing and Special Inspections.
 - 2. Division 03 – Cast-In-Place Concrete
 - 3. Division 05 – Structural Steel Framing.
 - 4. Division 07 Sections for thermal and moisture protection, and applied fireproofing.
 - 5. Division 09 Sections for painting and coating of exposed deck.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. AISI – North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.
- B. AWS D1.1 – Structural Welding Code - Steel.
- C. AWS D1.3
- D. Steel Deck Institute Design Manual

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
 - 1. Include name of deck manufacturer as well as type, depth, and gauge of deck.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, attachment patterns, field welding requirements, side lap fastenings, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction required for complete installation of decking.

- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
 - 1. Powder-actuated mechanical fasteners.
 - a. Substitute for deck welds at contractor's option. Product data and test reports shall demonstrate fasteners have equal or greater capacity than welds indicated and are suitable for attachment to base material.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule for all action submittal items.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck, signed by product manufacturer certifying that products furnished comply with the requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For steel deck.
- E. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR4.2 as required: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
- F. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Sustainable Design Closeout Documentation.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer offering deck products to be incorporated into the Work must be a member of Steel Deck Institute.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed steel deck similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1 and D1.3 Structural Welding Codes.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 2. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Provide decking to receive spray-applied fire-resistive materials (SFRM) free of amounts of lubricant or other contaminants which would significantly impair adhesion of sprayed materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 - 2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 COMPOSITE STEEL DECK

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Canam Steel Corp.
 - 2. Epic Metals Corporation.
 - 3. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Division.
 - 4. United Steel Deck, Inc.
 - 5. Verco Manufacturing Co.
 - 6. Wheeling Corrugating Company.
- B. Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs, and interlocking side laps to comply with dimensional parameters as defined in "Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks, and Roof Decks" in SDI Publication No. 30. Section properties shall be based in accordance with the AISI Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.
- C. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40 zinc coating.
- D. Galvanized and Shop-Primed Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 40, zinc coating; with unpainted top surface and cleaned and pretreated bottom surface primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
- E. Section Properties: Deck profile, depth, design uncoated steel thickness, and finish shall be as indicated on Drawings.
- F. Span Condition: Three span minimum.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, powder-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- D. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- E. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile indicated.
- F. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- wide flanges and level recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- H. Flat Sump Plate: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- I. Galvanizing Repair Paint: [ASTM A 780] [SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight].
- J. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.

- E. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- F. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- G. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- H. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 FLOOR-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
 - 1. Weld Diameter: As indicated on drawings.
 - 2. Weld Spacing: As indicated on drawings.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals as indicated on drawings, and as follows:
 - 1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
 - 2. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 2.5 inches, with end joints as indicated on drawings.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector and independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports in accordance with Section 01 45 33 – Structural Testing and Special Inspections.
- B. Inspections:
 - 1. Visually inspect size, location, length and burn-through for 100% of puddle welds on metal deck, per AWS D1.3, Section 6.
 - 2. Visually inspect size, location, and seating for 100% of powder-actuated or pneumatically driven fasteners on metal deck, per AWS D1.3, Section 6.
 - 3. Report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- C. Deck panels shall be clean, dry, and in firm contact with substrate prior to welding.
- D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

- E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on bottom surface of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting: Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on bottom surface of prime-painted deck exposed to view immediately after installation, and apply repair paint of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck.
 - 1. Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of bottom deck surfaces are included in Division 09.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05360

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 05400 – COLD-FORMED
METAL FRAMING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Exterior and interior load-bearing wall framing.
 - 2. Exterior and interior non-load-bearing wall framing.
 - 3. Engineered design by Contractor's Specialty Structural Engineer.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 01 – Structural Testing and Special Inspections.
 - 2. Division 03 – Cast-In-Place Concrete.
 - 3. Division 05 – Structural Steel Framing.
 - 4. Division 05 – Metal Fabrications.
 - 5. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.
 - 6. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud-framed, shaft-wall assemblies.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. AISI – North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members.
- B. AWS D1.1 – Structural Welding Code.
- C. AWS D1.3
- D. LGSEA's Technical Note 551e, "Design Guide for Permanent Bracing of Cold-Formed Steel Trusses."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
 - 1. Design Loads: As indicated on drawings
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than indicated on the drawings.

3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.
 4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
 - a. Upward and downward movement of $L/360$ where L is the span in inches.
- B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
1. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
 2. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
- C. Calculations: For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by Qualified Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Minnesota. Submit calculations at the same time as shop drawings.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule for all action submittal items.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, unless otherwise stated, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests for current products:
 1. Steel sheet.
 2. Expansion anchors.
 3. Power-actuated anchors.
 4. Mechanical fasteners.
 5. Vertical deflection clips.
 6. Horizontal drift deflection clips
 7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For cold-formed metal framing.
- E. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2 if required: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
2. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Sustainable Design Closeout Documentation.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is licensed in the State of Minnesota and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.
- D. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
 1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
 2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
- H. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings."
- I. Pre-Installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

- B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 1. AllSteel Products, Inc.
 2. Clark Steel Framing.
 3. Dale/Incor.
 4. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
 5. MarinoWare, a division of Ware Industries.
 6. SCAFCO Corporation
 7. The Steel Network.
 8. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
 9. United Metal Products, Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 1. Grade: ST33H minimum or as required by structural performance.
 2. Coating: G60 or equivalent.
- B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection or Drift Clips: ASTM A 653, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
 2. Coating: G60.

2.3 LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 18 gage (0.0428 inch).
 2. Flange Width: Minimum 1-5/8 inches with ½ inch returns.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 18 gage (0.0428 inch).
 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.
- C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:
 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 18 gage (0.0428 inch).
 2. Flange Width: Minimum 1-5/8 inches with ½ inch returns.

2.4 NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 18 gage (0.0428 inch).
 2. Flange Width: Minimum 1-5/8 inches with ½ inch returns.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and as follows:
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 18 gage (0.0428 inch).
 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches.
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
1. Available Manufacturers: As per Section 2.1.
- D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure, and as follows:
1. Available Manufacturers: As per Section 2.1.
 2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 18 gage or (0.0428 inch).
 3. Flange Width: 1 inch plus twice the design gap.
- E. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure.

2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
1. Supplementary framing.
 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
 3. Web stiffeners.
 4. Anchor clips.
 5. End clips.
 6. Foundation clips.
 7. Gusset plates.
 8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
 11. Backer plates.

2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123.
- B. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- C. Powder-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure,

a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

- D. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
- E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
 - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:

1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- D. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch.
- D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.

- a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
- J. At openings in all exterior or bearing walls, provide additional studs as indicated on drawings.
- K. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
 - 1. Anchor Spacing: As shown on drawings.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of 1/8 inch between the end of wall framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches on center max spacing. Tighten spacing if required for loads.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Align floor and roof framing over studs. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.

- F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.
- G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
 - 1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
 - 2. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
- H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
 - 1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
- I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of 2 screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches deep.
- J. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
- K. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated on drawings to support architectural wall finish.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure
OR
 - 2. Connect vertical deflection clips to bypassing studs and anchor to building structure.

- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 - a. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector and independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.7 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05400

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 05500 – METAL
FABRICATIONS**

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors.
 - 2. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
 - 3. Miscellaneous steel columns.
 - 4. Metal ladders.
 - 5. Metal bollards.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:
 - 1. Loose steel lintels.
 - 2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channels inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
 - 3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
- C. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
 - 2. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
 - 3. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel."
 - 4. Division 05 Section "Metal Stairs"
 - 5. Division 05 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design ladders, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Thermal Movements; Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Paint products.
 - 2. Grout
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified structural engineer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code – Steel."

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages and steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Delivery such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrication exposed to view in the complete Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names or blemishes

2.2 FERROUS METALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.
 - 1. Size of Channels: 1-5/8 by 1-5/8 inches (41 by 41 mm).
 - 2. Material: Cold-rolled steel, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, Type B; 0.0677 inch (1.7 mm) minimum thickness; coated with rust-inhibitive, baked-on, acrylic enamel.
- E. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/1 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicates; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- D. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
- E. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).
- F. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
- G. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.
- H. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).

- I. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B17.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
- J. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six (6) times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four (4) times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- K. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 194M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
- L. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches (41 by 22mm) by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long at not more than 8 inches (200mm) o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections and Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."
- C. Galvanized Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- E. Non-shrink, Non-metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- F. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum twenty-eight (28) day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to the greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces with straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and method that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
 - 1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm), with a minimum 6 inch (150 mm) embedment and 2 inch (50 mm) hook, not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
 - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
 - 2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with primer specified in Division 09 Section "Painting."

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL COLUMNS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.

- B. Fabricate steel columns with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill or punch baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
- D. Prime miscellaneous steel columns with primer specified in Division 09 Section "Painting."

2.8 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of opening equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches (200 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.9 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- C. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.10 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
 - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesives.
 - 2. Galvanized Repair Paint: Where shop-applied galvanized coating is damaged, burned, abraded, or otherwise removed from the substrate, provide galvanizing repair compound with minimum 95% zinc content.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, ZRC Worldwide "Galvtite Galvanizing Repair Compound."
- B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Shop prime with primers specified in Division 09 Section, "Painting."

- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
 - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3 "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 3. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings:" SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 4. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSOPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
 - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitation. Do not weld, cut or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws and other connectors.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

3.3 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS COLUMNS

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
- B. Base Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
 - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
 - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plates before packing with grout.
 - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instruction for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erections, clean field welds, bolted connections and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting and to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0 mil (0.05 mm) dry film thickness.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780. Apply Galvanizing Repair Compound in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 1.5 mil (0.04 mm) dry film thickness.

END OF SECTION 05500

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 05510 - METAL
STAIRS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.
 2. Industrial-type stairs with steel floor plate and/or grating treads.
 3. Ornamental steel-framed stairs.
 4. Steel tube railings attached to metal stairs.
 5. Steel tube handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.
 6. Railing gates at the level of exit discharge.
 7. Complete registered engineering calculations and design related to stair design. Fabricator's responsibilities include engaging a specialty structural engineer to prepare structural analysis data and submit calculations.
- B. Related Requirements:
1. Division 01 – Structural Testing and Special Inspections.
 2. Division 03 – Cast-In-Place Concrete.
 3. Division 05 – Metal Fabrications: For metal treads and nosings not installed in metal stairs and miscellaneous steel fabrications.
 4. Division 90 – Painting and High Performance Coatings
 5. Division 06 Section “Rough Carpentry” for wood blocking for anchoring railings.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. NAAMM Stair Standards

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance of Stairs: Provide metal stairs capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following non-reducible loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft..
 2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf applied on an area of 4 sq. in..
 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
 5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/360 or 1/4 inch, whichever is less.
- B. Structural Performance of Railings: Provide railings capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Handrails:

- a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- 2. Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- 3. Infill of Guards:
 - a. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft..
 - b. Uniform load of 25 lbf/sq. ft. applied horizontally.
 - c. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For metal stairs and the following:
 - 1. Prefilled metal-pan stair treads.
 - 2. Precast concrete treads.
 - 3. Epoxy-resin-filled stair treads.
 - 4. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate finishes.
 - 5. Abrasive nosings.
 - 6. Metal floor plate treads.
 - 7. Paint products.
 - 8. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.
- C. Calculations: For stair stringers, components, railings, and connections, provide complete design calculations signed and sealed by Qualified Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Minnesota, indicating that all components comply with design requirements set forth in this specification section. Submit design calculations for stair stringers, components, and connections, designed for loads indicated in this specification section, at the same time as shop drawings. Include location references.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design.
- E. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
 - 1. Precast concrete treads.
 - 2. Epoxy-resin-filled stair treads.
 - 3. Stair treads with nonslip-aggregate surface finish.
 - 4. Metal floor plate treads.
 - 5. Grating treads.
 - 6. Abrasive nosings.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for stairs and railings.
 - 1. Test railings according ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule for all action submittal items.

- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 1. LEED Credit: Product Data for Credit MR 4.1 and Credit MR 4.2 if required: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.
 - a. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Sustainable Design Closeout Documentation.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for class of stair designated, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
 1. Preassembled Stairs: Commercial class.
 2. Industrial-Type Stairs: Industrial class.
 3. Ornamental Stairs: Architectural class.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so that they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.3 FERROUS METALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36
- B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500
- C. Steel Bars for Grating Treads: ASTM A 36
- D. Wire Rod for Grating Crossbars: ASTM A 510.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
 - 1. Provide hot-dip or mechanically deposited, zinc-coated anchor bolts for exterior stairs and stairs indicated to be galvanized.
- D. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3.
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
- F. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1.
- G. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1.
- H. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Material for Anchors in Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
 - 2. Material for Anchors in Exterior Locations: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts complying with ASTM F 593 and nuts complying with ASTM F 594.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections.

- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- E. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- F. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Nonslip-Aggregate Concrete Finish: Factory-packaged abrasive aggregate made from fused, aluminum-oxide grits or crushed emery; rustproof and nonglazing; unaffected by freezing, moisture, or cleaning materials.
- H. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, 6 by 6 inches--W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, railings, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
 - 1. Fabricate treads and platforms of exterior stairs so finished walking surfaces slope to drain.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld connections to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

2.7 STAIR RAILINGS

- A. Comply with applicable requirements in Division 05 Section Pipe and Tube Railings for railings

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
- C. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with applicable standard listed below:
 1. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
 2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
 3. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- F. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- G. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete. Center nosings on tread width.

H. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive supplied by manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLING METAL STAIRS WITH GROUTED BASEPLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of baseplates.
- B. Set steel stair baseplates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After stairs have been positioned and aligned, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
 1. Use nonmetallic, nonshrink grout, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.3 INSTALLING STEEL TUBE RAILINGS

- A. Adjust railing systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads. Plumb posts in each direction. Secure posts and rail ends to building construction as follows:
 1. Anchor posts to steel by welding directly to steel supporting members.
 2. Anchor handrail ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail ends and anchored with post-installed anchors and bolts.
- B. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets. Provide bracket with 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads. Secure wall brackets to building construction as follows:
 1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.
 2. Use type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage.
 3. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
 4. For steel-framed gypsum board assemblies, use hanger or lag bolts set into wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.
 5. For steel-framed gypsum board assemblies, fasten brackets directly to steel framing or concealed steel reinforcements using self-tapping screws of size and type required to support structural loads.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05510

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 05521
PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Steel pipe and tube railings.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 5 Section "Metal Stairs" for steel tube railings associated with metal stairs.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:
 - 1. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
 - 2. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65 or minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by 1.95.
 - 3. Stainless Steel: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.
- C. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 - 2. Infill of Guards:

- a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft.
 - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- E. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
 - 2. Railing brackets.
 - 3. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

1.8 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Steel Pipe and Tube Railings:
 - a. Pisor Industries, Inc.
 - b. Wagner, R & B, Inc.; a division of the Wagner Companies.
 - c. Approved local and regional fabricators.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
- C. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
 - 1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
- D. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- E. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
 - 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
 - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
 - 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
 - 1. Provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
- B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 9 painting Sections and Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings."
- E. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- F. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
- G. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Division 9 painting Sections and Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings."
- H. Epoxy Intermediate Coat: Complying with MPI #77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
- I. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- J. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- K. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
 - 1. Water-Resistant Product: Provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
 - 1. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
- J. Form changes in direction as follows:
 - 1. As detailed or by bending or inserting prefabricated elbow fittings.
- K. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- L. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- M. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- N. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.

1. At brackets and fittings fastened to gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- O. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- P. For railing posts set in concrete, provide steel and stainless-steel for stainless-steel rails, sleeves not less than 6 inches long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
- Q. Woven-Wire Mesh Infill Panels: Fabricate infill panels from woven-wire mesh crimped into 1-by-1/2-by-1/8-inch metal channel frames. Make wire mesh and frames from same metal as railings in which they are installed.
1. Orient wire mesh with wires horizontal and vertical.
- R. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

2.7 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

2.8 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanized Railings:
1. Hot-dip galvanize exterior steel and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
 2. Comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
 3. Comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
 4. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
- B. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
- C. For nongalvanized steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.

- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- E. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
- F. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 9 Section "High-Performance Coatings."
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- G. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
 - 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
 - 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
 - 3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m).
- C. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.

- E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, attached to post with set screws.
- D. Leave anchorage joint filler sloped away from post.
- E. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
 - 1. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
- F. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
- B. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
 - 1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.

2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- C. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
 3. For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
 2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05521

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 05530 - METAL
GRATINGS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Metal bar gratings.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing" for structural-steel framing system components.
 - 2. Division 05 Section "Metal Stairs" for grating treads and landings of steel-framed stairs.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance of Gratings: Provide gratings capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
 - 1. Floors: Uniform load of 100 psf or concentrated load of 300 lbf, whichever produces the greater stress.
 - 2. Walkways and Elevated Platforms Used as Exits: Uniform load of 100 psf
 - 3. Limit deflection to L/240 or 1/4 inch, whichever is less.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.
 - 2. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel sheet certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Metal Bar Grating Standards: Comply with NAAMM MBG 531, "Metal Bar Grating Manual."
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with gratings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating gratings without field measurements. Coordinate wall and other contiguous construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
 - 2. Provide allowance for trimming and fitting at site.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for gratings, grating frames, and supports. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following (or approved equal):
 - 1. Metal Bar Gratings:
 - a. Alabama Metal Industries Corporation.
 - b. All American Grating, Inc.
 - c. Barnett/Bates Corp.
 - d. Borden Metal Products (Canada) Limited.
 - e. Fisher & Ludlow.
 - f. Grupo Metelmex, S.A. de C.V.
 - g. IKG Industries; a Harsco Company.
 - h. Marwas Steel Co.; Laurel Steel Products Division.
 - i. McNichols Company
 - j. Ohio Gratings, Inc.
 - k. Seidelhuber Metal Products, Inc.

I. Tru-Weld.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Wire Rod for Grating Crossbars: ASTM A 510.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and, where indicated, flat washers; ASTM F 593 for bolts and ASTM F 594 for nuts, Alloy Group 1.
- D. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1.
- E. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy that is welded.
- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Shop Assembly: Fabricate grating sections in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch material cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form from materials of size, thickness, and shapes indicated, but not less than that needed to support indicated loads.
- D. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.

E. Welding: Comply with AWS recommendations and the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.

F. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Fabricate and space the anchoring devices to secure gratings, frames, and supports rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

1. Toeplate Height: 4 inches, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 METAL BAR GRATINGS

A. Welded Steel Grating:

1. Bearing Bar Spacing: As indicated on drawings.
2. Bearing Bar Depth: As indicated on drawings.
3. Bearing Bar Thickness: As required to comply with structural performance requirements.
4. Crossbar Spacing: As required to comply with structural performance requirements.
5. Grating Mark: As indicated.
6. Traffic Surface: As indicated.
7. Steel Finish: As indicated by Architect.

B. Removable Grating Sections: Fabricate with banding bars attached by welding to entire perimeter of each section. Include anchors and fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by manufacturer for attaching to supports.

1. Provide not less than 4 saddle clips for each grating section composed of rectangular bearing bars 3/16 inch or less in thickness and spaced 15/16 inch or more o.c., with each clip designed and fabricated to fit over 2 bearing bars.
2. Furnish threaded bolts with nuts and washers, self-drilling fasteners with washers, or galvanized malleable-iron flange clamp with galvanized bolt for securing grating to supports.
 - a. Available Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, a product that may be incorporated into the Work includes, but is not limited to, "Grate-Fast" by Lindapter North America, Inc.

C. Fabricate cutouts in grating sections for penetrations indicated. Arrange cutouts to permit grating removal without disturbing items penetrating gratings.

1. Edge-band openings in grating that interrupt four or more bearing bars with bars of same size and material as bearing bars.

D. Do not notch bearing bars at supports to maintain elevation.

2.7 STEEL FINISHES

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

- B. Finish gratings, frames, and supports after assembly.
- C. Galvanizing: For those items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- D. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of gratings, frames, and supports, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing gratings. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.
 - 1. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade the surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

3.2 INSTALLING METAL BAR GRATINGS

- A. General: Install gratings to comply with recommendations of referenced metal bar grating standards that apply to grating types and bar sizes indicated, including installation clearances and standard anchoring details.
- B. Attach removable units to supporting members with type and size of clips and fasteners indicated or, if not indicated, as recommended by grating manufacturer for type of installation conditions shown.
- C. Attach nonremovable units to supporting members by welding where both materials are same; otherwise, fasten by bolting as indicated above.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05530

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 06100 - ROUGH
CARPENTRY**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes the following:
 - 1. Wood blocking, cants and nailers.
- B. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section:
 - 1. Division 6 Section "Sheathing."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Rough Carpentry: Carpentry work not specified in other sections and generally not exposed, unless otherwise specified.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal (38 mm actual) or greater but less than 5 inches nominal (114 mm actual) in least dimension.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
 - 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

B. LEED Submittals:

1. Certificates for Credit MR 7: Chain-of-custody certificates indicating that products specified to be made from certified wood comply with forest certification requirements. Include documentation that manufacturer is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body. Include statement indicating cost for each certified wood product.
2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee's (ALSC) Board of Review.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Keep materials under cover and dry. Protect from weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings including polyethylene and similar materials.
 1. For lumber and plywood pressure treated with waterborne chemicals, place spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Wood-Preservative-Treated Materials:
 - A. Baxter: J. H. Baxter Co.
 - B. Chemical Specialties, Inc.
 - C. Continental Wood Preservers, Inc.
 - D. Hickson Corp.
 - E. Hoover Treated Wood Products, Inc.
 - F. Osmose Wood Preserving, Inc.

2.2 LUMBER, GENERAL

- A. Certified Wood: Materials shall be produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
- B. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of

any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
- B. Inspection Agencies: Inspection agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
1. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
 2. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.
 3. NELMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
- C. Grade Stamps: Provide lumber with each piece factory marked with grade stamp of inspection agency evidencing compliance with grading rule requirements and identifying grading agency, grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
- D. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
1. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Provide dry lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where lumber or plywood is indicated as preservative treated or is specified to be treated, comply with applicable requirements of AWWA C2 (lumber) and AWWA C9 (plywood). Mark each treated item with the Quality Mark Requirements of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.
1. Do not use chemicals containing chromium or arsenic.
- B. Pressure treat aboveground items with waterborne preservatives to a minimum retention of 0.25 lb/cu. ft. After treatment, kiln-dry lumber and plywood to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 15 percent, respectively. Treat indicated items and the following:
1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
- C. Complete fabrication of treated items before treatment, where possible. If cut after treatment, apply field treatment complying with AWWA M4 to cut surfaces. Inspect each piece of lumber or plywood after drying and discard damaged or defective pieces.
- D. Do not use oil borne pentachlorophenol for surfaces that are to be painted and surfaces in contact with roofing.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including rooftop equipment curbs and support bases, cant strips, bucks, nailers, blocking, furring, grounds, stripping, and similar members.
- B. Fabricate miscellaneous lumber from dimension lumber of sizes indicated and into shapes shown.
- C. Moisture Content: 19 percent maximum for lumber items not specified to receive wood preservative treatment.
- D. Grade: For dimension lumber sizes, provide No. 3 or Standard grade lumber per ALSC's NGRs of Southern pine-SPIB or Douglas fir south-WWPA, unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with a hot-dip zinc coating per ASTM A153 or of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A307, Grade A; with ASTM A563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chlorpyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.

- B. Discard units of material with defects that impair quality of rough carpentry construction and that are too small to use in fabricating rough carpentry with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- C. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted.
- D. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as required for accurate fit. Correlate location of furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to allow attachment of other construction.
- E. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- F. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
 - 2. "Recommended Nailing Schedule" of referenced framing standard and with AFPA's "National Design Specifications for Wood Construction." Comply with requirements of applicable codes and of authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. Use hot-dip galvanized nails, unless otherwise indicated. Use finishing nails for finish work. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; predrill as required.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

- A. Install wood blocking and nailers where shown and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes shown and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

END OF SECTION 06100

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 06160
SHEATHING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wall sheathing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate material composition, thicknesses, sizes and fire resistive characteristics.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; GlasRoc.
 - b. G-P Gypsum Corporation; Dens-Glass Gold.
 - c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond e(2)XP.
 - d. Temple-Inland Inc.; GreenGlass
 - e. United States Gypsum Co.; Securock.
 - 2. Type and Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch thick.
 - 3. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.

2.2 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
 - 1. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

2.3 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
 - 1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch, of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.

2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
- D. Coordinate sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- E. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.
 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.
- D. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

END OF SECTION 06160

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 07131 – SELF-ADHERING
SHEET WATERPROOFING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bonded HDPE or polyethylene sheet waterproofing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Certificates for Credit MR 5: For products and materials required to comply with requirements for regional materials, certificates indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. Include statement indicating distance to Project, cost for each regional material, and fraction by weight that is considered regional.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of waterproofing and details of substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.
- D. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, including the following products:
 - 1. 8-by-8-inch square of waterproofing and flashing sheet.
 - 2. 8-by-8-inch square of insulation.
 - 3. 4-by-4-inch square of drainage panel.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

Bid Package 1

07131 - 1

- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by waterproofing manufacturer.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by waterproofing manufacturer. Do not apply waterproofing to a damp or wet substrate.
 - 1. Do not apply waterproofing in snow, rain, fog, or mist.
- B. Maintain adequate ventilation during preparation and application of waterproofing materials.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard materials-only warranty in which manufacturer agrees to furnish replacement waterproofing material for waterproofing that does not comply with requirements or that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations for Waterproofing System: Obtain waterproofing materials, protection course, and molded-sheet drainage panels from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 BONDED HDPE OR POLYETHYLENE SHEET WATERPROOFING

- A. Bonded HDPE Sheet for Vertical Applications: Uniform, flexible, multilayered-composite sheet membrane consisting of either a HDPE film coated with a pressure-sensitive adhesive and protective release liner, total 32-mil thickness, or an HDPE film coated with a modified asphalt layer and a nonwoven geotextile-fabric final layer, total 73-mil thickness; with the following physical properties:
 - 1. Tensile Strength, Film: 4000 psi minimum; ASTM D 412.
 - 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Pass at minus 10 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
 - 3. Peel Adhesion to Concrete: 5 lbf/in. minimum; ASTM D 903, modified.

SELF-ADHERING SHEET WATERPROOFING

Bid Package 1

07131 - 2

4. Lap Adhesion: 2.5 lbf/in. minimum; ASTM D 1876, modified.
 5. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: 231 feet; ASTM D 5385, modified.
 6. Puncture Resistance: 100 lbf minimum; ASTM E 154.
 7. Water Vapor Permeance: 0.01 perms maximum; ASTM E 96/E 96M, Water Method.
 8. Water Absorption: 0.5 percent maximum; ASTM D 570.
- B. Mastic, Adhesives, and Detail Tape: Liquid mastic and adhesives, and adhesive tapes recommended by waterproofing manufacturer.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with sheet waterproofing.
1. Furnish liquid-type auxiliary materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Primer: Liquid primer recommended for substrate by sheet-waterproofing material manufacturer.
- C. Surface Conditioner: Liquid, waterborne surface conditioner recommended for substrate by sheet-waterproofing material manufacturer.
- D. Liquid Membrane: Elastomeric, two-component liquid, cold fluid applied, of trowel grade or low viscosity.
- E. Substrate Patching Membrane: Low-viscosity, two-component, modified asphalt coating.
- F. Metal Termination Bars: Aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick, predrilled at 9-inch centers.

2.4 INSULATION

- A. Insulation, General: Comply with Division 7 Section "Thermal Insulation."
- B. Board Insulation: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation complying with ASTM C 578, square or shiplap edged.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. DiversiFoam Products.
 - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
 - c. Owens Corning Insulating Systems LLC.
 - d. Pactiv Building Products.
 - e. T. Clear Corporation, a subsidiary of Fin Pan Inc.
 2. Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the waterproofing.
 - 1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is visibly dry and within the moisture limits recommended in writing by manufacturer. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.

3.3 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Install one or more layers of board insulation to achieve required thickness over waterproofed surfaces. Cut and fit to within 3/4 inch of projections and penetrations.
- B. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units in adhesive or tape applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

3.4 PROTECTION, REPAIR, AND CLEANING

- A. Protect waterproofing from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Protect installed board insulation from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.
- C. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates, reapply waterproofing, and repair sheet flashings.

- D. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07131

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 07210 – THERMAL
INSULATION**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Perimeter wall insulation (supporting backfill).
 - 2. Concealed building insulation.
 - 3. Vapor retarders.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for insulation installed in cavity walls and masonry cells.
 - 2. Division 07 Section "Self-Adhering Sheet Waterproofing" for insulation and insulated drainage panels installed with waterproofing.
 - 3. Division 07 Section "Thermoplastic Polyolefin Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
 - 4. Division 7 Section "Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS)" for insulation specified as part of these systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. R-Values: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following minimum R-values:
 - 1. Roof decks: R-23.0 continuous insulation.
 - 2. Walls above grade: R-13.0+3.8 continuous insulation.
 - 3. Walls below grade: R-10.0 continuous insulation.
 - 4. Perimeter Slab-on-Grade: R-10.0.
- B. Plenum Rating: Provide glass-fiber insulation where indicated in ceiling plenums whose test performance is rated as follows for use in plenums as determined by testing identical products per "Erosion Test" and "Mold Growth and Humidity Test" described in UL 181, or on comparable tests from another standard acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Erosion Test Results: Insulation shows no visible evidence of cracking, flaking, peeling, or delamination of interior surface of duct assembly, after testing for four (4) hours at 2500-fpm (13-m/s) air velocity.
2. Mold Growth and Humidity Test Results: Insulation shows no evidence of mold growth, delamination, or other deterioration due to the effects of high humidity, after inoculation with *Chaetomium globosum* on all surfaces and storing for 60 days at 100 percent relative humidity in the dark.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E84.
 2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E119.
 3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E136.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturers written instructions for handling, storing and protecting during insulation.
- B. Protect plastic insulation as follows:
 1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.

2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
3. Complete insulation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and minimum compressive strength indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a) DiversiFoam Products.
 - b) Dow Chemical Company (The).
 - c) Owens Corning.
 - d) Pactiv Building Products.
 2. Type IV, 25 psi (173 kPa).

2.3 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Certain Teed Corporation.
 2. Guardian Fiberglass, Inc.
 3. Johns Manville.
 4. Knauf Fiber Glass.
 5. Owens Corning.
- A. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- B. Where glass-fiber blanket insulation is indicated by the following thicknesses, provide blankets in batt or roll form with thermal resistances indicated:
 1. 3-5/8 inches (92 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 11 deg F x h x sq. ft. / Btu at 75 deg F (1.9 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).
 2. 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) thick with a thermal resistance of 19 deg F x h x

sq. ft. / Btu at 75 deg F (3.3 K x sq. m/W at 24 deg C).

2.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Fire-Retardant, Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: Two (2) outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nonwoven grid of nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 22 lb. / 1000 sq. ft. (10kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.1317 per (7.56 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 5 and 60, respectively.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Raven Industries Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 2FR.
 - b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn T-55 FR.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

2.5 AUXILIARY INSULATING MATERIALS

- A. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by insulation manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor-retarder facings.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.

2.6 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Products"
 - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; Series R RACTOO Insul-Hangers.
 - b. Eckel Industries of Canada; Stic-Klip Type N Fasteners.
 - c. Gemco; Spindle Type.
 - 2. Plate: Perforated galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (.0762 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
 - 3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- B. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates:
 - 1. Products:
 - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; TACTT Adhesive.
 - b. Eckel Industries of Canada; Stic-Klip Type S Adhesive.
 - c. Gemco; Tuff Bond Hanger Adhesive.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instruction applicable to products and application indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain and snow.
- C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.
- E. For performed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to product thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF BELOW-GRADE INSULATION

- A. On vertical foundation wall surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of twenty-four (24) inches below exterior grade line.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

- A. Proceed with demolition of structural framing members systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete building demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
- B. Seal joints between foam-plastic insulation units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended in insulation manufacturer.

- C. Install mineral-fiber insulation in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements
 - 1. Remove below-grade construction, including basements, foundation walls, and footings, to depths indicated.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. Maintain 3-inch (76-mm) clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures.
 - 4. For wood-framed construction, install mineral-fiber blankets according to ASTM c 1320 and as follows:
 - a. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, secure insulation by inset, stapling flanges to sides of framing members.
 - b. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarded once finish material is installed over it.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. General: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Secure in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
- B. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacture.
- C. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduit, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarder.
- D. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarder.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07210

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 07241 – POLYMER-BASED
EXTERIOR INSULATION
AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) applied over gypsum sheathing.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 6 Section "Sheathing" for sheathing. Retain subparagraph below if sealants are specified in that Division 7 Section. Delete if specified in this Section.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in EIFS with elastomeric joint sealants.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Class PB EIFS: A non-load-bearing, exterior wall cladding system that consists of an insulation board attached adhesively, mechanically, or both to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. EIFS Performance: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between system and supporting wall construction, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
 - 2. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior into EIFS and assemblies behind it or through them into interior of building that results in deterioration of thermal-insulating effectiveness or other degradation of EIFS and assemblies behind it, including substrates, supporting wall construction, and interior finish.
 - 3. Thermal: U-value less than or equal to 0.064.

- B. Class PB EIFS: Provide EIFS having physical properties and structural performance that comply with the following:
1. Abrasion Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch-thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch-thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts of sand when tested per ASTM D 968, Method A.
 2. Absorption-Freeze Resistance: No visible deleterious effects and negligible weight loss after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01.
 3. Accelerated Weathering: Five samples per ICC-ES AC219 showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, delamination, or other characteristics that might affect performance as a wall cladding after testing for 2000 hours when viewed under 5 times magnification per ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 154.
 4. Freeze-Thaw: No surface changes, cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination, or indications of delamination between components when viewed under 5 times magnification after 60 cycles per EIMA 101.01.
 5. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-by-2-inch clean glass substrate, cured for 28 days, and showing no growth when tested per ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.
 6. Salt-Spray Resistance: No deleterious affects when tested according to ICC-ES AC219.
 7. Tensile Adhesion: No failure in the EIFS, adhesive, base coat, or finish coat when tested per EIMA 101.03.
 8. Water Penetration: Sample consisting of 1-inch-thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch-thick gypsum board, cured for 28 days, and showing no water penetration into the plane of the base coat to expanded-polystyrene board interface of the test specimen after 15 minutes at 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. of air pressure difference or 20 percent of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater, across the specimen during a test period when tested per EIMA 101.02.
 9. Water Resistance: Three samples, each consisting of 1-inch-thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch-thick gypsum board; cured for 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination after testing for 14 days per ASTM D 2247.
 10. Wind-Driven-Rain Resistance: Resist wind-driven rain according to ICC-ES AC219.
 11. Impact Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch-thick EIFS when constructed, conditioned, and tested per EIMA 101.86; and meeting or exceeding the following:
 - a. High Impact Resistance: 90 to 150 inch-lb.
 12. Structural Performance Testing: EIFS assembly and components shall comply with ICC-ES AC219 when tested per ASTM E 330.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and component of EIFS indicated.
- B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated.
 1. Include similar Samples of joint sealants involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: Two 12-inch-square panels for each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated, prepared using same tools and techniques intended for actual work including a typical control joint filled with sealant of color selected.
 1. Include sealant Samples to verify color selected.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that EIFS and joint sealants comply with requirements.
- C. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: For joint sealants from sealant manufacturer indicating the following:
 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For EIFS to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's system using trained workers.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with system components.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide EIFS and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical EIFS and system components per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Provide materials and construction tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119.

2. Full-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which EIFS is a part, complies with UBC Standard 26-4 for test method and required fire-test-response characteristics of exterior non-load-bearing wall panel assemblies containing foam-plastic insulation.
3. Full-Scale Diversified Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which EIFS is a part, showing no significant contribution to vertical or horizontal flame spread per ASTM E 108 modified for testing vertical walls.
4. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which EIFS is a part, complies with NFPA 285 for test method and required fire-test-response characteristics of exterior non-load-bearing wall panel assemblies containing foam-plastic insulation.
5. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition of EIFS when tested according to NFPA 268.
6. Potential Heat: Acceptable level when tested according to NFPA 259.
7. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide insulation board, adhesives, base coats, and finish coats with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E 84.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.
- B. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.
 1. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Unless otherwise permitted in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, maintain ambient temperatures above 40 deg F for a minimum of 24 hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of EIFS with related Work specified in other Sections to ensure that wall assemblies, including sheathing, flashing, trim, joint sealants, windows, and doors, are protected against damage from the effects of weather, age, corrosion, moisture, and other causes. Do not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and barrier coating of EIFS.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Acrocrete, Inc.
 2. Corev America, Inc.
 3. Dryvit Systems, Inc.
 4. Finestone; Degussa Wall Systems, Inc.
 5. Omega Products International, Inc.
 6. Senergy; Degussa Wall Systems, Inc.
 7. SonoWall; Degussa Wall Systems, Inc.
 8. Sto Corp.
 9. Stuc-O-Flex International, Inc.
 10. TEC; an H. B. Fuller company.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Compatibility: Provide adhesive, fasteners, board insulation, reinforcing meshes, base- and finish-coat systems, sealants, and accessories that are compatible with one another and with substrates and approved for use by EIFS manufacturer for Project.
- B. Primer/Sealer: EIFS manufacturer's standard substrate conditioner designed to seal substrates from moisture penetration and to improve the bond between substrate of type indicated and adhesive used for application of insulation.
- C. EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
- D. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate; and complying with one of the following:
1. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and fillers specified for base coat.
 2. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation designed for adhesive attachment of insulation to substrates of type indicated, as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
- E. Molded, Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 578, Type I; EIFS manufacturer's requirements; and EIMA's "EIMA Guideline Specification for Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) Insulation Board" for most stringent requirements for material performance and qualities of insulation, including dimensions and permissible variations, and the following:
1. Aging: Before cutting and shipping, age insulation in block form by air drying for not less than six weeks or by another method approved by EIMA that produces equivalent results.

2. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 450 or less, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
 3. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards not more than 24 by 48 inches and in thickness indicated, but not more than 4 inches thick or less than thickness allowed by ASTM C 1397.
 4. Foam Shapes: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
- F. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multiend strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than 120 lbf/in. per EIMA 105.01; complying with ASTM D 578 and the following:
1. High-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 15 oz./sq. yd..
- G. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with one of the following:
1. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
 2. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and inert fillers to which only water is added at Project site.
 3. Factory-mixed noncementitious formulation of polymer-emulsion adhesive and inert fillers that is ready to use without adding other materials.
- H. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
- I. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's siliconized acrylic-based coating complying with the following:
1. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
 2. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, and fillers used with stone particles for embedding in finish coat to produce an applied-aggregate finish.
 - a. Aggregate: Marble chips of size and color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 3. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- J. Water: Potable.
- K. Mechanical Fasteners: EIFS manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant fasteners consisting of thermal cap, standard washer and shaft attachments, and fastener indicated below; selected for properties of pullout, tensile, and shear strength required to resist design loads of application indicated; capable of pulling fastener head below surface of insulation board; and of the following description:
1. For attachment to steel studs from 0.033 to 0.112 inch in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954.

2. For attachment to light-gage steel framing members not less than 0.0179 inch in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002.
 3. For attachment to wood framing members and plywood sheathing, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002, Type W.
 4. For attachment to masonry and concrete substrates, provide sheathing dowel in form of a plastic wing-tipped fastener with thermal cap, sized to fit insulation thickness indicated and to penetrate substrate to depth required to secure anchorage.
 5. For attachment, provide manufacturer's standard fasteners suitable for substrate.
- L. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784, manufacturer's standard Cell Class for use intended, and ASTM C 1063.
1. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
 2. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.

2.3 MIXING

- A. General: Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of EIFS.
- B. Examine roof edges, wall framing, flashings, openings, substrates, and junctures at other construction for suitable conditions where EIFS will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Begin coating application only after surfaces are dry.
 2. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.
- B. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind EIFS and deterioration of substrates.
- C. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.

3.3 EIFS INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

3.4 SUBSTRATE PROTECTION APPLICATION

- A. Primer/Sealer: Apply over gypsum sheathing substrates to protect substrates from degradation and where required by EIFS manufacturer for improving adhesion of insulation to substrate.

3.5 TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, and elsewhere as indicated, according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
 - 1. Drip Screed/Track: Use at bottom edges of EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.

3.6 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Board Insulation: Adhesively and mechanically attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397, EIFS manufacturer's written instructions, and the following:
 - 1. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of sheathing with adhesive once insulation is adhered to sheathing unless EIFS manufacturer's written instructions specify using primer/sealer with ribbon-and-dab method. Apply adhesive to a thickness of not less than 1/4 inch for factory mixed and not less than 3/8 inch for field mixed, measured from surface of insulation before placement.

2. Press and slide insulation into place. Apply pressure over the entire surface of insulation to accomplish uniform contact, high initial grab, and overall level surface.
3. Allow adhered insulation to remain undisturbed for period recommended by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 24 hours, before installing mechanical fasteners, beginning rasping and sanding insulation, or applying base coat and reinforcing mesh.
4. Mechanically attach insulation to substrate by method complying with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Install top surface of fastener heads flush with plane of insulation. Install fasteners into or through substrates with the following minimum penetration:
 - a. Steel Framing: 5/16 inch
5. Apply insulation over dry substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
6. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
7. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than 12 inches wide or 6 inches high. Offset joints not less than 6 inches from corners of window and door openings.
 - a. Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than 6 inches from horizontal and 4 inches from vertical joints in sheathing.
 - b. Mechanical Attachment: Offset joints of insulation from horizontal joints in sheathing.
8. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
9. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than 1/16 inch occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
10. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
11. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than 1/16 inch from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than 1/16 inch.
12. Form joints for sealant application with back-to-back casing beads for joints within EIFS and with perimeter casing beads at dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps between casing beads and between perimeter casing beads and adjoining surfaces of width indicated.
13. After installing insulation and before applying reinforcing mesh, fully wrap board edges with strip reinforcing mesh. Cover edges of board and extend encapsulating mesh not less than 2-1/2 inches over front and back face unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
14. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
 - a. Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.

- b. Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
 - c. At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.
15. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and EIFS protective-coating lamina.

3.7 BASE-COAT INSTALLATION

- A. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 1/16-inch dry-coat thickness.
- B. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed type indicated below in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners and overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are not visible.
 - 1. High-impact reinforcing mesh
- C. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip reinforcing mesh around openings extending 4 inches beyond perimeter. Apply additional 9-by-12-inch strip reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply 8-inch-wide strip reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than 4 inches on each side of corners.
 - 1. Embed strip reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.
- D. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.

3.8 FINISH-COAT INSTALLATION

- A. Primer: Apply over dry base coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Finish Coat: Apply over dry base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
 - 1. Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
 - 1. According to ICC-ES AC24.
- B. Remove and replace EIFS where test results indicate that EIFS do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION 07241

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 07260 - REINFORCED
UNDERSLAB
VAPOR RETARDERS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Reinforced underslab vapor barriers.
- B. General: Provide all labor, materials, equipment, related services and supervision required, including manufacturing, fabrication, erection and installation for reinforced underslab vapor retarders in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- C. Reinforced underslab vapor retarders shall be provided on grade under all interior building concrete floor slabs unless otherwise specified or indicated.
- D. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section.
 - 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for slabs on grade.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Data: Include specifications, installation instructions and general recommendations from the manufacturer for the types of products required. Include manufacturer's certification or other data substantiating that the materials comply with the requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Typical large scale details for seams, penetrations, repairs and terminations.
- C. Samples for verification purposes, minimum 6 inches by 6 inches, wrapped with clear plastic, including all facing materials and labeled of the following:
 - 1. Reinforced vapor retarder.
 - 2. Tape.
 - 3. Penetration boots.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor's Quality Assurance Responsibilities: Contractor is solely responsible for quality control of the work.
- B. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Firms shall be engaged in the manufacture of reinforced underslab vapor retarders of types and sizes required, and whose

REINFORCED UNDERSLAB VAPOR RETARDERS

Bid Package 1

07260 - 1

products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than 10 years.

- C. **Installer's Qualifications:** Firms shall have at least 5 years of successful installation experience with projects utilizing products required for this project.
- D. **Regulatory Requirements:** Comply with applicable requirements of the laws, codes, ordinances and regulations of Federal, State and Municipal authorities having jurisdiction. Obtain necessary approvals from all such authorities.
 - 1. Research reports or evaluation reports of the model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that evidence compliance of plastic foam insulations with building code in effect for Project.
- E. **Single-Source Responsibility:** Obtain each type of reinforced underslab vapor retarders from a single manufacturer.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. **General:** Deliver and store materials in manufacturer's original packaging labeled to show name, brand, type, and grade. Store materials in protected dry location off ground in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Do not open packaging nor remove labels until time for installation.
- B. **Protection from Deterioration:** Do not allow vapor retarder materials to become wet, soiled, or covered with ice or snow. Protect vapor retarder materials from exposure to high temperatures, excessive exposure to sunlight, and contact with hot surfaces in excess of the safe temperature indicated by the manufacturer.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. **Weather Conditions:** Do not proceed with the work during inclement weather nor when weather forecasts are unfavorable, unless the work will proceed in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and instructions and any agreements or restrictions of the Pre-Installation Conference.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturer's Basis of Design:** The named manufacturer and associated products are the basis of design for the project. Other manufacturer's whose products may be incorporated into the work, subject to compliance with requirements, are also listed. The Contractor is responsible for any modifications to the work resulting from the use of materials other than the basis of design at no additional cost to the Owner.
 - 1. "Griffolyn Type T-85", Griffolyn/Reef Industries, Inc.
- A. The following manufacturers with equal products are acceptable:
 - 1. "Dura-Skrim 12BBR", Raven, Industries.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the substrate and the conditions under which the work is to be performed, and do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Proceed with work only after substrate construction is complete, all projections through vapor retarders have been installed and flashed and immediate installation of concrete work over the vapor retarder can be performed.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Clean the substrates to remove loose particles and deleterious matter which would impair the work. Remove projections or high spots, which would interfere with proper application of the reinforced underslab vapor retarder.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install reinforced vapor retarders in accordance with ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's instructions and continuously at locations under slabs. Ensure there are no discontinuities in vapor retarder at seams and penetrations.
- B. Where slabs intersect walls, extend vapor retarder up walls 2 inches above the thickness of slabs. At thickened edge slabs, extend vapor retarders under thickened edge and up to grade. Extend coverage to extremities of areas to receive vapor retarders and attach with adhesive, or with tape.
- C. Install vapor retarders in largest practical widths.
- D. Join sections of vapor retarder and seal penetrations in vapor retarder with mastic tape. Vapor retarder surfaces to receive mastic tape must be clean and dry.
- E. Verify there is no moisture entrapment by vapor retarder due to rainfall or groundwater intrusion.
- F. Repair holes in vapor retarder with self-adhesive repair tape.
- G. Seal around pipes and other penetrations in vapor retarder with pipe boots in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 PROTECTION OF MOISTURE BARRIERS

- A. Protect reinforced vapor retarders from damage during installation of reinforcing steel and utilities and during placement of concrete slab or granular materials.
- B. Protect vapor retarder from puncture, damage and deterioration.

END OF SECTION 07260

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 07413 – INSULATED CORE
METAL WALL PANELS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Foamed-insulation-core metal wall panels.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "Sustainable Design Requirements" for related LEED general requirements.
 - 2. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for cold-formed metal framing supporting metal wall panels.
 - 3. Division 7 Section "Composite Wall Panels" for metal-faced composite wall panels.
 - 4. Division 7 Section "Roof Specialties" for sheet metal copings.
 - 5. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied joint sealants.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Metal Wall Panel Assembly: Insulated-core metal wall panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight wall system.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Metal wall panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design metal wall panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
- D. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No uncontrolled water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 15.0 lbf/sq. ft.
 - 2. Water Leakage: Uncontrolled water infiltrating the system or appearing on systems normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than

condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained back to the exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not water leakage.

- E. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No uncontrolled water penetration when tested according to AAMA 501.1 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 15.0 lbf/sq. ft.
 - 2. Water Leakage: Uncontrolled water infiltrating the system or appearing on systems normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained back to the exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not water leakage.
- F. Structural Performance: Metal wall panel assemblies shall withstand the effects the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 72:
 - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
 - a. Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward or outward.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Metal wall panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/175 of the span.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, material surfaces.
- H. Thermal Performance: Provide insulated metal wall panel assemblies with U-values less than or equal to 0.064 when tested according to ASTM C 518.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of wall panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory-, shop-, and field-assembled work.
 - 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches:
 - a. Anchorage systems.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
 - 1. Metal Wall Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, battens, closures, and other metal wall panel accessories.
 - 2. Trim and Closures: 12 inches long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.

- 3. Accessories: 12-inch-long Samples for each type of accessory.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal wall panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Exterior elevations, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and wall-mounted items. Show the following:
 - 1. Wall panels and attachments.
 - 2. Girts and Stud framing.
 - 3. Wall-mounted items including doors, windows, louvers, and lighting fixtures.
 - 4. Penetrations of wall by pipes and utilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For insulated-core metal wall panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal wall panel from single source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide metal wall panels and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical panels and system components per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Provide materials and construction tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119.
 - 2. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which wall panel is a part, complies with NFPA 285 for test method and required fire-test-response characteristics of exterior non-load-bearing wall panel assemblies.

3. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition when tested according to NFPA 268.
 4. Potential Heat: Acceptable level when tested according to NFPA 259.
 5. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide wall panels with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E 84.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, metal wall panel Installer, metal wall panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal wall panels including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal wall panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect metal wall panels.
 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal wall panel assembly during and after installation.
 8. Review wall panel observation and repair procedures after metal wall panel installation.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal wall panels for period of metal wall panel installation.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal wall panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of structural members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements before metal wall panel fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal wall panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of girts, studs, soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 2. Warranty Period: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.
 3. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 4. Finish Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
 1. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; structural quality.
 2. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 4. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
- B. Panel Sealants:

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal wall panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal wall panel manufacturer.

2.2 INSULATION FOR PANEL CORES

- A. Polyisocyanurate Insulation: Closed cell, modified polyisocyanurate foam using a non-CFC blowing agent, foamed-in-place type, with maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 450.
 1. Closed-Cell Content: 90 percent when tested according to ASTM D 2856.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Subgirts: Manufacturer's standard C- or Z-shaped sections, 0.064-inch nominal thickness.
- C. Zee Clips: 0.064-inch nominal thickness.
- D. Base or Sill Angles / Channels: 0.064-inch nominal thickness.
- E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
 2. Depth: As indicated.
- F. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch-wide flange.
 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements
 2. Depth: As indicated.
 3. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with 0.040-inch nominal thickness.
 4. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.
- G. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws; bolts and nuts; self-locking rivets and bolts; end-welded studs; and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal wall panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.

2.5 FOAMED-INSULATION-CORE METAL WALL PANELS

- A. Concealed-Fastener, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels. Formed with tongue-and-groove panel edges; designed for sequential installation by interlocking panel edges and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips or fasteners.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements,
 - a. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
 - b. Coldmatic Building Systems.
 - c. Galvamet Inc.
 - d. Insulated Panel Systems, Div. of NCI Building Systems.
 - e. Metecno-Aluma Shield, Metecno Panel Systems, Inc.
 - f. Metl-Span.
 - g. Steelox Systems, L.L.C.
 2. Facings: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness.
 - a. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.024-inch or 0.036-inch nominal thickness, as indicated.
 - b. Exterior Facing Finish: 3-coat metallic fluoropolymer.
 - 1) Color: Match Architect's samples.
 - c. Interior Facing Finish: Manufacturer's standard siliconized polyester.
 - d. Exterior Surface: Smooth, flat.
 3. Panel Coverage: 16 inches nominal.
 4. Panel Thickness: 4 inches nominal.
 5. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value):

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels unless otherwise indicated.
1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal wall panels.
 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from 0.018-inch-minimum thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal wall panels.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Fabricate metal wall panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal wall panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
- E. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within

the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 2. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal wall panels before metal wall panel installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal wall panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install metal wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Commence metal wall panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. in presence of factory-authorized representative.
 - 2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
 - 3. Flash and seal metal wall panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by metal wall panels are installed.
 - 4. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 5. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 6. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
 - 7. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 - 8. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.

9. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 10. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Fasteners:
1. Steel Wall Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 2. Aluminum Wall Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 3. Copper Wall Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
 4. Stainless-Steel Wall Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
- D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
1. Seal metal wall panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.4 INSULATED-CORE METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Apply continuous ribbon of sealant to panel joint on concealed side of insulated-core metal wall panels as vapor seal; apply sealant to panel joint on exposed side of panels for weather seal.
1. Fasten insulated-core metal wall panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
 3. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners on weather side of insulated metal wall panels.
 4. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
 5. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of insulated metal wall panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 6. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to panel side laps and elsewhere as needed to make panels weathertight.

- B. Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Fasten metal wall panels to supports with concealed clips at each joint at location and spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Fully engage tongue and groove of adjacent panels.
 - 1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
- C. Laminated-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels:
 - 1. Wrapped-Edge Panels: Mechanically attach wall panels to supports using staggered, concealed side clips engaging wrapped panel edges. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners. Seal joints with manufacturer's standard gaskets.

3.5 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
 - 1. Install components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
 - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Water-Spray Test: After completing the installation of 75-foot-by-2-story minimum area of metal wall panel assembly, test assembly for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 in a 2-bay area directed by Architect.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect and test completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
- D. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

- E. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal wall panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07413

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 07415 – COMPOSITE
WALL PANELS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Metal-faced composite wall panels.
 - 2. Metal-faced composite soffit panels
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for cold-formed metal framing supporting metal-faced composite wall panels.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Insulated-Core Metal Wall Panels" for foamed-insulation core, laminated-insulation core, and honeycomb-core metal wall panels.
 - 3. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for field-formed flashings and other sheet metal work not part of metal-faced composite wall panel assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Metal-Faced Composite Wall Panel Assembly: Metal-faced composite wall panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight wall system.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Metal-faced composite wall and soffit panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design metal wall and soffit panel assemblies using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..

- D. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- E. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water leakage when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure of not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. and not more than 12 lbf/sq. ft.
 - 1. Water Leakage: As defined according to AAMA 501.1.
- F. Structural Performance: Provide metal-faced composite wall and soffit panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 330:
 - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
 - a. Uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward or outward.
 - b. Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Metal-faced composite wall and soffit panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/240 of the span at the perimeter and 1/100 of the span anywhere in the panel.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of metal-faced composite or soffit panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal-faced composite and soffit panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish among factory-, shop-, and field-assembled work.
 - 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches:
 - a. Flashing and trim.

b. Anchorage systems.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:

1. Metal-Faced Composite Wall Panels: Minimum 12 x 12 inches. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal-faced composite wall panel accessories.
2. Trim and Closures: 12 inches long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
3. Accessories: 12-inch-long Samples for each type of accessory.
4. Exposed Gaskets: 12 inches long.
5. Exposed Sealants: For each type and color of joint sealant required. Install joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of metal-faced composite wall panels adjacent to joint sealants.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Exterior elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Wall panels and attachments.
2. Girts, Stud framing.

B. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:

1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal wall panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal-faced composite wall or soffit panel from single source from single manufacturer.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, sheets, metal-faced composite wall and soffit panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal-faced composite panels for protection during transportation and handling.

COMPOSITE WALL PANELS

Bid Package 1

07415 - 3

- B. Unload, store, and erect metal-faced composite panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Store metal-faced composite panels vertically, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal-faced composite panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal-faced composite panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Do not allow storage space to exceed 120 deg F.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal-faced composite panel for period of panel installation.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal-faced composite panels to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal-faced composite panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of studs, soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.

- c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
- 2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
 - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes:
 - a. Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. 2-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Panel Sealants:
 - 1. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal-faced composite wall panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by panel manufacturer.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Subgirts: Manufacturer's standard C- or Z-shaped sections 0.064-inch nominal thickness.
- C. Zee Clips: 0.079-inch nominal thickness.
- D. Base or Sill Channels: 0.079-inch nominal thickness.
- E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: 0.040 inch.
- F. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch-wide flange.
 - 1. Nominal Thickness 0.064 inch.
 - 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with nominal thickness of 0.040 inch.
 - 3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.

COMPOSITE WALL PANELS

Bid Package 1

07415 - 5

- G. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: 0.025 inch.
- H. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads.

2.4 METAL-FACED COMPOSITE PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed and -assembled, metal-faced composite wall and soffit panels fabricated from two metal facings bonded, using no glues or adhesives, to solid, extruded thermoplastic core; formed into profile for installation method indicated. Include attachment system components using concealed fasteners and accessories required for weathertight system.
 - 1. Fire-Retardant Core: Noncombustible, with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Alcan Composites USA Inc.; Alucobond, Alucobond Plus.
 - b. Alcoa Inc.; Reynobond.
 - c. ALPOLIC, Division of Mitsubishi Chemical America, Inc.; ALPOLIC.
 - d. CENTRIA Architectural Systems; Formabond Wall System.
 - e. Citadel Architectural Products, Inc., Envelope 2000.
 - f. Protean Construction Products, Inc.; ACM 100.
- B. Aluminum-Faced Composite Wall Panels Formed with 0.020-inch-thick, coil-coated aluminum sheet facings.
 - 1. Panel Thickness: min. 0.157 inch.
 - 2. Core: Fire retardant.
 - 3. Exterior Finish: 3-coat fluoropolymer.
 - a. Color: Match Architect's samples.

- C. Attachment System Components: Formed from material compatible with panel facing.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal-faced composite wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal-faced composite wall panels unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal wall panels.
 - 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from 0.018-inch-minimum thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal-faced composite wall panels.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal-faced composite panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Fabricate metal-faced composite panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals.
- C. Metal-Faced Composite Panels: Factory form panels in a continuous process with no glues or adhesives between dissimilar materials. Trim and square edges of sheets with no displacement of face sheets or protrusion of core material.
 - 1. Form panel lines, breaks, and angles to be sharp and true, with surfaces free from warp and buckle.
 - 2. Fabricate panels with sharply cut edges, with no displacement of face sheets or protrusion of core material.
 - 3. Fabricate panels with panel stiffeners, as required to comply with deflection limits, attached to back of panels with structural silicone sealant or bond tape.
 - 4. Dimensional Tolerances:

- a. Panel Bow: 0.8 percent maximum of panel length or width.
 - b. Squareness: 0.25 inch maximum.
- D. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal-faced composite wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer.
 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal-faced composite wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of panels before panel installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorage according to ASTM C 754 and metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Soffit Framing: Wire-tie or clip furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

3.3 METAL-FACED COMPOSITE WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal-faced composite panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
1. Commence metal-faced composite soffit panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. in presence of factory-authorized representative.
 2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal-faced composite wall panels.
 3. Flash and seal metal-faced composite panels at perimeter of all openings. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by panels are installed.
 4. Install flashing and trim as metal-faced composite panel work proceeds.
 5. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
 6. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Fasteners:
1. Aluminum Wall Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer.
- D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal-faced composite panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by panel manufacturer.
 - 1. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Attachment System Installation, General: Install attachment system required to support metal-faced composite panels and to provide a complete weathertight system, including subgirts, perimeter extrusions, tracks, drainage channels, panel clips, and anchor channels.
 - 1. Include attachment to supports, panel-to-panel joinery, panel-to-dissimilar-material joinery, and panel-system joint seals.
 - 2. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by composite panels are installed.
- F. Clip Installation: Attach panel clips to supports at each metal-faced composite wall panel joint at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Attach routed-and-turned flanges of wall panels to panel clips with manufacturer's standard fasteners.
 - 1. Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent panels with sealant backing and sealant. Install sealant backing and sealant according to requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.4 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
 - 1. Install components required for a complete metal-faced composite panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
 - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.

2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal-faced composite wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet, nonaccumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Water-Spray Test: After completing the installation of 300 sq. ft. minimum area of metal-faced composite soffit panel assembly, test assembly for water penetration according to AAMA 501..
- B. Metal-faced composite panels will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal-faced composite panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal-faced composite panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal-faced composite panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal-faced composite panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07415

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 07543 - THERMOPLASTIC
POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Adhered TPO membrane roofing system.
 - 2. Vapor retarder.
 - 3. Roof insulation.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs and blocking.
 - 2. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof penetration flashings, flashings and counterflashings.
 - 3. Division 07 Section "Roof Specialties" for proprietary manufactured roof specialties.
 - 4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers and joint preparation.
 - 5. Division 15 Section "Sanitary, Vent and Storm Drainage Piping" for roof drains.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. TPO: Thermoplastic polyolefin.
- B. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definitions and terms related to roofing work in this Section.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrications, installation or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer bases on testing and field experience.

- C. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- D. Thermal Performance: Provide roofing system with U-value less than or equal to 0.043; R-23.0 continuous insulation.
- E. Solar Reflectance Index: Not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
- F. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
- G. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system with initial solar reflectance not less than 0.70 and emissivity not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit SS 7.2: For roof materials, indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
 - 2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
 - 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
 - 3. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of membrane roofing and fastening spacings and patterns for mechanically fastened membrane roofing.
 - 4. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 - 1. Sheet roofing, of color specified, including T-shaped side and end lap seam.
 - 2. Roof insulation.
 - 3. Metal termination bars.
 - 4. Battens.
 - 5. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and manufacturer.

THERMOPOLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING
 Bid Package 1
 07543 - 2

- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 1. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualification: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's products and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty. Minimum five (5) years in business.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain all components including, but not limited to, roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
- D. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM 3 108, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- F. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, installer's personnel, equipment and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.

4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashing, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certifications, if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected locations within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protection stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling and others sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, with monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, substrate boards, roofing accessories, and other components of membrane roofing system.
 2. Warranty Period: Fifteen (15) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TPO MEMBRANE ROOFING

- A. Fabric-Reinforced Thermoplastic Polyolefin Sheet: ASTM D 6878, internally fabric or scrim reinforced, uniform, flexible TPO Sheet
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
 - b. Firestone Building Products Company.
 - c. GenFlex Roofing Systems.
 - d. Sika Sarnafil, Inc.
 - e. Versico Incorporated.
 - 2. Thickness: 45 mil (1.1 mm), nominal.
 - 3. Exposed Face Color: White.

2.2 AUXILIARY MEMBRANE ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary membrane roofing materials (including Cover Board) as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use, and compatible with membrane roofing.
 - 1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - b. Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
 - d. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
 - e. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Adhesives: 250 g/L.
 - f. Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
 - g. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
 - h. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
 - i. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - j. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced thermoplastic polyolefin sheets flashing, 55 mils (1.4 mm) thick, minimum, of same color as sheet membrane.
- C. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based.
- D. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.
- E. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless-steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch (25 by 3 mm) thick; with anchors.
- F. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provision in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening

membrane to substrate, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.

- G. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, performed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets and other accessories.

2.3 SUBSTRATE BOARDS

- A. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, Type X, 5/8 inch thick.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Corporation; DensDeck.
 - b. Temple-Inland Inc.; GreenGlass
 - c. United States Gypsum Co.; Securock.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

2.4 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: Two outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 25 lb / 1000 sq. ft. (12 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permance rating of 0.0507 perm (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Raven Industries, Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 6WW.
 - b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn T-6.
 - 2. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
 - 3. Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive.

2.5 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO membrane roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that product FM Approvals-approved roof insulation.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope of 1/4 inch per 12 inches unless otherwise indicated.

- D. Provide pre-formed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.

2.7 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick, and acceptable to membrane roofing system manufacturer.

2.8 PIPE BOOTS

- A. Provide pipe boots for single and multiple pipe penetrations. Size and configuration to be appropriate for each specific penetration location. Material to be compatible with roofing systems and to include stainless steel compression ring for each pipe.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Commercial Products Group; PortalsPlus C-412.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:
 - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
 - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 - 3. Verify that surface plan flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements of Division 95 Section "Steel Decking."
 - 4. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer is passed.
 - 5. Verify that concrete substrate is visible dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.

6. Verify that concrete curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projection.
- B. Prevent materials from entering or clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

3.3 SUBSTRATE BOARD

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.

3.4 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Laminate Sheet: Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
 1. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacture. Seal laps with adhesive.
- B. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstruction, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with membrane roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- D. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints to previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.

1. Where installing composite and non-composite insulation in two or more layers, install non-composite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
- E. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so complete surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
- F. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6 mm) with insulation.
 1. Cut and fit insulation within $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections and penetrations.
- G. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulations and secure first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
 1. Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter and field of roof.
 2. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

3.5 ADHERED MEMBRANE ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere membrane roofing over area to receive roofing and install according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Start installation of membrane roofing in presence of membrane roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- C. Accurately align membrane roofing and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacture. Stagger end laps.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of membrane roofing at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing membrane roofing. Do not apply to splice area of membrane roofing.
- E. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten membrane roofing securely at terminations, penetrations and perimeter of roofing.
- F. Apply membrane roofing with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap membrane roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of membrane roofing and sheet flashings according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of sheet membrane.
 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily and repair seam sample areas.
 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roofing that does not comply with requirements.

- H. Spread sealant bed over deck drain flange at roof drains and securely seal membrane roofing in place with clamping ring.

3.6 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashing and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to membrane roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured and uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap and firmly roll sheet flashing into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashing and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.7 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkways products in locations indicated. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace components of membrane roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or addition work with specified requirements.

3.9 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect membrane roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to the Architect and the Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove membrane roofing system that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates; and repair or reinstall membrane roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacture or affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07543

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 07610 – SHEET METAL
ROOFING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1) Standing-seam metal roofing, on-site, roll formed.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1) Division 7 Section "Thermal Insulation" for roof insulation and sheet vapor retarders separate from self-adhering underlayments.
 - 2) Division 7 Section "Composite Metal Panels" for factory-formed metal soffit panels.
 - 3) Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for gutters, fasciae, copings, and flashings that are not part of sheet metal roofing.
 - 4) Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories" for manufactured roof accessories.
 - 5) Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants adjoining sheet metal roofing.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Sheet metal roofing system including, but not limited to, metal roof panels, cleats, clips, anchors and fasteners, sheet metal flashing integral with sheet metal roofing, fascia panels, trim, underlayment, and accessories shall comply with requirements indicated without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Sheet metal roofing shall remain watertight.
- B. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal roofing that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1) Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C) material surfaces.
- C. Solar Reflectance Index: Not less than 78 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
- B. LEED Submittals:

- 1) Product Test Reports for Credit SS 7.2: For roof panels, documentation indicating that panels comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirement.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of sheet metal roofing, including plans, elevations, expansion joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
- 1) Details for forming sheet metal roofing, including seams and dimensions.
 - 2) Details for joining and securing sheet metal roofing, including layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
 - 3) Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
 - 4) Details of expansion joints, including showing direction of expansion and contraction.
 - 5) Details of roof penetrations.
 - 6) Details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings.
 - 7) Details of special conditions.
 - 8) Details of connections to adjoining work.
 - 9) Detail the following accessory items, at a scale of not less than 3 inches per 12 inches:
 - a) Flashing and trim.
 - b) Gutters and downspouts as they relate to adjacent sheet metal roofing.
 - c) Roof curbs.
 - d) Snow guards.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
- 1) Sheet Metal Roofing: 12 inches (300 mm) long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners and other attachments.
 - 2) Trim and Metal Closures: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
 - 3) Snow Guards: Full-size Sample.
 - 4) Other Accessories: One samples for each type of other accessory identified as to use..

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Portable Roll-Forming Equipment Certificate: Issued by UL for equipment manufacturer's portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing panels that comply with UL requirements. Show expiration date no earlier than two months after scheduled completion of sheet metal roofing.
- 1) Submit certificates indicating recertification of equipment whose certification has expired during the construction period.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.
- D. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing sheet metals and accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Roll-Formed Sheet Metal Roofing Fabricator Qualifications: Fabricator authorized by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to fabricate and install sheet metal roofing units required for this Project, and who maintains current UL certification of its portable roll-forming equipment.
- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing roofing panels for sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for Class 90 wind-uplift resistance. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of sheet metal roofing work.
- C. Sheet Metal Roofing Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" unless more stringent requirements are specified or shown on Drawings.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1) Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, sheet metal roofing Installer, portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer's representative for sheet metal roofing and installers whose work interfaces with or affects sheet metal roofing including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2) Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3) Review methods and procedures related to sheet metal roofing installation, including portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4) Examine conditions of substrate for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
 - 5) Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing installation.
 - 6) Review flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect sheet metal roofing.
 - 7) Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and testing and inspecting if applicable.
 - 8) Review temporary protection requirements for sheet metal roofing during and after roofing installation.
 - 9) Review roof observation and repair procedures after sheet metal roofing installation.
 - 10) Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal roofing materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal roofing materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.

- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal roofing from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal roofing installation.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations, which are specified in other Sections.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal roofing with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of parapets, walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Warranty form at the end of this Section in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of sheet metal roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1) Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a) Structural failures, including but not limited to rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b) Wrinkling or buckling.
 - c) Loose parts.
 - d) Failure to remain weathertight, including uncontrolled water leakage.
 - e) Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering, including non-uniformity of color or finish.
 - f) Galvanic action between sheet metal roofing and dissimilar materials.
 - 2) Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROOFING SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required.
 - 1) Thickness: 0.040 inch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2) As-Milled Finish: Mill finish.
 - 3) Surface: Smooth, flat.
- C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 1) Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
 - 2) Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.

- 3) Products: Subject to compliance with requirements available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.; CCW WIP 300HT.
 - b) Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Ultra.
 - c) Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
 - d) Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
 - e) Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High-Temperature Underlayment.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for a complete roofing system and as recommended by fabricator for sheet metal roofing.
- B. Snap-On Seams: Provide snap-on seams integrated with panel-edge profile as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to produce sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- C. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular-threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads.
 - 1) General:
 - a) Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal roofing using plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
 - b) Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - c) Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 - 2) Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polymer sealant as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal roofing and remain watertight.
- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sheet Metal Accessories: Provide components required for a complete sheet metal roofing assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, metal closures, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of sheet metal roofing unless otherwise indicated.
- 1) Provide accessories as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to produce sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
 - 2) Cleats: For mechanically seaming into joints and formed from the following materials:
 - a) Aluminum Roofing: 0.025-inch-thick stainless steel.
 - 3) Clips: Minimum 0.0625-inch-thick, stainless-steel panel clips designed to withstand negative-load requirements.
 - 4) Backing Plates: Plates at roofing splices, fabricated from material recommended by SMACNA.
 - 5) Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible-closure strips; cut or premolded to match sheet metal roofing profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
 - 6) Flashing and Trim: Formed from same material and with same finish as sheet metal roofing, minimum 0.018 inch thick.

2.4 SNOW GUARDS

- A. Snow Guards, General: Prefabricated, noncorrosive units designed to be installed without penetrating sheet metal roofing; complete with predrilled holes, clamps, or hooks for anchoring.
- B. Surface-Mounted, Metal, Stop-Type Snow Guards: Cast-aluminum stops designed for attachment to panel surface of sheet metal roofing using construction adhesive, silicone or polyurethane sealant, or adhesive tape.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal roofing to comply with details shown and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions (panel width and seam height), geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of installation indicated. Fabricate sheet metal roofing and accessories at the shop to greatest extent possible.
- 1) Standing-Seam Roofing: Form standing-seam panels with finished seam height of 1-1/2 inches.
 - 2) General: Fabricate roll-formed sheet metal roofing panels with UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing roofing panels for sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article. Fabricate roll-formed sheet metal according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal roofing that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and

location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

- C. Form exposed sheet metal work to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line and levels indicated; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 1) Lay out sheet metal roofing so transverse seams, if required, are made in direction of flow with higher panels overlapping lower panels.
 - 2) Offset transverse seams from each other 12 inches minimum.
 - 3) Fold and cleat eaves and transverse seams in the shop.
 - 4) Form and fabricate sheets, seams, strips, cleats, valleys, ridges, edge treatments, integral flashings, and other components of metal roofing to profiles, patterns, and drainage arrangements shown on Drawings and as required for leakproof construction.
- D. Expansion Provisions: Fabricate sheet metal roofing to allow for expansion in running work sufficient to prevent leakage, damage, and deterioration of the Work. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- E. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are indicated or required to produce weathertight seams, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant in compliance with SMACNA standards.
- F. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by fabricator of sheet metal roofing or manufacturers of the metals in contact.
- G. Sheet Metal Accessories: Custom fabricate flashings and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 - 1) Form exposed sheet metal accessories without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2) Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 3) Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- 1) Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking, that tops of fasteners are flush with surface, and that installation is within flatness tolerances required for finished roofing installation.
 - 2) Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and completely anchored, and that provision has been made for drainage, flashings, and penetrations through sheet metal roofing.
- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating sheet metal roofing to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of sheet metal roofing before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Polyethylene Sheet: Install polyethylene sheet on roof sheathing under sheet metal roofing. Use adhesive for anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal roofing. Apply at locations indicated on Drawings, in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped and taped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
- B. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing under sheet metal roofing. Use adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal roofing. Apply at locations indicated, in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
- 1) Apply from eave to ridge.
 - 2) Apply on roof not covered by self-adhering sheet underlayment. Lap edges of self-adhering sheet underlayment not less than 3 inches (75 mm), in shingle fashion to shed water.
- C. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free, on roof sheathing under sheet metal roofing. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply over entire roof, in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within fourteen (14) days.
- D. Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- E. Apply slip sheet before installing sheet metal roofing.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal roofing and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Install fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and

other miscellaneous items as required for a complete roofing system and as recommended by fabricator for sheet metal roofing.

- 1) Field cutting of sheet metal roofing by torch is not permitted.
 - 2) Flash and seal sheet metal roofing with closure strips at eaves, rakes, and perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
 - 3) Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Predrill panels for fasteners.
 - 4) Locate roofing splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger roofing splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition. Install backing plates at roofing splices.
 - 5) Install sealant tape where indicated.
 - 6) Lap metal flashing over sheet metal roofing to allow moisture to run over and off the material.
 - 7) Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Thermal Movement. Rigidly fasten metal roof panels to structure at only one location for each panel. Allow remainder of panel to move freely for thermal expansion and contraction.
- 1) Point of Fixity: Fasten each panel along a single line of fixing.
 - 2) Avoid attaching accessories through roof panels in a manner that will inhibit thermal movement.
- C. Fasteners: Use fasteners of sizes not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.
- 1) Coat back side of uncoated aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal roofing with bituminous coating where roofing will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Fasciae: Align bottom of sheet metal roofing and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Flash and seal sheet metal roofing with closure strips where fasciae meet soffits, along lower panel edges, and at perimeter of all openings.

3.4 ON-SITE, ROLL-FORMED SHEET METAL ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install on-site, roll-formed sheet metal roofing fabricated from UL-certified equipment to comply with equipment manufacturer's written instructions for UL wind-uplift resistance class indicated. Provide sheet metal roofing of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise restricted by on-site or shipping limitations.
- B. Standing-Seam Sheet Metal Roofing: Fasten sheet metal roofing to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, at spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer of portable roll-forming equipment.
- 1) Install clips to substrate with self-tapping fasteners.

- 2) Install pressure plates at locations indicated in equipment manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 - 3) Before panels are joined, apply continuous bead of sealant to top of flange of lower panel.
 - 4) Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved motorized seamer tool so cleat, sheet metal roofing, and field-applied sealant are completely engaged.
- C. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction. For roofing with 3:12 slopes or less, use cleats at transverse seams.
- 1) Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement either way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
 - 2) Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.5 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
- 1) Install components required for a complete sheet metal roofing assembly including trim, copings, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, metal closures, closure strips, and similar items.
 - 2) Install accessories integral to sheet metal roofing that are specified in Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" to comply with that Section's requirements.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- 1) Install flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers.
 - 2) Install continuous strip of self-adhering underlayment at edge of continuous flashing overlapping self-adhering underlayment, where "continuous seal strip" is indicated in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual," and where indicated on Drawings.
 - 3) Install exposed flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 - 4) Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of

SHEET METAL ROOFING

Bid Package 1

07610 - 10

intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, and filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.

- C. Roof Curbs: Install curbs at locations indicated on Drawings. Install flashing around bases where they meet sheet metal roofing.
- D. Stop-Type Snow Guards: Attach snow guards to sheet metal roofing with adhesive or adhesive tape, as recommended by manufacturer. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate sheet metal roofing.
 - 1) Provide snow guards at locations indicated on Drawings.

3.6 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal roofing within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal roofing is installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal roofing installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal roofing manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal roofing in a clean condition during construction.
- E. Replace sheet metal roofing components that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07610

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 07620
SHEET METAL FLASHING
AND TRIM**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following sheet metal flashing and trim:
 - 1. Formed roof drainage sheet metal fabrications.
 - 2. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
 - 3. Formed steep-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
 - 4. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Thermoplastic Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing" for installing sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing membrane.
 - 3. Division 7 Section "Composite Wall Panels" for sheet metal flashing and trim integral with metal wall panels.
 - 4. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Roofing" for custom-formed sheet metal flashing and trim integral with sheet metal roofing.
 - 5. Division 7 Section "Roof Specialties" for manufactured roof specialties not part of sheet metal flashing and trim.
 - 6. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sheet metal flashing and trim sealants.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Fabricate and install flashing capable of resisting the wind forces according to requirements of the International Building Code for 120 mph wind.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation,

overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of sheet metal and trim thermal movements. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
2. Water Infiltration: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that do not allow water infiltration to building interior.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
 1. Identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
 2. Details for forming sheet metal flashing and trim, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
 3. Details for joining, supporting, and securing sheet metal flashing and trim, including layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
 4. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
 5. Details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction.
 6. Details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings as applicable.
 7. Details of special conditions.
 8. Details of connections to adjoining work.
 9. Detail formed flashing and trim at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified fabricator.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects sheet metal flashing and trim including installers of roofing materials, roof accessories, unit skylights, and roof-mounted equipment.
 - 2. Review methods and procedures related to sheet metal flashing and trim.
 - 3. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
 - 4. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect sheet metal flashing.
 - 5. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver sheet metal flashing materials and fabrications undamaged. Protect sheet metal flashing and trim materials and fabrications during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and install sheet metal flashing materials and fabrications in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack materials on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of sheet metal flashing and trim with interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.

- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3004, 3105, or 5005, Temper suitable for forming and structural performance required, but not less than H14, finished as follows:
1. Mill Finish: One-side bright. Use at concealed locations.
 2. Factory Prime Coating: Where painting after installation is indicated, provide pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat; with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil.
 3. High-Performance Organic Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Fluoropolymer 2-Coat System: Manufacturer's standard 2-coat, thermocured system consisting of specially formulated inhibitive primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 2605.
 - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Composite Sheet: 40-mil thick, self-adhering, polymer modified bitumen bonded to polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 1970.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads.
1. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
 2. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex washer head.
 3. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets.
 4. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
- C. Solder for Lead: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.
- D. Sealing Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealing tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape.

- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane or silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant, polyisobutylene plasticized, heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- G. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
- I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Shop fabricate items where practicable. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
- C. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 1. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 2. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- D. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA recommendations.
- E. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions in the Work cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- F. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible on exposed-to-view sheet metal flashing and trim, unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
 - 1. Thickness: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch thick.

2.6 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
 - 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 - 1. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with

bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by fabricator or manufacturers of dissimilar metals.

1. Coat side of uncoated aluminum, stainless-steel, and lead sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 2. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet or install a course of polyethylene underlayment.
 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required for waterproof performance.
- C. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
- D. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and butyl sealant.
- E. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
1. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Anchor each cleat with two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
- F. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- G. Fasteners: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
1. Aluminum: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners.
 2. Stainless Steel: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
- H. Seal joints with butyl sealant as required for watertight construction.
1. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement either way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, set units true to line, and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight.
- B. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone and as indicated.
 - 1. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleats anchored to substrate at 24-inch centers.
 - 2. Anchor interior leg of coping with screw fasteners and washers at 24-inch centers.
- C. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for butyl sealant, extending a minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
- D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Install flashing as follows:
 - 1. Turn lead flashing down inside vent piping, being careful not to block vent piping with flashing.
 - 2. Seal with butyl sealant and clamp flashing to pipes penetrating roof except for lead flashing on vent piping.

3.4 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with butyl sealant to equipment support member.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07620

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 07710 – ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Copings.
 - 2. Roof-edge flashings.
 - 3. Roof-edge drainage systems.
 - 4. Reglets and counterflashings.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Roofing" for roof-edge drainage-system components provided by metal-roof manufacturer.
 - 3. Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for custom- and site-fabricated sheet metal flashing and trim..
 - 4. Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
 - 5. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants between roof specialties and adjacent materials.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. FM Approvals' Listing: Manufacture and install copings and roof-edge flashings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification Class 1-120. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress

as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
 1. Details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
 2. Pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
 3. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
 4. Details of special conditions.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of roof specialty indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For copings made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components including fasteners, cover joints, accessories, and attachments.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for copings and roof-edge flashings.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roof specialties including installers of roofing materials and accessories.
 2. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
 3. Review special roof details, roof drainage, and condition of other construction that will affect roof specialties.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof specialties installation.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of manufactured roof specialties with interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, secure and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXPOSED METALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
 - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 - 2. Mill Finish: As manufactured.
 - 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, finished as follows:
 - 1. Exposed High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
 - 2. Clear Anodic Finish, Coil Coated: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

2.2 CONCEALED METALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- D. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
- B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
 - 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.
 - 3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW WIP 300HT.
 - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Ultra.
 - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
 - d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
 - e. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.
- C. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil-thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.

- D. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
 2. Fasteners for Aluminum: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
 3. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
 4. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
- C. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.5 COPINGS

- A. Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of formed-metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage; corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with same finish as coping cap.
1. Coping-Cap Material: Formed aluminum, 0.080 inch thick.
 - a. Finish Two-coat fluoropolymer.
 - b. Color: Match Architect's samples.
 2. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered.
 3. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Face leg hooked to continuous cleat with back leg fastener exposed, fabricated from coping-cap material.
 4. Face Leg Cleats: Concealed, continuous galvanized-steel sheet.

2.6 ROOF-EDGE FLASHINGS

- A. Canted Roof-Edge Fascia and Gravel Stop: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous formed galvanized-steel sheet cant, 0.028 inch thick, minimum, with extended vertical leg terminating in a drip-edge cleat. Provide matching corner units.
1. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:

- a. Formed Aluminum: 0.063 inch thick.
 - 2. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered.
 - 3. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
 - 4. Fascia Accessories: Overflow scuppers.
- B. Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous formed- or extruded-aluminum anchor bar with integral drip-edge cleat to engage fascia cover. Provide matching corner units.
- 1. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:
 - a. Formed Aluminum: 0.063 inch thick.
 - 2. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered.
 - 3. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
 - 4. Fascia Accessories: Overflow scuppers.
- C. One-Piece Gravel Stops: Manufactured, one-piece, metal gravel stop in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet, with a horizontal flange and vertical leg, drain-through fascia terminating in a drip edge, and concealed splice plates of same material, finish, and shape as gravel stop. Provide matching corner units.
- 1. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
 - a. Formed Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
 - 2. Corners: Factory mitered and soldered.
- D. Aluminum Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
- 1. Color: Match Architect's sample.

2.7 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Castle Metal Products.
 - 2. Cheney Flashing Company.
 - 3. Fry Reglet Corporation.
 - 4. Heckmann Building Products Inc.
 - 5. Hickman Company, W. P.
 - 6. Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.
 - 7. Metal-Era, Inc.
 - 8. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
 - 9. MM Systems Corporation.
 - 10. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Felt Underlayment: Install with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches).
- B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water. Overlap edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
- C. Slip Sheet: Install with tape or adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators,

ROOF SPECIALTIES

Bid Package 1

07710 - 7

sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.

1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 2. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment.
 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof specialties for waterproof performance.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise shown on Drawings.
 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Seal joints with sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.

3.4 COPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor copings to meet performance requirements.
1. Interlock face leg drip edge into continuous cleat anchored to substrate at manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.

Anchor back leg of coping with screw fasteners and elastomeric washers at manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.

3.5 ROOF-EDGE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- C. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07710

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 07920 – JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes joint sealants for the following applications, including those specified by reference to this Section:
 - 1. Exterior joints:
 - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
 - c. Joints between different materials where a seal against weather and where required for appearance.
 - d. Perimeter joints around frames of doors and windows.
 - e. Other joints as indicated.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry" for masonry control and expansion joint fillers and gaskets.
 - 2. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glazing sealants.
 - 3. Division 8 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls" for structural and other glazing sealants.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide elastomeric joint sealants that establish and maintain watertight and airtight continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.
- B. Provide joint sealants for interior applications that establish and maintain airtight and water-resistant continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 3/8-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- E. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 4. Joint-sealant color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each kind of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.
- D. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- E. Field-Adhesion Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- F. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized Installer who is approved or licensed for installation of elastomeric sealants required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
2. Test elastomeric joint sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.
3. Test other joint sealants for compliance with requirements indicated by referencing standard specifications and test methods.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 4. Contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which elastomeric sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish elastomeric joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of elastomeric joint sealants from the following:
1. Movement of the structure resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Elastomeric Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
- B. Single-Component Pourable Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; 300 Pavement Sealant (Self Leveling).
 - c. Dow Corning Corporation; SL Parking Structure Sealant.
 - 2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and P (pourable).
 - 3. Class: 100/50.
 - 4. Use Related to Exposure: T (traffic).
 - 5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, A, and O, as applicable to joint substrates indicated.
 - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Ceramic tile.
- C. Single-Component Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 799.
 - b. GE Silicones; UltraGlaze SSG4000.
 - c. GE Silicones; UltraGlaze SSG4000AC.
 - d. Polymeric Systems Inc.; PSI-631.
 - e. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM5731 Poly-Glaze Plus.
 - f. Tremco; Proglaze SG.
 - g. Tremco; Spectrem 2.
 - h. Tremco; Tremsil 600.
 - 2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
 - 3. Class: 25.
 - 4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).

5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Aluminum coated with a high-performance coating and ceramic tile.

D. Single-Component Mildew-Resistant Neutral-Curing Silicone Sealant:

1. Products:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; 898.
 - b. Tremco; Tremsil 600 White.
2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 25.
4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating and ceramic tile.

E. Single-Component Nonsag Urethane Sealant:

1. Products:
 - a. Sika Corporation, Inc.; Sikaflex - 1a.
 - b. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Ultra.
 - c. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; NP 1.
 - d. Tremco; Vulkem 116.
2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 25.
4. Uses Related to Exposure: T (traffic) and NT (nontraffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating and ceramic tile.

F. Single-Component Nonsag Urethane Sealant:

1. Products:
 - a. Bostik Findley; Chem-Calk 900.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL.
 - c. Polymeric Systems Inc.; Flexiprene 1000.
 - d. Tremco; DyMonic.
2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and NS (nonsag).
3. Class: 25.
4. Use Related to Exposure: NT (nontraffic).
5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.

- a. Use O Joint Substrates: Color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating and ceramic tile.
- G. Single-Component Pourable Urethane Sealant:
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Bostik Findley; Chem-Calk 950.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-201.
 - c. Polymeric Systems Inc.; Flexiprene 952.
 - d. Tremco; Vulkem 45.
 - 2. Type and Grade: S (single component) and P (pourable).
 - 3. Class: 25.
 - 4. Use Related to Exposure: T (traffic).
 - 5. Uses Related to Joint Substrates: M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
 - a. Use O Joint Substrates: Color anodic aluminum, aluminum coated with a high-performance coating and ceramic tile.
- H. Butyl-Rubber-Based Solvent-Release Joint Sealant (Roofing only): Comply with ASTM C 1085.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Bostik Findley; Bostik 300.
 - b. Fuller, H. B. Company; SC-0296.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; BC-158.
 - d. Polymeric Systems Inc.; PSI-301
 - e. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Sonneborn Multi-Purpose Sealant.
 - f. Tremco; Tremco Butyl Sealant.

2.3 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Latex Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 834, Type P, Grade NF.
- B. Products:
 - 1. Bostik Findley; Chem-Calk 600.
 - 2. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
 - 3. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM 8200.
 - 4. Sonneborn, Division of ChemRex Inc.; Sonolac.
 - 5. Tremco; Tremflex 834.

2.4 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and the following:

1. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
 2. Products:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
 - b. United States Gypsum Co.; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
- B. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard, nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce airborne sound transmission.
1. Products:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; BA-98.
 - b. Tremco; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), B (bicellular material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:
- C. Elastomeric Tubing Sealant Backings: Neoprene, butyl, EPDM, or silicone tubing complying with ASTM D 1056, nonabsorbent to water and gas, and capable of remaining resilient at temperatures down to minus 26 deg F. Provide products with low compression set and of size and shape to provide a secondary seal, to control sealant depth, and to otherwise contribute to optimum sealant performance.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or

other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 - 4. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates, where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Acoustical Sealant Application Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 919 for use of joint sealants in acoustical applications as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- D. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
 - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
 - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 - 3. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 5A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.

4. Provide flush joint configuration where indicated per Figure 5B in ASTM C 1193.
5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 5C in ASTM C 1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed elastomeric sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 1 test for each day of sealant application.
 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; do this by extending cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 3. Inspect joints for complete fill, for absence of voids, and for joint configuration complying with specified requirements. Record results in a field-adhesion-test log.
 4. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 - b. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - c. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 5. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
 6. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 07920

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 08800 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
 - 1. Glazed curtain walls.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 8 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls."
- C. The curtain wall work specified in this section shall be performed under a single subcontract as specified in Section 08900 GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Manufacturers of Glass Products: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.
- D. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.
- E. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

- F. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design glass, including comprehensive engineering analysis according to **ICC's 2003 International Building Code** by a qualified professional engineer, using the following design criteria:
1. Glass shall be of specified types, free from flaws and complying with grade requirements. All panels of each type of glass shall be produced by the same manufacturer. Each shipment of glass shall bear a manufacturer's statement indicating strength, grade, thickness, type, and quality of the contents.
 2. Glass shall be annealed, heat strengthened, fully tempered, or laminated, as recommended by the glass manufacturer, to ensure against heat breakage and to assure adequate glass performance at the specified design loads. The glass manufacturer's recommendations shall be accompanied by design load and thermal stress analysis calculations. Use of tempered glass shall be limited to areas where design pressures are beyond the capacity of heat strengthened glass or where required for safety glazing.
 3. Unless otherwise indicated, exterior glass lights shall be of uniform appearance in order to maintain visual uniformity throughout the work. Glass required by code to meet safety glass requirements is excepted from this requirement.
 4. Glass thickness of all vertical lights shall be the same and shall be based on design requirements for the most severe condition.
 5. Sizes of glass shall be taken from the actual frames or from guaranteed dimensions provided by the frame supplier.
 6. Tolerances between frame and edges of glass shall be those recommended by the glass manufacturer.
 7. The work shall conform to requirements of CPSC 16 CFR 1201.
 8. Glass 1/4" thick and thicker shall be factory graded and cut.
 9. Sealants shall be supplied by a single manufacturer when available. After acceptance by the Commissioner, all sealant of each type shall be produced by the accepted manufacturer.
- C. Glass Design: Glass thickness designations indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites in the thickness designations indicated for various size openings, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:
 - a. Specified Design Wind Loads: As required by ASCE 7 "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.0 "Wind Loads."
 - b. Design Wind Loads: Determine design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour at 33 feet above grade, according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 6.5, "Method 2- Analytical Procedure," based on mean roof heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
 - c. Specified Design Snow Loads: As indicated, but not less than snow loads applicable to Project as required by ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 7.0, "Snow Loads."
 - d. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing: 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.
 - 1) Load Duration: 60 seconds or less.
 - e. Probability of Breakage for Sloped Glazing: 1 lite per 1000 for lites set more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind and snow action.
 - 1) Load Duration: 30 days.
 - f. Maximum Lateral Deflection: Provide thickness required that limits center deflection at design wind pressure to 1/50 times the short side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
 - 1) For monolithic-glass lites heat treated to resist wind loads.
 - 2) For insulating glass.
 - 3) For laminated-glass lites.
 - g. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6.0 mm.
- D. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 1. Temperature Change (Range): 140 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick or of thickness indicated.

2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
4. Center-of-Glass Values: Based on using LBL-44789 WINDOW 5.0 computer program for the following methodologies:
 - a. U-Factors: NFRC 100 expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - b. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: NFRC 200.
 - c. Solar Optical Properties: NFRC 300.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For glazing sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Samples: For the following products, in the form of 12-inch-square Samples for glass.
 1. Glass, 3 samples each designated type, displaying safety glass labeling when applicable, 12" x 12".
 2. Non-structural glazing gasket, 12" x 12" corner.
 3. Structural silicone glazing sealant, glass, and aluminum, 12" x 12".
- D. Shop Drawings: Shop drawings for glass components of a curtain wall system shall be submitted with shop drawings for the entire system.
 1. Design Data with recommended glass types, strengths, and thicknesses indicating design loads
 2. Recommended glazing materials and details, showing glass clearances, setting blocks, shims, preformed spacers, structural seals, tapes, gaskets and sealants.
- E. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings for glazed openings in preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For installers manufacturers of insulating-glass units with sputter-coated, low-e coatings glass testing agency and sealant testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass and glazing products, from manufacturer.

- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for coated glass, insulating glass, glazing sealants and glazing gaskets.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in glass installations with a record of successful in-service performance; and who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- C. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain each glass type through one source from a single manufacturer for each glass type:
- D. Source Limitations for Glass Sputter-Coated with Solar-Control Low-E Coatings: Where solar-control low-e coatings of a primary glass manufacturer that has established a certified fabricator program is specified, obtain sputter-coated solar-control low-e-coated glass in fabricated units from a manufacturer that is certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- E. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain glazing accessories through one source from a single manufacturer for each product and installation method indicated.
- F. Glass Product Testing: Obtain glass test results for product test reports in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing glass products.
 - 1. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- G. Glazing for Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Glazing for assemblies that comply with NFPA 80 and that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
- H. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 and, for wired glass, ANSI Z97.1.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, obtain safety glazing products permanently marked with certification label of the Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency or manufacturer acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Where glazing units, including Kind FT glass and laminated glass, are specified in Part 2 articles for glazing lites more than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m) in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category II materials, for lites 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m) or less in exposed surface area of one side, provide glazing products that comply with Category I or II materials, except for hazardous locations where Category II materials are required by 16 CFR 1201 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 1. GANA Publications: GANA Laminated Division's "Laminated Glass Design Guide" and GANA's "Glazing Manual."
 2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR-A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
 3. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
 4. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units."
 - J. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the following testing and inspecting agency:
 1. Insulating Glass Certification Council.
 2. Associated Laboratories, Inc.
 - K. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Coordination."

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
 1. Do not install liquid glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing sealant manufacturer.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by laminated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- 1. Subject to compliance with requirements provide products from the following manufacturers:
 - a. Interpane.
 - b. Viracon.
 - c. PPG.
 - d. Guardian.

2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3; Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I (transparent flat glass); Quality-Q3; Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated; of kind and condition indicated..
 - 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed float glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

3. For uncoated glass, comply with requirements for Condition A.
 4. For coated vision glass, comply with requirements for Condition C (other uncoated glass).
 5. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) float glass in place of annealed or Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass where safety glass is indicated.
- C. Sputter-Coated Float Glass: ASTM C 1376, float glass with metallic-oxide or -nitride coating deposited by vacuum deposition process after manufacture and heat treatment (if any), and complying with other requirements specified.

2.3 LAMINATED GLASS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. Interpane.
 - b. Viracon.
 - c. PPG.
 - d. Guardian.
- B. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials, and with other requirements specified. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.
1. Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written recommendations.
 2. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
 3. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Glass: Comply with applicable requirements in "Glass Products" Article as indicated by designations in "Laminated-Glass Types" Article.

2.4 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. Interpane.
 - b. Viracon.
 - c. PPG.
 - d. Guardian.
- B. Insulating-Glass Units, General: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190, and complying with other requirements specified.
1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.

2. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) glass lites where safety glass is indicated.
3. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated for insulating-glass units are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
4. Sealing System: Dual seal, with primary and secondary sealants as follows:
 - a. Manufacturer's standard sealants.
5. Spacer Specifications: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
6. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.

2.5 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of material indicated below, complying with standards referenced with name of elastomer indicated below, and of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal:
 1. Neoprene, ASTM C 864.
 2. EPDM, ASTM C 864.
 3. Silicone, ASTM C 1115.
 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber, ASTM C 1115.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned neoprene, EPDM, silicone, or thermoplastic polyolefin rubber gaskets complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
 1. Application: Use where soft compression gaskets will be compressed by inserting dense compression gaskets on opposite side of glazing or pressure applied by means of pressure-glazing stops on opposite side of glazing.
- C. Lock-Strip Gaskets: Neoprene extrusions in size and shape indicated, fabricated into frames with molded corner units and zipper lock-strips, complying with ASTM C 542, black.

2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:
 1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 3. Sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, shall have a VOC content of not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 4. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Silicone sealant for standard glazing: material conforming to Fed. Spec. TT-S-001543, Type II, Class A and ASTM C 920, as recommended by the silicone sealant manufacturer for compatibility with the polyvinyl butyral plastic interlayer of laminated glass.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corp.
 - b. General Electric Co.
 - c. Tremco, Inc.
- C. Silicone sealant for structural glazing: material conforming to Fed. Spec. TT-S-001543, Type II, Class A and ASTM C 920, as recommended by the structural silicone sealant manufacturer. Products requiring mixing of components are acceptable only for shop application and with mixing and application equipment recommended by the sealant manufacturer.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corp.
 - b. General Electric Co.
 - c. Tremco, Inc.
- D. Silicone sealant for exterior weather seal: neutral curing material conforming to Fed. Spec. TT-S-001543 and ASTM C 920, as recommended by the structural silicone sealant manufacturer for compatibility with the structural sealant and with the polyvinyl butyral plastic interlayer of laminated glass.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corp.
 - b. General Electric Co.
 - c. ChemRex, Inc.

2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Tape for use with silicone sealant: premolded or extruded tape as recommended by the silicone sealant manufacturer.
- B. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape with a solids content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with

nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:

1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- C. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; packaged on rolls with release liner protecting adhesive; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
1. Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Backup materials, except for use with silicone glazing sealants: premolded or extruded closed cell polyethylene backer rod, sponge neoprene conforming to ASTM C 509, or urethane foam as recommended by the sealant manufacturer.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. "Ethafoam" (Dow Chemical Co.).
 - b. "Expand-O-Foam" (Williams Products, Inc.).
- D. Backup materials for use with silicone glazing sealants: open cell urethane foam, polyethylene foam, or extruded silicone backer rod, as recommended by the sealant manufacturer.
- E. Setting blocks: fabricated from neoprene shaped to the required sizes and thicknesses. Shore A durometer hardness shall be 80 to 90 points. The material shall be compatible with the type of glazing materials used and shall not cause staining or discoloration of the materials or the frame. Setting blocks for use in conjunction with structural silicone glazing applications shall be heat cured silicone rubber.
- F. Spacers: fabricated from neoprene shaped to the required sizes and thicknesses. Shore A durometer hardness shall be 40 to 50 points. The material shall be compatible with the type of glazing materials used and shall not cause staining or discoloration of the materials or the frame. Spacers for use in

conjunction with structural silicone glazing applications shall be heat cured silicone rubber.

- G. Non-structural glazing gaskets, except for structural silicone glazing:
 - 1. Sponge gaskets shall be extruded black neoprene with a Shore A hardness of 40, plus or minus 5, and shall conform to ASTM C 509. Sponge gaskets shall provide 20 percent to 35 percent compression in place.
 - 2. Dense gaskets shall be extruded, black, and without lock-strips. Outdoor gaskets shall be silicone, neoprene, or Santoprene. Indoor gaskets shall be silicone, neoprene, Santoprene, or EPDM. Where indoor and outdoor gaskets are reversible for reglazing, EPDM shall not be used for either gasket.
 - a. Fabricate silicone gaskets with a Shore A hardness of 50 to 70 conforming to ASTM C 1115.
 - b. Fabricate neoprene, Santoprene, or EPDM Gaskets with a Shore A hardness of 75, plus or minus 5, for hollow profiles and 60, plus or minus 5, for solid profiles conforming to ASTM C 864.
 - 3. Corners of gaskets shall be vulcanized or premolded where consistent with installation procedure.
- H. Gaskets for structural silicone glazing: glazing gaskets, sealant backers within glazing pockets, and continuous spacers at glass joints shall be black, silicone rubber, conform to ASTM C 1115 with a durometer, Shore A hardness of 50 to 70.
- I. Gaskets which maintain glass face clearance while serving as a backer for a silicone weather seal may have a friction fit. Other gaskets and weatherstrips, including backers for structural silicone sealant, shall have a continuous spline or a continuous groove which engages a matching groove or leg on the frame.
- J. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- K. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

2.10 MONOLITHIC FLOAT-GLASS UNITS

A. Glass Type: Clear heat-strengthened float glass.

1. Thickness: 3/8 inch.

2.11 INSULATING-GLASS UNITS

A. Glass Type: Low-e-coated, clear insulating laminated glass.

1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-7/16 inch.
2. Thickness of Outdoor Lite: 3/8 inch.
3. Outdoor Lite: Clear heat-strengthened float glass with Low-E coating on #2 surface..
4. Interspace Content: Argon.
5. Indoor Lite: Clear laminated glass with two plies of heat-strengthened float glass.
 - a. Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 1/4 inch.
 - b. Interlayer Thickness: 0.060.
6. Visible Light Transmittance: 44 percent minimum.
7. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: .30 maximum.
8. Summer Daytime U-Factor: .28 maximum.
9. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: .37 minimum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing glazing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
 3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

- B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches as follows:
 - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Fabricate compression gaskets in lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.

- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 08800

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 08911
GLAZED ALUMINUM
CURTAIN WALLS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes conventionally glazed and structurally glazed aluminum curtain walls installed as unitized assemblies.
 - 1. The glazed curtain wall system described in the Contract Documents represents the design of a system for enclosing the building.
 - 2. The Contract Documents describe the general scope and essence of the glazed curtain wall work in terms of the design concept, principal dimensions, and major elements. They do not describe all of the requirements for the work. Design conditions which are not detailed in the Contract Documents shall be fully developed in shop drawings for the Architect's review
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for installation of joint sealants installed with glazed aluminum curtain walls and for sealants to the extent not specified in this Section.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
 - 1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 - 2. Failure also includes the following:
 - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - b. Glass breakage.
 - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.

- e. Failure of operating units.
- B. Delegated Design: Design glazed aluminum curtain walls, including comprehensive engineering analysis, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated. Design the system and analyze support elements in their entirety to resist the required loadings and transfer the reactions to adequate support elements included for the main building structure:
- 1. Provide labor, design, engineering calculations, drafting, material, and equipment necessary for proper design, execution, completion, and satisfactory performance of the work.
 - 2. Employ a qualified structural engineer, licensed in the State of Minnesota, to be responsible for the design of the curtain wall system, including coordination with adjacent work.
 - 3. Design, engineer, fabricate, assemble, and install the glazed curtain wall system to withstand design wind pressure loads based on code requirements, inward and outward acting at any point on the system, and design and construction floor loads.
 - 4. The glazed curtain wall system shall comply with the following additional design requirements:
 - a. System shall be shop glazed where possible.
 - b. Exterior profiles and centerline dimensions shall be as shown on the Drawings, except as accepted by the Architect.
 - c. Interior profiles shall be as shown on the Drawings, except as accepted by the Architect.
 - d. Locations of structural support shall be as indicated. Supporting connections shall be designed for three-dimensional adjustment and accurate location of components.
 - e. Glass areas shall be designed for ease of reglazing. Provide removable stops for installation and replacement of glass. Stops shall be removable without deformation of the stops.
 - f. Exterior building maintenance and window washing will be performed from the ground.
 - g. Primary and secondary controlled drainage systems shall be provided to the exterior face of the wall for water entering at joints and condensation taking place within the construction.
 - h. Weather barrier system shall be continuous.
 - i. In general, sealants and tapes shall be concealed unless otherwise indicated.
 - j. In general, fasteners shall be concealed unless otherwise indicated.
 - k. In general, joints, welding, and other fabrication requirements shall be as specified herein.
 - l. Finishes shall be as specified herein.
 - m. Fabrication and installation tolerances shall be as specified herein.
 - n. Performance requirements shall be as specified herein.
 - o. The insulated glass units shall resist the local and global out of plane deflections due to wind and live loading.
- C. Structural Loads:
- 1. Wind Loads: In accordance with SEI/ASCE 7.
- D. Structural-Test Performance: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:

1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- E. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane not exceeding $L/175$ of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch whichever is less.
 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch.
 3. Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, limit deflection to two times the length of cantilevered member, divided by 175.
- F. Seismic Performance: Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
1. Component Importance Factor is 1.5.
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 15 lb/sq. ft.
- H. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to AAMA 501.1 at dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 15 lb/sq. ft.
1. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating assemblies or water appearing on assemblies' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior.
- I. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures:
1. Temperature Change (Range): 140 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
 2. Test Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.
- J. Energy Performance: Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall have certified and labeled energy performance ratings in accordance with NFRC.

1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.34 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
 2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.37 as determined according to NFRC 200.
 3. Air Infiltration: Maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.30 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area as determined according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
 4. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC- certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 15 as determined according to NFRC 500.
- K. Sound Transmission: Provide glazed aluminum curtain walls with fixed glazing and framing areas having the following sound-transmission characteristics:
1. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 35 when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 1332.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. LEED Submittals:
1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For glazing sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Shop Drawings: For glazed aluminum curtain walls. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
 2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of glazed aluminum curtain walls, showing the following:
 - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - b. Anchorage.
 - c. Expansion provisions.
 - d. Glazing.
 - e. Flashing and drainage.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

- F. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
 - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 - 2. Anchorage.
 - 3. Expansion provisions.
 - 4. Glazing.
 - 5. Flashing and drainage.
- G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glazed aluminum curtain walls indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified structural engineer responsible for their preparation.
- H. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and testing agency.
- I. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
- J. Welding certificates.
- K. Energy Performance Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each glazed aluminum curtain wall.
- L. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified preconstruction testing agency, for glazed aluminum curtain walls, indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- M. Field quality-control reports.
- N. Maintenance Data: For glazed aluminum curtain walls to include in maintenance manuals.
- O. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating glazed aluminum curtain walls that meet or exceed energy performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by certification, labeling, and inclusion in lists.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.

- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
 - 1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- E. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
- F. Energy Performance Standards: Comply with NFRC for minimum standards of energy performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication. Comply with more stringent requirements if indicated.
 - 1. Provide NFRC-certified glazed aluminum curtain walls with an attached label.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for glazed aluminum curtain walls by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Assembly Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of glazed aluminum curtain walls that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. EFCO Corporation.
 2. Enclos Corp.
 3. Harmon, Inc.
 4. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
 5. Permasteelisa North America.
 6. Tubelite.
 7. United States Aluminum.
 8. Vistawall Architectural Products; The Vistawall Group; a Bluescope Steel company.
 9. Wausau Window and Wall Systems.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
 2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
 3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
 4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
 5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.
- B. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.3 FRAMING

- A. Framing Members: Extruded framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 1. Construction: Thermally improved.
 2. Glazing System: Two-sided structural silicone glazed.
 3. Glazing Plane: Front.
- B. Brackets and Reinforcements: High-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
- D. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- F. Framing Sealants: Manufacturer's standard sealants.

2.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Division 8 Section "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Comply with Division 8 Section "Glazing."
- C. Glazing Sealants: Comply with Division 8 Section "Glazing."
 1. Sealants used inside the weatherproofing system shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing.
 - 6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Internal guttering system or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
 - 2. Pressure-equalized system or double barrier design with primary air and vapor barrier at interior side of glazed aluminum curtain wall and secondary seal weeped and vented to exterior.
- E. Factory-Assembled Frame Units:
 - 1. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 - 2. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Install glazing to comply with requirements in Division 8 Section "Glazing."
- F. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
 - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Do not install damaged components.
 - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
 - 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
 - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
 - 6. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
 - 1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
 - 2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install glazed aluminum curtain walls to comply with the following maximum tolerances:
 - 1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
 - 3. Alignment:

- a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
 - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of representative areas of glazed aluminum curtain walls shall take place as installation proceeds to determine compliance of installed assemblies with specified requirements.
 - 1. Air Infiltration: Areas shall be tested for air leakage of 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not more than 0.50 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 783 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
 - a. Test Area: One bay wide, but not less than 30 feet, by one story of glazed aluminum curtain wall.
 - b. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Water Penetration: Areas shall be tested according to ASTM E 1105 at a minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft., and shall not evidence water penetration.
 - a. Test Area: One bay wide, but not less than 30 feet, by one story of glazed aluminum curtain wall.
 - b. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
 - 3. Water Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
 - a. Test Area: A minimum area of 75 feet by one story of glazed aluminum curtain wall.
- C. Glazed aluminum curtain walls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 08911

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 09960 – HIGH-PERFORMANCE
COATINGS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:
 - 1. Exterior Substrates:
 - a. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
 - b. Steel.
 - 2. Interior Substrates:
 - a. Steel.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Division 5 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include preparation requirements and application instructions. Include certifications and test results necessary to show compliance with the Contract Documents.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.2: For interior coatings, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated in the form of manufacturer's color charts.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of coating system and in each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
 - 1. Submit (3) three Samples on representative samples of the actual substrate:
 - a. For steel, on 16 ga. Sheet metal, 4 inch x 12 inch.
 - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
 - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
 - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- E. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
 - 2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.
 - 3. VOC content.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Coatings: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each coating system indicated to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each coating system.
 - a. Wall Surfaces: Provide sample of at least 100 sq. ft.
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

Bid Package 1

09960 - 2

2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Applicator Qualifications: Installation of high performance coatings shall be performed only by a qualified Applicator. The term qualified means experienced in performing the Work required by this section. The Applicator shall have experience on Projects similar in size and scope to this Project. The Applicator shall submit evidence of such qualifications upon request.
 - C. Before starting the work, arrange a pre-construction meeting in accordance with General Conditions. Items for discussion shall include construction procedures and scheduling, surface readiness, application requirements, material storage, and protection.
 - D. Material compatibility: provide fillers, primers, finish coat materials, and related materials that are compatible with one another and the indicated substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by the manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F unless otherwise allowed by the manufacturer's written guidelines for application.
- B. Do not apply coatings when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
- C. Do not apply exterior coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS
 Bid Package 1
 09960 - 3

1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
2. Columbia Paint & Coatings.
3. DuPont de Nemours & Co.
4. ICI Paints.
5. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
6. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
7. Tnemec Company, Inc.

- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles for the paint category indicated.

2.2 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
1. Provide materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 2. For each coat in a coating system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in coating system and on substrate indicated.
 3. Provide products of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.
- B. VOC Content:
1. Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. For interior coatings applied at project site, the following VOC limits, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - a. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 150 g/L.
 - b. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 200 g/L.
 - c. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: 250 g/L.
 - d. Zinc-Rich Primers: 340 g/L.
- C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 METAL PRIMERS

- A. Primer, Zinc-Rich, Epoxy:
1. "Amercoat 68" (PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.)
 2. "90/97 Tneme-Zinc" (Tnemec Company, Inc.)

2.4 EPOXY COATINGS

- A. Epoxy, High-Build, Low Gloss:
1. "Amercoat 385" (PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.)
 2. "Series 66 High Build Epoxoline" (Tnemec Company, Inc.).

2.5 POLYURETHANE COATINGS

- A. Polyurethane, Two-Component, Pigmented, Gloss (Gloss Level 5):
 - 1. "Amercoat 450 S MIO" (PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.).
 - 2. "Enduralume 1077" (Tnemec Company, Inc.)

2.6 SHOP FINISHING REQUIREMENTS:

- A. Shop paint exposed structural steel surfaces as indicated, except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces to receive stud shear connectors.
 - 2. Contact surfaces of welded or high strength bolted connections.
- B. Prepare exposed structural steel surfaces in accordance with SSPC SP1 and SSPC SP6.
- C. Apply high performance coatings in accordance with high performance coating manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Surfaces within 2" of any field weld location shall be free of materials that would prevent proper welding or produce objectionable fumes while welding is being done.
 - 1. If shop painted, surfaces to be welded shall be wire brushed in the field before welding, to reduce paint film to a minimum.
 - 2. After welding all abrasions shall be touched up.
- E. Apply shop primer before rust bloom occurs (maximum 4 hours after blast cleaning).
- F. Shop prime and intermediate coat new architecturally exposed structural steel surfaces for a total dry film thickness of not less than 8.5 mils.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- C. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and incompatible shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
 - 1. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- D. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Items to receive HPC-1 shall receive a finish coat for a total dry film thickness of not less than 11.5 mils.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test coatings for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore coated surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied coating does not comply with coating manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with coating manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

A. CMU Substrates:

- 1. Epoxy System:
 - a. Block Filler: Block filler, epoxy, (MPI #116 or equal).
 - b. Topcoat: Epoxy, Gloss Level 4, (MPI #77 or equal).

B. Steel Substrates:

- 1. Pigmented Polyurethane over Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer and High-Build Epoxy System:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, zinc-rich, epoxy, (MPI #20 or equal) at minimum dry film thickness of 2.5 to 3.5 mils.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy, high-build, low gloss, (MPI #108 or equal) at a minimum dry film thickness of 5.0 to 6.0 mils.
 - c. Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss (Gloss Level 5), at a minimum dry film thickness of 2.5 to 3.5 mils.

END OF SECTION 09960

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 10200 - LOUVERS
AND VENTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes fixed, extruded-aluminum louvers.
- B. Related sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed in perimeter joints between louver frames and adjoining construction.
 - 2. Division 15 Sections for louvers that are a part of mechanical equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades; i.e., the axes of the blades are horizontal.
- C. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.
- D. Storm-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven rain performance, as determined by testing according to AMCA 500-L.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Louvers shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.
 - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on a uniform pressure of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward or outward.
- B. Thermal Movements: Provide louvers that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, and other detrimental effects:

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 degrees F, ambient; 180 degrees F, material surfaces.
- C. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
 1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
 2. Show mullion profiles and locations.
 3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring for motorized adjustable louvers.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of metal finish required.
- D. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of louvers certifying that the products furnished comply with requirements and are licensed to bear the AMCA seal based on tests made according to AMCA 500 and complying with AMCA's Certified Ratings Program.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain louvers and vents through one source from a single manufacturer where alike in one or more respects regarding type, design, or factory-applied finish.
- B. Welding Standards: As follows:
 1. Comply with AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
 2. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.
- C. SMACNA Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" recommendations for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26, alloy 319.

- D. Fasteners: Of same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 series stainless steel, unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.
 - 1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
 - 2. Use Phillips flat-head screws for exposed fasteners, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Anchors and Inserts: Of type, size, and material required for loading and installation indicated. Use nonferrous metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as needed for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or expansion bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors.
- F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt mastic complying with SSPC-Paint 12 but containing no asbestos fibers, or cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187.

2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Assemble louvers in factory to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Maintain equal louver blade spacing to produce uniform appearance.
- C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining materials' tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
- D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches o.c., whichever is less. At horizontal joints between louver units, provide horizontal mullions, unless continuous vertical assemblies are indicated.
- F. Provide sill extensions and loose sills made of same material as louvers where indicated or required for drainage to exterior and to prevent water penetrating to interior.
- G. Join frame members to one another and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds, threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer, concealed from view; unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

2.3 FIXED, EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

- A. Louver Construction: Provide fixed-blade louvers with extruded-aluminum frames and blades.
- B. Horizontal, Drainable-Blade Louvers: As follows:
 - 1. Louver Depth: 4 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Frame Thickness: 0.081 inch.
 - 3. Blade Thickness: 0.081 inch.

4. Blade Angle and Spacing: 45 degrees and 4 inches o.c. for 4-inch-deep louvers.
5. Maintain a minimum 50% free area.

2.4 LOUVER SCREENS

- A. General: Provide each exterior louver with louver screens complying with the following requirements:
 1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
 2. Screening Type: Insect screening, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Secure screens to louver frames with stainless-steel machine screws, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.
- C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate screen frames with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated and to comply with the following requirements:
 1. Metal: Same kind and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached.
 - a. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
 2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
 3. Type: Rewirable frames with a driven spline or insert for securing screen mesh.
- D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:
 1. Insect Screening: Aluminum, 18-by-16 (1.4-by-1.6-mm) mesh, 0.012-inch (0.30-mm) wire.

2.5 BLANK-OFF PANELS

- A. Insulated, Blank-Off Panels: Laminated panels consisting of insulating core surfaced on back and front with metal sheets and attached to back of louver.
 1. Thickness: 2 inches.
 2. Metal Facing Sheets: Aluminum sheet, not less than 0.032-inch (0.81-mm) nominal thickness, or Galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
 3. Insulating Core: Rigid, glass-fiber-board insulation or extruded-polystyrene foam.
 4. Edge Treatment: Trim perimeter edges of blank-off panels with louver manufacturer's standard channel frames, with corners mitered and with same finish as panels.
 5. Seal perimeter joints between panel faces and louver frames with gaskets or sealant.
 6. Panel Finish: Same type of finish applied to louvers, but black color.

2.6 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish louvers after assembly.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. High-Performance Organic Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 1. Color and Gloss: Match Architect's sample.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers and vents level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.
- F. Protect unpainted galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.

- G. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Test operation of adjustable louvers and adjust as needed to produce fully functioning units that comply with requirements.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces of louvers and vents that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- C. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- D. Restore louvers and vents damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
 - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 10200

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 15010 - BASIC MECHANICAL
REQUIREMENTS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements for mechanical installations. The following administrative and procedural requirements are included in this Section to expand the requirements specified in Division 1:
 - 1. Submittals.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. Record documents.
 - 4. Maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Codes, Permits and Inspections.
 - 6. Separation of Work Between Trades.
 - 7. Definitions and Interpretations.
 - 8. Sustainable Building Submittal Requirements.
 - 9. Utility Company Rebates
 - 10. Operating Instructions
 - 11. Guarantees and Certifications
 - 12. Rough-In
 - 13. Mechanical Installations
 - 14. Cutting and Patching
 - 15. Site Visitation Surveys and Measurements

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this and the other sections of Division 15.
- B. Division 15 Section "BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS," for materials and methods common to the remainder of Division 15.

C. This section is a part of each Division 15 Section.

1.3 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS: The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.

- A. Minnesota State Building code (MBC)
- B. Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI)
- C. American National Standard Institute (ANSI)
- D. Air Moving and Conditioning Association (AMCA)
- E. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)
- F. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
- G. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
- H. American Association of Balancing Contractors (AABC)
- I. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)
- J. American Welding Society (AWS)
- K. Cooling Tower Institute (CTI)
- L. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
- M. National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB).
- N. National Electrical Code (NEC)
- O. Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).
- P. Underwriters Laboratories (UL).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following according to the Conditions of the Contract and as specified in Division 1 Section "SUBMITTALS."
- B. Prior to purchasing any equipment or materials, a list of their manufacturers shall be submitted for review.
- C. Prior to assembling or installing the work, the following shall be submitted for review:
 - 1. Scale drawings indicating insert and sleeve locations.

2. Scale drawings showing all piping and duct runs with sizes, elevations and appropriate indication of coordination with other trades. This submission to us shall consist of one sepia and 2 paper prints.
3. Catalog information, factory assembly drawings and field installation drawings as required for a complete explanation and description of all items of equipment.
4. Coordination drawings for access panel and door locations.
5. Shop drawings detailing fabrication and installation for supports for mechanical materials and equipment.
6. Mechanical Contractor shall submit complete MER sheet metal and piping shop drawings to the AC unit manufacturer prior to submission to the Engineer. The AC unit manufacturer shall approve the air performance and acoustical performance of the AC units in the location and with the ductwork and piping configuration and construction as indicated on the shop drawing. AC unit manufacturer shall indicate approval directly on the shop drawing.
7. Welder Certificates signed by Contractor certifying that welders comply with requirements specified under "Quality Assurance" in Section 15050.

D. Documents will not be accepted for review unless:

1. They include complete information pertaining to appurtenances and accessories.
2. They are submitted as a package where they pertain to related items.
3. They are properly marked with service or function, project name, where they consist of catalog sheets displaying other items which are not applicable.
4. They indicate the project name and address along with the Contractor's name, address and phone number.
5. They are properly marked with external connection identification as related to the project where they consist of standard factory assembly or field installation drawings.

E. Shop Drawing Review

1. The purpose of the review of shop drawings is to maintain integrity of the design. Unless the contractor clearly points out changes, substitutions, deletions or any other differences between the submission and the Contract Documents in writing on the Contractor's letterhead, approval by the Engineer or Architect does not constitute acceptance. It is not to be assumed that the engineer has read the text nor reviewed the technical data of a manufactured item and its components except where the Vendor has pointed out differences between his product and the specified model.

2. It is the responsibility of the contractor to confirm all dimensions, quantities, and the coordination of materials and products supplied by him with other trades. Approval of shop drawings containing errors does not relieve the contractor from making corrections at his expense.
3. Substitutions of equipment, systems, materials, temperature controls must be coordinated by the Contractor with his own or other trades which may be involved with the item, such as, but not limited to, equipment substitutions which change electrical requirements, or hanging or support weights or dimensions.
4. Any extra changes or credits which may be generated by other trades due to substitutions will not be accepted unless the Contractor has an agreement in writing with the Owner.
5. Substitutions of equipment, systems, etc. requiring approval of local authorities must comply with such regulations and be filed at the expense of the Contractor (should filing be necessary). Substitutions are subject to approval or disapproval by the Engineer. The contractor in offering substitutions shall hold the Owner and Engineer harmless if the substituted item is an infringement of patent held by the specified item.

F. Explanation of Shop Drawing Stamp

1. Approval indicates that we have not found any reason why this item should not be acceptable within the intent of the documents.
2. As Noted indicates that we have found questionable components which if corrected or otherwise explained make the product acceptable.
3. Resubmit indicates that this item should be resubmitted for approval before further processing.
4. Not Accepted indicates that the item will not meet the intent of the Contract.
5. No shop drawing stamp or note shall constitute an order to fabricate or ship. Such notification can only be performed by the Project Manager for Construction, the Contractor scheduling his own work, or the Owner.

1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Prepare coordination drawings in accordance with Division 1 Section "PROJECT COORDINATION," to a scale of 1/4" = 1'-0" or larger; detailing major elements, equipment components, and systems of mechanical equipment and materials in relationship with other systems, installations, and building components. Indicate locations where space is limited for installation and access and where sequencing and coordination of installations are of importance to the efficient flow of the Work, including (but not necessarily limited to) the following:
 1. Indicate the proposed locations of piping, ductwork, equipment, and materials. Include the following:
 - (a) Planned piping layout, including valve and specialty locations and valve stem movement.

- (b) Planned duct system layout, including elbow radii and duct accessories.
 - (c) Clearances for installing and maintaining insulation.
 - (d) Clearances for servicing and maintaining equipment, including tube removal, filter removal, and space for equipment disassembly required for periodic maintenance.
 - (e) Equipment connections and support details.
 - (f) Exterior wall and foundation penetrations.
 - (g) Fire-rated wall and floor penetrations.
 - (h) Sizes and location of required concrete pads and bases.
 - (i) Clearances as required by Electric Code.
2. Indicate piping loads and support points for all piping 3" and larger, racked piping, and submit to the Structural Engineer for review and approval. Indicate the elevation, location, support points, and loads imposed on the structure at support, anchor points, and size of all lines. Indicate all beam penetrations and slab penetrations sized and coordinated. Indicate all work routed underground or embedded in concrete by dimension to column and building lines.
 3. Indicate scheduling, sequencing, movement, and positioning of large equipment into the building during construction.
 4. Prepare floor plans, elevations, and details to indicate penetrations in floors, walls, and ceilings and their relationship to other penetrations and installations.
 5. Prepare reflected ceiling plans to coordinate and integrate installations, air outlets and inlets, light fixtures, communication systems components, sprinklers, and other ceiling-mounted items.

B. HVAC TRADE COORDINATION DRAWINGS

1. This Trade shall prepare Coordination Drawings showing all of the HVAC work (equipment, piping, ductwork, conduit, etc.) To be installed as part of the work of this section of the specifications. The Coordination Drawings shall be on reproducible transparencies at not less than 1/4" = 1'-0" scale.
2. Requirements for vibration isolation and seismic restraints shall be shown on the coordination drawings by each trade.
3. This Trade after showing all of the HVAC work shall forward the reproducible Coordination Drawings to the Plumbing Contractor.
4. The sequence of coordination drawings shall be HVAC-PLBG-FP-ELEC-GC.

5. The HVAC Contractor shall attend a series of meetings arranged by the General Contractor to resolve any real or apparent interferences or conflicts with the work of the other Contractors or with ceiling heights shown on the architectural drawings.
6. The HVAC Contractor shall then make adjustments to his work on the Coordination Drawings to resolve any real or apparent interferences or conflicts.
7. After any real or apparent interferences and conflicts have been incorporated into the Coordination Drawings, the HVAC Contractor shall "sign-off" the final Coordination Drawings.
8. The HVAC Subcontractor shall not install any of his work prior to "sign-off" of final Coordination Drawings. If HVAC work proceeds prior to sign-off of Coordination Drawings, any change to the HVAC work to correct the interferences and conflicts which result will be made by the HVAC Contractor at no additional cost to the project.
9. Coordination Drawings are for the HVAC Contractor's and Owner's use during construction and shall not be construed as replacing any shop, "as-built", or Record Drawings required elsewhere in these Contract Documents.
10. Review of Coordination Drawings shall not relieve the HVAC Contractor from his overall responsibility for coordination of all work performed pursuant to the Contract or from any other requirements of the Contract.

1.6 RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Prepare record documents in accordance with the requirements in Division 1. In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, comply with the following.
 1. A complete set of "as-built" or record drawings shall be made up and delivered to the Architect.
 2. The drawings shall show:-
 - (a) Ductwork mains and branches, size and location, for both exterior and interior; locations of all dampers and other control devices; filters, boxes, and terminal units requiring periodic maintenance or repair.
 - (b) Mains and branches of piping systems, with valves and control devices located and numbered, concealed unions located, and with items requiring maintenance located (i.e., traps, strainers, expansion compensators, tanks, etc.). Valve location diagrams, complete with valve tag chart. Refer to Division 15 Section "Mechanical Identification." Indicate horizontal locations of underground piping.
 - (c) Equipment locations (exposed and concealed), dimensioned from prominent building lines.

- (d) Approved substitutions, Contract Modifications, and actual equipment and materials installed.
 - (e) All "main air" pneumatic control piping routing locations must be shown.
 - (f) Updating of all equipment schedule sheets.
- B. This trade shall submit the "as-built" set for approval by the building department in a form acceptable to the department, when required by the jurisdiction.
- C. The drawings shall be produced using AutoCad 2000 or later software. The design drawings will be made available on disks in AutoCad format for use as a basis for the "as-built" drawings. These documents remain the property of Cosentini Associates and shall be used for no other purpose without expressed, written consent. The contractor shall assume all liabilities resulting from unauthorized use or modifications to the drawings. Prior to developing any "as-built" drawings, the contractor shall coordinate with the Owner and the Architect and Engineer the drawing layers, colors, etc., of the CAD drawings. "As-built" information shall be submitted as follows:
 - 1. CAD drawing files on disks in AutoCad 2000 format.
 - 2. One (1) set of reproducible drawings.
 - 3. Two (2) sets of blueprints.
- D. The quantity of design drawings which are made available shall in no way be interpreted as setting a limit to the number of drawings necessary to show the required "as-built" information.
- E. Progress prints of record drawings shall be submitted monthly during the construction period for Architect's approval.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare maintenance manuals in accordance with Division 1. In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, include the following information for equipment items:
 - 1. Description of function, normal operating characteristics and limitations, performance curves, engineering data and tests, and complete nomenclature and commercial numbers of replacement parts.
 - 2. Manufacturer's printed operating procedures to include start-up, break-in, and routine and normal operating instructions; regulation, control, stopping, shutdown, and emergency instructions; and summer and winter operating instructions.
 - 3. Maintenance procedures for routine preventative maintenance and troubleshooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly; aligning and adjusting instructions.

4. Servicing instructions and lubrication charts and schedules.
5. List of spares: recommended for normal service requirements.
6. Parts list: identifying the various parts of the equipment for repair and replacement purposes.
7. Instruction books may be standard booklets but shall be clearly marked to indicate applicable equipment.
8. Wiring diagrams: generalized diagrams are not acceptable, submittal shall be specifically prepared for this project.
9. Automatic controls: diagrams and functional descriptions. (See control specification for additional requirements).

1.8 CODES, PERMITS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. All work shall meet or exceed the latest requirements of all national, state, county, municipal and other authorities exercising jurisdiction over construction work at the project. These include, but are not limited to the following:

Minnesota State Building Code
NFPA National Fire Codes

- B. All required permits and inspection certificates shall be obtained, paid for, and made available at the completion of the work.
- C. Any portion of the work which is not subject to the approval of an authority having jurisdiction, shall be governed by the applicable sections of the overall National Fire Code, as published by the National Fire Protection Association.
- D. Installation procedures, methods, and conditions shall comply with the latest requirements of The Federal Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
- E. Prepare and submit to the building department a set of "as-built" record drawings for approval, in a form acceptable to the building department.
- F. This Contractor shall prepare all plans, amendments and pay all filing fees that will be required for the fuel burning installation, including boiler plant, gas/oil fired chillers, chimney, oil piping, fuel oil tanks, gas piping, breeching, and any or all parts of the system under the jurisdiction of the controlling agencies.
- G. This Contractor shall prepare all plans, amendments and pay all filing fees that will be required for the emergency generator installation, including oil piping, engine exhaust, fuel oil tanks, and any or all parts of the system under the jurisdiction of the controlling agencies.
- H. This Contractor shall prepare all plans, amendments, and pay all filing fees that will be required for the electric generator and electric generator fuel oil tank installation.
- I. This Contractor shall be responsible for the installation and filing until the installation has been approved by the authorities having such jurisdiction.

BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

Bid Package 1

15010 -8

1.9 SEPARATION OF WORK BETWEEN TRADES

- A. The specifications for the overall construction delineate various items of work under separate trade headings. The list below sets forth this delineation to the extent that it affects the HVAC work.
- B. In the absence of more detailed information, this list shall be taken as a specific instruction to the heating, ventilating and air conditioning trade to include the work assigned to it.
- C. Indications that the heating, ventilating and air conditioning trade is to perform an item of work mean that it is to perform the work for its own accommodation only, except as specifically noted otherwise.
- D. Oth = Other than electrical or mechanical
- Plb = Plumbing
- Htg = Heating, Ventilating & Air Conditioning
- Elec = Electrical
- f = Furnished
- i = Installed
- p = Provided (furnished and installed)

ITEM	OTH	PLB	HTG	ELEC	NOTES
Motors for mechanical equipment.			p		
Motors starters and control devices for mechanical equipment.					
Heating:			p		Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions.
Power wiring for mechanical equipment motors.				p	Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions.
Control wiring for motors.					
Heating:			p		Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions.

ITEM	OTH	PLB	HTG	ELEC	NOTES
Wiring for automatic dampers. Heating:			p		Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions.
Temporary heat.	p				
Temporary water.	p				
Sealing of pressurized stairway, shafts and doors.	p				
Undercutting of doors and door louvers.	p				Supplying location where required included in HVAC.
Temporary light & power.	p				
Hoisting			p		
Rigging			p		
Cutting, chasing & patching	p				Cost where due to late installation or improper coordination of work is the responsibility of the delinquent trade.
Framed slots and openings in walls decks and slabs.	p				Coordination drawings are required from HVAC trade.
Sleeves through non-membraned slabs, decks and walls.			p		
Drilling & cutting of all holes in steel decks and precast slabs required for sleeves & supports.			p		
Sleeves through membraned slabs, decks and walls.			p		
Waterproof sealing of sleeves through membraned slabs, decks and walls.			p		
Fireproof sealing of excess openings in slabs, decks & fire rated walls.			p		
Concrete encasement of underground runs			p		
Trenches in floor slabs	p				

ITEM	OTH	PLB	HTG	ELEC	NOTES
Excavation and backfill inside buildings.	p				
Excavation and backfill outside buildings.	p				
Wells or openings in piping for pressure, temperature, flow, etc.			p		Wells and fittings furnished by Temperature Control subcontractor.
Keeping site and excavations free from surface water during construction.	p				To accommodate the overall project.
Fastenings			p		
Supports			p		
Steam manholes	p				Furnishing of covers, associated frames and other hardware included in HVAC trade.
Base flashing to all roof penetrations	p				
Roof vent and pipe cap flashing.			p		
Roof vent and base flashing.	p				
Roof curb cap flashing.			p		
Roof curb base flashing	p				
Concrete foundations, pads & bases inside buildings.	p				Furnishing of anchors and vibration mounts included in the HVAC trade.
Concrete foundations, pads & bases outside buildings.	p				Furnishing of anchors and vibration mounts included in the HVAC trade providing the associated equipment.
Field touch-up painting of damaged shop coats.			p		
Rustproofing field cut and assembled iron supporting frames and racks.			p		
Finish painting of exposed work.	p				Insulation coatings are by HVAC trade.
Ornamental grills.	p				Duct connections included in HVAC trade.

ITEM	OTH	PLB	HTG	ELEC	NOTES
Exterior wall louvers.	p				Duct connections & safing of all unused portions of louvers (2" thick insulated panel) is by HVAC Trade.
Finished wall and ceiling access doors, panels and supporting frames.	p				Supplying list locating all required access doors (none to be less than 16" x 16") included in HVAC.
Fire rated duct enclosures			p		
Thermal insulation for mechanical room ceilings.	p				
Flue Vents			p		Coordinate with Plumbing Contractor.
Convactor enclosures.	p		p		
Catwalks to mechanical equipment.	p				Supplying list of locations where required included in HVAC.
Ladders to mechanical equipment other than cooling towers					Supplying list of locations where required included in HVAC.
Ladders to cooling towers.			p		
Ladders to roof mounted AC units and equipment.			p		Coordinate with Architect and Structural Engineer.
Steel dunnage for roof mounted AC units and equipment other than cooling towers.			p		Coordinate with Architect and Structural Engineer.
Gas service piping to heating boiler equipment.		p			Final connections included in heating, ventilation and air conditioning.
Domestic make-up water piping for heating and air conditioning systems.		p			Final connections included in heating, ventilation and air conditioning.
Control valves for domestic hot water heaters.		f	i		
Walk-in refrigerator.	p				Line connections included in electric.
Laboratory and medical equipment.	p				line connections included in HVAC trade.

ITEM	OTH	PLB	HTG	ELEC	NOTES
Rubbish removal			p		where one trade furnishes and another installs, the installing trade removes the shipping and packing materials which accumulate.
Special tools for equipment maintenance.			f		
Electric duct heaters (heaters installed in air ducts).			p		Line connections included in electric. Drawings delineate exceptions.
Electric heaters with integral fans (cabinet heaters, unit heaters and the like).			p		Line connections included in electric. Drawings delineate exceptions.
Electric radiators (baseboard, sill line, and convector type heaters).				p	
Through wall sleeve type air conditioning and electric heating units.			p		
Electric heater cables for radiant space heating.				p	
Electric heater cables for snow melting.				p	
Electric heater cables for pipe tracing.				p	Line and control connections and control device mounting included in electric.
Masonry shafts, sheet rock shafts, tunnels, utilized for air ducts.	p				This trade to assure the air tightness of all joints, holes and other openings to make these air conveyors acceptable for their function.

- E. The Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning Trade is required to supply all necessary supervision and coordination information to any other trades who are to supply work to accommodate the Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning installations.
- F. Where the Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning trade is required to install items which it does not purchase, it shall include for such items:
1. The coordination of their delivery.
 2. Their unloading from delivery trucks driven in to any designated point on the property line at grade level.

3. Their safe handling and field storage up to the time of permanent placement in the project.
 4. The correction of any damage, defacement or corrosion to which they may have been subjected.
 5. Their field assembly and internal connection as may be necessary for their proper operation.
 6. Their mounting in place including the purchase and installation of all dunnage supporting members and fastenings necessary to adapt them to architectural and structural conditions.
 7. Their connection to building systems including the purchase and installation of all terminating fittings necessary to adapt and connect them to the building systems.
- G. Items which are to be installed but not purchased as part of the work of the Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning trade shall be carefully examined by this trade upon delivery to the project. Claims that any of these items have been received in such condition that their installation will require procedures beyond the reasonable scope of work of the Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning trade will be considered only if presented in writing within one week of the date of delivery to the project of the items in question. The work of the Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning trade shall include all procedures, regardless of how extensive, necessary to put into satisfactory operation, all items for which no claims have been submitted as outlined above.

1.10 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS

- A. Specific items of terminology, as used herein or on drawings, shall have the following meanings.
1. "Piping"-----Pipe, fittings, flanges, valves, controls, hangers, traps, drains, insulation, vents, and items customarily required in connection with the transfer of fluids.
 2. "Concealed"-----Embedded in masonry or other construction, installed behind wall furring, within double partitions or hung ceilings, in crawl spaces, in shafts.
 3. "Exposed"-----Not concealed.
 4. "By Other Trades" or "Others" or "Oth"-----By persons or parties responsible for work at the project other than the party or parties who have been duly awarded the contract for the work of this Trade. In the event that this document is used to acquire work as part of a general construction contract the words "by other trades" shall mean by persons or parties who are not anticipated to be the sub-contractor for this trade working together with the general contractor. In this context the words "by other trades" shall not be interpreted to mean not included in the overall contract.

5. Where reference is made to N.E.M.A. Standards, it shall be understood that this reference is to the "Approved Standards", published by the National Electrical Manufacturers Association, Main Office - 155 East 44th Street, New York, New York 10017.
6. Where reference is made to "A.N.S.I. Standards", it shall be understood that this reference is to the standards published by the American National Standards Institute Incorporated.

1.11 INTERPRETATION OF THE DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS:

- A. As used in the drawings and specifications, certain non technical words shall be understood to have specific meanings as follows:
 1. "Furnish"-----Purchase and deliver to the project site complete with every necessary appurtenance and support.
 2. "Install"-----Unload at the delivery point at the site and perform every operation necessary to establish secure mounting and correct operation at the proper location in the project.
 3. "Provide"-----"Furnish" and "Install".
- B. Except where modified by a specific notation to the contrary, it shall be understood that the indication and/or description of any item, in the drawings or specifications or both, carries with it the instruction to furnish and install the item, regardless of whether or not this instruction is explicitly stated as part of the indication or description.
- C. It shall be understood that the specifications and drawings are complementary and are to be taken together for a complete interpretation of the work. Where there are conflicts between the drawings and specifications or within the specifications or drawings themselves, the items of higher standard shall govern.
- D. No exclusions from, or limitations, in the language used in the drawings or specifications shall be interpreted as meaning that the appurtenances or accessories necessary to complete any required system or item of equipment are to be omitted.
- E. The drawings of necessity utilize symbols and schematic diagrams to indicate various items of work. Neither of these have any dimensional significance nor do they delineate every item required for the intended installations. The work shall be installed, in accordance with the diagrammatic intent expressed on the electrical and mechanical drawings, and in conformity with the dimensions indicated on final architectural and structural working drawings and on equipment shop drawings.
- F. No interpretation shall be made from the limitations of symbols and diagrams that any elements necessary for complete work are excluded.
- G. Certain details appear on the drawings which are specific with regard to the dimensioning and positioning of the work. These details are intended only for the purpose of establishing general feasibility. They do not obviate field coordination for the indicated work.

- H. Information as to the general construction shall be derived from structural and architectural drawings and specifications only.
- I. The use of words in the singular shall not be considered as limiting where other indications denote that more than one item is referred to.
- J. In the event that extra work is authorized, and performed by this trade, work shown on drawings depicting such work, and/or described by Bulletin is subject to the base building specifications in all respects.

1.12 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY REGARDING UTILITY COMPANY REBATE PROGRAMS

- A. This Contractor shall as part of his quotation for Base Bid work, include work in connection with Utility Company rebate programs as follows:
 - 1. For equipment which qualify for rebates from the Utility and which have been included in the Base Bid work as part of these specifications and/or the associated contract drawings, assist in the preparation of all applications, work sheets, and other documentation required by the Utility in order to insure their eligibility for rebate. In order to avoid possible loss of rebates, obtain written confirmation of eligibility from the Utility Company before placing orders for any such equipment. Schedule the filing of the documentation, the ordering of the equipment, and the installation of the equipment so as to guarantee compliance with all of Utility Company requirements. Notify the Architect in writing if these requirements will delay the building construction schedule.

1.13 SUSTAINABLE (LEED AND STATE OF MINNESOTA)

- A. LEED Building Submittal Requirements
 - 1. Contractor's Responsibility Regarding Rebate Programs, Tax Credits and Green Building Certifications
 - (a) This section applies to all projects in regard to available rebate programs but only requires adherence to the special programs listed when such programs are specifically called out to be part of the project. This Contractor shall as part of his quotation for Base Bid work, include work in connection with Utility Company, Local, State, and Federal rebate programs as follows:
 - (1) For equipment which qualify for rebates and which have been included in the Base Bid work as part of these specifications and/or the associated contract drawings, assist in the preparation of all applications, work sheets, and other documentation required in order to insure their eligibility for rebate. In order to avoid possible loss of rebates, obtain written confirmation of eligibility from the agency offering the rebate and/or CM before placing orders for any such equipment. Schedule the filing of the documentation, the ordering of the equipment, and the installation of the equipment so as to guarantee compliance with all requirements. Notify the Architect in writing if these requirements will delay the building construction schedule.

- (2) Contractor shall provide Owner assistance to meet the requirements of, the State of Minnesota Sustainable Building Guidelines (MSBG) and , the United States Green Building Council (USGBC) LEED™ New Construction Certification Program, Building Tax Credit (MSBG). This project must be in full compliance with the requirements of these programs. The Contractor is responsible to provide all information that is needed for the satisfactory demonstration of compliance as mandated in these guidelines. Compliance is required with all but not limited to the following:

(i) BUDGETING / COSTING

Contractor shall provide cost data from vendors and for their own work for all Energy Efficiency Measures (EEMs). Where guidelines provide alternative approaches to requirements such as the MSBG, the Contractor shall perform cost comparisons to assist the Owner and the design team in selecting the best option. Where guidelines require reporting of incremental cost differences between equipment and systems such as with the MSBG, the Contractor shall perform cost comparisons to assist the Owner in developing the required reports.

(ii) COMPLIANCE WITH REQUIRED PLANS FOR FIELD OPERATIONS

Contractor is responsible for compliance with all plans developed specifically for these programs as follows:

- 1) Erosion and Sedimentation Plan - This plan includes a description of all temporary and permanent erosion control and stormwater control measures implemented on the project site and the type and frequency of maintenance activities required for the chosen erosion control methods. Compliance shall be monitored by a CM staff member regularly assigned to this task. A book including photographs of the site taken on a regular basis, forms for notification of non-compliance with the plan, and forms for noting the correction of non-compliant situations shall be maintained at the field office.

- 2) IAQ (Interior Air Quality) Plan compliant with MSBG and LEED. The plan should include specific actions and protective measure proposed for this particular site including descriptive narratives, detailed sketches, construction and pre-occupancy building flush, and Mold Mitigation program relative to the following requirements:
 - a) Electrical Protection

All electrical equipment must be protected from collecting not only dust but also, moisture and odors (which can "stick" to porous materials in the system and later be re-released). Bus duct and conduit are to be delivered to the site with ends covered. During construction and for all work in place, all open ends shall be covered.
 - b) Source Control

Contractors shall use products with low VOCs (Volatile Organic Compounds) and must use low sulfur fuels. This section also mandates field operating practices to reduce air borne contaminants and emissions.
 - c) Pathway Interruption

Pathway Interruption measures are required where areas are potentially subject to contamination from construction activities. Contractors as examples may be required to erect barriers to contain dust or relocate staging areas from air pathways or provide temporary sealing of intakes to avoid contamination.
 - d) Housekeeping

Specific actions shall be employed by all Contractors in regard to controlling contaminates at the work site.

e) Scheduling

Contractors must maintain schedules to ensure construction activity and building occupancy do not overlap in time. This also calls for a flush-out of areas to be occupied for two weeks with 100% outside air to remove any residual dust or odors from the space. Subcontractors shall provide all standby labor required for this operation including a change of filters immediately after.

f) Sequence of Finish Installation

Finishes shall be sequenced to avoid porous materials absorbing emissions from wet-applied finishes. Contractors shall include appropriate allowances for drying or curing times of wet-applied finishes before installation of porous finishes and materials, based on technical specifications provided by the manufacturers.

g) Material Protection

Materials directly exposed to moisture through precipitation, plumbing leaks or condensation from HVAC equipment are susceptible to microbial contamination. The contractor shall take precautions necessary to protect materials installed or stored on-site from moisture damage and develop a Mold Mitigation program.

The project's designated Construction IAQ Manager is responsible for implementation and enforcement of the Construction IAQ Management requirements and has the authority to implement stop work orders or termination of services for non-conformance with the requirements herein.

- 3) Construction Waste Management Plan - The rubbish removal plan shall provide for the handling and sorting of construction waste. Compliance with the plan is required by all Contractors

- 4) Pest Control Management Plan - In compliance with MSBG Guidelines this plan calls for the use of non-toxic pesticides and the use of boric acid for insect control. Compliance with the plan is required by all Contractors.

(iii) Minnesota Sustainable Building Guideline (MSBG) Submittal Requirements:

The Contractor and their sub-contractors shall submit the "MSBG" certification items listed herein. "MSBG" submittals shall include the following:

- 1) All completed "MSBG" Materials Certification Forms. Information to be supplied for this form shall include:
 - a) Cost breakdowns for the adhesives and sealants included in the Contractor or sub-contractor's work and listed under the "MSBG" PERFORMANCE CRITERIA in Section 16050 - Basic Electrical Materials & Methods. Cost breakdowns shall include total cost plus separate labor, equipment, and itemized material costs.
 - b) The VOC content of all adhesives, sealants, paints, and coatings applied on site as part of this work.
- 2) Product cut sheets for materials that meet the "MSBG" CERTIFICATION FORM. Cut sheets shall be submitted with the Contractor or sub-contractor's stamp, as confirmation that the submitted products are the products installed in the Project.
- 3) Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS), for applicable products. Applicable products include, but are not limited to adhesives, sealants, carpets, paints and coatings. Material Safety Data Sheets shall indicate the Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) limits of products submitted (If an MSDS does not include a product's VOC limits, then product data sheets, manufacturer literature, or a letter of certification from the manufacturer can be submitted in addition to the MSDS to indicate the VOC limits).

- 4) Published product literature or letters of certification (on the manufacturer's letterhead) indicating the mercury content of each fluorescent lamp type installed.
- 5) The "MSBG" submittal information shall be assembled into one (1) package per Section or trade, and sent to the Consultant of review. Incomplete or inaccurate "MSBG" submittals may be used as the basis for rejecting the submitted products or assemblies.

(iv) Commissioning

Commissioning and training requirements shall be in accordance with the Commissioning specification section.

General Description of Roles:

A/E: Write requirements for start-up and pre-functional tests, perform construction observation, approve O&M manuals, respond to RFIs, clarify design intent and assist in resolving problems.

CA: Provide document reviews, coordinate the Cx process, write procedures and Commissioning Plan, oversee and compile documentation of pre-functional check lists, write functional performance tests for the commissioning plan, witness, in part, pre-functional tests, witness functional tests, comply results of Commissioning and training.

Mfr.: The equipment manufacturers and vendors provide documentation to facilitate the commissioning work, perform contracted startup, and participate in the proper operation of their equipment during functional and system testing, and training.

Subs: Assists in the preparation of all testing procedures, demonstrate proper system performance and provides all labor and testing apparatus required for start-up, functional and system testing, commissioning and training.

CM: Facilitates the Cx process ensures that Subs perform their responsibilities and integrates Cx into the construction process and schedule.

(v) Required Plans and Records for Sustainable/ Renewable Materials:

Submittals are to be reviewed by the Green and Sustainability Consultant to assure they include the required information for adherence to all programs. Subcontracts shall provide all data required to assure compliance.

(vi) Purchasing/Contracting/Record Keeping:

All Contractors, Material suppliers, and Vendors shall include the cost of supplying specified materials (mostly low VOC sealants, coatings, paints, carpet, insulation, etc.), specified by AA, in compliance with MSBG and LEED Guidelines. All Contractors shall include the cost of performing the installation of materials in accordance with details specified by AA, in compliance with LEED and BPCA, Guidelines.

2. Delivery, Storage, and Handling

- (a) Deliver products to the project properly identified with names, model numbers, types, grades, compliance labels, and other information needed for identification.
- (b) Unit shall be stored and handled in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- (c) Unit shall be shipped with all listed items and control wiring factory installed unless noted on the submittals and approved prior to shipment.
- (d) Unit shall be shipped complete as specified. Parts for field installation shall not be shipped and stored on site without prior approval.
- (e) Rigging: Units shall be fully assembled. Units requiring disassembly for rigging shall be factory assembled and tested. Disassembly, reassembly and testing shall be supervised by the manufacturer's representative.
- (f) Unit shall be shipped with firmly attached labels that indicate name of manufacturer, model number, serial number, and plan tagging.
- (g) The Vendor shall shrink-wrap all electronic equipment and spare parts prior to shipping. Spare parts are to be delivered at time of owner acceptance.

3. Preconstruction Conference Prior to Start of Work

- (a) Prior to commencing any Work, the CM, together with designated major Contractors, shall confer with the Architect and Engineer concerning the Work under the Construction Contract.
- (b) The pre-construction conference will be conducted under the leadership of the CM and will occur soon after the CM notifies the Subcontractors of contract award. The pre-construction conference will focus on items such as the expedited submittal review procedure, interface and coordination between Contractor work scope, the CM's project site rules and requirements, temporary utility requirements, CM's construction schedule, etc.

B. Shop Drawing Review

- 1. The purpose of the review of shop drawings is to maintain integrity of the design. Unless the contractor clearly points out changes, substitutions, deletions or any other differences between the submission and the Contract Documents in writing on the Contractor's letterhead, review by the Engineer or Architect does not constitute acceptance. It is not to be assumed that the engineer has read the text nor reviewed the technical data of a manufactured item and its components including where the Vendor has pointed out differences between his product and the specified model.
- 2. It is the responsibility of the contractor to confirm all dimensions, quantities, and the coordination of materials and products supplied by him with other trades. Review of shop drawings containing errors does not relieve the contractor from making corrections at his expense.
- 3. Substitutions of equipment, systems, materials, temperature controls must be coordinated by the Contractor with his own or other trades which may be involved with the item, such as, but not limited to, equipment substitutions which change electrical requirements, or hanging or support weights or dimensions.
- 4. Any extra changes or credits which may be generated by other trades due to substitutions will not be accepted unless the Contractor has an agreement in writing with the Owner.
- 5. Proposed substitutions shall be in accordance with the requirements of the section governing substitutions. Substitutions of equipment, systems, etc. requiring approval of local authorities must comply with such regulations and be filed at the expense of the Contractor (should filing be necessary). Substitutions are subject to approval or disapproval by the Engineer. The contractor in offering substitutions shall hold the Owner and Engineer harmless if the substituted item is an infringement of patent held by the specified item.

C. Explanation of Shop Drawing Stamp

1. Reviewed - No Exception Taken: indicates that we have not found any reason why this item should not be acceptable within the intent of the contract documents.
2. Exception Taken As Noted: indicates that we have found questionable components which if corrected or otherwise explained make the product acceptable.
3. Revised and Resubmit: indicates that this item should be resubmitted for review before further processing.
4. Resubmit Specified Item: indicates that the item will not meet the intent of the Contract.
5. Incomplete - Resubmit: Indicates that the submission is not complete and ready for review by the Architect or Engineer.
6. No shop drawing stamp or note shall constitute an order to fabricate or ship. Such notification can only be performed by the Project Manager for Construction, the Contractor scheduling his own work, or the Owner.
7. The Contractor is responsible for having "Reviewed" copies of shop drawings bearing the Reviewed - No Exception Taken stamp of the Architect/Engineer or Owner's Consultant are kept on the job site and work is implemented in the field in accordance with these documents.
8. Where information from one Contractor is required by another contractor, it is the responsibility of the contractors to exchange information and coordinate their work.

1.14 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to the project properly identified with names, model numbers, types, grades, compliance labels, and other information needed for identification.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

- A. After all final tests and adjustments have been completed, fully instruct the proper Owner's Representative in all details of operation for equipment installed. Supply qualified personnel to operate equipment for sufficient length of time to assure that Owner's Representative is properly qualified to take over operation and maintenance procedures. Supply qualified personnel to operate equipment for sufficient length of time as required to meet all governing authorities in operation and performance tests.

3.2 GUARANTEES AND CERTIFICATIONS

- A. All work shall be guaranteed to be free from leaks or defects. Any defective materials or workmanship as well as damage to the work of all trades resulting from same shall be replaced or repaired as directed for the duration of stipulated guaranteed periods.
- B. The duration of guarantee periods following the date of beneficial use of the system shall be one year. Beneficial use is defined as operation of the system to obtain its intended use. For example, in the case of refrigeration systems, it means that the plant has a cooling load. Similarly, for all other systems.
- C. The date of acceptance shall be the date of the final payment for the work or the date of a formal notice of acceptance, whichever is earlier.
- D. Non-durable replaceable items such as air filter media do not require replacement after the date of acceptance. If received in writing, requests to have earlier acceptance dates established for these items will be honored.
- E. Certification shall be submitted attesting to the fact that specified performance criteria are met by all items of heating and air conditioning equipment.

3.3 ROUGH-IN

- A. Verify final locations for rough-ins with field measurements and with the requirements of the actual equipment to be connected.
- B. Refer to equipment specifications in Divisions 2 through 16 for rough-in requirements.

3.4 MECHANICAL INSTALLATIONS

- A. General: Sequence, coordinate, and integrate the various elements of mechanical systems, materials, and equipment. Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Coordinate mechanical systems, equipment, and materials installation with other building components.
 - 2. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.
 - 3. Arrange for chases, slots, and openings in other building components during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
 - 4. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and sleeves to be set in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components, as they are constructed.
 - 5. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Give particular attention to large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.

6. Where mounting heights are not detailed or dimensioned, install systems, materials, and equipment to provide the maximum headroom possible.
7. Coordinate connection of mechanical systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies. Provide required connection for each service.
8. Install systems, materials, and equipment to conform with approved submittal data, including coordination drawings, to greatest extent possible. Conform to arrangements indicated by the Contract Documents, recognizing that portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Where coordination requirements conflict with individual system requirements, refer conflict to the Architect.
9. Install systems, materials, and equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, where installed exposed in finished spaces.
10. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. As much as practical, connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
11. Install access panel or doors for maintenance or inspection where units are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 8 Section "ACCESS DOORS" and Division 15 Section "BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS."
12. Install systems, materials, and equipment giving right-of-way priority to systems required to be installed at a specified slope.

3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Perform cutting and patching in accordance with Division 1 Section "CUTTING AND PATCHING." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, the following requirements apply:
 1. Protection of Installed Work: During cutting and patching operations, protect adjacent installations.
- B. Perform cutting, fitting, and patching of mechanical equipment and materials required to:
 1. Uncover Work to provide for installation of ill-timed Work.
 2. Remove and replace defective Work.
 3. Remove and replace Work not conforming to requirements of the Contract Documents.
 4. Remove samples of installed Work as specified for testing.

5. Install equipment and materials in existing structures.
 6. Upon written instructions from the Architect, uncover and restore Work to provide for Architect/Engineer observation of concealed Work.
- C. Cut, remove and legally dispose of selected mechanical equipment, components, and materials as indicated, including but not limited to removal of mechanical piping, heating units, plumbing fixtures and trim, and other mechanical items made obsolete by the new Work.
 - D. Protect the structure, furnishings, finishes, and adjacent materials not indicated or scheduled to be removed.
 - E. Provide and maintain temporary partitions or dust barriers adequate to prevent the spread of dust and dirt to adjacent areas.
 1. Patch existing finished surfaces and building components using new materials matching existing materials and experienced Installers. Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.
 - (a) Refer to Division 1 Section "DEFINITIONS AND STANDARDS" for definition of "experienced Installer."
 2. Patch finished surfaces and building components using new materials specified for the original installation and experienced Installers. Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.
 - (a) Refer to Division 1 Section "DEFINITIONS AND STANDARDS" for definition of "experienced Installer."

3.6 SITE VISITATION SURVEYS AND MEASUREMENTS

- A. Before submitting bid, visit the project site to satisfy yourself that all equipment shown or specified in the project contract documents can be installed generally as shown. Advise Owner prior to bid date, of any space or other installation problems.
- B. Before submitting bid, become thoroughly familiar with all conditions under which work will be installed, as you will be held responsible for any assumptions, any omissions or errors made as a result of failure to become familiar with the site and Contract Documents.
- C. Investigate each space through which equipment must be moved. Where necessary, equipment shall be shipped from manufacturer in sections of size suitable for moving through restrictive spaces available. Ascertain from building Owner at what time of day equipment may be moved through certain restrictive areas.
- D. Install work so as to be readily accessible for operation, maintenance and repair. Minor deviations from drawings may be made to accomplish this, but changes which involve extra cost shall not be made without approval.

- E. Removal and relocation of certain existing work will be necessary for the performance of the general work. All existing conditions cannot be completely detailed on the drawings. The Contractor shall survey the site and include all required changes in making up their bid proposal.
- F. Submission of a bid shall be construed as evidence, that a careful examination of the portions of the existing building, equipment, etc., which affect this work and the access to such spaces has been made and that the Contractor is familiar with existing conditions and difficulties that will affect the execution of the work. Claims will not be allowed for labor, equipment or materials required because of difficulties encountered, which could have been foreseen during such an examination.

END OF SECTION 15010

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 15050 - BASIC MECHANICAL
MATERIALS AND METHODS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This Section includes the following basic mechanical materials and methods to complement other Division 15 Sections.
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Fire and smoke Detection
 - 3. Sequencing and scheduling
 - 4. Access Doors in Finished construction.
 - 5. Dielectric Fittings.
 - 6. Pipe and Pipe Fittings.
 - 7. Joining Materials
 - 8. Piping Specialties
 - 9. Labeling and identifying mechanical systems and equipment is specified in Division 15000.
 - 10. Grout for equipment installations.
 - 11. Drive Guards
 - 12. Electrical Motors, Motor Controls and Wiring
 - 13. Firestopping
 - 14. Tools and lubricants
 - 15. Dampers - General
 - 16. Damper Terminal Strips
 - 17. Automatic Control Valves - General
 - 18. Piping Systems - Common Requirements.

- 19. Pressure Testing - All Piping Systems.
 - 20. Equipment Installation - Common Requirements.
 - 21. Labeling and Identifying
 - 22. Painting and finishing.
 - 23. Pans and Drains over Electrical Equipment.
 - 24. Concrete Bases
 - 25. Erection of Metal Supports and Anchorage
 - 26. Welding procedure.
 - 27. Excavation and backfill.
- B. Pipe and pipe fitting materials are specified in piping system Sections.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and the Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this and other sections of Division 15.
- B. Excavation and backfill: Section 02200, EARTHWORK.
- C. Section 03300, CAST-IN PLACE CONCRETE.
- D. Section 05311, STEEL ROOF DECK.
- E. Section 05321, STEEL FLOOR DECK.
- F. Section 05500, METAL FABRICATIONS.
- G. Section 07250, FIRESTOPPING.
- H. Flashing wall and roof penetrations: Section 07600, FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
- I. Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
- J. Section 09900, PAINTING.
- K. Division 15, MECHANICAL
- L. Division 16, ELECTRICAL
- M. Other Sections where applicable.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualify welding processes and operators for structural steel according to AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Qualify welding processes and operators for piping according to ASME "Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code," Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 1. Comply with provisions of ASME B31 Series "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for the welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Products Criteria:
 - 1. All equipment furnished as part of the work shall comply with the latest editions of all applicable state and municipal "energy codes." Provide certification from the equipment suppliers for all energy-consuming equipment that the equipment fully complies with these codes. Equipment submissions will not be accepted for review unless accompanied by such certification in writing.
 - 2. All equipment and materials shall be new and without blemish or defect.
 - 3. New equipment and materials shall be Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (U.L.) labeled and/or listed where specifically called for, or where normally subject to such U.L. labeling and/or listing services.
 - 4. All equipment and materials shall be free of asbestos.
 - 5. Electrical equipment and materials shall be products which will meet with the acceptance of the agency inspecting the electrical work. Where such acceptance is contingent upon having the products examined, tested and certified by Underwriters or other recognized testing laboratory, the product shall be examined, tested and certified.. Where no specific indication as to the type or quality of materials or equipment is indicated, a first class standard article shall be furnished.
 - 6. It is the intent of these specifications that wherever a specific manufacturer of a product is specified or scheduled, and the specifications include other approved manufacturers or the terms "other approved" or "or approved equal" or "equal" are used, the submitted item must conform in all respects to the specified item. Consideration will not be given to claims that the submitted item meets the performance requirements with lesser construction (such as lesser heat exchange surface, smaller motor HP, etc.). Performance as delineated in schedules and in the specifications shall be interpreted as minimum performance. In many cases equipment is oversized to allow for pick-up loads which cannot be delineated under the minimum performance.

7. All equipment of one type (such as fans, pumps, coils, etc.), shall be the products of one Manufacturer.
 8. Substituted equipment or optional equipment where permitted and approved, must conform to space requirements. Any substituted equipment that cannot meet space requirements, whether approved or not, shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense. Any modifications of related systems as a result of substitutions shall be made at the Contractor's expense.
 9. Note that the approval of shop drawings, or other information submitted in accordance with the requirements hereinbefore specified, does not assure that the Engineer, Architect, or any other Owner's Representative, attests to the dimensional accuracy or dimensional suitability of the material or equipment involved or the ability of the material or equipment involved or the mechanical performance of equipment. Approval of Shop Drawings does not invalidate the plans and specifications if in conflict, unless a letter requesting such change is submitted and approved on the Engineer's letterhead.
 10. Substitutions of Mechanical Equipment for that shown on the schedules or designated by model number in the specifications will not be considered if the item is not a regular cataloged item shown in the current catalog of the manufacturer.
- D. Manufacturer's Recommendations: Where installation procedures of any part thereof are required to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer of the material being installed, printed copies of these recommendations shall be furnished prior to installation. Installation of the item will not be allowed to proceed until the recommendations are received. Failure to furnish these recommendations can be cause for rejection of the material.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end-caps. Maintain end-caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Protect stored pipes and tubes from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. When stored inside, do not exceed structural capacity of the floor.
- C. Protect flanges, fittings, and piping specialties from moisture and dirt.
- D. Protect stored plastic pipes from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.5 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. It shall be this trade's responsibility to store his materials in a manner that will maintain an orderly clean appearance. If stored on-site in open or unprotected areas, all equipment and material shall be kept off the ground by means of pallets or racks, and covered with tarpaulins.
- B. The inlet and discharge openings of all fan coil, VAV Box, Fan Powered Box, and other terminal units shall be kept covered until all local plastering, parging, etc. is completed, and the units are ready to run.
- C. Equipment and material if left in the open and damaged shall be repainted, or otherwise refurbished at the discretion of the owner. Equipment and material is subject to rejection and replacement if in the opinion of the engineer, or in the opinion of the manufacturer's engineering department, the equipment has deteriorated or been damaged to the extent that its immediate use is questionable, or that its normal life expectancy has been curtailed.
- D. During the erection protect all ductwork, duct lining, insulation, piping, and equipment from damage and dirt. Cap the open top of all ductwork and piping installed vertically.
- E. After completion of project, clean the exterior surface of all equipment included in this division of work including, but not limited to, concrete residue.
- F. Chemical Cleaning: All piping systems shall be thoroughly flushed out with the approved cleaning chemicals to remove pipe dope, slushing compounds, cutting oils, and other loose extraneous materials. This also includes any piping systems which are not listed as requiring water treatment. The cleaning chemicals shall be added by the mechanical trade. The chemical supplier shall verify that the chemicals are compatible with all the materials in the systems. The chemical supplier shall instruct as to the proper feed rates, shall check that the cleaning solution is actually in each system, shall instruct the contractor as to when to flush the system and shall check each system following flushing to insure all cleaning chemicals have been removed from each system. The mechanical trade shall block open all modulating valves, zone valves and all other system restrictions. If building pumps are not available, this trade shall provide portable pumps to circulate water for cleaning.
- G. A certificate of cleaning shall be provided by the cleaning chemical supplier to the Architect's representative.

1.6 FIRE AND SMOKE DETECTION

- A. Fire and smoke detection system will be provided and installed by the Electrical trade. The HVAC trade will provide suitable openings (as recommended by the Smoke Detection System Manufacturer) in sheet metal for sensing elements.
- B. This Trade will provide access doors to make all such detection heads accessible.

- C. This trade will provide bracing for smoke detection sampling tubes which exceed 48" in length.

1.7 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate mechanical equipment installation with other building components.
- B. Arrange for chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction to allow for mechanical installations.
- C. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- D. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installation of large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
- E. Coordinate connection of electrical services.
- F. Coordinate connection of mechanical systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies.
- G. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors where mechanical items requiring access are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 8 Section "Access Doors."
- H. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting where devices are applied to surfaces. Install identifying devices prior to installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRAL CONTROL PANELS

- A. Provide panel for alarm and start-stop functions.
- B. Provide panel for alarm functions.
- C. See drawings for details.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS IN FINISHED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Access doors as required for operation and maintenance of concealed equipment, valves, controls, etc will be provided by another trade.
- B. This Trade is responsible for access door location, size and its accessibility to the valves or equipment being served.

- C. Coordinate and prepare a location, size, and function schedule of access doors required and deliver to a representative of the installing Trade. Furnish and install distinctively colored ____ buttons in finished ceiling.
- D. Access doors shall be of ample size, minimum of 16" x 16".
- E. Construct doors and frames to comply with the requirements of the NFPA and Underwriters Laboratories Inc. for fire rating. Install UL label on each door in a non-exposed location unless otherwise required by the local authority having jurisdiction.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Provide dielectric fittings to isolate joined dissimilar materials to prevent galvanic action and stop corrosion. Fittings shall be of the non reducing type, which shall be suitable for the system fluid, pressure, and temperature and shall not restrict the flow.
- B. For factory fabricated equipment, manufacturer shall submit method of compliance or exceptions (if applicable) in writing as part of the shop drawings submission for review and approval by Engineer.
- C. It is the intent of this section that all system components (equipment connections, piping, etc.). Whether they are field installed or factory fabricated shall comply with paragraph A above.
- D. See paragraph, PIPING SPECIALTIES, for additional details.

2.4 PIPE AND PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Also refer to individual piping system specification Sections for pipe and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual piping system specification Sections in Division 15 for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for the chemical and thermal conditions of the piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3mm) maximum thickness, except where thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - 2. ASME B16.20 for grooved, ring-joint, steel flanges.
 - 3. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick, except where other thickness is indicated; and full-face or ring type, except where type is indicated.

- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, except where other material is indicated.
- D. Plastic Pipe Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, except where other type or material is indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metal: ASTM B 32.
- F. Fittings for copper tubing shall be Chase Sweat Fittings, Mueller Brass Co.'s "Streamline" solder fittings, or "Arco" wrought-copper fittings. "T"-Drill type fittings are not acceptable. All piping shall be installed in a workmanlike manner, according to the manufacturer's instruction. All joints shall be thoroughly cleaned before connecting. All solder for copper tubing shall have a melting point of not less than 460 degrees F., composed of 95% tin and 5% antimony, or brazing filler metal melting at or above 1000°F (silver or copper-phosphorus) in accordance with the following table. Regardless of pressures in table below, use 95-5 tin antimony for fresh water.

SAFE STRENGTH OF SOLDERED JOINTS

Pressure Ratings

Maximum Service Pressure, PSI

Water

Solder used in Joints	Service Tempera- tures Deg. F.	1/4 to 1 inch Incl.	1-1/4 to 2 inches Incl.	2-1/2 to 4 inches Incl.	6 inches
95-5 Tin- Antimony	100	500	400	300	260
	150	400	350	275	260
	200	300	250	200	250
	250	200	175	150	250
Brazing Filler Metal* at or above 1000°F	250	300	210	170	150
	350	270	190	155	150

* For service temperatures 200° and below, the rated internal pressure is equal to that of tube being joined.

- G. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
 - 1. BCuP Series: Copper-phosphorus alloys.
 - 2. BAg1: Silver alloy.
- H. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- I. Solvent Cements: Manufacturer's standard solvents complying with the following:
 - 1. Acrylonitrile-Butadiene-Styrene (ABS): ASTM D 2235.
 - 2. Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC): ASTM F 493.
 - 3. Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC): ASTM D 2564.
 - 4. PVC to ABS Transition: Made to requirements of ASTM D 3138, color other than orange.

- J. Plastic Pipe Seals: ASTM F 477, elastomeric gasket.
- K. Flanged, Ductile-Iron Pipe Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: AWWA C110, rubber gasket, carbon steel bolts and nuts.
- L. Couplings: Iron body sleeve assembly, fabricated to match outside diameters of plain-end pressure pipes.
 - 1. Sleeve: ASTM A 126, Class B, gray iron.
 - 2. Followers: ASTM A 47 (ASTM A 47M), Grade 32510 or ASTM A 536 ductile iron.
 - 3. Gaskets: Rubber.
 - 4. Bolts and Nuts: AWWA C111.
 - 5. Finish: Enamel paint.

2.6 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Provide escutcheons on all exposed piping passing through walls, floors, partitions and ceilings, except provide close fitting metal escutcheons on both sides of piping (whether exposed or not) through required fire rated walls, floors, partitions & ceilings.
- B. Escutcheons: Manufactured wall, ceiling, and floor plates; deep-pattern type where required to conceal protruding fittings and sleeves.
 - 1. Inside Diameter: Closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation.
 - 2. Outside Diameter: Completely cover opening.
 - 3. Cast Brass: One-piece, with set-screw.
- C. Dielectric Fittings: Assembly or fitting, non-reducing type, having insulating material isolating joined dissimilar metals to prevent galvanic action and stop corrosion.
 - 1. Description: Combination of copper alloy and ferrous; threaded, solder, plain, and weld neck end types and matching piping system materials.
 - 2. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature, does not restrict flow.
 - 3. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly for 250-psig (1725kPa) minimum working pressure at a 180 deg F (82 deg C) temperature.
 - 4. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly for 150- or 300-psig (1035kPa or 2070kPa) minimum pressure to suit system pressures.
 - 5. Dielectric-Flange Insulation Kits: Field-assembled, companion-flange assembly, full-face or ring type. Components include neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.

6. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling, having inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining, with threaded ends and 300-psig (2070kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C) temperature.
 7. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple, having inert and noncorrosive thermoplastic lining, with combination of plain, threaded, or grooved end types and 300-psig (2070kPa) working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C) temperature.
- D. Mechanical Sleeve Seals: Modular, watertight mechanical type. Components include interlocking synthetic rubber links shaped to continuously fill annular space between pipe and sleeve. Connecting bolts and pressure plates cause rubber sealing elements to expand when tightened.
- E. Sleeves: The following materials are for all wall, floor, slab, and roof penetrations:
- F. Sleeve Materials

<u>Type Designation</u>	<u>Sleeve Material</u>
1	#18 gauge, galvanized steel.
2	Standard weight galvanized steel pipe.
3	Standard weight galvanized steel pipe with a continuously welded water stop of 1/4" steel plate extending from outside of sleeve a minimum of 2" all around - similar to F & S Mfg. Corp. Fig. 204.
4	Cast iron pipe sleeve with center flange - similar to James B. Clow & Sons No. F-1430 and F-1435.
5	Standard weight galvanized steel pipe with flashing clamp device welded to pipe sleeve or watertight sleeves - similar to Zurn 195-10 with oakum caulking as required.
6	Metal deck and wall sleeves similar to Adjust-To-Crete Mfg. Co.

- G. Sleeve Sizes
1. Floors and required fire rated partitions - 1/2" maximum clearance between outside of pipe (or insulation on insulated pipes) and inside of sleeve.
 2. Partitions not fire rated - 1-1/2" maximum clearance between outside of pipe (or insulation on insulated pipes) and inside of sleeve.

H. Sleeve Lengths

<u>Location</u>	<u>Sleeve Length</u>
Floors	Equal to depth of floor construction including finish. In waterproof floor construction sleeves to extend minimum of 2" above finished floor level.
Roofs	Equal to depth of roof construction including insulation.
Walls & Partitions	Equal to depth of construction and terminated flush with surfaces.

I. Sleeve Caulking & Packing.

<u>Type Designation</u>	<u>Caulking & Packing Requirements</u>
A	Space between pipe and sleeve packed with oakum or hemp and caulked watertight.
B	Space between pipe or pipe covering and sleeve shall be caulked with an incombustible, permanently plastic, waterproof non-staining compound leaving a finished smooth appearance or pack with mineral wool or other equally approved fire resistive material to within ½" of both wall faces and provide caulking compound as per above.

2.7 IDENTIFYING DEVICES AND LABELS

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard products of categories and types required for each application as referenced in other Division 15 Sections. Where more than one type is specified for listed application, selection is Installer's option, but provide single selection for each product category.
- B. Equipment Nameplates: Metal nameplate with operational data engraved or stamped, permanently fastened to equipment.
 - 1. Data: Manufacturer, product name, model number, serial number, capacity, operating and power characteristics, labels of tested compliances, and similar essential data.
 - 2. Location: An accessible and visible location.
- C. Stencils: Standard stencils, prepared for required applications with letter sizes conforming to recommendations of ASME A13.1 for piping and similar applications, but not less than 1-1/4-inch (30mm) -high letters for ductwork and not less than 3/4-inch (19mm) -high letters for access door signs and similar operational instructions.

1. Material: Fiberboard.
 2. Stencil Paint: Standard exterior type stenciling enamel; black, except as otherwise indicated; either brushing grade or pressurized spray-can form and grade.
 3. Identification Paint: Standard identification enamel of colors indicated or, if not otherwise indicated for piping systems, comply with ASME A13.1 for colors.
- D. Pressure-Sensitive Pipe Markers: Manufacturer's standard preprinted, permanent adhesive, color-coded, pressure-sensitive vinyl pipe markers, conforming to ASME A13.1.
- E. Plastic Duct Markers: Manufacturer's standard laminated plastic, color coded duct markers. Conform to following color code:
1. Green: Cold air.
 2. Yellow: Hot air.
 3. Yellow/Green: Supply air.
 4. Blue: Exhaust, outside, return, and mixed air.
 5. For hazardous exhausts, use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
 6. Nomenclature: Include following:
- F. Engraved Plastic-Laminate Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic-resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white (letter color) melamine subcore, except when other colors are indicated.
1. Fabricate in sizes required for message.
 2. Engraved with engraver's standard letter style, of sizes and with wording to match equipment identification.
 3. Punch for mechanical fastening.
 4. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm), except as otherwise indicated.
 5. Fasteners: Self-tapping stainless-steel screws or contact-type permanent adhesive.
- G. Plastic Equipment Markers: Laminated-plastic, color-coded equipment markers. Conform to following color code:
1. Green: Cooling equipment and components.
 2. Yellow: Heating equipment and components.
 3. Yellow/Green: Combination cooling and heating equipment and components.
 4. Brown: Energy reclamation equipment and components.
 5. Blue: Equipment and components that do not meet any of the above criteria.
 6. For hazardous equipment, use colors and designs recommended by ASME A13.1.
 7. Nomenclature: Include following, matching terminology on schedules as closely as possible.

- 8. Size: Approximately 2-1/2 by 4 inches (65 by 100 mm) for control devices, dampers, and valves; and 4-1/2 by 6 inches (115 by 150 mm) for equipment.
- H. Lettering and Graphics: Coordinate names, abbreviations, and other designations used in mechanical identification, with corresponding designations indicated. Use numbers, lettering, and wording indicated for proper identification and operation/maintenance of mechanical systems and equipment.
 - 1. Multiple Systems: Where multiple systems of same generic name are indicated, provide identification that indicates individual system number as well as service such as "Boiler No. 3," "Air Supply No. 1H," or "Standpipe F12."

2.8 GROUT

- A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.50MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory-packaged.

2.9 DRIVE GUARDS

- A. For all machinery and equipment provide guards for belts, chains, couplings, pulleys, sheaves, shafts, gears and other moving parts regardless of height above the floor.
- B. Materials: Sheet steel, cast iron, expanded metal or heavy gauge wire mesh rigidly secured so as to be removable without disassembling pipe, duct, or electrical connections to equipment.
- C. Access for Speed Measurement: One inch diameter hole at each shaft center.

2.10 ELECTRICAL MOTORS, MOTOR CONTROLS, AND WIRING

- A. For all work required in conjunction with electrical motors, motor controls, and wiring, see complete delineation on the drawings under the title of "List of Electric Motors and Motor Controls" and the notes pertaining to same. Note that all motors, starters & motor control centers are purchased by the HVAC Trade. Motors for equipment shall be provided by the Equipment Manufacturer. All equipment shall have U.L. label where obtainable.
- B. See "Automatic Controls" for separation of work for control wiring between Electrical and HVAC trades.

2.11 FIRE-STOPPING

- A. Refer to Section, FIRESTOPPING.

- B. HVAC trade is responsible for firestopping of HVAC work.
- C. Firestopping system must be U.L. approved.
- D. All spaces between ducts or pipes and their respective sleeves shall be packed full depth with mineral wool, or other equally approved fire resistant material, and compressed firmly in place. Fiberglass shall not be used. Sleeve clearances shall not exceed ½ inch between pipes (or ducts) and sleeves. Use individual sleeves for each pipe or duct. Use escutcheons on both sides of sleeves. This includes spaces between ducts on pipes and their respective sleeves or openings at fan rooms (whether walls are fire rated or not).

2.12 TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

- A. Furnish special tools not readily available commercially, that are required for disassembly or adjustment of equipment and machinery furnished.
- B. Lubricants: A minimum of one quart of oil, and one pound of grease, of equipment manufacturer's recommended grade and type, in unopened containers and properly identified as to use for each different application.

2.13 DAMPERS - GENERAL

- A. All electric and/or pneumatic operated dampers which have a fire and/or smoke rating shall be furnished by the mechanical contractor. All other electric and/or pneumatic operated dampers shall be furnished by the Controls (ATC/BMS) Contractor. Fusible link dampers for fire protection, manual dampers for balancing and/or shut-off as well as dampers which are specified as part of factory built air handling units or terminal units shall be furnished by the mechanical contractor. All dampers shall be installed by the mechanical contractor.
- B. Type "B" or "C" mountings shall be used for all dampers. Type "A" mountings are not permitted. All dampers are to be selected and installed so that the frames, stops, etc. are located outside of the airstream so as to provide a nominal 100% free area damper.
- C. The mechanical contractor shall furnish damper actuators for all dampers that he furnishes. Where practical, actuators shall be factory mounted by the damper manufacturer. The actuators shall be located outside of the airstream. The mechanical contractor shall provide a terminal strip alongside the damper for all dampers he furnishes.
- D. The controls contractor shall furnish damper actuators for all dampers that he furnishes. Where practical, actuators shall be factory mounted by the damper manufacturer. The actuators shall be located outside of the airstream. The controls contractor shall provide a terminal strip along side the damper for all dampers he furnishes.

- E. Wiring for motor operated dampers that have a fire and/or smoke rating shall be provided by the mechanical trade from the damper actuator and any associated end switches and sensors to a terminal strip that is wall mounted along side the damper.
- F. The controls contractor shall provide wiring as follows:
1. Between the central control system **[BMS]** and the terminal strip for all dampers monitored and/or controlled by the **[BMS][ATC]** whether or not the controls contractor has furnished the damper.
 2. Between the terminal strip for all dampers and their associated thermostats, pressure switches, etc. whether or not the control contractor has furnished the damper.
- G. Dampers incorporating multiple sections shall be controlled in unison. Where more than one (1) actuator serves a damper, then the actuators shall be driven in unison and the control wiring shall be provided accordingly.
- H. Dampers incorporating multiple sections shall be designed in such a way that the actuators are easily accessible. Under no circumstances shall it be necessary to remove damper sections or structural or other fixtures to facilitate removal of damper motors. Provide access doors wherever necessary to meet this requirement.
- I. The following table summarizes the trade responsibilities with respect to automatic dampers:

<i>Description</i>	<i>Non-Fire or Smoke Rated Dampers</i>	<i>Fire and/or Smoke Rated Dampers not Controlled by Fire Alarm System</i>	<i>Fire and/or Smoke Rated Dampers Controlled by Fire Alarm System</i>
Furnish Damper	Controls Contractor	Mechanical Trade	Mechanical Trade
Install Damper	Mechanical Trade	Mechanical Trade	Mechanical Trade
Furnish Actuator(s)	Controls Contractor	Mechanical Trade	Mechanical Trade
Install Actuator(s)	Mechanical Trade	Mechanical Trade	Mechanical Trade
Install and furnish terminal strip complete with all relays, wiring, etc.	Controls Contractor	Mechanical Trade	Mechanical Trade
Provide wiring between actuator, end switches, heat sensors, and terminal strip	Controls Contractor	Mechanical Trade	Mechanical Trade

<i>Description</i>	<i>Non-Fire or Smoke Rated Dampers</i>	<i>Fire and/or Smoke Rated Dampers not Controlled by Fire Alarm System</i>	<i>Fire and/or Smoke Rated Dampers Controlled by Fire Alarm System</i>
Provide wiring from central control system (BMS) to damper terminal strip.	Controls Contractor	Controls Contractor	Controls Contractor
Provide wiring from FAS to damper terminal strip.	Controls Contractor	Controls Contractor	Electrical Trade
Furnish 120V main power to electrical actuators (see notes below)	Controls Contractor	Controls Contractor	Electrical Trade
Provide wiring from damper terminal strip to terminal strips for interlocked motors, etc.	Controls Contractor	Controls Contractor	Controls Contractor
Provide wiring from damper terminal strip directly to thermostats, etc.	Controls Contractor	Controls Contractor	Controls Contractor

NOTES

1. Controls contractor shall have overall responsibility for the complete coordination of the work and the operation of the damper/actuator installation.
2. In mechanical rooms 120V power circuits will be provided from an emergency distribution board. These circuits will be terminated in a junction box located in each associated mechanical room and shall be used by the controls contractor to supply local control panels and critical equipment.

These circuits will also be used by the electrical trade to supply dampers, etc. , requiring control by the Fire Alarm System. Final connection from the terminal strips to the actuators, end switches and sensors shall be by the mechanical trade.
3. For dampers not requiring control by the fire alarm system and for other non-critical equipment, obtain power from either the emergency circuits as detailed above or from the motor starter terminal trip. All wiring shall be by the controls contractor.

2.14 DAMPER TERMINAL STRIPS

- A. Terminal strip(s) shall be provided along side all motorized dampers. If the damper has a smoke and/or fire rating, the terminal strip shall be provided by the Mechanical Trade. If the damper does not have a fire and/or smoke rating then the terminal strip shall be provided by the controls contractor.
- B. Where dampers are furnished by the controls contractor then he shall provide relays, interconnect wiring and other components to meet the requirements detailed below. The terminal strip(s), relays, etc. shall be housed in wall mounted enclosures which meet the specifications detailed for local starter enclosures.
- C. The terminal strip shall be wired such that the Central Control System (ATC/BMS) can undertake the following control and monitoring functions:
 - 1. Open Control - A pair of terminals shall be wired such that when a controls (ATC/BMS) relay closes a contact pair across these terminals the damper is driven open. If the damper is two position with an actuator which drives closed and springs open on loss of power then these terminals shall not be used. This signal from the Central Control System (ATC/BMS) shall be overridden by a close signal from the Fire Alarm System (FAS) Where dampers are interlocked to motors then the wiring shall be to these terminals.
 - 2. Close Control - A pair of terminals shall be wired such that when a controls (ATC/BMS) relay closes a contact pair across these terminals the damper is driven closed. If the damper is two position with an actuator which drives open and springs closed on loss of power then these terminals shall not be used. This signal from the Central Control System (ATC/BMS) shall be overridden by an open signal from the FAS.
 - 3. Motor Interlock - A pair of terminals shall be wired to an end switch on the actuator such that the contacts between the terminals shall be closed when the damper is fully open and open when the damper is not fully open. This pair of terminals shall be used for interlocking a damper with a motor such that the motor will not be able to start if the damper is not fully open.
- D. Purge Dampers

For each damper which is to be monitored and/or controlled by the Fire Alarm System (FAS), the damper actuator, heat sensor and end switches shall each be wired by the mechanical trade to a terminal strip(s) mounted adjacent to the damper so that the FAS can undertake the following control and monitoring functions:

- 1. FAS "Open/Close" Control - The damper will be driven open in response to closure of an FAS relay contact and will spring closed in response to opening of this relay contact.

2. FAS "Override Open" Control (Smoke Purge Dampers Only) - The damper will be re-opened, subsequent to a heat sensor initiated closure, in response to closure of a second FAS relay contact (or reclosure of the first contact for single sensor dampers).
 3. FAS "Open/Closed" Status Monitoring Control (Smoke Purge Dampers Only) - End Switch closures will cause activation of FAS "opened" and "closed" relays in response to operation of end switches at both ends of travel.
 4. FAS "Override of ATC (BMS)" Control - For each damper requiring both FAS and ATC (BMS) control, the Controls Contractor shall mount an interface relay within 30 circuiting feet of the damper terminal strip, so wired as to permit FAS override of the ATC (BMS) control.
- E. The controls contractor's damper manufacturer shall provide all necessary wiring diagrams to the FAS contractors.
- F. Dampers furnished by the mechanical trade shall have similar terminal strips to which the controls contractor shall wire where necessary.
- G. Comply with code requirements. Segregate high and low voltage wiring & circuits and segregate the FAS and controls (ATC/BMS) terminals.

2.15 AUTOMATIC CONTROL VALVES - GENERAL

- A. All automatic control valves controlled by the central control system (ATC/BMS) shall be furnished by the controls contractor unless noted otherwise in these documents.
- B. All automatic control valves shall be installed by the mechanical trade.
- C. The controls contractor shall provide wiring as follows:
1. All line voltage power for electric valve actuators shall be wired by the controls contractor from the nearest available power panel. Coordinate with electrical trade.
 2. All wiring between the central control system (ATC/BMS) and the valve actuator shall be wired by the controls contractor.
 3. All wiring between the valve actuator and their associated thermostats, pressure switches, control devices, etc. shall be wired by the controls contractor.
- D. All wiring shall comply with code requirements. Segregate high and low voltage wiring & circuits and segregate the FAS and controls (ATC/BMS) terminals.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS--COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Install piping as described herein, except where system Sections specify otherwise. Individual piping system specification Sections in Division 15 specify piping installation requirements unique to the piping system.
- B. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawings (plans, schematics, and diagrams) indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated, except where deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- C. Coordinate location of piping, sleeves, inserts, hangers, ductwork and equipment. Locate piping, sleeves, inserts, hangers, ductwork and equipment clear of windows, doors, openings, light outlets, and other services and utilities. Follow manufacturer's published recommendations for installation methods not otherwise specified.
- D. Install gages, thermometers, valves and other devices with due regard for ease in reading or operating and maintaining said devices. Locate and position thermometers and gages to be easily read by operator or staff standing on floor or walkway provided. Servicing shall not require dismantling adjacent equipment or pipe work.
- E. Furnish and install all necessary float devices, aquastats, thermostats, pressure sensors, etc. required for alarm indication as indicated on the HVAC Motor Controls Specifications sheet.
- F. Install piping at required slope.
- G. Install components having pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- H. Install piping in concealed interior and exterior locations, except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install exposed interior and exterior piping at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited, except where indicated.
- K. Install piping tight to slabs, beams, joists, columns, walls, and other building elements. Allow sufficient space above removable ceiling panels to allow for ceiling panel removal.
- L. Install piping to allow application of insulation plus 1-inch (25mm) clearance around insulation.

- M. Locate groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit valve servicing.
- N. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- O. Install couplings according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- P. Install pipe escutcheons for pipe penetrations of concrete and masonry walls, wall board partitions, and suspended ceilings according to the following:
 - 1. Chrome-Plated Piping: Cast-brass, one-piece, with set-screw, and polished chrome-plated finish. Use split-casting escutcheons, where required, for existing piping.
 - 2. Uninsulated Piping Wall Escutcheons: Cast-brass or stamped-steel, with set-screw.
 - 3. Uninsulated Piping Floor Plates in Utility Areas: Cast-iron floor plates.
 - 4. Insulated Piping: Cast-brass or stamped-steel, with concealed hinge, spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
 - 5. Piping in Utility Areas: Cast-brass or stamped-steel, with set-screw or spring clips.
- Q. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, concrete floor and roof slabs, and where indicated.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Build sleeves into new walls and slabs as work progresses.

R. Sleeve Application

Sleeve Type Thru Required Fire Rated Construction	Sleeve Type Thru Non-Fire Rated Con- struction	Location	Sleeve Caulking & Packing Type Designation
5	5	Membrane water- proof floor, roof and wall con- struction	B Note: Another trade will carry membrane up around sleeve and down inside sleeve
5	5	Non membrane waterproof floor, roof and wall con- struction where flashing is required	A or B
2	1,2	Interior walls, partitions and floors	B

3 or 4	3 or 4	Exterior walls	A
2	6	Metal deck floors	B
1	1	Precast concrete floor with poured concrete topping. Note: Sleeves to have flat flanges and/or guides which rest on top of pre-cast slab	B

- S. Fire Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestopping sealant material. Firestopping materials are specified in Division 7 Section "Firestopping."
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections for roughing-in requirements.
- V. Piping Joint Construction: Join pipe and fittings as follows and as specifically required in individual piping system Sections.
1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
 3. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to AWS "Soldering Manual," Chapter 22 "The Soldering of Pipe and Tube."
 4. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS "Brazing Manual" in the "Pipe and Tube" chapter.
 5. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 6. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12 "Recommended Practices and Procedures for Welding Low Carbon Steel Pipe" using qualified processes and welding operators according to the "Quality Assurance" Article.
 7. Flanged Joints: Align flange surfaces parallel. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Assemble joints by sequencing bolt tightening to make initial contact of flanges and gaskets as flat and parallel as possible. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Tighten bolts gradually and uniformly using torque wrench.

8. Plastic Pipe and Fitting Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join pipe and fittings according to the following standards:
 9. Plastic Pipe and Fitting Heat-Fusion Joints: Prepare pipe and fittings and join with heat-fusion equipment according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- W. Piping Connections: Except as otherwise indicated, make piping connections as specified below.
1. Install unions in piping 2 inches (50 mm) and smaller adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment having a 2-inch (50mm) or smaller threaded pipe connection.
 2. Install flanges in piping 2-1/2 inches (65 mm) and larger adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment having flanged pipe connection.
 3. Wet Piping Systems (Water and Steam): Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
- X. All welding elbows shall be long radius elbows as manufactured by Tube Turn, ANSI B16.9.
- Y. Where welding is used, fittings shall be Tube Turn, Bonney Forge, Taylor Forge, Ladish, or other approved manufacture, ANSI B-16.9. Welding end fittings shall have the same bursting pressure as pipe of the same size and schedule. Tee fittings shall be one piece except that weldolets are permitted where branches are at least one pipe size less than the main.
- Z. All cast iron fittings shall be Stockham, Grinnell, or other approved.

3.2 PRESSURE TESTING - ALL PIPING SYSTEMS

- A. Water shall not be introduced into piping systems for testing without water treatment. All piping systems shall be tested to a hydrostatic pressure at least 1-1/2 times the maximum operating pressure (but not less than 40 lbs. per sq. in.) for a sufficiently long time, but not less than 4 hours, to detect all leaks and defects. Where necessary, piping shall be tested in sections to permit the progress of the job.
- B. Hydrostatic Testing Corrosion Inhibitor
1. If sections of system must be hydrostatically tested prior to cleanout, appropriate inhibitor shall be added to the test water at sufficient level to totally passivate metal and provide protective film on pipe surfaces to prevent corrosion prior to cleanout and treatment.

2. Mechanical Contractor shall be responsible to coordinate this treatment with the water treatment contractor. At no time shall the Mechanical Contractor add water to a system without treatment.

3.3 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION--COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to provide the maximum possible headroom where mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment according to approved submittal data. Portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Refer conflicts to the Architect.
- C. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, except where otherwise indicated.
- D. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
- E. Install equipment giving right-of-way to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Piping Systems: Install pipe markers on each system. Include arrows showing normal direction of flow.
 1. Stenciled Markers: Complying with ASME A13.1.
 2. Plastic markers, with application systems. Install on pipe insulation segment where required for hot noninsulated pipes.
 3. On exposed piping apply bands on 30 foot centers of straight runs, at valve locations, at points where piping enters and leaves a partition, wall, floor or ceiling.
 4. On concealed piping installed above removable ceiling construction apply bands in manner described for exposed piping.
 5. On concealed piping installed above non-removable ceiling construction, or in pipe shafts, apply bands at valve or other devices that are made accessible by means of access doors or panels.
 6. Apply bands at exit and entrance points to each vessel, tank or piece of equipment.

7. Band widths shall be 8" for pipes up to 10 inch diameter and 16" wide for larger diameter piping. Letter heights stating service shall be preprinted on band 3/4" high for 8 inch bands and 1-1/2" high for 16 inch bands.
 8. For insulated pipes apply bands after insulation and painting work has been completed.
 9. Colors shall conform to ASME Standard A13.1. Provide 24 additional bands of each type for future use by Owner's personnel.
 10. Follow manufacturer's instructions for application procedures using non-combustible materials and contact adhesives.
- B. Equipment: Install engraved plastic laminate sign or equipment marker on or near each major item of mechanical equipment.
1. Lettering Size: Minimum 1/4-inch (6mm) -high lettering for name of unit where viewing distance is less than 2 feet (0.6 m), 1/2-inch (13mm) -high for distances up to 6 feet (1.8 m), and proportionately larger lettering for greater distances. Provide secondary lettering 2/3 to 3/4 of size of principal lettering.
 2. Text of Signs: Provide text to distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to name of identified unit.
- C. Duct Systems: Identify air supply, return, exhaust, intake, and relief ducts with duct markers; or provide stenciled signs and arrows, showing duct system service and direction of flow.
1. Location: In each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system, locate signs near points where ducts enter into space and at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m).
- D. Adjusting: Relocate identifying devices which become visually blocked by work of this Division or other Divisions.
- E. Valves
1. Attach a 2" round brass tag stamped with designating numbers 1" high filled in with black enamel to each valve, except those on fixtures.
 2. Securely fasten valve tag to valve spindle or handle with a brass chain.
 3. Provide approved ceiling tile markers in areas where removable ceilings occur to indicate location of valves or other devices.

F. Motor Control Identification

1. Mount black lamacoid nameplates on each motor controller identifying primary control function and individual position indication such as Pump No. 1, etc. Nameplates shall be cut through to white background and have beveled edges. Mount with chromium plated acorn head screws.

G. Schedules and Charts

1. Furnish to Owner's Representative three (3) complete framed plastic laminated valve tag schedules. Schedule shall indicate tag number, valve location by floor and nearest column number, valve size and service controlled.

3.5 PAINTING AND FINISHING

- A. Refer to Division 9 Section "Painting" for field painting requirements.
- B. Damage and Touch Up: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.6 PANS AND DRAINS OVER ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT:

- A. This contractor shall examine the drawings and in cooperation with the Electrical Trade confirm the final location of all electrical equipment to be installed in the vicinity of piping. Plan and arrange all overhead piping no closer than four feet from a vertical line above electrical equipment, including but not limited to, elevator machine room equipment, main switchgear equipment, motor control centers, starter, electric motors, switchboards, panelboards, or similar equipment. Piping is not permitted in Electric Equipment, Transformer, Switch Gear, Elevator Equipment, Telephone Gear Rooms.
- B. Where the installation of piping does not comply with the requirements of the foregoing paragraph, where feasible the piping shall be relocated.
- C. Furnish gutters as follows:
 1. Provide and erect a gutter of 16 ounce cold rolled copper or 18 gauge galvanized steel, under every pipe which is within 4'-0" from a vertical line to any motor, electrical controllers, switchboards, panelboards, or the like.
 2. Each gutter shall be reinforced, rimmed, soldered and made watertight, properly suspended and carefully pitched to a convenient point for draining. Provide a 3/4" drain, with valve as directed, to nearest floor drain or slop sink, as approved.

3. In lieu of such separate gutters, a continuous protecting drain pan of similar construction adequately supported and braced, properly rimmed, pitched and drained to a floor drain or suitable waste, may be provided over any such electrical equipment, and extending 3'-0" in all directions beyond the electrical equipment, over which such piping has to run.

3.7 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete equipment bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger than supported unit in both directions. Follow supported equipment manufacturer's setting templates for anchor bolt and tie locations. Refer to concrete strength and reinforcement as specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.8 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

3.9 GROUTING

- A. Install nonmetallic nonshrink grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors. Mix grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms for placement of grout, as required.
- D. Avoid air entrapment when placing grout.
- E. Place grout to completely fill equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases to provide a smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.

3.10 WELDING PROCEDURE

- A. Pipe welding shall comply with the provisions of the latest revision of ANSI/ASME B31.9 Building Services Piping, or such state or local requirements as may supersede codes mentioned above.

- B. Pipe welding for MPS/HPS (15 psig and above) shall be in accordance with ASME B31.1 Power Piping Code, or such state or local requirements as may supersede codes mentioned above.
- C. Before any new pipe welding is performed, submit a copy of welding Procedure Specifications together with proof of its qualification as outlined and required by the most recent issue of the code having jurisdiction.
- D. Before any operator shall perform any pipe welding, submit the operator's Qualification Record in conformance with provisions of the code having jurisdiction, showing that the operator was tested under the proven Procedure Specification submitted.
- E. Repair or replace any work not in accordance with these specifications.

3.11 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL

- A. All excavation and backfill for HVAC work will be done by the HVAC Trade.
- B. The work includes removal of surface improvements, excavating including hand excavation, sheeting, shoring, bracing, maintaining and protecting existing structures, utilities, pavements, shrubbery; dewatering by pumping of all water from excavation, bedding, backfilling, and compacting, restoration of surface improvements and cleaning up of the site.
- C. Instructions:
 - 1. Trenches shall be excavated so that pipe can be laid to the alignment and depth indicated on the drawings, and shall be excavated only so far in advance of pipe laying as approved.
 - 2. Width of trenches shall be held to a minimum consistent with the type of material encountered and the size of piping being laid, but the width at the top of the pipe shall not be more than 2 feet plus outside diameter of pipe. Excavation for manholes and other accessories shall have 12 inch minimum and a 24 inch maximum clearance on all sides.
 - 3. Before fill or backfilling commences, all trash, debris, and other foreign material shall be removed from trenches to be backfilled by this Trade. Fill material shall be free from timber, rocks 3" or larger, organic material, frozen material, and other unsuitable material as determined by the Architect. Filling shall not be done in freezing weather, unless specifically approved. No filling shall be done when material already in place is frozen.
 - 4. In filling around pipe, deposit backfill material in successive horizontal layers not exceeding 6" in thickness before compaction. Compact each layer thoroughly by means of approved mechanical tampers. Tech special care to obtain compaction under pipe haunches. Deposit backfill adjacent to pipes on both sides to approximately same elevation at the same time.

Continue this method of filling and compacting until backfill is at least 18" above top of pipe.

5. Backfilling for the remainder of pipe trenches to subgrades of paved or landscaped areas shall be done by mechanical tamping and rolling equipment, except that the use of such equipment is prohibited when said use may result in damage to pipelines or structures.
6. All copper tubing laid in ground shall be backfilled around and one (1) foot over with good clean earth, free from stone or cinders, carefully tamped under and around the tubing for its full length. The remainder of the backfill shall be free from stones larger than (3) inches in diameter and shall be satisfactorily compacted by puddling and tamping.
7. Backfill shall be moistened as necessary for proper compaction. Water settling of fill will not be permitted.
8. Complete backfilling of pipe trenches as soon as possible after the pipe is laid and tested.
9. Existing pavements, roadways, walkways, curbs and landscaped areas disturbed during the progress of the excavation and backfill work shall be restored to their original condition at no additional cost to the Owner.
10. Backfill shall be compacted to a minimum of 90% of modified AASHO maximum density as defined by ASTM D-1557. Any layer of fill, or portion thereof, which is not compacted to the required density shall be recompacted until the specified density is achieved, or the layer shall be removed.

END OF SECTION 15050

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 15051 - BASIC PLUMBING
MATERIALS AND METHODS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. This section is a part of all plumbing sections.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Work Included:
 - 1. The system shall include but not limited to the following: All plumbing fixtures and accessories, piping, fittings, valves, strainers, pumps, water distribution, gas distribution, water heaters, storm, sanitary, vents, interceptors, gages, thermometers, equipment and piping identification.
- B. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 5. Sleeves.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. Mechanical demolition.
 - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 10. Painting and finishing.
 - 11. Concrete bases.
 - 12. Supports and anchorages.

C. Related Work include the following:

1. Division 2, Section 02200, EARTHWORK.
2. Division 3, Section 03300, CAST-IN PLACE CONCRETE.
3. Division 5, Section 05500, METAL FABRICATIONS.
4. Division 7, Section 07841, FIRESTOPPING.
5. Division 7, Section 07920, SEALANTS AND CAULKING.
6. Division 9, Section 09900, PAINTING.
7. Division 16, ELECTRICAL.
8. Other Sections where applicable.

1.3 CODES, PERMITS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. All work shall meet or exceed the latest requirements of all national, state, county, municipal and other authorities exercising jurisdiction over construction work at the project.
- B. All required permits, approval and inspection certificates shall be obtained, paid for, and made available at the completion of the work, by the Plumbing Contractor.
- C. Installation procedures, methods, and conditions shall comply with the latest requirements of The Federal Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA).
- D. Prepare and submit to the building owner a set of "as-built" record drawings for approval, in a form acceptable to the building owner.
- E. The Contractor shall be responsible for the installation and filing until the installation has been approved by the authorities having such jurisdiction.
- F. Prepare and submit to the Engineer a set of "as-built" record drawings for approval, in a form acceptable to the Engineer.

1.4 GUARANTEES AND CERTIFICATIONS

- A. All work shall be guaranteed to be free from leaks and defects. Any defective materials or workmanship, as well as damage to the work of all trades resulting from same, shall be replaced or repaired as directed for the duration of stipulated guaranteed periods.
- B. The duration of guarantee periods following the date of beneficial use of the system shall be one year. Beneficial use is defined as operation of the system to obtain its intended use.

- C. The date of acceptance shall be the date of the final payment for the work or the date of a formal notice of acceptance, whichever is earlier.
- D. Non-durable replaceable items, such as water filter media, do not require replacement after the date of acceptance. If received in writing, requests to have earlier acceptance dates established for these items will be honored.
- E. Certification shall be submitted attesting to the fact that specified performance criteria are met by all items of plumbing equipment.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. Piping: Pipe, fittings, flanges, valves, controls, hangers, drains, insulation, and items customarily required in connection with the transfer of fluids.
- G. By Other Trades: By persons or parties responsible for work at the project other than the party or parties who have been duly awarded the contract for the work of this Trade. In the event that this document is used to acquire work as part of a general construction contract the words "by other trades" shall mean by persons or parties who are not anticipated to be the sub-contractor for this trade working together with the general contractor. In this context the words "by other trades" shall not be interpreted to mean not included in the overall contract.
- H. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
 - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 - 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
 - 4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

I. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. In accordance with Division 1, Section 01330, SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES, furnish the following:

B. Prior to purchasing any equipment or materials, a list of their manufacturers shall be submitted for approval.

C. Prior to assembling or installing the work, the following shall be submitted for approval:

1. Scale drawings indicating insert and sleeve locations if required by Architect or Structural Engineer.
2. Scale drawings showing all piping and duct runs with sizes, elevations and appropriate indication of coordination with other trades. This submission to us shall consist of one (1) original and (6) six prints.
3. Catalog/internet information, factory assembly drawings and field installation drawings as required for a complete explanation and description of all items of equipment.

D. Documents will not be accepted for review unless:

1. They are submitted as a package where they pertain to related items.
2. They are properly marked with service or function, project name, where they consist of catalog sheets displaying other items which are not applicable.
3. They indicate the project name and address along with the Contractor's name, address and phone number.
4. They are properly marked with external connection identification as related to the project where they consist of standard factory assembly or field installation drawings.

E. Shop Drawing Review

1. The purpose of the review of shop drawings is to maintain integrity of the design. Unless the contractor clearly points out changes, substitutions, deletions or any other differences between the submission and the Contract Documents in writing on the Contractor's letterhead, approval by the Engineer or Architect does not constitute acceptance. It is not to be assumed that the engineer has read the text nor reviewed the technical data of a manufactured item and its components except where the Vendor has pointed out differences between his product and the specified model.

2. It is the responsibility of the contractor to confirm all dimensions, quantities, and the coordination of materials and products supplied by him with other trades. Approval of shop drawings containing errors does not relieve the contractor from making corrections at his expense.
3. Substitutions of equipment, systems, materials, must be in accordance with the substitutions section of these specifications and coordinated by the Contractor with his own or other trades which may be involved with the item, such as, but not limited to, equipment substitutions which change electrical requirements, or hanging or support weights or dimensions.
4. Any extra charges or credits which may be generated by other trades due to substitutions will not be accepted unless the Contractor has an agreement in writing with the Owner.
5. Substitutions of equipment, systems, etc. requiring approval of local authorities must comply with such regulations and be filed at the expense of the Contractor (should filing be necessary). Substitutions are subject to approval or disapproval by the Engineer. The Contractor in offering substitutions shall hold the Owner and Engineer harmless if the substituted item is an infringement of patent held by the specified item.
6. Shop drawings shall show all data required by NFPA.

F. Explanation of Shop Drawing Stamp

1. Reviewed indicates that we have not found any reason why this item should not be acceptable within the intent of the documents.
2. Make Corrections Noted indicates that we have found questionable components which if corrected or otherwise explained make the product acceptable.
3. Revise and Resubmit indicates that this item should be resubmitted for approval before further processing.
 - (a) If both "Reviewed As Noted" and "Revive and Resubmit" are checked, the resubmittal is for record purposes only.
4. No shop drawing stamp or note shall constitute an order to fabricate or ship. Such notification can only be performed by the Project Manager for Construction, the Contractor scheduling his own work, or the Owner.

G. Maintenance Data and Operating Instructions:

1. Maintenance and operating manuals in accordance with Division 1, Section 01400, QUALITY REQUIREMENTS, Paragraph, INSTRUCTIONS, for systems and equipment.

2. After all final tests and adjustments have been completed, fully instruct the proper Owner's Representative in all details of operation for equipment installed. Supply qualified personnel to operate equipment for sufficient length of time to assure that Owner's Representative is properly qualified to take over operation and maintenance procedures. Supply qualified personnel to operate equipment for sufficient length of time as required to meet all governing authorities in operation and performance tests.
3. Furnish required number of manuals, in bound form containing data covering capacities, maintenance of operation of all equipment and apparatus. Operating instruction shall cover all phases of control and include the following:
 - (a) Performance Curves: For pumps, and similar equipment at the operating conditions.
 - (b) Lubrication Schedule: Indicating type and frequency of lubrication required.
 - (c) List of Spares: Recommended for normal service requirements.
 - (d) Parts List: Identifying the various parts of the equipment for repair and replacement purposes.
 - (e) Instruction Books may be standard booklets but shall be clearly marked to indicate applicable equipment.
 - (f) Wiring Diagrams: Generalized diagrams are not acceptable, submittal shall be specifically prepared for this Project.
 - (g) Automatic Controls: Diagrams and functional descriptions.
4. Where applicable, one set of operating and maintenance instructions shall be neatly framed behind glass and hung adjacent to the equipment concerned.

H. Product Data: For the following:

1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

I. Welding certificates.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, HANDLING AND PROTECTION

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.
- C. This trade shall be responsible for its work and equipment until it is tested, has received final inspection and been accepted. Carefully store materials and equipment which are not immediately installed after delivery to site. Close open ends of work with temporary covers or plugs during construction to prevent entry of obstructing material.
- D. This trade shall protect work and material of other trades from damage that might be caused by its work or workmen and make good damage thus caused.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

1.9 COORDINATION DRAWINGS:

- A. Prepare coordination drawings in accordance with Division 1 Section "PROJECT COORDINATION," to a scale of 3/8"=1'-0" or larger; detailing major elements, components, and systems of plumbing equipment and materials in relationship with other systems, installations, and building components in spaces such as typical floor and mechanical rooms. Indicate locations where space is limited for installation and access and where sequencing and coordination of installations are of importance to the efficient flow of the Work, including (but not necessarily limited to) the following:
 - 1. Indicate the proposed locations of piping, equipment, and materials. Include the following:
 - (a) Planned piping layout, including valve and specialty locations and valve stem movement.
 - (b) Clearances for servicing and maintaining equipment, including space for equipment disassembly required for periodic maintenance.
 - (c) Equipment connections and support details.
 - (d) Exterior wall and foundation penetrations.
 - (e) Fire-rated wall and floor penetrations.

(f) Sizes and location of required concrete pads and bases.

(g) Clearances as required by Electric Code.

2. Indicate scheduling, sequencing, movement, and positioning of large equipment into the building during construction.
3. Prepare reflected ceiling plans to coordinate and integrate sprinkler installations, air outlets and inlets, light fixtures, communication systems components and other ceiling-mounted items.

B. Plumbing Coordination Drawings

1. This trade shall add to Coordination Drawings prepared by the HVAC Contractor showing all of the plumbing work (equipment, piping, conduit, etc.) to be installed as part of the work of this section of the specifications.
2. This Trade after showing all of the plumbing work shall forward the reproducible Coordination Drawings to the Electrical Contractor.
3. The sequence of coordination drawings shall be HVAC-PLBG-FP-ELEC-CM.
4. The plumbing Contractor shall attend a series of meetings arranged by the General Contractor/Construction Manage to resolve any real or apparent interferences or conflicts with the work of the other Contractors.
5. The plumbing Contractor shall then make adjustments to his work on the Coordination Drawings to resolve any real or apparent interferences or conflicts.
6. After any real or apparent interferences and conflicts have been incorporated into the Coordination Drawings, the plumbing Contractor shall "sign-off" the final Coordination Drawings.
7. The plumbing Contractor shall not install any of his work prior to "sign-off" of final Coordination Drawings. If the plumbing work proceeds prior to sign-off of Coordination Drawings, any change to the plumbing work to correct the interferences and conflicts which result will be made by the Plumbing Contractor at no additional cost to the project.
8. Coordination Drawings are for the Contractor's and Architects use during construction and shall not be construed as replacing any shop "as-built", or Record Drawings required elsewhere in these Contract Documents.
9. Architect's review of Coordination Drawings shall not relieve Contractor from his overall responsibility for coordination of all work performed pursuant to the Contract or from any other requirements of the Contract.

C. Record Drawings

1. As part of the required plumbing work, a complete set of "as-built" or record drawings shall be made up and delivered to the architect.

2. The drawings shall show:-
 - (a) All work installed exactly in accordance with the original design.
 - (b) All installed as a modification or addition to the original design.
 - (c) The dimensional information necessary to delineate the exact location of all piping runs which are so concealed as to be untraceable by inspection through the regular means of access established for inspection and maintenance.
3. Where shop drawings have been prepared and approved, the "as-built" drawings shall be cross referenced to the respective shop drawing.
4. As-built record drawings shall include the updating of all equipment schedule sheets.
5. The record drawings shall be of legible reproducible and durable type.
6. The Contractor shall make arrangements with the Engineer to obtain design drawings on compact diskettes in AutoCad format for use as a basis for the "as-built" drawings. These documents remain the property of Cosentini Associates, Inc. and shall be used for no other purpose without expressed, written consent. The contractor shall assume all liabilities resulting from unauthorized use or modifications to the drawings.
7. Prior to developing any "as-built" drawings, the contractor shall coordinate with the Owner and the Architect Engineer the drawing layers, colors, etc., of the CAD drawings.
8. "As-built" information shall be submitted as follows:
 - (a) Drawing files on compact diskettes in AutoCad format.
 - (b) One (1) set of reproducible drawings.
 - (c) Two (2) sets of plots.
9. The quantity of design drawings which are made available shall in no way be interpreted as setting a limit to the number of drawings necessary to show the required "as-built" information.
10. Progress prints of record drawings shall be submitted monthly during the construction period for Architect's approval.
11. This trade shall submit the "as-built" set for approval by the Engineer in a form acceptable to the Engineer.
12. Final acceptance of the fire protection systems by the authority having jurisdiction will not be implemented until "as-built" drawings are on site.

1.10 INTERPRETATION OF THE DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS

- A. As used in the drawings and specifications, certain non technical words shall be understood to have specific meanings as follows:
 - 1. "Furnish"-----Purchase and coordinate deliver to the project site complete with every necessary appurtenance and support.
 - 2. "Install"-----Unload at the coordinated delivery point and time at the site and perform every operation necessary to establish secure mounting and correct operation at the proper location in the project.
 - 3. "Provide"-----"Furnish" and "Install".
- B. Except where modified by a specific notation to the contrary, it shall be understood that the indication and/or description of any item, in the drawings or specifications or both, carries with it the instruction to furnish and install the item, regardless of whether or not this instruction is explicitly stated as part of the indication or description.
- C. It shall be understood that the specifications and drawings are complementary and are to be taken together for a complete interpretation of the work. Where there are conflicts between the drawings and specifications or within the specifications or drawings themselves, the items of higher standard shall govern.
- D. No exclusions from, or limitations, in the language used in the drawings or specifications shall be interpreted as meaning that the appurtenances or accessories necessary to complete any required system or item of equipment are to be omitted.
- E. The drawings of necessity utilize symbols and schematic diagrams to indicate various items of work. Neither of these have any dimensional significance nor do they delineate every item required for the intended installations. The work shall be installed, in accordance with the diagrammatic intent expressed on the drawings, and in conformity with the dimensions indicated on final architectural and structural working drawings and on equipment shop drawings.
- F. No interpretation shall be made from the limitations of symbols and diagrams that any elements necessary for complete work are excluded.
- G. Certain details appear on the drawings which are specific with regard to the dimensioning and positioning of the work. These details are intended only for the purpose of establishing general feasibility. They do not obviate field coordination for the indicated work.
- H. Information as to the general construction shall be derived from structural and architectural drawings and specifications only.
- I. The use of words in the singular shall not be considered as limiting where other indications denote that more than one item is referred to.

- J. In the event that extra work is authorized, and performed by this trade, work shown on drawings depicting such work, and/or described by Bulletin is subject to the base building specifications in all respects.

1.11 SEPARATION OF WORK BETWEEN TRADES

- A. The Specifications for the overall construction delineate various items of work under separate trade headings. The list below sets forth this delineation to the extent that it affects the Plumbing Work.
- B. In the absence of more detailed information, this list shall be taken as a specific instruction to the Plumbing trade to include the work assigned to it.
- C. Indications that the Plumbing trade is to perform an item of work mean that it is to perform the work for its own accommodation only, except as specifically noted otherwise.
- D. Oth = Other than electrical or mechanical
 Plb = Plumbing
 FP = Fire Protection
 Htg = Heating, Ventilating & Air Conditioning
 Elec = Electrical
 f = Furnished
 I = Installed
 p = Provided (furnished and installed)

Item	Oth	Plb	FP	Htg	Elec	Notes
Motor for plumbing equipment		p				
Motor controls for plumbing equipment.		f			I	Specifications and drawings delineate detailed exceptions.
Wiring for plumbing equipment motors and motor controls.					p	Specifications and drawings delineate detailed exceptions.
Temporary heat	p					
Temporary Water	p					
Temporary light and power.	P					
Temporary toilets.	P					
Natural gas piping and valves for gas fired equipment.		P				Final connections by the Plumbing contractor.
Hoisting	p					

Item	Oth	Plb	FP	Htg	Elec	Notes
Rigging	p					
Bracing of building for safe rigging.		p				
Cutting, chasing and patching	p					Cost where due to late installation, or improper coordination of work is the responsibility of the delinquent trade.
Framed slots and openings in walls decks and slabs.	P					
Sleeves through slabs, decks and walls.		P				
Sleeves through membraned and waterproofed slabs, decks and walls.		P				
Waterproof sealing of pipes passing through sleeves.		P				
Waterproof sealing of sleeves through membraned through membraned and water proofed slabs.		P				
Fireproof sealing of excess openings in slabs, decks and fire rated walls.		P				
Excavation and backfill inside buildings.	P					
Excavation and backfill outside buildings.	P					
Keeping site and excavations free from water during construction.	P					To accommodate the overall project.
Fastenings		p				
Supports		p				
Concrete encasement of underground runs.	P					
Subsoil drainage inside building (footing drains)	p					To accommodate overall project.
Venting for gas tranes on gas fired equipment.				p		Complete.
Subsoil drainage outside building (footing drains)	p					To accommodate overall project.
Sewer manholes (interior)		p				Furnishing of covers, associated frames and other hardware included in the Plumbing Contractor.
Floor drain flashing		p				
Base flashing for roof drains and all piping penetrating roof.	P					

Item	Oth	Plb	FP	Htg	Elec	Notes
Cap flashing for all piping penetrating roof.		P				
Concrete foundations, pads and bases.	P					Furnishing of anchors and vibration mounts included in the Plumbing Contractor.
Concrete (masonry) pits.	P					Plumbing Contractor to furnish sizes and locations.
Pit frames, covers, pumps, and controls.	P					Special covers sewage ejector pumps, sump pump, pumps, controls, covers and frames furnished by the Plumbing Contractors.
Trenches in building foundation.	P					
Field touch up painting of damaged shop coats.		P				
Prime coating hangers and supports.		P				
Rustproofing field cut and assembled iron supporting frames and racks.		P				
Finished painting	p					
Finished wall and ceiling access doors, panels and supporting frames.	P					Supplying list locating all required access doors (none to be less than 16" x 16") Included in Plumbing Contractor.
Cat walks to mechanical equipment.	P					Supplying list of locations where required included in the Plumbing Contractor.
Ladders to equipment and valves.	P					Supplying list of locations where required to be installed by the Plumbing Contractor.
Domestic make-up water piping for heating and air conditioning systems.		P				Final connections included in heating trade.
Toilet Room accessories.	f					Install certain toilet room accessories as required by local trade union jurisdiction.
Window washing machines	p					Required water outlet provided by Plumbing Contractor.
Plumbing fixtures and accessories.		P				
Soap dispensers on plumbing fixtures.		P				
Food service equipment.	P					

Item	Oth	Plb	FP	Htg	Elec	Notes
Rubbish removal.		P				Where one trade finishes and another installs, the installing trade removes the shipping and packaging materials which accumulate.
Special tools for equipment maintenance.		P				
Laboratory casework and equipment.	p					Plumbing Contractor to provide roughing and final connections.
Balance recirculation system(s).		P				Plumbing Contractor to provide equipment and labor.
Garage drainage and venting system to include gasoline and oil interceptor and venting.		P				Pit(s) provided by General Contractor.
Domestic water service from street main, including valve and valve bo. To capped OS&Y valve connection and water meter inside building.		P				
Electric heating cables for pipe tracing.					p	Insulation over heat tracing by Plumber.

- E. The Plumbing Contractor is required to supply all necessary supervision and coordination information to any other trades who are to supply work to accommodate the Plumbing installation.
- F. Where the Plumbing Trade is required to install items which it does not purchase, it shall include for such items:
1. The co-ordination of their delivery.
 2. Their unloading from delivery trucks driven in to any designated point on the property line at grade level.
 3. Their safe handling and field storage up to the time of permanent placement in the project.
 4. The correction of any damage, defacement or corrosion to which they may have been subjected.
 5. Their field assembly and internal connection as may be necessary for their proper operation.
 6. Their mounting in place including the purchase and installation of all dunnage supporting members and fastenings necessary to adapt them to architectural and structural conditions.
 7. Their connection to building systems including the purchase and installation of all terminating fittings necessary to adapt and connect them to the building systems.

8. Items which are to be installed but not purchased as part of the work of the Plumbing Contractor shall be carefully examined by this trade upon delivery to the project. Claims that any of these items have been received in such condition that their installation will require procedures beyond the reasonable scope of work of the Plumbing Contractor will be considered only if presented in writing within one week of the date of delivery to the project of the items in question. The work of the Plumbing Contractor shall include all procedures, regardless of how extensive, necessary to put into satisfactory operation, all items for which no claims have been submitted as outlined above.

1.12 APPLICABLE PUBLICATIONS:

- A. The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referenced in the text by the basic designation only.

Reference	Definition
ASTM	American Society for Testing Materials
ASPE	American Society of Plumbing Engineers
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
UL	Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Assn.
FM	Factory Mutual
USAS	United States of America Standards Institute
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
AWWA	American Water Works Association
F.S.	Federal Specifications, US Government
I.S.O.	Insurance Services Organization
C.S.	Commercial Standards issued by the United States Department of Commerce.
M.S.S.	Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry
A.G.A.	American Gas Association, Inc.
A.S.H.R.A.E.	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc.

P.D.I.	Plumbing and Drainage Institute
N.S.F.	National Sanitation Foundation
A.S.S.E.	American Society of Sanitary Engineering
I.A.P.M.O.	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials
C.I.S.P.I.	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
A.A.S.H.O.	American Association of State Highway Officials

1.13 SEISMIC DESIGN

- A. This project is located within Seismic Zone___ as mapped in the Building Code. Special provisions are required for the support and restraint of equipment, piping, etc., in the event of earthquake so as to comply with the State Building Code, with supplements.
- B. It shall be understood that the requirements of this seismic section are complementary to requirements delineated elsewhere for the support and fastening of equipment, piping, etc. Nothing on the drawings or specifications shall be interpreted as a reason to waive the requirements of this seismic section.
- C. Floor mounted equipment shall be provided with approved seismic control devices as required to prevent overturning or sliding. Seismic restraints shall be capable of keeping equipment captive under seismic loads.
- D. Ceiling mounted equipment shall be provided with approved seismic control devices as required to maintain the equipment in a captive attitude under seismic loads.
- E. The seismic restraint design and construction requirements for equipment and piping incorporated as part of Life Safety Systems shall be such that these systems will remain in place and be functional following a major earthquake, and that the design shall consider lateral drifts between stories as specified by code.
- F. All life safety systems whether isolated or not shall be bolted to structure to allow for the required acceleration. Bolt points and diameter of inserts shall be submitted and verified as part of the contractor's submission for each piece of equipment and certified by a licensed structural engineer.
- G. Seismically restrain all piping with center bracing or Type II restraining system in accordance with NFPA guidelines to comply with the Building Code.
- H. Equipment and piping submittals shall include the following in addition with the requirements delineated elsewhere.

1. Drawings and calculations (certified by a professional engineer) as required to show the number and location of seismic restraints and specified details of restraints including anchor bolts for mountings and maximum load (static plus dynamic expected at each restraint or snubbing device including fastening devices for the seismic restraints which are capable of maintaining equipment in a captive position when subjected to external forces required for life safety equipment as defined by the State Building Code.
 2. Drawings, as required to show the number and location of seismic restraints and specific details of restraints including anchor bolts for mountings and maximum load (static plus dynamic at each seismic restraint location).
- I. Seismic restraints shall be provided by a company specializing in vibration isolation and seismic restraints with five years minimum experience.
 - J. All seismic restraints shall be capable of safely accepting external forces required for life safety equipment without failure and shall maintain equipment, piping, etc. in a captive position. Seismic restraints shall not short circuit isolation systems or transmit objectionable vibration or noise, and shall be provided on all equipment as scheduled on drawings. Calculations by registered structural engineer shall be submitted to verify snubber capabilities for each piece of equipment.
 - K. For all piping, regardless of size or length of support, all connections to the building structure must be positively made. Connections which depend all or in part on friction for their supporting action are not acceptable.
 - L. Do not use branch lines to brace main lines.
 - M. A rigid piping system shall not be braced to dissimilar parts of a building or two dissimilar building systems that may respond in a different mode during an earthquake. Examples: wall and a roof; solid concrete wall and a metal deck with lightweight concrete fill.
 - N. Provide large enough pipe sleeves through walls or floors to allow for anticipated differential movements.
 - O. At vertical pipe risers, wherever possible, support the weight of the riser at a point or points above the center of gravity of the riser. Provide lateral guides at the top and bottom of the riser and at intermediate points not to exceed 30' on center.

1.14 SEISMIC CERTIFICATION

- A. Provide details for seismic restraint and bracing of equipment and piping. Such details shall be of complete detailed shop drawings based on the contractor's installation techniques, equipment arrangement and the specific routing of the work. The submission of shop drawings shall include all necessary calculations and manufacturer's certifications as required to demonstrate the suitability of the proposed installation. Calculations shall be performed by an approved licensed structural engineer with experience in the field of equipment support and seismic design, who shall be retained by the contractor for this purpose.

- B. The supplier of the seismic restraints, braces and other devices shall have had the experience in designing and manufacturing such equipment for not less than 5 years. Responsibility shall include determining the location and sizes of all restrains and braces as required by the contractor's layout and installation drawings, and furnishing of all such devices with installation instructions. The supplier shall provide any necessary field supervision to insure that the seismic control devices are properly installed.
- C. Calculations to demonstrate the adequacy of the proposed seismic devices shall be performed by Seismic Designs, Inc. or other approved structural engineering firm under the supervision of a licensed professional engineer having at least 5 years experience in seismic design.

1.15 GUARANTEES AND CERTIFICATIONS

- A. All work shall be guaranteed to be free from leaks or defects. Any defective materials or workmanship as well as damage to the work of all trades resulting from same shall be replaced or repaired as directed for the duration of stipulated guaranteed periods.
- B. The duration of guarantee periods following the date of beneficial use of the system shall be one year. Beneficial use is defined as operation of the system to obtain its intended use.
- C. The date of acceptance shall be the date of the final payment for the work or the date of a formal notice of acceptance, whichever is earlier.
- D. Certification shall be submitted attesting to the fact that specified performance criteria are met by all items of Plumbing equipment.

1.16 EXAMINATION OF SITE AND CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. Before submitting prices or beginning work, thoroughly examine the site and the Contract Documents.
- B. No claim for extra compensation will be recognized if difficulties are encountered which examination of site conditions and Contract Documents prior to executing the Contract would have revealed.

1.17 WORKMANSHIP

- A. The entire work provide in this Specification shall be constructed and finished in every aspect in a workmanlike and substantial manner.
- B. It is not intended that the Drawings shall show every pipe, fitting and appliance. Plumbing Contractor shall furnish and install all such parts as may be necessary to complete the systems in accordance with the best trade practice.
- C. Keep other trades fully informed as to shape, size and position of all openings required for apparatus and give full information to the General Contractor and other trades in a timely manner so that all opening may be built in advance. Furnish and install all sleeves, supports and the like as specified or as required.

- D. In case of failure on the part of the Plumbing Contractor to give proper and timely information as required above, he shall do his own cutting and patching or have same done by the General Contractor, but in any case, without extra expense to the Owner.
- E. Obtain detailed information from the manufacturers of apparatus as to the proper method of installing and connecting same. Obtain all information from the General Contractor and other trades which may be necessary to facilitate work and completion of the whole project.

1.18 CONTINUITY OF SERVICES

- A. Do not interrupt existing services without Owner's Representative approval.
- B. Schedule interruptions in advance, according to Owner's Representative instructions. Submit, in writing, with request for interruption, methods proposed to minimize impact on Owner's operations. Interruptions shall also be coordinated with the local fire department.
- C. Interruptions shall be scheduled at such times of day and work to minimize impact on Owner's operations.

1.19 QUALITY ASSURANCE:

- A. Products Criteria
 - 1. All equipment furnished as part of the work shall comply with the latest editions of all applicable state and municipal "energy codes." Provide certification from the equipment suppliers for all energy-consuming equipment that the equipment fully complies with these codes. Equipment submissions will not be accepted for review unless accompanied by such certification in writing.
 - 2. All equipment and materials shall be new and without blemish or defect.
 - 3. New equipment and materials shall be Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (U.L.) labeled and/or listed where specifically called for or where normally subject to such U.L. labeling and/or listing services.
 - 4. Asbestos
 - (a) All equipment and materials shall be free of asbestos.
 - 5. Electrical equipment and materials shall be products which will meet with the acceptance of the agency inspecting the electrical work. Where such acceptance is contingent upon having the products examined, tested and certified by Underwriters or other recognized testing laboratory, the product shall be examined, tested and certified. Where no specific indication as to the type or quality of materials or equipment is indicated, a first class standard article shall be furnished.

6. It is the intent of these specifications that wherever a manufacturer of a product is specified, and the terms "other approved" or "or approved equal" or "equal" are used, the substituted item must conform in all respects to the specified item. Consideration will not be given to claims that the substituted item meets the performance requirements with lesser construction (such as lesser heat exchange surface, etc.). Performance as delineated in schedules and in the specifications shall be interpreted as minimum performance. In many cases equipment is oversized to allow for pick-up loads which cannot be delineated under the minimum performance.
7. All equipment of one type such as drains, pumps, fixtures, etc. shall be the products of one Manufacturer.
8. Substituted equipment or optional equipment where permitted and approved, must conform to space requirements. Any substituted equipment that cannot meet space requirements, whether approved or not, shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense. Any modifications of related systems as a result of substitutions shall be made at the Contractor's expense.
9. Note that the approval of shop drawings, or other information submitted in accordance with the requirements hereinbefore specified, does not assure that the Engineer, Architect, or any other Owner's Representative, attests to the dimensional accuracy or dimensional suitability of the material or equipment involved or the ability of the material or equipment involved or the mechanical performance of equipment. Approval of Shop Drawings does not invalidate the plans and specifications if in conflict, unless a letter requesting such change is submitted and approved on the Engineer's letterhead.
10. Substitutions of equipment for that shown on the schedules or designated by model number in the specifications will not be considered if the item is not a regular cataloged item shown in the current catalog of the manufacturer.
11. Prohibition of Lead
 - (a) The presence and use of lead is strictly prohibited in potable water systems.
 - (b) Potable water shall not be subject to contact with lead in any form.
 - (c) The design and manufacture of all materials and equipment (piping, fittings, joints, connections, solders, fixtures, accessories, etc.) provided, shall not contain lead in any form.
 - (d) Contractor shall be responsible for all costs involved in testing and certifying that potable water systems, materials and equipment are lead free.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 15 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 15 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - (a) Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - (b) Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:

1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include purple primer according to ASTM F 656.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

1. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - (b) Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - (c) Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - (d) JCM Industries.
 - (e) Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - (f) Viking Johnson.
2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
3. Underground Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.

B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.

1. Manufacturer:
 - (a) Eslon Thermoplastics.

C. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.

1. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - (b) Fernco, Inc.
 - (c) Mission Rubber Company.
 - (d) Plastic Oddities, Inc.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig (1725-kPa) minimum working pressure at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - (b) Central Plastics Company.
 - (c) Eclipse, Inc.
 - (d) Epco Sales, Inc.
 - (e) Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - (f) Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - (g) Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - (b) Central Plastics Company.
 - (c) Epco Sales, Inc.
 - (d) Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - (b) Calpico, Inc.
 - (c) Central Plastics Company.
 - (d) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig (1035- or 2070-kPa) minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

1. Manufacturers:

- (a) Calpico, Inc.
- (b) Lochinvar Corp.

- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig (2070-kPa) minimum working pressure at 225 deg F (107 deg C).

1. Manufacturers:

- (a) Perfection Corp.
- (b) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
- (c) Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- (d) Victaulic Co. of America.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.

1. Manufacturers:

- (a) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
- (b) Calpico, Inc.
- (c) Metraflex Co.
- (d) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

- 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM or interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel Include two for each sealing element.
- 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

A. General

- 1. Provide sleeves for each pipe passing through walls, partitions, floors, and roofs.

- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

- C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

- D. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- F. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- G. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- H. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- I. Sleeve Materials

Type Designation	
1	Galvanized steel sheet.
2	Standard weight galvanized steel pipe.
3	Standard weight galvanized steel pipe 1/4" steel plate extending from outside of sleeve a minimum of 2" all around, similar to F&S Mfg. Corp. Fig. 204.
4	Cast iron pipe sleeve with center flange, similar to James B. Clow & Sons No. F-1430 and F-1435.
5	Standard weight galvanized steel pipe with flashing clamp device welded to pipe sleeve or watertight sleeves, similar to Zurn 195-10 with oakum and lead caulking as required.
6	Metal deck and wall sleeves. Similar to Adjust-to-Crete Manuf., Co.
- J. Sleeve Sizes
 - 1. Floors and required fire rated partitions - 1/2" maximum clearance between outside of pipe (or insulation on insulated pipes) and inside of sleeve.
 - 2. Partitions not fire rated - 1-1/2" maximum clearance between outside of pipe (or insulation on insulated pipes) and inside of sleeve.

K. Sleeve Lengths

Location	Sleeve Length
Floors	Equal to depth of floor construction including finish. In waterproof floor construction sleeves to extend minimum of 2" above finished floor level.
Roofs	Equal to depth of roof construction including insulation.
Walls & Partitions	Equal to depth of construction and terminated flush with finished surfaces.

L. Sleeve Caulking & Packing

Type Designation	Caulking & Packing Requirements
A	Space between pipe and sleeve packed with oakum or hemp and caulked watertight with lead.
B	Space between pipe or pipe covering and sleeve shall be caulked with an incombustible permanently plastic, waterproof non-staining smooth appearance or pack with mineral wool or other equally approved fire resistive material to within ½" of both wall faces and provide caulking compound as per above.

M. Sleeve Application

Sleeve Type Thru Required Fire Rated Construction	Sleeve Type Thru Non-Fire Rated Construction	Location	Sleeve Caulking & Packing Type Designation	Sleeve Caulking & Packing Type Thru Fire Rated Construction
5	5	Membrane waterproof floor, roof & wall construction.	B	B

Sleeve

Sleeve Type Thru Required Fire Rated Construction	Sleeve Type Thru Non-Fire Rated Construction	Location	Sleeve Caulking & Packing Type Designation	Caulking & Packing Type Thru Fire Rated Construction
5	5	Non-mem- brane water- proof floor, roof & wall construction where flash- ing is required.	A or B	B
2	1, 2	Interior walls, par- titions & floors.	B	B
3 or 4	3 or 4	Exterior walls.	A	A
2	6	Cellular metal deck floors.	B	B
1	1	Precast concrete floor with poured con- crete topp- ing. Note: Sleeves to have flat flanges and/ or guides which rest on top of precast slab.	B	B

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With exposed-rivet hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.10 FIRESTOPPING

- A. In addition to fire protection means specified elsewhere in this specification, this trade shall comply with the following.
- B. All spaces between pipes and their respective sleeves shall be packed full depth with mineral wool, or other equally fire resistant material, and compressed firmly in place. Fiberglass shall not be used. Sleeve clearances shall not exceed ½ inch between pipes and sleeves. Use individual sleeves for each pipe or duct. Before escutcheons are attached caulking must be available for inspection and notification should be made.
- C. Fire Stopping material and installed configuration shall maintain the fire rating of the penetrated wall, floor or ceiling.
- D. All pipe penetrations requiring Fire Stopping shall be “UL” approved thru-wall fire stop assemblies.
- E. Fire stop assemblies shall be Rectorseal, 3M, Hilti, Tremco or approved equal.
- F. Contractor shall provide assembly for each type of pipe material thru fire-rated wall thickness.
- G. Fire Stopping assemblies shall be approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

2.11 TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

- A. Furnish special tools not readily available commercially, that are required for disassembly or adjustment of equipment and machinery furnished.
- B. Lubricants: A minimum of one quart of oil, and one pound of grease, of equipment manufacturer's recommended grade and type, in unopened containers and properly identified as to use for each different application.

2.12 ACCESS DOORS IN FINISHED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Access doors as required for operation and maintenance of concealed equipment, valves, controls, etc. will be provided by another trade.
 - 1. This Trade is responsible for access door location, size and its accessibility to the valves or equipment being served.
 - 2. Coordinate and prepare a location, size, and function schedule of access doors required and deliver to a representative of the installing trade.
 - 3. Access doors shall be of ample size, minimum of 16" x 16".

2.13 FOUNDATIONS

- A. General
 - 1. All equipment, piping, etc., mounted on/or suspended from approved foundations and supports, as specified, as shown on the drawings.
 - 2. All concrete foundations and supports (and required reinforcing and forms) will be provided by another trade. This trade shall furnish shop drawings showing adequate concrete reinforcing steel details and templates for all concrete foundations and supports, and all required hanger bolts and other appurtenances necessary for the proper installation of his equipment. Although another trade will complete all concrete work, all such work shall be shown in detail on the shop drawings, prepared by this trade, which drawings shall be submitted showing the complete details of all foundations including necessary concrete and steel work, etc.
- B. In seismic zones, provide lateral support for earthquake forces.

2.14 FOUNDATION

- A. For all outdoor applications and all indoor applications in a harsh environment, refer to Section 09 09960 "High Performance Coatings."

2.15 TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

- A. Furnish special tools not readily available commercially, that are required for disassembly or adjustment of equipment and machinery finished.

- B. Lubricants: A minimum of one quart of oil, and one pound of grease, of equipment manufacturer's recommended grade type, in unopened containers and properly identified as to use for each different application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 15 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - (a) Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - (b) Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - (c) Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.

- (d) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - (e) Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - (f) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - (g) Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - (h) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - (i) Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
 - (j) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - (k) Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - (l) Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through poured concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and poured concrete floor and roof slabs.
- 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - (a) Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 - 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - (a) Steel or Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6 (DN 150).

- (b) Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 (DN 150) and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - (c) Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Refer to Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - (1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
- 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 7 Section #'s "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- P. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches (150 mm) and larger in diameter.
 - 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- Q. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for materials.
- S. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- T. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

- U. No installation shall be permitted which blocks or otherwise impedes access to any existing machine or system. Except as otherwise indicated, emergency switches and alarms shall be installed in conspicuous locations. All indicators, to include gauges, meters, and alarms shall be mounted in order to be easily visible by people in the area.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 15 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Painting of mechanical systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 9 Section.
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.
- C. Provide prime coat painting for the following:
1. Miscellaneous steel and iron provided by the Plumbing Contractor.
 2. Hangers and supports provided by the Plumbing Contractor.

3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.8 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.9 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.

- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

3.10 TESTS

- A. Provide all designating signs for shutoff valves, control valves, alarms, and the like, as required by the agencies having jurisdiction.
- B. Testing of Systems
 - 1. Perform all required tests in the manner prescribed by and to the satisfaction of the local building department and local plumbing inspector, Owners Insurance Underwriters, and all authorities having jurisdiction. Owners and Architects representatives shall be present to inspect tests. Obtain all required certificates of approval and pay any fees or costs in conjunction therewith.
 - 2. Provide and pay for all devices, materials, supplies, labor and power required in connection with all tests. All tests shall be made in the presence and to the satisfaction of the Architect and inspectors having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Defects disclosed by the tests shall be repaired, or if required by the Architect, defective work shall be replaced with new work without extra charge to the Owner. Tests shall be repeated as directed, until all work is proven satisfactory.
 - 4. This Contractor shall also be responsible for the work of other trades that may be damaged or disturbed by the tests, or the repair or replacement of his own work, and he shall, without extra charge to the Owner, restore to its original condition, work of the trades so damaged and disturbed, engaging the original Contractors to do the work of restoration.

3.11 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate location of piping, sleeves, inserts, hangers and equipment. Locate piping, sleeves, inserts, hangers, and equipment clear of windows, doors, openings, light outlets, and other services and utilities. Follow manufacturer's published recommendations for installation methods not otherwise specified.

3.12 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Cleaning of Piping System (General)

1. During construction, properly cap, plug and cover all openings in pipe, lines and equipment nozzles so as to prevent the entrance of sand, dirt, and foreign matter. Each system of piping shall be flushed (for the purpose of removing grit, dirt, sand, and foreign matter from the piping), for as long a time as is required to thoroughly clean the systems.

B. Adjusting (General)

1. After the entire installation has been completed, make all required adjustments to balancing valves, air vents, automatic controls, circulators, flush valves, faucets, pressure reducing valves, etc., until all performance requirements are met. All water circulating systems shall be properly balanced.

C. All bearings of all equipment shall be oiled or greased as recommended by the manufacturer, after installation.

D. The alignment of each centrifugal pump shall be checked and each pump shall be properly aligned after the pumps are placed in service. Mechanical seals and shaft sleeves shall be replaced by this Contractor without charge in the event that unusual wear or faulty operation occurs during the guarantee period.

E. Cleaning (General)

1. Upon completion of the work, all fixtures, trimmings and equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned, polished and left in first class condition for final acceptance.

3.13 EQUIPMENT PROVIDED UNDER OTHER SECTIONS OF THE WORK THAT REQUIRES PLUMBING

A. Certain equipment may be supplied under other sections of the work. This Contractor shall provide as described below the requirements and all necessary services roughing and final connections as shown on the plans and as required.

B. Installation of the equipment shall be performed in the following manner.

1. Roughing: Provide all water, waste and vent piping complete in accordance with detailed dimensioned drawings, to be provided by the equipment suppliers. This roughing shall be left ready for final connection to tables and equipment terminated at a point and height indicated by the Equipment Suppliers drawings.
2. Setting of Equipment: The Equipment Supplier will furnish and set in place and secure all equipment.
3. Final Connection: This trade shall make all final connections after the equipment has been set in place.

4. Trim: The Equipment Supplier will furnish all specialized appliances and trim such as faucets, tailpieces, strainers, service outlet bibbs, cocks, serrated hose connections and other related trim. This Trade shall coordinate and check with the Equipment Supplier and shall provide all valve, traps, stops, escutcheons, branch control valves, floor and funnel drains, nipples, fittings, tailpieces, pressure reducing valves, vacuum breakers, check valve, and other appurtenances which are not supplied by the Equipment Supplier and are necessary to the operating characteristics of the equipment being furnished. Also install all trim furnished with the equipment, as required, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.
 5. All exposed to view final connection piping, fittings, valves, etc., shall be chrome plated with finish matching equipment rim finishes. Submit finish samples to Architect for approval. Attention is hereby drawn to the Equipment Specifications being prepared under other sections of the work.
- C. Review all Architectural drawings and equipment cuts for all equipment locations & services required at each piece of equipment.

3.14 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL

A. Instructions:

1. Trenches shall be excavated so that pipe can be laid to the alignment and depth indicated on the drawings, and shall be excavated only so far in advance of pipe laying as approved.
2. Width of trenches shall be held to a minimum consistent with the type of material encountered and the size of the pipe being laid, but the width at the top of the pipe shall not be more than 2'-0" plus outside diameter of pipe. Excavation for manholes and other accessories shall have 12" minimum and a 24" maximum clearance on all sides.
3. Before fill or backfilling commences, all trash, debris and other foreign material shall be removed from trenches to be backfilled by this Trade. Fill material shall be free from timber, rocks 3" or larger, organic material, frozen material, and other unsuitable material as determined by the Architect. Filling shall not be done in freezing weather, unless specifically approved. No filling shall be done when material already in place is frozen.
4. In filling around pipe, deposit backfill material in successive horizontal layers not exceeding 6" in thickness before compaction. Compact each layer thoroughly by means of approved mechanical tampers. Take special care to obtain compaction under pipe haunches. Deposit backfill adjacent to pipes on both sides to approximately same elevation at the same time. Continue this method of filling and compacting until backfill is at least 18" above top of pipe.

5. Backfilling for the remainder of pipe trenches to subgrades of paved or landscaped areas shall be done by mechanical tamping and rolling equipment, except that the use of such equipment is prohibited when said use may result in damage to pipelines or structures.
6. Backfill shall be moistened as necessary for proper compaction. Water settling of fill will not be permitted.
7. Complete backfilling of pipe trenches as soon as possible after the pipe is laid and tested.
8. Existing pavements, roadways, walkways, curbs and landscaped areas disturbed during the progress of the excavation and backfill work shall be restored to their original condition at no additional cost to the Owner.
9. Backfill shall be compacted to a minimum of 90% of modified AASHTO maximum density as defined by ASTM D-1557. Any layer of fill, or portion thereof, which is not compacted to the required density shall be recompacted until the specified density is achieved, or the layer shall be removed.

3.15 APPLIANCES, TOILET ROOM ACCESSORIES AND TRIM

- A. Handle and install all Plumbing connected appliances claimed under Plumber's jurisdiction from tailboard delivery, including hoisting and rigging to designated locations.
- B. Handle and install all accessories and trim claimed under Plumber's jurisdiction.
- C. Dispose of all appliance and accessories packing crates and debris off of the site.

3.16 ARCHITECTURAL COORDINATION AND SAMPLES

- A. All devices and appurtenances which are to be installed in all finished areas must be coordinated with the Architect for final approval as it relates to location, finish, materials, color, texture, etc.
- B. Submit samples of all materials requested by the Architect.
- C. Samples shall be prepared and submitted with all postage and transportation costs paid by the Contractor submitting same. Label each sample with identifying numbers and titles.
- D. Submit samples of:
 1. All exposed to view finishes such as cleanout plates, access covers, drain grates and tops, fixture trim, fresh air inlet plates, etc.

END OF SECTION 15051

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 15140 - PLUMBING
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes domestic water piping and water meters inside the building.
- B. Water meters shall be as required by the utility company furnished and installed by the Contractor.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 2 Section "Water Distribution" for water-service piping and water meters outside the building from source to the point where water-service piping enters the building.
 - 2. Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Meters and Gages" for thermometers, pressure gages, and fittings.
 - 3. Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for water distribution piping specialties.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide components and installation capable of producing domestic water piping systems with **125 psig (860 kPa)**, unless otherwise indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings and water meters.
- B. Water Samples: Specified in Part 3 "Cleaning" Article.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for potable domestic water piping and components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Pipe and Fitting Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
- B. Transition Couplings for Aboveground Pressure Piping: Coupling or other manufactured fitting the same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A, Schedule 40, galvanized. Include ends matching joining method.
 - 1. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
 - 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface and female threaded ends.
 - 3. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, standard pattern.
 - 4. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
 - 5. Cast-Iron, Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125, galvanized.

2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: **ASTM B 88, Types K and L** (ASTM B 88M, Types A and B), water tube, drawn temper.

1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought- copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
2. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends. Furnish Class 300 flanges if required to match piping.
3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
4. Copper, Grooved-End Fittings: **ASTM B 75 (ASTM B 75M)** copper tube or ASTM B 584 bronze castings.

2.5 VALVES

- A. Bronze and cast-iron, general-duty valves are specified in Division 15 Section "Valves."
- B. Balancing and drain valves are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties."

2.6 WATER METERS

- A. Displacement-Type Water Meters **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: AWWA C700, nutating-disc totalization meter with bronze case and **150-psig (1035-kPa)** minimum working-pressure rating; with registration in **gallons (liters)** or **cubic feet (cubic meters)** as required by utility; and with threaded end connections.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. ABB.
- b. Badger Meter, Inc.
- c. Carlon Meter Company Inc.
- d. Invensys North American Water.
- e. Mueller Company.
- f. Schlumberger Limited; Water Div.
- g. Venture Measurement.

- B. Turbine-Type Water Meters: AWWA C701, totalization meter with [**150-psig (1035-kPa)**] minimum working-pressure rating; with registration in **gallons (liters)** or **cubic feet (cubic meters)** as required by utility; and with the following end connections:

1. **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded.
2. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Flanged.
3. Manufacturers:
 - a. ABB.
 - b. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - c. Hays Fluid Controls.
 - d. Invensys North American Water.
 - e. Master Meter, Inc.
 - f. McCrometer.
 - g. Mueller Company.
 - h. Schlumberger Limited; Water Div.
 - i. SeaMetrics Inc.
 - j. Venture Measurement.

- C. Compound-Type Water Meters **NPS 3 (DN 80)** and Larger: AWWA C702, totalization meter with integral main-line and bypass meters, bronze case, and **150-psig (1035-kPa)** minimum working-pressure rating; with registration in **gallons (liters)** or **cubic feet (cubic meters)** as required by utility; and with flanged end connections.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. ABB.
 - b. Badger Meter, Inc.
 - c. Invensys North American Water.
 - d. Master Meter, Inc.
 - e. Mueller Company.
 - f. Schlumberger Limited; Water Div.
 2. Proportional, Detector-Type Water Meters: With meter on bypass.
 - a. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine type with bronze case; size not less than one-half nominal size of main-line meter.
 3. Turbine-Type Water Meters: With strainer and with meter on bypass.
 - a. Strainer: Full size, matching water meter.
 - b. Bypass Meter: AWWA C701, turbine type with bronze case; not less than **NPS 2 (DN 50)**.
- D. Remote Registration System: Direct-reading type complying with AWWA C706; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility.
- E. Remote Registration System: Encoder-type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."

3.2 PIPE AND FITTING APPLICATIONS

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges may be used on aboveground piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.

- D. Under-Building-Slab, Water-Service Piping on Service Side of Water Meter: Refer to Division 2 Section "Water Distribution."
- E. Domestic Water Piping on Service Side of Water Meter inside the Building: Use any of the following piping materials for each size range:
 - 1. **NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300)**: Steel pipe; gray-iron, threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
 - 2. **NPS 4 to NPS 12 (DN 100 to DN 300)**: Steel pipe with grooved ends; steel-piping, grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.
 - 3. **NPS 4 to NPS 6 (DN 100 to DN 150)**: Hard copper tube, [Type K (Type A)] [Type L (Type B)]; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 4. **NPS 4 to NPS 6 (DN 100 to DN 150)**: Hard copper tube, [Type K (Type A)] [Type L (Type B)] with grooved ends; copper grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-tube couplings; and grooved joints.
- F. Under-Building-Slab, Domestic Water Piping on House Side of Water Meter, **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and Smaller: [Soft] [Hard] copper tube, **Type K (Type A)**; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- G. Aboveground Domestic Water Piping: See schedule on the drawings:

3.3 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use bronze ball or gate valves for piping **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly or gate valves with flanged ends for piping **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
 - 2. Throttling Duty: Use bronze ball or globe valves for piping **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller. Use cast-iron butterfly valves with flanged ends for piping **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
 - 3. Hot-Water-Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated or Memory-stop balancing valves.
 - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping.
 - 1. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
 - 2. Install stop-and-waste drain valves where indicated.

- D. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set calibrated balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Calibrated balancing valves are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties."

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- B. Install under-building-slab copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall or floor. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods."
- D. Install wall penetration system at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight. Wall penetration systems are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods."
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Pressure gages are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Meters and Gages," and drain valves and strainers are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties."
- F. Install water-pressure regulators downstream from shutoff valves. Water-pressure regulators are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties."
- G. Install domestic water piping level and plumb.
- H. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods."
- B. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.

3.6 WATER METER INSTALLATION

- A. Rough-in domestic water piping and install water meters according to utility company's requirements.
- B. Coordinate water meter installation with utility company.
- C. Install water meters according to AWWA M6 and utility's requirements.
 - 1. Install displacement-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Install turbine-type water meters with shutoff valve on water-meter inlet. Install valve on water-meter outlet and valved bypass around meter unless prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Install compound-type water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on valved bypass around meter. Support meters, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
 - 4. Install fire-service water meters with shutoff valves on water-meter inlet and outlet and on full-size valved bypass around meter. Support meter, valves, and piping on brick or concrete piers.
 - 5. Install remote registration system according to standards of utility and of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Vibration and Seismic Controls."
- B. Pipe hanger and support devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Hangers and Supports." Install the following:
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
 - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls, if indicated.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
- F. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. **NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.**
 - 2. **NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.**
 - 3. **NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.**
 - 4. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.**
 - 5. **NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2 (DN 80 and DN 90): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.**
 - 6. **NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.**
 - 7. **NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.**
 - 8. **NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.**
- G. Install supports for vertical steel piping every **15 feet (4.5 m)**.
- H. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. **NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.**
 - 2. **NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.**
 - 3. **NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.**
 - 4. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.**
 - 5. **NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.**
 - 6. **NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.**
 - 7. **NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.**
- I. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every **10 feet (3 m)**.
- J. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve, and extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. **Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.**
 - 2. **Water Heaters: Cold-water supply and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.**

3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Refer to Division 15 Section "Plumbing Fixtures."
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect domestic water piping as follows:

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Test domestic water piping as follows:

1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of **50 psig (345 kPa)** above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.

3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and plugs used for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable and/or non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing domestic water piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if methods are not prescribed, procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or as described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least **50 ppm (50 mg/L)** of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least **200 ppm (200 mg/L)** of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

END OF SECTION 15140

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 15150 - PLUMBING - SANITARY, VENT
AND STORM DRAINAGE PIPING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following for soil, waste, and vent piping inside the building:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Special pipe fittings.
 - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Chemical-Waste Piping" for chemical-waste and vent piping systems.
 - 2. Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Sewage Pumps."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- D. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Sanitary, Vent and Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa)..
 - 2. Sanitary Sewer, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa).
- B. Seismic Performance: Sanitary, vent and storm drainage piping and support and installation shall be capable of withstanding the effects of seismic events determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Design Calculations: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer for selecting seismic restraints.
- C. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency..

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
 - 1. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 - 1) ANACO.
 - 2) Clamp-All Corp.
 - 3) Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
 - 4) Mission Rubber Co.
 - 5) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
 - 2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Cast-Iron Couplings: ASTM A 48/A 48M, two-piece, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturer:
 - 1) MG Piping Products Co..

2.5 GALVANIZED STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Galvanized Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade A or B, Schedule 40, galvanized. Include ends matching joining method.
- B. Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.12, galvanized, threaded, cast-iron drainage pattern.
- C. Pressure Fittings:
 - 1. Galvanized Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106, Schedule 40, galvanized, seamless steel pipe. Include ends matching joining method.
 - 2. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Class 150; hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface; and female threaded ends.
 - 3. Gray-Iron, Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, galvanized, standard pattern.
 - 4. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.

5. Cast-Iron, Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125, galvanized.

2.6 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end, unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 1. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
 2. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
- C. Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

2.7 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Type M (Type C) Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
 1. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: **ASTM B 88, Types L and M** (**ASTM B 88M, Types B and C**), water tube, drawn temper.
 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 2. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.8 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Flexible, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.
 - c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
 - d. Mission Rubber Co.

- e. NDS, Inc.
 - f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.
- 2. Sleeve Materials:
 - a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
 - b. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
- B. Shielded Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Mission Rubber Co.
- C. Rigid, Unshielded, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1461, sleeve-type reducing- or transition-type mechanical coupling molded from ASTM C 1440, TPE material with corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - 1. Manufacturer:
 - a. ANACO.
- D. Pressure Pipe Couplings: AWWA C219 metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
 - d. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - e. JCM Industries, Inc.
 - f. Romac Industries, Inc.
 - g. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - h. Viking Johnson.
 - 2. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard
 - 3. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
 - 4. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.
- E. Wall-Penetration Fittings: Compound, ductile-iron coupling fitting with sleeve and flexing sections for up to 20-degree deflection, gaskets, and restrained-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
 - 1. Manufacturer:
 - a. SIGMA Corp.

2.9 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch (0.10-mm) minimum thickness.
- B. Form: tube.
- C. Color Black.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, sanitary, vent and storm drainage piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger shall be the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
 - 3. Steel pipe, drainage fittings, and threaded joints.
 - 4. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 - 5. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- C. Underground, sanitary, vent and storm drainage piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and larger shall be the following:
 - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- D. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains [NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 6 (DN 40 and DN 150)] shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. Galvanized steel pipe, pressure fittings, and threaded joints.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Sanitary sewer piping outside the building is specified in Division 2 Section "Sanitary Sewerage."
- B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods."
- C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Mechanical Vibration and Seismic Controls."
- D. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.
- E. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary force-main piping.
- F. Install underground, ductile-iron, special pipe fittings according to AWWA C600.
 - 1. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- G. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- H. Install wall-penetration fitting at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.
- I. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install sanitary, vent and storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Building Sanitary and Storm Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping **NPS 3 (DN 80)** and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and larger.
 2. Horizontal Sanitary and Storm Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- N. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- O. Vent piping shall be run in a system of branches and stacks continuously upward to a point of minimum 24" (1800 mm) above the roof.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- C. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead and oakum calked joints.
- D. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- E. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Grooved Joints: Assemble joint with keyed coupling, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General valve installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Valves."
- B. Shutoff Valves: Install shutoff valve on each sewage pump discharge.
1. Install gate or full-port ball valve for piping **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller.
 2. Install gate valve for piping **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger.
- C. Check Valves: Install swing check valve, between pump and shutoff valve, on each sewage pump discharge.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Vibration Controls and Seismic Restraints."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Hangers and Supports." Install the following:
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:
 - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m), if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Hangers and Supports."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 - 2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
 - 4. NPS 6 (DN 150): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
 - 5. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 84 inches (2100 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 - 2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 - 3. NPS 2 (DN 50): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 - 4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 11 feet (3.4 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 - 5. NPS 3 (DN 80): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.

6. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
 7. NPS 6 (DN 150): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
 8. NPS 8 to NPS 12 (DN 200 to DN 300): 12 feet (3.7 m) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
 - J. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 3. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 4. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 5. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
 6. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
 - K. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
 - L. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 4. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- D. Connect force-main piping to the following:
 1. Waste Pumps: To sewage pump discharge.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary, storm drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than **10-foot head of water (30 kPa)**. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of **1-inch wg (250 Pa)**. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops

END OF SECTION 15150

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 15194 - PLUMBING
FUEL GAS PIPING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes fuel gas piping within the building. Products include the following:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, fittings, and joining materials.
 - 2. Protective pipe and fitting coating.
 - 3. Piping specialties.
 - 4. Specialty valves.
 - 5. Service meters.
 - 6. Pressure regulators.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 2 Section "Natural Gas Distribution" for natural gas service piping, specialties, and accessories outside the building.
 - 2. Division 2 Section "Liquid Petroleum Gas Distribution."

1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Gas System Pressure: One pressure range. **0.5 psig (3.45 kPa)** or less.
- B. Design values of fuel gas supplied for these systems are as follows:
 - 1. Nominal Heating Value (Natural Gas): **1000 Btu/cu. ft. (37.3 MJ/cu. m).**
 - 2. Nominal Specific Gravity: 0.6.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing systems. Include associated components.
 - 2. Specialty valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 - 3. Service-meter bars. Include service-meter size of selected models.
 - 4. Service meters. Include pressure rating and capacity of selected models.
 - 5. Service-meter bypass fittings.
 - 6. Pressure regulators. Include pressure rating, capacity, and settings of selected models.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fuel gas piping. Include plans and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For natural gas specialties and accessories to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Electrical Components and Devices: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. NFPA Standard: Comply with NFPA 54, "National Fuel Gas Code."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and legally dispose of liquids from drips in existing gas piping. Handle cautiously to avoid spillage and ignition. Notify fuel gas supplier. Handle flammable liquids used by Installer with proper precautions and do not leave on premises from end of one day to beginning of next day.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect not less than two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 CORRUGATED, STAINLESS-STEEL TUBING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Comply with AGA LC 1 and include the following:
 - 1. Tubing: Corrugated stainless steel with plastic jacket or coating.
 - 2. Fittings: Copper alloy with ends made to fit corrugated tubing. Include ends with threads according to ASME B1.20.1 if connection to threaded pipe or fittings is required.
 - 3. Striker Plates: Steel, designed to protect tubing from penetrations.
 - 4. Manifolds: Malleable iron or steel with protective coating. Include threaded connections according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe inlet and corrugated tubing outlets.
 - 5. Manufacturers:
 - a. OmegaFlex, Inc.
 - b. Titeflex Corp.
 - c. Tru-Flex Metal Hose Corp.
 - d. Ward Industries, Inc.

2.4 PIPES, TUBES, FITTINGS, AND JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M; Type E or S; Grade B; black. Wall thickness of wrought-steel pipe shall comply with ASME B36.10M.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern, with threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2. Steel Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.11, forged steel with threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 3. Steel Welding Fittings: ASME B16.9, wrought steel or ASME B16.11, forged steel.
 - 4. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 5. Cast-Iron Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
 - 6. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
 - 7. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5.
 - 8. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for natural gas.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: **ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)**, drawn temper.
 - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, streamlined pattern.
 - 2. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, Silver Classification BAg-1. Filler metal containing phosphorus is prohibited.
 - 3. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
 - 4. Gasket Material: Thickness, material, and type suitable for natural gas.
- C. Soft Copper Tube: **ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)**, annealed temper.
 - 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, streamlined pattern.
 - 2. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, Silver Classification BAg-1. Filler metal containing phosphorus is prohibited.
- D. Tin-Lined Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, seamless, annealed, with interior tin-plated lining.
 - 1. Mechanical Compression Fittings: Zinc lined, including seals compatible with gas in the piping, and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A240 with PVC coating.
 - 1. Brass fittings and nuts: ASTM B16 and ASTM A197.

2.5 PROTECTIVE COATING

- A. Furnish pipe and fittings with factory-applied, corrosion-resistant polyethylene coating for use in contact with materials that may corrode the pipe.

2.6 PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Flexible Connectors: ANSI Z21.24, copper alloy.
- B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: ANSI Z21.41, convenience outlets and matching plug connector.

2.7 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Valves, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe threads.
- B. Valves, **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- C. Appliance Connector Valves: ANSI Z21.15 and CSA International listed.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. American Valve Inc.
 - b. B&K Industries, Inc.
 - c. Brass Craft Manufacturing Co.
 - d. Cimberio Valves, S. p. A.
 - e. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - f. E. M. Plastic and Electric Products, Ltd.; Neo Valve Div.
 - g. JMF Company.
 - h. Jomar International Ltd.
 - i. Key Gas Components, Inc.
 - j. Legend Valve and Fitting, Inc.
 - k. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - l. Mueller Co.; Mueller Gas Products Div.
 - m. Newman Hattersley Ltd.; Specialty Valves Div.
 - n. Robert Manufacturing Co.
 - o. State Metals, Inc.
 - p. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- D. Gas Stops: Bronze body with AGA stamp, plug type with bronze plug and flat or square head, ball type with chrome-plated brass ball and lever handle, or butterfly valve with stainless-steel disc and fluorocarbon elastomer seal and lever handle; **2-psig (13.8-kPa)** minimum pressure rating.
- E. Gas Valves, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: ASME B16.33 and CSA International-listed bronze body and **125-psig (860-kPa)** pressure rating.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BMI Canada, Inc.
 - b. Crane Valves.
 - c. Dungs, Karl, Inc.
 - d. Flow Control Equipment, Inc.
 - e. Grinnell Corp.
 - f. Honeywell International Inc.
 - g. Jomar International Ltd.
 - h. KITZ Corporation.
 - i. Legend Valve and Fitting, Inc.
 - j. Lyall, R. W. & Co., Inc.
 - k. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - m. Mueller Co.; Mueller Gas Products Div.
 - n. NIBCO INC.
 - o. Red-White Valve Corp.
 - p. Velan Inc.
 - q. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 2. Tamperproof Feature: Include design for locking.
- F. Plug Valves, **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: ASME B16.38 and MSS SP-78 cast-iron, lubricated plug valves, with **125-psig (860-kPa)** pressure rating.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Flow Control Equipment, Inc.
 - b. Milliken Valve Co., Inc.
 - c. Nordstrom Valves, Inc.
 - d. Olson Technologies, Inc.; Homestead Valve Div.
 - e. Walworth Co.
 2. Tamperproof Feature: Include design for locking.
- G. General-Duty Valves, **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: ASME B16.38, cast-iron body, suitable for fuel gas service, with "WOG" indicated on valve body, and **125-psig (860-kPa)** pressure rating.
1. Gate Valves: MSS SP-70, OS&Y type with solid wedge.
 2. Butterfly Valves: MSS SP-67, lug type with lever handle.
- H. Automatic Gas Valves: ANSI Z21.21, with electrical operator for actuation by appliance automatic shutoff device.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. ASCO General Controls.
 - b. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; Division of Emerson.
 - c. ASCO Valve Canada, Division of Emerson Electric Canada Limited.
 - d. Dungs, Karl, Inc.

- e. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
 - f. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
 - g. GPS Gas Protection Systems Inc.
 - h. Honeywell International Inc.
 - i. Johnson Controls.
- I. Electrically Operated Gas Valves: UL 429, bronze, aluminum, or cast-iron body solenoid valve; 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil. Include NEMA ISC 6, Type 4, coil enclosure and electrically opened and closed dual coils. Valve position shall normally be closed.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. ASCO General Controls.
 - b. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; Division of Emerson.
 - c. Dungs, Karl, Inc.
 - d. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
 - e. Goyen Valve Corp.; Tyco Environmental Systems.
 - f. Magnatrol Valve Corp.
 - g. Parker Hannifin Corporation; Climate & Industrial Controls Group; Skinner Valve Div.
 - h. Watts Industries, Inc.

2.8 SERVICE METERS

- A. Service Meters: Positive-displacement type suitable for fuel gas service. Include metal case, temperature compensation, corrosion-resistant internal components, and flow registered in **cubic feet (liters)**. Comply with local gas department requirements.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Diaphragm-Type Service Meters:
 - 1) American Meter Company.
 - 2) Badger Meter, Inc.; Utility Products Div.
 - 3) Invensys.
 - 4) National Meter Industries, Inc.
 - 5) Schlumberger Limited; Gas Div.
 - b. Rotary-Type Service Meters:
 - 1) American Meter Company.
 - 2) Schlumberger Limited; Gas Div.
 - 2. **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe threads.
 - 3. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - 4. Type: ANSI B109.1, diaphragm, with capacities **500 cfh (3935 mL/s)** and less.
 - 5. Type: ANSI B109.2, diaphragm, with capacities more than **500 cfh (3935 mL/s)**.
 - 6. Type: ANSI B109.3, rotary.

- B. Turbine Meters: Axial-flow type suitable for fuel gas service. Comply with construction criteria for axial-flow, gas turbine meters in ASME MFC-4M. Include metal body, corrosion-resistant internal components, and flow registered in cubic feet (liters).
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. American Meter Company.
 - b. Invensys.
 2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1 for pipe threads.
 3. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- C. Service-Meter Bars: Malleable- or cast-iron frame for supporting service meter. Include offset swivel pipes, meter nuts with O-ring seal, factory- or field-installed dielectric unions, and threaded ends complying with ASME B1.20.1.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. American Meter Company.
 - b. Lyall, R. W. & Co., Inc.
 - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Mueller Co.; Mueller Gas Products Div.
 - e. National Meter Industries, Inc.
 - f. Perfection Corporation.
 - g. Schlumberger Limited; Gas Div.
 2. Exception: Omit meter offset swivel pipes if service-meter bar dimensions match service-meter connections.
- D. Service-Meter Bypass Fittings: Ferrous, tee, pipe fitting with integral ball check valve and capped side inlet for temporary fuel gas supply.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Lyall, R. W. & Co., Inc.
 - b. Williamson, T. D., Inc.

2.9 PRESSURE REGULATORS

- A. Description: Single stage and suitable for fuel gas service. Include steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components, elevation compensator, and atmospheric vent. Comply with local gas department requirements.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Service Pressure Regulators:
 - 1) American Meter Company.
 - 2) Fisher Controls International, Inc.; Division of Emerson.

- 3) Invensys.
- 4) National Meter Industries, Inc.
- 5) Richards Industries, Inc.; Jordan Valve Div.
- 6) Schlumberger Limited; Gas Div.

b. Line Pressure Regulators:

- 1) American Meter Company.
- 2) Donkin, Bryan RMG Canada, Ltd.
- 3) Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
- 4) Fisher Controls International, Inc.; Division of Emerson.
- 5) Invensys.
- 6) Maxitrol Company.
- 7) National Meter Industries, Inc.
- 8) Richards Industries, Inc.; Jordan Valve Div.
- 9) Schlumberger Limited; Gas Div.

c. Appliance Pressure Regulators:

- 1) Canadian Meter Co., Inc.
- 2) Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
- 3) Harper Wyman Co.
- 4) Maxitrol Company.
- 5) SCP, Inc.

- 2. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
- 3. Service Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.80. Include **100-psig- (690-kPa-)** minimum inlet pressure rating.
- 4. Line Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.80 with [**2-psig- (13.8-kPa-)** minimum **5-psig- (34.5-kPa-)** minimum, **10-psig (68.9-kPa)**] inlet pressure rating.
- 5. Line Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.80 with **10-psig (68.9-kPa)** inlet pressure rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- 6. Appliance Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Pressure Regulator Vents: Factory- or field-installed, corrosion-resistant screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for fuel gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off fuel gas to premises or section of piping. Perform leakage test as specified in "Field Quality Control" Article to determine that all equipment is turned off in affected piping section. Comply with local gas department requirements.

3.3 SERVICE-METER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

- A. Install service-meter assemblies aboveground.
 - 1. Set service-meter assembly on, or supported over, precast concrete bases. Excavate earth and make level beds to support bases. Set bases level with top surface projecting **3 inches (75 mm)** above finished grade. Concrete bases are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- B. Include gas valve or plug valve, strainer, service pressure regulator, [service-meter bar for service meter with connections **NPS 1 (DN 25)** and smaller, and service meter for each assembly.
- C. Install gas valve or plug valve and strainer upstream from each service pressure regulator.
- D. Install service pressure regulators with vent outlet turned down and with corrosion-resistant-metal insect screen.
- E. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service pressure regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 15 Section Plumbing - Meters and Gages.
- F. Install service meters downstream from service pressure regulators.
 - 1. Service meters with connections **NPS 1 (DN 25)** and smaller on meter bars.
 - 2. Service meters with connections larger than **NPS 1 (DN 25)** supported from piping or set on concrete bases. Comply with local gas department requirements.

3.4 SERVICE ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Extend fuel gas piping and connect to fuel gas distribution for service entrance to building.
 - 1. Natural gas distribution system piping, service pressure regulator, and service meter are specified in Division 2 section "Natural Gas Distribution".
- B. Install dielectric fitting downstream from and adjacent to each service meter unless meter is supported from service-meter bar with integral dielectric fitting. Install shutoff valve downstream from and adjacent to dielectric fitting. Dielectric fittings are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods."
- C. Install strainer upstream from each earthquake valve. Strainers are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing Specialties."

3.5 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanges, unions, transition, and special fittings with pressure ratings same as or higher than system pressure rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fuel Gas Piping, **2 psig (13.8 kPa)** or Less:
 - 1. **NPS 1/2 (DN 15)** and Smaller: **NPS 3/4 (DN 20)** steel pipe, malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints, Hard copper tube, copper fittings and brazed joints, Tin-lined copper tube, copper and mechanical compression fittings, and brazed joints, Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing system and threaded joints.
 - a. Option: Soft copper tube, copper fittings, and brazed joints may be used for runouts at individual appliances.
 - 2. **NPS 3/4 and NPS 1 (DN 20 and DN 25)**: Steel pipe, malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded joints, Hard copper tube, copper fittings, and brazed joints, Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing system and threaded joints.
 - a. Option: Soft copper tube, copper fittings, and brazed joints may be used for runouts at individual appliances.
 - 3. **NPS 1-1/4 to NPS 2 (DN 32 to DN 50)**: Steel pipe, malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded, steel welding fittings, and welded joints.
 - 4. **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Steel pipe, steel welding fittings, and welded joints.
- C. Fuel Gas Piping **2 to 5 psig (13.8 to 34.5 kPa)**:
 - 1. **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and Smaller: Steel pipe, malleable-iron threaded fittings, and threaded, steel welding fittings, and welded joints.
 - 2. Larger Than **NPS 4 (DN 100)**: Steel pipe, steel welding fittings, and welded joints.
- D. Underground Fuel Gas Piping: Steel pipe, steel welding fittings, and welded joints. Encase in containment conduit.
- E. Containment Conduits: Steel pipe, steel welding fittings, and welded joints.
- F. Gas Service Piping at Meters and Regulators, More Than **5 psig (34.5 kPa)**: Steel pipe, steel welding fittings, and welded joints.

3.6 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Appliance Shutoff Valves for Pressure **0.5 psig (3.45 kPa)** or Less: Appliance connector valve or gas stop.
- B. Appliance Shutoff Valves for Pressure **0.5 to 2 psig (3.45 to 13.8 kPa)**: Gas stop or gas valve.

- C. Appliance Shutoff Valves for Pressure **2 to 5 psig (13.8 to 34.5 kPa)**: Gas valve.
- D. Piping Line Valves, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Gas valve.
- E. Piping Line Valves, **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Plug valve or general-duty valve.
- F. Valves at Service Meter, **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and Smaller: Gas valve.
- G. Valves at Service Meter, **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and Larger: Plug valve.

3.7 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods."
- B. Concealed Locations: Except as specified below, install concealed gas piping in airtight conduit constructed of Schedule 40, seamless, black steel pipe with welded joints. Vent conduit to outside and terminate with screened vent cap.
 - 1. Above-Ceiling Locations: Gas piping may be installed in accessible spaces, subject to approval of authorities having jurisdiction, whether or not such spaces are used as plenums. Do not locate valves above ceilings.
 - 2. In Floors: Gas piping with welded joints and protective wrapping specified in Part 2 "Protective Coating" Article may be installed in floors, subject to approval of authorities having jurisdiction. Surround piping cast in concrete slabs with minimum of **1-1/2 inches (40 mm)** of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
 - 3. In Floor Channels: Gas piping may be installed in floor channels, subject to approval of authorities having jurisdiction. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
 - 4. In Partitions: Do not install concealed piping in solid partitions. Protect tubing from physical damage when installed inside partitions or hollow walls.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls.
 - 5. In Walls: Gas piping with welded joints and protective wrapping specified in Part 2 "Protective Coating" Article may be installed in masonry walls, subject to approval of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 6. Prohibited Locations: Do not install gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - a. Exception: Accessible above-ceiling space specified above.
- C. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect. Include outlets of service meters. Locate where readily accessible for cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate would be subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use minimum-length nipple of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than **3 inches**

(75 mm) long, and same size as connected pipe. Install with space between bottom of drip and floor for removal of plug or cap.

- D. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels, unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- E. Install fuel gas piping at uniform grade of 0.1 percent slope upward toward risers.
- F. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- G. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- H. Install unions in pipes **NPS 2 (DN 50)** and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated. Unions are not required on flanged devices.
- I. Install corrugated, stainless-steel tubing system according to manufacturer's written instructions. Include striker plates to protect tubing from puncture where tubing is restrained and cannot move.
- J. Install strainer on inlet of each line pressure regulator and automatic and electrically operated valve.
- K. Install pressure gage **upstream and downstream** from each line pressure regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 15 Section Plumbing - Meters and Gages.
- L. Install flanges on valves, specialties, and equipment having **NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65)** and larger connections.
- M. Install vent piping for gas pressure regulators and gas trains, extend outside building, and vent to atmosphere. Terminate vents with turned-down, reducing-elbow fittings with corrosion-resistant insect screens in large end.
- N. Install containment conduits for gas piping below slabs, within building, in gastight conduits extending minimum of **4 inches (100 mm)** outside building, and vented to atmosphere. Terminate vents with turned-down, reducing-elbow fittings with corrosion-resistant insect screens in large end. Prepare and paint outside of conduits with coal-tar, epoxy-polyamide paint according to SSPC-Paint 16.

3.8 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction is specified in Division 15 Section "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods."
- B. Use materials suitable for fuel gas.
 - 1. Brazed Joints: Make with brazing alloy with melting point greater than **1000 deg F (540 deg C)**. Brazing alloys containing phosphorus are prohibited.
- C. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

3.9 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe hanger and support and equipment support materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Hangers and Supports."
- B. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. **NPS 1 (DN 25)** and Smaller: Maximum span, **96 inches (2438 mm)**; minimum rod size, **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
 - 2. **NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32)**: Maximum span, **108 inches (2743 mm)**; minimum rod size, **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
 - 3. **NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50)**: Maximum span, **108 inches (2743 mm)**; minimum rod size, **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
 - 4. **NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90)**: Maximum span, **10 feet (3 m)**; minimum rod size, **1/2 inch (13 mm)**.
 - 5. **NPS 4 (DN 100)** and Larger: Maximum span, **10 feet (3 m)**; minimum rod size, **5/8 inch (16 mm)**.
- C. Install hangers for horizontal hard copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. **NPS 3/8 (DN 10)**: Maximum span, **48 inches (1219 mm)**; minimum rod size, **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
 - 2. **NPS 1/2 and NPS 5/8 (DN 15 and DN 18)**: Maximum span, **72 inches (1829 mm)**; minimum rod size, **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
 - 3. **NPS 3/4 and NPS 7/8 (DN 20 and DN 22)**: Maximum span, **84 inches (2134 mm)**; minimum rod size, **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
 - 4. **NPS 1 (DN 25)**: Maximum span, **96 inches (2438 mm)**; minimum rod size, **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
- D. Install hangers for horizontal corrugated, stainless-steel tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. **NPS 3/8 and NPS 1/2 (DN 10 and DN 15)**: Maximum span, **48 inches (1219 mm)**; minimum rod size, **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
 - 2. **NPS 3/4 and NPS 1 (DN 20 and DN 25)**: Maximum span, **72 inches (1829 mm)**; minimum rod size, **3/8 inch (10 mm)**.
 - 3. Option: Support tubing from structure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of fuel gas piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to appliances using gas with shutoff valves and unions. Install valve upstream from and within **72 inches (1800 mm)** of each appliance. Install union downstream from valve.

- D. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance using gas.
- E. Ground equipment according to Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
 - 1. Do not use gas pipe as grounding electrode.
- F. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

3.11 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each service meter, pressure regulator, and specialty valve.
 - 1. Text: In addition to name of identified unit, distinguish between multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations.
 - 2. Nameplates, pipe identification, and signs are specified in Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Identification."

3.12 PAINTING

- A. Use materials and procedures in Division 9 painting Sections.
- B. Paint exterior service meters, pressure regulators, and specialty valves.
 - 1. Color: Gray.

3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test, inspect, and purge piping according to NFPA 54 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest system until satisfactory results are obtained.
- C. Verify capacities and pressure ratings of service meters, pressure regulators, valves, and specialties.
- D. Verify correct pressure settings for pressure regulators.
- E. Verify that specified piping tests are complete.

END OF SECTION 15194

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 15250 - MECHANICAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Insulation for ductwork, piping, and equipment as described.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section 15010 - Basic Mechanical Requirements
- C. Section 15050 - Basic Materials, Methods and Requirements (Mechanical).
- D. This section is a part of each Division 15000 Section.
- E. Section 09900 - Painting: Painting insulation jackets.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASTM C553 - Mineral Fiber Blanket and Felt Insulation.
- B. ASTM C335 - Thermal Conductivity of Pipe Insulation.
- C. ANSI/ASTM C612 - Mineral Fiber Block and Board Thermal Insulation.
- D. ASTM E84 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- E. NFPA 255 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- F. UL 723 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator: Company specializing in ductwork insulation application with three years minimum experience.
- B. Insulation Materials: Insulation materials shall be manufactured at facilities certified and registered to conform to ISO 9000 Quality Standard.
- C. Insulation shall have composite (insulation, jacket or facing, and adhesive used to adhere the facing or jacket to the insulation) fire and smoke hazard ratings as tested by procedure ASTM E.84, NFPA 255 or UL 723 not exceeding:

Flame Spread: 25

Smoke Developed: 50

Accessories such as adhesives, mastics, cements, and tapes for fittings shall have the same component rating as listed above. All products or their shipping cartons shall bear a label indicating that flame and smoke ratings do not exceed requirements. Treatment of jackets or facings to impart flame and smoke-safety shall be permanent. The use of water soluble treatments is prohibited.

- D. Asbestos shall not be used in the manufacture of insulation products.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Include product description, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.
- C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions under provisions of Section 01300.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. All fiberglass insulation products, specified herein, shall be manufactured from recycled glass with a minimum of 30% post consume recycled content by weight. Contractor shall submit manufacturers certification of recycled content for approval.
1. All fiberglass insulation products used for ductwork, piping, or equipment insulation shall be formaldehyde free.
- B. Adhesives:
1. All adhesives used on this project shall be of the type having limited capability to emit volatile organic compounds. Each adhesive shall meet the following emission factor limits:

Total VOC's	10.0 mg/m3/hr.
Formaldehyde	0.05mg/m3/hr.
2-Ethyl-1-Hexanol	3.0 mg/m3/hr.
 2. The contractor shall submit a cut sheet and MSDS sheet for each adhesive to be used in the building mechanical system, highlighting VOC limits.
- C. Sealants:
1. All sealants used in mechanical systems shall be of the low volatile organic compound emitting type. All sealants shall have emission characteristics that do not exceed a VOC limit of 250 g/L. The contractor shall provide a cut sheet and MSDS sheet for each sealant to be used in the building mechanical system, highlighting VOC limits.

2.2 INSULATION FOR PIPING

- A. Piping systems described shall be insulated as follows, including all flanges, fittings, valves, expansion joints, vents, drains and all other parts of the system. All piping subject to freezing such as in outdoor air or discharge plenums or outdoors shall be insulated with a minimum of 2" insulation.
- B. Insulation on all cold surfaces must be applied with a continuous unbroken vapor seal. Hangers, supports, anchors, etc. that are secured directly to cold surfaces must be adequately insulated and vapor sealed to prevent condensation.
- C. Insulation for outdoor piping shall be as described in Weatherproofing Finishes for Outdoor Insulation.
- D. Schedule of Insulation Type and Minimum Thickness:

Piping System	Thickness	Type
Chilled water supply and return	1"	P-1
Up to 1 ½" 2" and over	1-1/2"	P-1
Hot-cold supply and return, mains and run outs ½" (45°F to 170°F)		
Up to 1-1/2" I.P.S.	1-1/2"	P-1
2" to 6" I.P.S.	2"	P-1
Over 6" I.P.S.	2-1/2"	P-1
Refrigerant suction	1-1/2"	P-1
Outdoor domestic water (for lengths see Plumbing Drawings)	2"	P-1
Drain from A.C. units, fan coil units, cooling coil drip pans, and miscellaneous piping subject to sweating.	½"	P-2
Domestic make-up water.	½"	P-2
Hot water supply and return (100°F to 205°F)		
up to 1-1/2"	1"	P-3
2" and above	2"	P-3

Piping System	Thickness	Type
Low pressure steam (0 to 15 psig) condensate return, humidification steam and condensate pump discharge up to 1-12" I.P.S. 2" to 6" I.P.S. over 6"	1-1/2" 3" 3-1/2"	P-3 P-3 P-3
Steam humidification piping	Same as low pressure steam piping.	Same as low pressure steam piping.
Snow melting supply and return.		
Up to 1-1/2"	1"	P-3
2" and above	2"	P-3
Fuel oil supply and return.	1"	P-3
Steam safety and relief.	1"	P-3
Engine exhaust and muffler.	3"	P-4

E. Type P-1 Glass Fiber for Cold Pipes:

1. Insulation shall be glass fiber with a maximum K factor of .24 at 75 degrees F mean temperature with factory applied all-service jacket.
2. Insulation shall be rigid, molded, one-piece, fiberglass insulation that is bonded with thermosetting resin, similar to Schuller Micro-Lok with AP-T Plus Jacket.
3. The longitudinal lap of the All Purpose Jacket shall have a pressure sensitive tape lap sealing system. Butt joints shall be sealed using manufacturer supplied butt strips.
4. All fittings, valves, flanges and pipe terminations shall be fully insulated with glass fiber insulation and molded fitting covers. Thickness of insulation shall be at least as great as that on the adjoining pipe and shall be vapor sealed.
5. Flange insulation shall extend a minimum of 1" beyond the end of the bolts, and the bolt area shall be filled with Mineral Wool Cement.

F. Type P-2 Glass Fiber for Anti-Sweat Insulation:

1. Same material and application techniques as for Type P-1.

G. Type P-3 Glass Fiber for Hot Pipes:

1. Insulation shall be glass fiber with a maximum K factor of .24 at 75

degrees mean temperature and shall be furnished with a factory applied all-service jacket.

2. Insulation shall be capable of continuous service at a pipe temperature of 450°F without oxidation, burnout of binders, or development of odors or smoke.
3. Insulation shall be rigid, molded, one piece fiberglass insulation that is bonded with thermosetting resin, similar to Schuller Micro-Lok with AP-T Plus Jacket.
4. The longitudinal lap of the All Purpose Jacket shall have a pressure sensitive tape sealing system. Butt joints shall be sealed using manufacturer supplied butt strips.
5. All fittings, valves, flanges and pipe terminations shall be fully insulated with glass fiber insulation and molded fitting covers. Thickness of insulation shall be at least as great as that on the adjoining pipe.
6. Flange insulation shall extend a minimum of 1" beyond the end of the bolts, and the bolt area shall be filled with Mineral Wool Cement.

H. Type P-4 Calcium Silicate Pipe Insulation:

1. Insulation shall be 11 lbs per cu. ft. density molded hydrous calcium silicate with a maximum K factor of 0.42 at 200 degrees F. mean temperature. Insulation shall be fastened in place with 16 gauge copper-clad wire on 18" maximum centers.
 - (a) Fittings and valves for pipe sizes smaller than 4" shall be insulated and finished with Insulating and Finishing Cement to a thickness equal to the adjoining pipe insulation. Fittings and valves for pipe sizes 4" and larger shall be insulated with segments of the molded insulation wired securely in place and finished with a smoothing coat of finishing cement.

I. Provide insulation of thickness shown for piping which is electrically traced. Note that insulation is to be provided by this trade over electric tracing provided by the electrical trade. Insulation Types are as specified under "Insulation For Piping".

1. The following piping shall be specially insulated:
 - (a) Outdoor Condenser Water
 - (b) Outdoor Domestic Water
2. Staples for fastening shall not be used in order to prevent possible short circuiting of electric wires. Use stainless steel bands.

3. All piping shall be insulated as described under "Insulation For Piping" except thicknesses shall not be less than as follows:

2½" for all pipe sizes.	-20°F OUTDOOR DESIGN
-------------------------	----------------------------

2.3 INSULATION FOR SHEET METAL

- A. Note that ductwork and casings which are acoustically lined, as described elsewhere, need not be insulated on the exterior.
- B. The exception to the above is that acoustically lined ductwork above roof shall be insulated on the exterior.
- C. Insulate sheet metal as follows:
1. All air conditioned and/or heated low pressure supply ductwork from fan discharge and from devices which reduce air pressure to diffusers, grilles and registers including diffuser plenums - 1-1/2" Type D-1 for round ducts and concealed rectangular ducts - 1" Type D-2 for exposed rectangular ducts.
 - (a) Note that insulation (with vapor barrier) shall be continuous across all duct joints, hot water reheat coil pipe bends (insulated end caps), diffusers, etc. so as to provide a continuous, fully insulated with uninterrupted vapor barrier from the fan discharge to the diffusers.
 2. All return air ductwork in non-conditioned spaces shall be insulated similar to low pressure supply ductwork.
 - (a) Ceilings of conditioned spaces shall not require return ductwork insulation except for ceiling space located below roofs where return ductwork shall be insulated similar to low pressure supply ductwork.
 - (b) Note that insulation (with vapor barrier) shall be continuous across all duct joints, hot water reheat coil pipe bends (insulated end caps), diffusers, etc. so as to provide a continuous, fully insulated with uninterrupted vapor barrier from the fan discharge to the diffusers.
 3. All medium pressure ductwork from fan discharge to any air terminal device which reduces air pressure - 1-1/2" Type D-1 for round ducts and concealed rectangular. 1" Type D-2 for exposed rectangular ducts. All low pressure ductwork from air terminal device which reduces pressure to diffusers, grilles, and registers - 1-1/2" Type D-1.

- (a) Note that insulation (with vapor barrier) shall be continuous across all duct joints, hot water reheat coil pipe bends (insulated end caps) diffusers, etc. so as to provide a continuous, fully insulated with uninterrupted vapor barrier from the fan discharge to the diffusers.
- 4. Ducts and sheet metal plenums behind louvers containing all or a percentage of outside air on inlet side of air handling units and ventilation fans - 2" Type D-2.
- 5. All supply air sheet metal plenums - 2" Type D-2.
- 6. Outdoor ducts whether acoustically lined or not shall be insulated with 2" thick type D-2 and then weather proofed as specified under Weatherproofing Finishes for Outdoor Insulation. Exceptions: Toilet exhaust, general exhaust, smoke exhaust and stair pressurization ductwork.
- 7. Exhaust air ductwork from automatic dampers to discharge louvers (including sheet metal plenums behind louvers) - 2" type D-2.
- 8. Non air conditioned and non heated outside air supply (except in unheated areas such as garages) - 2" type D-1 for concealed ducts, 2" type D-2 for exposed ducts.
- 9. Non heated air exhaust (i.e., unheated garage, etc.) running through heated or air conditioned spaces - 2" type D-3 for concealed ducts, 2" type D-4 for exposed ducts.
- 10. All outside air supply (other than garage) - 2" Type D-2.
- 11. Exhaust air ductwork from discharge of emergency generator fan to louver (including duct plenum behind louver) - 2" Type D-2.

D. Type D-1 Flexible Duct Insulation With Vapor Barrier:

- 1. Flexible duct insulation shall be 1 lb per cu. ft. density glass fiber with a maximum K factor of 0.29 at 75 degrees F. mean temperature, with reinforced foil-faced, flame resistant kraft vapor barrier.
- 2. Insulation shall be secured with duct adhesive. All joints shall be sealed by adhering a 2" sealing lap at all joints with vapor barrier adhesive or 3" strips of vapor barrier jacket applied with vapor barrier adhesive. Insulation shall then be fastened with 16 gauge copper-clad wire or fiberglass cord on 12" centers. On ducts over 24" wide, welded pins & clips shall be used on the underside.

3. Exposed round shall have a white vinyl reinforced foil vapor barrier. Application same except wires shall be omitted and blanket shall be secured by stapling 2" longitudinal lap. Staples shall be coated with vapor barrier coating.

E. Type D-2 Rigid Duct Insulation With Vapor Barrier:

1. Rigid duct insulation shall be 4.2 lbs per cu. ft. density glass fiber with maximum K factor of .24 at 75 degrees F mean temperature with vapor barrier facing.
2. Insulation shall be impaled over welded pins applied to duct surface on 12" to 18" centers. Use a minimum of two rows of fasteners on each side of duct. Secure insulation with suitable speed washers or clips firmly imbedded into insulation.
3. All joints and voids in the insulation shall be filled with Mineral Wool Cement. All joints, speed washers and breaks in the vapor barrier shall be sealed with 3" wide strips of the vapor barrier facing adhered with vapor barrier adhesive.
4. Exposed duct work shall have a white reinforced foil vapor barrier facing. Care shall be taken in sealing joints speed washers, etc. with matching strips of vapor barrier to insure good appearance.

F. Type D-3 Flexible Duct Insulation For Hot Ducts:

1. Flexible duct insulation shall be 1 lb per cu. ft. density glass fiber with a maximum K factor of 0.29 at 75 degrees F. mean temperature.
2. Insulation shall be secured with a Benjamin-Foster 85-20 adhesive. Butt all edges of insulation on exposed ducts and lap all edges of insulation 2" on concealed ducts. Insulation shall then be fastened with 16 gauge copper-clad wire on 12" centers.
3. Exposed ducts shall have white, reinforced foil facing. Secured by stapling a 2" longitudinal lap and eliminate wire.

G. Type D-4 Rigid Duct Insulation For Hot Ducts:

1. Rigid duct insulation shall be 4.2 lbs per cu. ft. density glass fiber with maximum K factor of .24 at 75 degrees F mean temperature with fire retardant vapor barrier facing.
2. Insulation shall be impaled over welded pins applied to duct surface on 12" to 18" centers. Use a minimum of two rows of fasteners on each side of duct. Secure insulation with suitable speed washers or clips firmly imbedded into insulation.

3. All joints and voids in the insulation shall be filled with Mineral Wool Cement.
4. Exposed ductwork shall have a white vinyl reinforced foil vapor barrier facing. Care shall be taken in sealing joints speed washers, etc. with matching strips of vapor barrier to insure good appearance.

2.4 INSULATION FOR EQUIPMENT, BREECHINGS, & KITCHEN EXHAUST

- A. The following Cold Equipment shall be insulated with Vapor Barrier Board Insulation using Type E-1 insulation.
1. Centrifugal Refrigeration Equipment - 2 inches.
 2. Evaporators, Dehumidifiers and Exchangers - 2 inches.
 3. Chilled Water Pumps, Secondary Water Pumps, and Expansion Tanks - 1 inch.
 4. Single Inlet Fans Downstream of Cooling Coils - 2 inches.
- B. The following Hot Equipment shall be insulated with Semi-Rigid Board Insulation using Type E-2 Insulation.
- C. The following Hot Equipment shall be insulated with Semi-Rigid Board Insulation using Type E-2 Insulation.
1. Hot Water Expansion Tanks -)1 inch.
)250°F
)Generators - 1 inch.
)250°F max.
- D. The following Equipment and Systems shall be insulated with high temperature block insulation using Type E-3 insulation.
1. Boiler - 2 inch -)Packaged Boilers are usually insulated at Factory.
 2. Boiler Breechings - 2 inch.
 3. Kitchen Range Exhaust Ducts, Casings, and Fans - 2 inch.
 4. Branch ducts from other equipment in kitchen area such as dishwasher, etc. - 1 inch.
- E. Type E-1 Glass Fiber Rigid Equipment Insulation With Vapor Barrier:
1. Insulation shall be 4.2 lb. per cu. ft. density glass fiber with vapor barrier facing and having a maximum K factor of 0.24 at 75 degrees F mean temperature.

2. Insulation shall be firmly held in place with copper clad wire or pins and clips on 12" centers.
3. All joints and voids in the insulation shall be filled with mineral wool cement. All joints and breaks in the vapor barrier shall be sealed with strips of the vapor barrier facing adhered with vapor barrier adhesive.
4. Finish shall consist of imbedding an open weave glass fabric (20 x 20) into wet coating of lagging adhesive over-lapping the seams at least 2". A finish coat of lagging adhesive shall then be applied.
5. Sections of equipment requiring periodic servicing such as heads and pumps shall be insulated with sheet metal covers lined with 4.2 lb. density fiber glass board.

F. Type E-2 Glass Fiber Rigid Equipment Insulation:

1. Insulation shall be 4.2 lb. per cubic foot density glass fiber having a maximum K factor of .24 at 75 degrees F mean temperature.
2. Insulation shall be firmly held in place with copper-clad wire or pins and clips on 12" centers.
3. All joints and voids in the insulation shall be filled with mineral wool cement.
4. Over the insulation apply 1" galvanized wire netting secured to the bands or wires and pulled down tight. They apply 1 coat of Insulating and Finishing Cement troweled to a smooth finish.
5. Exposed equipment shall be finished by embedding open weave glass fabric (20 x 20) into wet coating of lagging adhesive overlapping seams 2". A finished coat of lagging adhesive shall then be applied.
6. Sections of equipment requiring periodic servicing such as heads and pumps shall be insulated with sheet metal covers lined with 4.2 lb. density fiber glass board.

G. Type E-3 High Temperature Block Insulation:

1. High temperature insulation shall be 11 lbs. per cu. ft. density molded hydrous calcium silicate with a maximum K factor of 0.42 at 200 degrees F mean temperature.
2. Insulation shall be securely wired in place with copper clad wire or galvanized steel bands ($\frac{1}{2}$ " x .015) on 12" centers.

3. All joints and voids of insulation shall be filled and pointed with mineral wool cement.
4. Over the insulation apply 1" galvanized wire netting secured to the bands or wires and pulled down tight. They apply 1/4" thick coat of Insulating and Finishing Cement trowelled to a smooth finish. This applies to both exposed and concealed work.
5. For kitchen exhaust ducts exposed in finished spaces cover the cement finish with glass cloth set in adhesive.
6. Sections of equipment requiring periodic servicing shall be insulated with aluminum covers lined with the same thickness of material as the adjoining insulation.

2.5 WEATHERPROOFING FINISHES FOR OUTDOOR INSULATION

A. Outdoor Round Duct:

1. Ductwork shall be insulated as specified under "Insulation for Sheet Metal" and provided with a weatherproof finish as described herein.
2. Finish with a .016" thick aluminum jacket which has a factory applied moisture barrier. For all applications where it is available, the jacketing shall be factory attached to the insulation and installed per manufacturer's recommendation.
3. Where field applied jacketing must be used it shall be applied with 2" overlap facing down from the weather and shall be secured with an aluminum band (1/2" x .020"), and seals applied on 12" centers with bands applied directly over butt overlaps. As an alternate the jacketing may be applied with Pli-Grip Rivets. Where jacketing is cut out or abuts an uninsulated surface, the joint shall be sealed with Insul-Coustic Sure Joint 405, or BF 30-45 Foam Seal.
4. Fittings shall be insulated and finished with mitered sections of the insulation with factory attached aluminum jackets installed per manufacturer's recommendation.

B. Outdoor Equipment, Rectangular Duct Work and Irregular Surfaces:

1. Ductwork, equipment and irregular surfaces shall be insulated as specified under this section and provided with a weatherproof finish as described herein.
2. The surfaces shall be weather protected with two coats of Insulcoustic VI-AC Mastic, I-C 551, or Benjamin Foster GPM Mastic with open weave glass cloth membrane imbedded between the coats. The total thickness of the coating shall be a minimum of 1/8".

C. Outdoor Piping:

1. Piping shall be insulated as specified under "Insulation for Piping" and provided with a weatherproof finish as described herein.
2. Finish with a .016" thick aluminum jacket which has a factory applied moisture barrier. For all applications where it is available, the jacketing shall be factory attached to the insulation and installed per manufacturer's recommendation.
3. Where field applied jacketing must be used, it shall be applied with 2" overlap facing down from the weather and shall be secured with an aluminum band ($\frac{1}{2}$ " x .020"), and seals applied on 12" centers with bands applied directly over butt overlaps. As an alternate, the jacketing may be applied with Pli-Grip Rivets. Where jacketing is cut out or abuts an uninsulated surface, the joint shall be sealed with Insul-Coustic Sure Joint 405, or BF 30-45 Foam seal.
4. Fittings and valves shall be insulated and finished with mitered sections of the insulation with factory attached aluminum jackets installed per manufacturer's recommendation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Install materials after ductwork has been tested and approved.
- B. Clean surfaces for adhesives.
- C. Do not startup and operate chilled water system prior to completion of insulation for the entire chilled water piping system and complete closure of building from the external atmosphere.
- D. Do not operate air handling system with conditioned air prior to completion of insulation of the entire duct distribution system for that air handling system.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Insulation shall be applied on clean dry surfaces, after inspection and release for insulation application.
- B. Insulation shall be continuous through wall and ceiling openings and sleeves. Where insulated piping or ductwork pierces fire rated partitions, walls, and floors, substitute anhydrous calcium silicate insulation with vapor barrier in lieu of fiberglass for a minimum of 8" from wall, to produce a hard surface for fire resistive packing.

- C. Insulation on cold surfaces where vapor barrier jackets are used shall be applied with a continuous, unbroken vapor seal. Hangers, supports, anchors, etc., that are secured directly to cold services shall be adequately insulated and vapor sealed to prevent condensation.
- D. Inserts shall be installed at hangers for cold insulated piping. Inserts between the pipe and pipe hangers shall consist of rigid pipe insulation of equal thickness to the adjoining insulation and shall be provided with vapor barrier where required. Inserts shall have sufficient compressive strength so that when used in combination with a sheet metal shield, they support the weight of the pipe and the fluid in it without crushing the insulation.

3.3 SCHEDULE

- A. As described under products.

END OF SECTION 15250

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 15430 - PLUMBING - SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following plumbing specialties:

1. Backflow preventers.
2. Water regulators.
3. Balancing valves.
4. Thermostatic water mixing valves.
5. Water tempering valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Hose stations.
8. Key-operation hydrants.
9. Wheel-handle wall hydrants.
10. Trap seal primer valves.
11. Drain valves.
12. Miscellaneous piping specialties.
13. Sleeve penetration systems.
14. Flashing materials.
15. Cleanouts.
16. Floor drains.
17. Trench drains.
18. Roof drains.
19. Solids interceptors.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Meters and Gages" for water meters, thermometers, and pressure gages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic piping materials:

1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
2. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
3. PUR: Polyurethane plastic.
4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide components and installation capable of producing piping systems with following minimum working-pressure ratings, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Domestic Water Piping: 125 psig (860 kPa).
2. Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
3. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
4. Force-Main Piping: 100 psig (690 kPa).

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include rated capacities and shipping, installed, and operating weights. Indicate materials, finishes, dimensions, required clearances, and methods of assembly of components; and piping and wiring connections for the following:

1. Backflow preventers and water regulators.
2. Balancing valves, water filters, and strainers.
3. Thermostatic water mixing valves and water tempering valves.
4. Water hammer arresters, air vents, and trap seal primer valves and systems.
5. Drain valves, hose bibbs, hydrants, and hose stations.
6. Outlet boxes and washer-supply outlets.
7. cleanouts, floor drains, open receptors, trench drains, and roof drains.

8. Air-admittance valves, vent caps, vent terminals, and roof flashing assemblies.
 9. solids interceptors.
 10. Sleeve penetration systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
 - C. Field test reports.
 - D. Maintenance Data: For plumbing specialties to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 1. Backflow preventers and water regulators.
 2. Thermostatic water mixing valves and water tempering valves.
 3. Trap seal primer valves and systems.
 4. Hose stations and hydrants.
 5. solids interceptors.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of plumbing specialties and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Plumbing specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for piping materials and installation.
- E. NSF Compliance:
 1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components. Include marking "NSF-pw" on plastic potable-water piping and "NSF-dwv" on plastic drain, waste, and vent piping.
 2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects, Sections 1 through 9," for potable domestic water plumbing specialties.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Water Filter Cartridges: Equal to 200 percent of amount installed for each type and size indicated.
 - 2. Operating Key Handles: Equal to 100 percent of amount installed for each key-operated hose bibb and hydrant installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the products specified.

2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Ames Co., Inc.
 - 2. Cla-Val Co.
 - 3. CMB Industries, Inc.; Febco Backflow Preventers.
 - 4. Mueller Co.; Hersey Meters Div.
 - 5. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - 6. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- B. General: ASSE standard, backflow preventers.
 - 1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
 - 2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Bronze, cast-iron, steel, or stainless-steel body with flanged ends.
 - (a) Interior Lining: AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating for backflow preventers having cast-iron or steel body.
 - 3. Interior Components: Corrosion-resistant materials.

4. Exterior Finish: Polished chrome plate if used in chrome-plated piping system.
 5. Strainer: On inlet.
- C. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001, with floating disc and atmospheric vent.
- D. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011, nickel plated, with nonremovable and manual drain features, and ASME B1.20.7, garden-hose threads on outlet. Units attached to rough-bronze-finish hose connections may be rough bronze.
- E. Intermediate Atmospheric-Vent Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1012, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include inlet screen and two independent check valves with intermediate atmospheric vent.
- F. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1013, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include outside screw and yoke gate valves on inlet and outlet, and strainer on inlet; test cocks; and pressure-differential relief valve with ASME A112.1.2 air-gap fitting located between two positive-seating check valves.
1. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- G. Double-Check Backflow Prevention Assemblies: ASSE 1015, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include shutoff valves on inlet and outlet, and strainer on inlet; test cocks; and two positive-seating check valves.
1. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- H. Antisiphon-Pressure-Type Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1020, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include shutoff valves, spring-loaded check valve, spring-loaded floating disc, test cocks, and atmospheric vent.
1. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- I. Dual-Check-Valve-Type Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1024, suitable for continuous pressure application. Include union inlet and two independent check valves.
- J. Dual-Check-Valve-Type Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1032, suitable for continuous pressure application for carbonated beverage dispensers. Include stainless-steel body; primary and secondary checks; ball check; intermediate atmospheric-vent port for relieving carbon dioxide; and threaded ends, NPS 3/8 (DN 10).
- K. Reduced-Pressure Detector Assembly Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1047, FM approved or UL listed, and suitable for continuous pressure application. Include outside screw and yoke gate valves on inlet and outlet, and strainer on inlet. Include test cocks; pressure-differential relief valve with ASME A112.1.2 air-gap fitting located between two positive-seating check valves; and bypass with displacement-type water meter, valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

1. Pressure Loss: 12 psig (83 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- L. Double-Check Detector Assembly Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1048, FM approved or UL listed, and suitable for continuous pressure application. Include outside screw and yoke gate valves on inlet and outlet, and strainer on inlet. Include test cocks; two positive-seating check valves; and bypass with displacement-type water meter, valves, and double-check backflow preventer.
1. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- M. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers: ASSE 1052, suitable for at least 3-gpm (0.19-L/s) flow and applications with up to 10-foot head of water (30-kPa) back pressure. Include two check valves; intermediate atmospheric vent; and nonremovable, ASME B1.20.7, garden-hose threads on outlet.
- N. Back-Siphonage Backflow Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1056, suitable for continuous pressure and backflow applications. Include shutoff valves, check valve, test cocks, and vacuum vent.

2.3 WATER REGULATORS

- A. Manufacturers:.
1. Cla-Val Co..
 2. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 3. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- B. General: ASSE 1003, water regulators, rated for initial working pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa) minimum. Include integral factory-installed or separate field-installed, Y-pattern strainer.
1. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
 - (a) General-Duty Service: Single-seated, direct operated, unless otherwise indicated.
 - (b) Booster Heater Water Supply: Single-seated, direct operated with integral bypass.
 2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Bronze or cast-iron body with flanged ends. Include AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, interior epoxy coating for regulators with cast-iron body.
 - (a) Type: Single-seated, direct operated.
 - (b) Type: Pilot-operated, single- or double-seated, cast-iron-body main valve, with bronze-body pilot valve.
 3. Interior Components: Corrosion-resistant materials.

4. Exterior Finish: Polished chrome plate if used in chrome-plated piping system.
5. Strainer on inlet.

2.4 BALANCING VALVES

- A. Balancing Valves: Adjustable, with two readout ports and memory setting indicator. Include manufacturer's standard hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

1. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Amtrol, Inc.
 - (b) Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - (c) Armstrong-Yoshitake, Inc..
 - (d) ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - (e) Taco, Inc.
 - (f) Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze body with brass ball, adjustment knob, calibrated nameplate, and threaded or solder-joint ends.
3. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze, Y-pattern body with adjustment knob and threaded ends.
4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Cast-iron, Y-pattern body with bronze disc and flanged or grooved ends.

2.5 THERMOSTATIC WATER MIXING VALVES 60° - 85°

- A. Manufacturers:
 1. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 2. Leonard Valve Company.
 3. Mark Controls Corp.; Powers Process Controls.
 4. Symmons Industries, Inc.
- B. General: ASSE 1017, manually adjustable, thermostatic water mixing valve with bronze body. Include check stop and union on hot- and cold-water-supply inlets, adjustable temperature setting, and thermometer.

1. Type: Bimetal thermostat, operation and pressure rating 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum.
 2. Type: Liquid-filled motor, operation and pressure rating 100 psig (690 kPa) minimum.
- C. Thermostatic Water Mixing Valves: Unit, with the following:
1. Piping, valves, and unions. Include thermometer if not in cabinet.
 2. Piping Component Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 3. Cabinet: **[Recessed]** **[Surface]**-mounting steel box with steel hinged door, white enameled finish, and thermometer in front.
 4. Cabinet: **[Recessed]** **[Surface]**-mounting stainless-steel box with stainless-steel hinged door and thermometer in front.
- D. Manifolded, Thermostatic Water Mixing-Valve Assemblies: Factory-fabricated unit consisting of parallel arrangement of thermostatic water mixing valves.
1. Arrangement: One large-flow, thermostatic water mixing valve with flow-control valve, pressure regulator, inlet and outlet pressure gages, and one small-flow, thermostatic water mixing valve with flow-control valve. Include outlet thermometer, factory- or field-installed inlet and outlet valves, and other indicated options.
 2. Include piping, valves, and unions.
 3. Piping Component Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 4. Cabinet: **[Recessed]** **[Surface]**-mounting steel box with steel hinged door, white enameled finish, and thermometer in front.
 5. Cabinet: **[Recessed]** **[Surface]**-mounting stainless-steel box with stainless-steel hinged door and thermometer in front.

2.6 WATER TEMPERING VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Holby Valve Co., Inc.
 2. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- B. General: Manually adjustable, thermostatically controlled water tempering valve; bronze body; and adjustable temperature setting.

- C. System Water Tempering Valves: Piston or discs controlling both hot- and cold-water flow, capable of limited antiscald protection. Include threaded inlets and outlet.
 - 1. Finish: Chrome plated.
- D. Limited-Volume, Water Tempering Valves: Solder-joint inlets and NPS 3/4 (DN 20) maximum outlet.

2.7 STRAINERS

- A. Strainers: Y-pattern, unless otherwise indicated, and full size of connecting piping. Include ASTM A 666, Type 304, stainless-steel screens with 3/64-inch (1.2-mm) round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum steam working pressure, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze body, with female threaded ends.
 - 3. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Cast-iron body, with interior AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and flanged ends.
 - 4. Y-Pattern Strainers: Screwed screen retainer with centered blowdown.
 - (a) Drain: Factory- or field-installed, hose-end drain valve.
 - 5. T-Pattern Strainers: Malleable-iron or ductile-iron body with grooved ends; access end cap with drain plug and access coupling with rubber gasket.
 - 6. Basket Strainers: Bolted flange or clamp cover, and basket with lift-out handle.
 - (a) Type: Simplex with one basket.
 - (b) Drain: Factory- or field-installed, hose-end drain valve.
- B. Drainage Basket Strainers: Non-pressure-rated, cast-iron or coated-steel body; with bolted flange or clamp cover and drain with plug.
 - 1. Basket: Bronze or stainless steel with 1/8- or 3/16-inch- (3.2- or 4.8-mm-) diameter holes and lift-out handle.
 - 2. Female threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, and flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

2.8 KEY-OPERATION HYDRANTS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Josam Co.

2. Murdock, Inc.
 3. Simmons Manufacturing Co.
 4. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 5. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 6. Watts Industries, Inc.; Drainage Products Div.
 7. Woodford Manufacturing Co.
 8. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Jonespec Div.
 9. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Specification Drainage Operation.
- B. General: ASME A112.21.3M, key-operation hydrant with pressure rating of 125 psig (860 kPa).
1. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1 (DN 20 or DN 25) threaded or solder joint.
 2. Outlet: ASME B1.20.7, garden-hose threads.
 3. Operating Keys: Two with each key-operation hydrant.
- C. Nonfreeze Exposed-Outlet Wall Hydrants: ASSE 1019, self-drainable with integral nonremovable hose-connection [**vacuum breaker**] [**or**] [**backflow preventer**], casing and operating rod to match wall thickness, projecting outlet, and wall clamp.
1. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
 2. Nozzle and Wall Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- D. Nonfreeze Concealed-Outlet Wall Hydrants: ASSE 1019, self-drainable with flush-mounting box with cover, integral nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker or backflow preventer, casing and operating rod to match wall thickness, concealed outlet, and wall clamp.
1. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.
 2. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- E. Moderate-Climate, Concealed-Outlet Wall Hydrants: ASSE 1019, self-drainable with flush-mounting box with cover, integral nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker or backflow preventer, and concealed outlet.
1. Classification: Type A, for automatic draining with hose removed or Type B, for automatic draining with hose removed or with hose attached and nozzle closed.

2. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
 3. Box and Cover Finish: [**Satin**] [**Polished**] chrome plate.
- F. Hot and Cold, Nonfreeze Concealed-Outlet Wall Hydrants: With deep flush-mounting box with cover; hot- and cold-water casings and operating rods to match wall thickness; concealed outlet; wall clamps; and factory- or field-installed, nonremovable and manual drain-type, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052.
1. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- G. Nonfreeze Concealed-Outlet Ground Hydrants: Draining type with flush-mounting box with cover, casing and operating rod of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line, drain hole, and garden-hose threads complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
1. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- H. Nonfreeze Exposed-Outlet Ground Post Hydrants: Draining type for key or lever operation with bronze casing, cast-iron, or cast-aluminum casing guard; casing and operating rod of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line; drain hole; nonremovable, drainable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011 or backflow preventer complying with ASSE 1052; and garden-hose threads complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

2.9 WHEEL-HANDLE WALL HYDRANTS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
 2. B & K Industries, Inc.
 3. Mansfield Plumbing Products, Inc.
 4. NIBCO INC.
 5. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 6. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 7. Woodford Manufacturing Co.
 8. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Jonespec Div.
- B. Description: Frost-proof design similar to ASME A112.21.3M, for wall mounting with wheel-handle operation, NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20) threaded or solder-joint inlet, casing and operating rod to match wall thickness, and projecting outlet with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads on outlet. Include wall clamp; integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable, drainable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011] [or] [backflow preventer complying with ASSE

1052; and garden-hose threads complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

2.10 TRAP SEAL PRIMER VALVES

- A. Supply-Type Trap Seal Primer Valves: ASSE 1018, water-supply-fed type, with the following characteristics:
1. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Josam Co.
 - (b) MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.
 - (c) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - (d) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - (e) Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - (f) Watts Industries, Inc.; Drainage Products Div.
 - (g) Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - (h) Zurn Industries, Inc.; Jonespec Div.
 - (i) Zurn Industries, Inc.; Specification Drainage Operation.
 2. 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum working pressure.
 3. Bronze body with atmospheric-vented drain chamber.
 4. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded, union, or solder joint.
 5. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) threaded or solder joint.
 6. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

2.11 DRAIN VALVES

- A. Hose-End Drain Valves: MSS SP-110, NPS 3/4 (DN 20) ball valve, rated for 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP. Include two-piece, copper-alloy body with standard port, chrome-plated brass ball, replaceable seats and seals, blowout-proof stem, and vinyl-covered steel handle.
1. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
 2. Outlet: Short-threaded nipple with ASME B1.20.7, garden-hose threads and cap.

- B. Hose-End Drain Valve: MSS SP-80, gate valve, Class 125, ASTM B 62 bronze body, with NPS 3/4 (DN 20) threaded or solder-joint inlet and ASME B1.20.7, garden-hose threads on outlet and cap. Hose bibbs are prohibited for this application.
- C. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: MSS SP-110, ball valve, rated for 200-psig (1380-kPa) minimum CWP or MSS SP-80, Class 125, gate valve; ASTM B 62 bronze body, with NPS 1/8 (DN 6) side drain outlet and cap.

2.12 MISCELLANEOUS PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Water Hammer Arresters: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, metal-bellows type with pressurized metal cushioning chamber. Sizes indicated are based on ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Josam Co.
 - (b) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - (c) Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - (d) Zurn Industries, Inc.; Specification Drainage Operation.
- B. Water Hammer Arresters: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201, piston type with pressurized metal-tube cushioning chamber. Sizes indicated are based on ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - (a) Amtrol, Inc.
 - (b) Josam Co.
 - (c) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - (d) Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - (e) Watts Industries, Inc.; Drainage Products Div.
 - (f) Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - (g) Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- C. Hose Bibbs: Bronze body with replaceable seat disc complying with ASME A112.18.1M for compression-type faucets. Include NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 (DN 15 or DN 20) threaded or solder-joint inlet, of design suitable for pressure of at least 125 psig (860 kPa); integral [or field-installed,] nonremovable, drainable hose-connection vacuum breaker; and garden-hose threads complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.

1. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
 2. Finish for Service Areas: Chrome or nickel plated.
 3. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
 4. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
 5. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
 6. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
 7. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
 8. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.
- D. Air Vents: Float type for automatic air venting.
1. Bolted Construction: Bronze body with replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal float and stainless-steel mechanism and seat; threaded NPS 1/2 (DN 15) minimum inlet; 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F (60 deg C); and threaded vent outlet.
 2. Welded Construction: Stainless-steel body with corrosion-resistant metal float, stainless-steel mechanism and seat, threaded NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum inlet, 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum pressure rating, and threaded vent outlet.
- E. Roof Flashing Assemblies: Manufactured assembly made of **[6-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch- (2.4-mm-)]** thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least **[10 inches (250 mm)]** from pipe with galvanized steel boot reinforcement, and counterflashing fitting.
1. Manufacturer:
 - (a) Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
 2. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.
 3. Low-Silhouette Vent Cap: With vandal-proof vent cap.
 4. Extended Vent Cap: With field-installed, vandal-proof vent cap.
- F. Open Drains: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting, joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
- G. Deep-Seal Traps: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap seal primer valve connection.
1. NPS 2 (DN 50): 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum water seal.

2. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: 5-inch- (125-mm-) minimum water seal.
- H. Floor-Drain Inlet Fittings: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap seal primer valve connection.
 - I. Fixed Air-Gap Fittings: Manufactured cast-iron or bronze drainage fitting with semiopen top with threads or device to secure drainage inlet piping in top and bottom spigot or threaded outlet larger than top inlet. Include design complying with ASME A112.1.2 that will provide fixed air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
 - J. Stack Flashing Fittings: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
 - K. Vent Caps: Cast-iron body with threaded or hub inlet and vandal-proof design. Include vented hood and set-screws to secure to vent pipe.
 - L. Vent Terminals: Commercially manufactured, shop- or field-fabricated, frost-proof assembly constructed of galvanized steel, copper, or lead-coated copper. Size to provide 1-inch (25-mm) enclosed air space between outside of pipe and inside of flashing collar extension, with counterflashing.
 - M. Downspout Boots: ASTM A 48 (ASTM A 48M), gray-iron casting, with NPS 4 (DN 100) outlet; shop-applied bituminous coating; and inlet size to match downspout.
 - N. Downspout Boots: ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe.
 - O. Conductor Nozzles: Bronze body with threaded inlet for connected conductor size, and bronze wall flange with mounting holes.
1. Finish: **[Polished] [Nickel]** bronze.

2.13 SLEEVE PENETRATION SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturer:
 1. ProSet Systems, Inc.
- B. Description: UL 1479, through-penetration firestop assembly consisting of sleeve and stack fitting with firestopping plug.
 1. Sleeve: Molded PVC plastic, of length to match slab thickness and with integral nailing flange on one end for installation in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 2. Stack Fitting: ASTM A 48 (ASTM A 48M), gray-iron, hubless-pattern, wye-branch stack fitting with neoprene O-ring at base and gray-iron plug in thermal-release harness in branch. Include PVC protective cap for plug.
 - (a) Special Coating: Include corrosion-resistant interior coating on fittings for plastic chemical waste and vent stacks.

2.14 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. General Use: 4-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness.
 - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3-lb/sq. ft. (15-kg/sq. m), 0.0469-inch (1.2-mm) thickness.
 - 3. Burning: 6-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness.
- B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152 (ASTM B 152M), of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m or 0.41-mm thickness).
 - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft. (2.5 kg/sq. m or 0.27-mm thickness).
- C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch (1.01-mm) minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- D. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil (1.01-mm) minimum thickness.
- E. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- F. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- G. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- H. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

2.15 CLEANOUTS

- A. Cleanouts: Comply with ASME A112.36.2M and ASME A112.3.1.
 - 1. Application: Floor cleanout, wall cleanout and for installation in exposed piping.
 - 2. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Josam Co.;
 - (b) Josam Co., Blucher-Josam Div.
 - (c) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.;
 - (d) Tyler Pipe, Wade Div.;

- (e) Watts Industries, Inc., Drainage Products Div.;
- (f) Zurn Industries, Inc., Jonespec Div.;
- (g) Zurn Industries, Inc., Specification Drainage Operation;

- 3. Body or Ferrule Material: **[Cast iron]**.
- 4. Clamping Device: As required.
- 5. Outlet Connection: Threaded, inside calk or spigot.
- 6. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
- 7. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads, set-screws or other device.
- 8. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper, polished bronze or stainless steel.
- 9. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
- 10. Top Loading Classification: Light Duty, medium Duty, heavy Duty, extra Heavy-Duty or special Duty.

2.16 FLOOR, ROOF, TRENCH, DRAINS (SEE SCHEDULE ON DRAWINGS)

- A. Floor, Roof, Trench, Drains: Comply with ASME A112.21.1M and ASME A112.21.1M with ASME A112.14.1, backwater valve, ASME A112.3.1.

- 1. Application: Area drain, Floor drain, Funnel floor drain, etc.
- 2. Manufacturers:
 - (a) Josam Co., Blucher-Josam Div.;
 - (b) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.;
 - (c) Tyler Pipe, Wade Div.;
 - (d) Watts Industries, Inc., Drainage Products Div.;
 - (e) Zurn Industries, Inc., Jonespec Div.;
 - (f) Zurn Industries, Inc., Specification Drainage Operation;

2.17 GREASE INTERCEPTORS (SEE DESCRIPTION ON DRAWINGS)

2.18 SOLIDS INTERCEPTORS

- A. Solids Interceptors:
 - 1. Manufacturers:

- (a) Josam Co.;
- (b) MIFAB Manufacturing, Inc.;
- (c) Rockford Sanitary Systems, Inc.;
- (d) Schier Products Co.;
- (e) Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.;
- (f) Town & Country Plastics, Inc.;
- (g) Tyler Pipe, Wade Div.;
- (h) Watts Industries, Inc., Drainage Products Div.;
- (i) Zurn Industries, Inc., Specification Drainage Operation;

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 15 Section 15051 "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
 - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install pressure regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and balance valve bypass. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install strainers on supply side of each control valve, pressure regulator, and solenoid valve.
- E. Install draining-type ground or ground post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. (0.75 cu. m) of crushed gravel around drain hole.
 - 1. Set ground hydrants with box flush with grade.
 - 2. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. (0.03 cu. m) of concrete block at grade.

- F. Install trap seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- G. Install expansion joints on vertical risers, stacks, and conductors if indicated.
- H. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m).
 - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- I. Install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor, for floor cleanouts for piping below floors.
- J. Install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall, for cleanouts located in concealed piping.
- K. Install flashing flange and clamping device with each stack and cleanout passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- L. Install vent flashing sleeves on stacks passing through roof. Secure over stack flashing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- M. Install frost-proof vent caps on each vent pipe passing through roof. Maintain 1-inch (25-mm) clearance between vent pipe and roof substrate.
- N. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 - 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
 - 3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - (a) Radius, 30 Inches (750 mm) or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch (6.35-mm) total depression.
 - (b) Radius, 30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm): Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
 - (c) Radius, 60 Inches (1500 mm) or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch (25-mm) total depression.

4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
1. Install roof-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 2. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- P. Install interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
1. Above-Floor Installation: Set unit with bottom resting on floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
 3. Recessed Floor Installation: Set unit in receiver housing having bottom or cradle supports, with receiver housing cover flush with finished floor.
 4. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.
 5. Coordinate oil-interceptor storage tank and gravity drain with Division 2 Section "Fuel-Oil Distribution."
- Q. Install grease recovery units on floor. Install trap, vent, and flow-control fitting according to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Install control panel adjacent to unit, unless otherwise indicated.
- R. Fasten wall-hanging plumbing specialties securely to supports attached to building substrate if supports are specified and to building wall construction if no support is indicated.
- S. Fasten recessed-type plumbing specialties to reinforcement built into walls.
- T. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting and recessed-type plumbing specialties.
- U. Install individual shutoff valve in each water supply to plumbing specialties. Use ball, gate, or globe valve if specific valve is not indicated. Install shutoff valves in accessible locations. Refer to Division 15 Section "Plumbing - Valves" for general-duty ball, butterfly, check, gate, and globe valves.

- V. Install air vents at piping high points. Include ball, gate, or globe valve in inlet and drain piping from outlet to floor drain.
- W. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.
- X. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 15 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect plumbing specialties to piping specified in other Division 15 Sections.
- D. Ground equipment.
- E. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- F. Connect plumbing specialties and devices that require power according to Division 16 Sections.
- G. Interceptor Connections: Connect piping, flow-control fittings, and accessories.
 - 1. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit, and flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic drawoff-type unit.
 - 2. Grease Recovery Units: Connect inlet, outlet, and vent piping; controls; electric power; and factory-furnished accessories to unit.
 - 3. Oil Interceptors: Connect inlet, outlet, vent, and gravity drawoff piping to unit; flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping; and gravity drawoff and suction piping to oil storage tank.
 - 4. Solids Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet.

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
 - 1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6-lb/sq. ft. (30-kg/sq. m), 0.0938-inch (2.4-mm) thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) thickness or thinner.

2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm), and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.
 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each piece of equipment.
1. Text: Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
 2. Refer to Division 15 Sections "Basic Plumbing Materials and Methods" and "Plumbing - Identification" for nameplates and signs.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled grease recovery units and their installation, including piping and electrical connections. Report results in writing.
1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain each piece of equipment. Refer to Division 1 Sections "Closeout Procedures" and/or "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 15430

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 15500 - HEATING, VENTILATION &
AIR CONDITIONING (PIPING)**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. All work associated with piping systems.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Section. 15010 - Basic Mechanical Requirements.
- C. Section. 15050 - Basic Materials, Methods and Requirements (Mechanical)
- D. This section is a part of each Division 15000 Section.
- E. Section 09900 - Painting

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/ASME B31.9 Building Services Piping.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer. Company specializing in piping systems with five years minimum experience.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Include product description, list of materials for each service, and locations.
- C. Submit manufacturers installation instructions under provision of Section 01300.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS FOR PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and fittings shall be fabricated per the following schedule:

SERVICE	SIZE	PIPE	FITTINGS
L.P. Steam (below 15 psi)	2-1/2" and under	Schedule 40, Seamless or ERW, ASTM-A53, Grade B	Malleable iron 150 lbs; cast iron 125 lbs; screwed or socket weld
See note	3"-10"	Schedule 40, Seamless or ERW	Schedule 40 weld end (butt weld)
	12"-24"	Standard weight (.375" wall) ASTM S-53, Seamless or ERW	Std. Wt. (.375" wall) welded (butt weld)
L.P. condensate return, drips and pumped discharge	2-1/2" and under	Sch. 80, Seamless	Iron class 150 lb. screwed or socket weld
	3"-10"	Sch. 40, Seamless	Sch. 40 weld end (butt weld)
	12"-24"	Std wt. (.375"wall), Seamless	St. wt. (.375" wall) weld end (butt weld)
Closed condenser, chilled, hot water, dual temp., and secondary water (up to 300 psi) - mains, risers, vents and reliefs	3 " a n d under	Schedule 40 ASTM-A53, Grade B, Seamless or ERW	150 psi and under, malleable iron 150 lb., screwed 151 psi-300 psi: Malleable iron 300 lb. screwed
	3"-10"	Schedule 40, Seamless or ERW	Sch. 40 weld end
	12"-24"	Standard weight (.375" wall) , Seamless or ERW	Std. Wt. (.375: wall) weld end
Secondary water branches risers to shut-off valves	3 " a n d under	Schedule 80, Seamless or ERW from main/risers to valves to units/equipment	150 psi and under: Malleable iron 150 lb. screwed 151 psi – 300 psi: Malleable iron 300 lb screwed
	3"-10"	Schedule 80, Seamless or ERW	Sch. 80 weld end
	4" and under	OPTION: (from valves to units – equipment): copper type 'L' hard ASTM-B88 drawn, provide – dielectric fitting between steel/valve and copper pipe	Wrought or copper, brazed (B cup-5) ASTM-B32, ANSI B16.22
	12"-145:	Standard weight (.375" wall) , Seamless or ERW	St. wt. (.375" wall) weld end

SERVICE	SIZE	PIPE	FITTINGS
Drain Pan Piping See Note 2	4" and under	Copper Type L hard drawn	Wrought or copper with lead free 95/5 solder or brazed
Domestic Water	3" and under	Copper Type L hard drawn	Wrought or copper with lead free 95/5 solder or brazed.
Vents and Reliefs		Same materials as pipe systems they serve	Same material and fittings as systems they serve.
High Temperature Hot Water	3" and under	Schedule 80 ASTM A-106 Grade B seamless	Malleable iron, 300 lb. class screwed or socket weld 300 lbs.
	3"-10"	Schedule 40, Seamless	Sch. 40 weld end (butt weld)
	12"-24"	Standard weight (.375" wall) Seamless	Std. Wt. (.375" wall) weld end (butt weld)
Fuel Oil Piping See "Fuel Oil Systems"			
Refrigerant Piping See "Section 15530"			
MRI Vent Piping		Aluminum piping (0.500 in wall thickness)	

NOTES

1. Unless specified otherwise, all steel piping shall be Type ASTM-A-53 Grade B seamless or ERW. Furnace butt weld pipe is not acceptable. All pipe shall be of the domestic manufacture, delivered to the job properly primed and marked and supplied with the interior surfaces clean and rust free. Each end shall be capped to avoid the rusting of the interior surface. Piping found to be in violation of this specification may be required to be removed from the job site whether or not already installed. Mill certifications from the pipe supplier shall be made available upon request.
 2. All copper tubing shall be not less than 99.9 percent pure copper, as manufactured by Revere Copper and Brass Co., Chase Brass and Copper Co., Inc. Bridgeport Brass Co., or other approved. Wherever possible, tubing shall be continuous with couplings up to 20 feet in length. Tubing shall conform to ASTM B88.
 3. ASME B31.1 Power Piping Code shall apply for all steam condensate systems over 150 psi @ 366°F (and or Local Jurisdictional Codes) and for high temperature hot water systems above 160 psi and 250°F.
- B. Piping specifications shall be submitted with shop drawings.

- C. All pipe fittings shall be of domestic manufacture in conformance with the following codes:
- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Cast iron fittings | ANSI B16.4 |
| Malleable iron fittings | ANSI B16-3 |
| Weld end fittings | ANSI B16-9, ASTM A-234 |
| Socket weld fittings | ANSI B16.11 |
| Copper fittings | ASTM B-32, ANSI B16.22 |
| Welded flanges | ASTM-A105; ANSI B16.5 |
| Cast copper | B16.18 |
| <i>Threaded Flanges</i> | |
| Cast Iron | ANSI B16.1 |
| Malleable Iron | ASTM A197 |
| Malleable Iron Unions | ASME B16.39 |
- D. Open condenser water systems are defined as systems in which the atmosphere is in direct contact with water in piping system via an open cooling tower.
- E. Galvanized steel pipe shall be hot dipped galvanized of Republic Steel Corporation, National Tube Co., Youngstown, or other approved manufacturer.
- F. Secondary water branches shall be shop fabricated. Steel branches shall be shop fabricated complete with valve and accessory fittings and suitable for welding to risers without further work. Copper branches similarly shall be shop fabricated with all accessories suitable for ready attachment to unit and steel branches. Provide a dielectric fitting between steel and copper pipe (a brass valve is not a substitute for a dielectric fitting).
- G. On 3" piping systems, the contractor shall have the option of using either screwed or weld end fittings unless otherwise noted in the Contract Documents, directed and/or compliance to local jurisdictional codes or authorities.

2.2 VALVES

- A. Furnish and install valves shown on the drawings, specified herein and/or necessary for the control and easy maintenance of all piping and equipment. All valves shall be first quality of approved manufacture, shall have proper clearances, and shall be tight at the specified test pressure. Each valve shall have the maker's name or brand, the figure or list number and guaranteed ANSI working pressure cast on the body and cast or stamped on the bonnet, or shall be provided with other means of easy identification. All valves of one type (gate, ball, butterfly) shall be the product of one manufacturer for that type of valve.
- B. Valves shall be a minimum working pressure and materials as fittings specified for the service except as herein modified. All gate and globe valves shall be suitable for repacking under pressure. Regardless of service, valves shall not be designated for less than 125 pounds per square inch steam working pressure.
- C. It is the intention to use ball and butterfly valves for shut-off wherever possible. Gate valves shall be used for steam systems where ball and butterfly valves may not be practical by pressure/temperature or local authority having jurisdiction.

D. The following chart designates valve categories for shut-off valves:

SHUT OFF VALVE SCHEDULE

	CATEGORY	SIZE	TYPE	MFG. AS STD.	FIG. #	RATING
V-1	Up to 150 psi CW, CHW, HW	2 ½" & down 3" & up	Ball Butterfly	Apollo Jamesbury	70-100 815L-11-2236TT	600# WOG ANSI 150#
V-2	151-300 psi CW, CHW, HW	2/ ½" & down 3" & up	Ball Butterfly	Apollo Jamesbury	70-100 830L-11- 22HMBT	600# WOG ANSI 300#
V-3	Steam & Condensate Up to 15 psi	2 ½" & down 3" & up	Ball Butterfly	Apollo Jamesbury	70-140-64 815L-11- 22HBTT	250 psi STM ANSI 150#
V-4	Steam & Condensate (Non Utility Company Steam) 16 psi - 125 psi & High Temp Hot Water up to 300°F	2 ½" & down 3" & up	Ball Butterfly	Apollo Jamesbury	70-140-64 830L-11- 22HMBT	250 psi ANSI 300#

NOTES:

SHUT OFF VALVE EQUIVALENT FIGURE SCHEDULE

VALVE TYPE	SERVICE	ANSI RATING	MAX. WORKING PRESSURE @ 200°F	MODEL
Ball	CW, CHW, HW		300 psi	Apollo 70-100 Milwaukee BA-100
Butterfly	CW, CHW. HW	150		Bray/McCannalock Series 41 (Lug Type) Keystone Series 372 DES (Lug Type) Winn S15L-1122 (Lug Type)

VALVE TYPE	SERVICE	ANSI RATING	MAX. WORKING PRESSURE @ 200°F	MODEL	
Butterfly (See Note)	CW, CHW, HW	300		Bray/McCannalock Keystone (Lug Type) Winn (Type)	Series 43 (Lug Type) Series 372-DES S30L-1122 (Lug Type)
Gate	up to 2- ½" Steam		150#	Stockham Powell Milwaukee	Figure No. B-120 Figure No. 2700 Figure No. 1151
	3" & up Steam		150#	Stockham Powell Milwaukee	Figure No. G623 Figure No. 1793 Figure No. F-2885M
	up to 2- 1½" Steam and Utility Company Steam		300#	Stockham Powell Milwaukee	Figure No. B-144 Figure No. 375 Figure No. 1182
	3" & up Steam and Utility Company Steam		300#	Stockham Powell Milwaukee	Figure No. F-667 Figure No. 1797 Figure No. F-2894M

NOTES:

1. Butterfly valves shall have gear operator 8" diameter and larger for ANSI 150 valves; 6" and larger for ANSI 300 valves. Valves smaller shall have multi-position latching handle.
2. Valves 4" and larger (all valve sizes for steam over 15 psig) in equipment area which is more than 8'-0" above finished floor shall be provided with operating chains, sprockets, and guides.
3. All ball valves shall have the following options:
 - a. Balancing stop for hydronic installations.
 - b. 2 1/4" stem extensions on insulated piping systems.
 - c. Stainless steel ball and stem, and multi-filled TFE seats for steam, condensate and high temperature hot water systems.
4. Valves for Con Edison Steam shall comply with Con Edison specifications.

5. Gate valves shall be Stockham, Powell or Milwaukee.
 - a. Bronze valves 3" or smaller shall be inside screw, traveling stem, bronze wedge.
 - b. Iron body valves 3" and above shall be outside screw and yoke, rising stem, bronze mounted.
6. Butterfly valves shall be high performance lug type Jamesbury, McCannalok, Grinnell Winn Series or Keystone 362/372 DES series. Valves shall be bi-directional dead end service, lug type ANSI Class 150 or 300.
 - a. The face-to-face dimensions must meet AP Spec I609 MSS SP 67.
 - b. Pressure vessel is to meet full ANSI ratings.
 - c. Valve is to seal bi-directional dead end service at full ANSI ratings. Valve shall hold full pressure with either flanged connection removed, in either direction.
 - d. Valves are to be able to take full rated differential pressure when dead-ended in either direction.
 - e. Valves shall have gear operator 8" and larger for ANSI 150 valves, and 6" and larger for ANSI 300 valves. Valves smaller shall have multi-positioned latching handle.
 - f. All valves shall be designed to ANSI B16.5 and B16.34.
 - g. All valves to be functionally tested, to include cycling the valve and topworks, measuring seating torque and verifying leaktight performance of seat.
 - h. The valve should be capable of thermal cycling over its complete pressure vessel rating.
 - i. The shaft packing must be capable of sealing at 1.5 times the pressure vessel rating.
 - j. The valve should be designed to convert from handle operation to automated valve operation without removing the valve from the pipeline.
 - k. There must be external indication of disc position.
 - l. Valve stem packing area shall be fully accessible for adjustment without removal of operator.'
 - m. If manually operated, the valve must have a positively retained shaft in case there is a failure of the shaft to disc attachment.
 - n. Self-lubricated bearings should be used. There will be a method of retention to prevent bearing movement.
 - o. No loose parts should be used to attach the shaft to the disc. Two or more pins should be used for complete attachment.

- p. A double offset shaft should be used to reduce seating torque.
 - q. Valves body material shall be carbon steel. Shafts shall be 17-4 PH stainless steel. Discs shall be 316 stainless steel. Stem seals shall be TFE. Seats shall be self-energizing TFE or self-energizing TFE totally encapsulating as elastomeric "O" ring. Metal springs or components shall not be used to and in seat sealing.
 - r. Seats shall be fully replaceable in the field.
 - s. Ductile iron body may be used for chilled water and condenser water service, at 150 psi max service. All other valve components shall be as specified.
- E. Lubricated plug valves at pump discharges shall be Nordstrom Valves, Inc. (Rockwell), Homestead or Stockham as follows:

CATEGORY	SIZE	FIGURE NO.	RATING
Up to 150 psi operating pressure	Up to 3"	142 wrench operated (screw)	200# cwp (190° # @ 200°F)
	3"-5"	143 wrench operated (screw)	200# cwp (190# @ 200°F)
	6"-12"	1169 worm gear operated (flgd)	200# cwp (190# @ 200°F)
	14"-30"	1169 worm gear operated (flgd)	150# cwp (135# @ 200°F)
151 psi to 300 psi	1"-2"	214 wrench operated (screw)	400# cwp @ 150° @ 250F)
	2"-5"	305 wrench operated (flgd)	400# cwp @ 150° @ 250F)
	6"-12"	1489 worm gear operated (flgd)	400# cwp @ 150° @ 250F)
	16"-24"	1589 worm gear operated (flgd)	400# cwp @ 150° @ 250F) (See Note 2)

NOTES:

1. Use Figure No. 1589 for systems with operating pressures greater than 135 psi at water temperature above 150°F.
2. Use with ANSI 300# flanges.
3. For hot water systems above 200°F, use valves listed for 151-300 psi operating pressures.
4. Lubricated plug.
5. Sealed port lubrication system.

6. Provide lubrication gun and spare box of lubricant for every four (4) valves.
7. Fixed gland adjustment when valve rating is 200 lb. WOG or higher to suit actual operating pressures.
8. Equipped with adjustable stops.
9. Factory lubricated.
10. Provide chain wheel drive and operator for valves 6" and larger that are located 96" or higher above floor.

F. Equivalent Lubricated Plug Valves

PSI	SIZE	MFG	FIGURE NO.	OPERATION
Up to 150 psi	Up to 3"	Walworth Homestead	1796 (screw) 611 (screw)	Wrench Wrench
	3" to 5"	Walworth Homestead	1797F (flange) 612	Wrench Wrench
	6" to 12"	Walworth Homestead	1707 612G	Worm Gear Operation Worm Gear Operation
	14"to 24"	Walworth Homestead	1703F 6129	Worm Gear Operation 175 CWP Worm Gear 150 CWP
151 to 300 psi	Up to 3"	Walworth Homestead	3412 702	Wrench ANSI 300
	6"-12"	Walworth Homestead	3622 721G	Worm Gear ANSI 300 Worm Gear Operation
	14"-24"	Walworth	3622	Worm Gear Operation

- G. Check valves other than multiport check valves at pumps shall be Stockham, Powell or approved equal. Bronze screwed for 2-1/2" and down with regrinding bronze disc and iron body above 3" with regrind - renew bronze disc, and seat ring with bolted cover. Pressure ratings equal or greater than ratings of shutoff valves scheduled.

Category	Size	MFG	Figure No.	Rating
V-1	Up to 2-1/2"	Powell Stockham Milwaukee	578 B321 509	Up to 150 PSI operating pressure

Category	Size	MFG	Figure No.	Rating
	3"	Powell Stockham Milwaukee	559 G-931 F-2974M	
V-2	Up to 2-1/2"	Powell Stockham Milwaukee	560-1 B-345 508	151 to 300 PSI
	3" and larger	Powell Stockham Milwaukee	576 F-947 F-2970	

- H. Multiport check valves at pump discharge shall be semi-steel installed at pump discharge as follows:

Cat.	Size	MFG	Figure No.	Rating
V-1	Up to 3"	Mueller	101 MAP Wafer	125# ANSI (175@100°F)
	4" and larger	Mueller	105 MAP Globe Type	125# ANSI (200#@150°F)
V-2	Up to 3"	Mueller	103 MAP Standard Wafer	250#ANSI (500#@150°F)
	4" and over	Mueller	M 107 MAP Globe Type	250# ANSI (500#@100°F)

NOTE

- For system pressures over 250 psi use 300# ANSI from 14" to 24" bronze body (300# PSI at 150°F).

I. Balancing Valves:

- Balancing valves shall be ball type for 2-1/2" and down, lubricated plug valves for above 3", and shall be full line size. At cooling towers use butterfly valves.
- Furnish and install in the return line from each piece of hydronic equipment (cabinet heaters, unit ventilators, unit heaters, fin tube, water coil, hydronic terminal equipment, etc.) a one piece, non-ferrous union type bronze/brass flow measuring and Balancing/shut-off valve combination. The flow element shall be a low loss/high signal Venturi type ($\pm 2\%$ accuracy) of one to ten rangeability, equipped with dual Pete's plug test ports for temperature, pressure and flow measurement. Balancing/shut off valves shall be ball type with large diameter plated ball, teflon seats, blow out proof stem with teflon packing and packing nut, full size handle with grip and memory stop. Entire assembly shall be rated to working pressures described in previous section of this specification.

J. Miscellaneous Notes:

1. Furnish valve tags as described elsewhere.
2. All radiators, hydronic equipment, etc., shall be individually valved on supply and return.
3. Furnish a portable meter complete with all accessories for measuring flows.
4. Furnish to the Owner, 6 sets of thermometers and pressure gauges.
5. On branch piping from hydronic main distribution piping (branch piping is defined as any piping from either main distribution piping that serves more than one piece of hydronic equipment) or branch piping from main distribution piping to vertical risers, provide an isolation valve on supply line and combination balancing and shut-off valve on return line.
6. Globe valves be of equivalent pressure ratings and manufacturer to that stated for gate valves.
7. Chilled water piping connections to air conditioning units shall include all necessary gate valves, air vent valves, drain connections and automatic valves.
8. Inverted ball float traps shall be used for venting water mains. Provide shut-off valve and strainer ahead of same.
9. Compression type, key operated air cocks shall be furnished and installed where required for additional venting. Cocks shall be 1/4" in size and shall be all bronze construction, at least two dozen keys shall be delivered to the Owner's representative for operating these cocks.
10. Drain cocks with threaded ends for hose connection shall be provided for any low points in the risers.

2.3 STRAINERS

- A. There shall be approved strainers in the inlet connections to each bucket or combination float and thermostatic steam trap, each water feeder and make-up connection, each water regulating valve, each pump, each vent, and each diaphragm valve. The intention is to protect by strainers, all apparatus of an automatic character whose proper functioning would be interfered with by dirt on that seat, or by scoring of the seat. Strainers shall be Sarco or approved.
- B. All strainers in waterlines (including all pump inlets) and in steam lines, shall be Y-pattern, set in a horizontal (or vertical downward) run of the pipe. Where this is not feasible strainers may be of enlarged-cross-section type. Strainers shall be so arranged as not to "trap" pipes, and to facilitate disconnection and opening-up for cleaning. Unless otherwise indicated, strainers shall be line size.

- C. All strainers shall have cast iron, semi-steel or bronze bodies equivalent to ratings specified in "valves" subjected, removable cylindrical or conical screens of monel or stainless steel and suitable flanges or tappings to connect with the piping they serve. They shall be of such a design as to allow blowing out of accumulated dirt, and to facilitate removal and replacement of a strainer screen, without disconnections of the main piping.
- D. Strainer screen perforations shall be 1/32" for steam and mixture of steam and condensate. Water 1/16" perforations for sizes up to 3"; 1/8" perforations for sizes 4" to 12".
- E. Provide approved valved and capped dirt blow off connections for each strainer 1-1/2" and larger, with the valve located 6" to 1'-0" below strainer or as directed.
- F. Nipples and valves to be full size of strainer blow off tapping. Strainers 1 1/4" and smaller to have capped nipples at least 6" long. For all strainers, the blow out connection is to terminate in an approved manner, at a point where there will be no risk of flooding or damage.
- G. All strainers shall be provided with flanged covers for screen removal in lieu of screwed covers for screen removal wherever obtainable.
- H. All strainer screens 8" and above shall be reinforced for the operating conditions.

2.4 EXPANSION JOINTS & LOOPS

- A. All piping shall be installed in such a manner as to allow for expansion and contraction by means of offsets, pipe loops or expansion joints without causing undue stress in piping or at connections to equipment. Where pipe offsets or loops are not detailed or dimensioned on drawings, the contractor is to submit calculations to show that the stress range of the pipe does not exceed 15000 psi.
- B. Expansion joints shall be the type, manufacturer and model number as indicated on drawings. Where no type or model number is indicated, any of the expansion joints described below may be used if they are suitable for design and operating conditions of temperature pressure and movement except that Bellow Expansion Joints and Expansion Compensators shall not be used for (a) steam with pressures over 15 psig for all sizes or (b) hydronic systems operating over 200 psig operating pressure in all sizes.
- C. All expansion joints shall be designed so that pressure containing components are in accordance with requirements as specified in ANSI B-31.1 Power Piping.
- D. All expansion joints and expansion compensators shall have a metal nameplate permanently attached bearing inscription of size, type, pressure rating, allowable movement, year of fabrication and manufacturers identification number.
- E. All pipe lines containing expansion joints shall be guided in accordance with expansion joint manufacturers instructions as substantiated by data in manufacturers catalog or separate data furnished with submittal drawings.

- F. Contractor, in conjunction with information provided by expansion joint manufacturer is to submit anchor load calculations for both operating and hydrostatic test conditions.
- G. Packed Slip Expansion Joints:
1. Packed slip expansion joints shall be weld end type designed for the injection of semi-plastic packing under full line pressure and shall be the manufacturer and model number indicated on drawings incorporating following:
 - (a) Sliding slip shall be constructed of A53 Gr B seamless pipe - schedule 80 for sizes to 16" inclusive and schedule 60 for sizes 18" to 24" and shall incorporate stainless steel stops welded in place to prevent disengagement of slip in event of anchor failure. Slip shall be dual chrome plated with a minimum of 1 mil hard chrome over 1 mil of crack free hard chrome. Plating thickness shall be verified by Permascope inspection in accordance with ASTM Standard B-499 and certification shall be furnished with expansion joint.
 - (b) Traverse chamber shall be seamless A-53 Grade B pipe or equivalent tubing with butt type circumferential welds only and shall be furnished with non-metallic flexible bronze filled teflon internal and external guides to prevent scoring or binding of sliding slip.
 - (c) Stuffing box shall be designed to provide an area of packing in contact with the sliding slip at least 15 times the nominal pipe diameter and shall incorporate one (1) packing cylinder for 1-1/2" thru 4" size and one (1) additional cylinder for each 3" of nominal pipe diameter. Packing cylinders shall be welded in place, be a minimum 2" diameter with internal acme threads with a discharge tip having a check valve effect to prevent blow back and permit adding packing under full line pressure and furnished with a matching plunger having a minimum 3/4" diameter tip. Expansion joints operating over 200 psig shall be furnished with packing cylinders having an integral stainless steel plug type safety valve for positive blow back protection.
 - (d) Stuffing box shall be packed with a combination of self lubricating teflon/graphite braided packing and flake Grafoil injectable packing. Teflon-asbestos and teflon semi-plastic injectable packings are not acceptable and shall not be used.
 - (e) Each expansion joint shall be furnished with a minimum of two (2) plugs of spare flake Grafoil semiplastic injectable packing for each packing cylinder. For system operating over 200 psig where expansion joints are furnished with packing cylinders having an integral stainless steel plug type safety valve, a tools shall be furnished to safely remove under full line pressure the impacted packing between safety valve and discharge tip. Where project contains more than one (1) expansion joint operating above 200 psig, a minimum of one (1) such tools shall be furnished for every five (5) expansion joints operating above 200 psig.

- (f) Expansion joints shall be as manufactured by Advanced Thermal Systems and shall be Type TP2W GBZ for 150 psig design condition and TP2W-131-150 GBBZ with Style GB Saf-T-Packer for over 150 psig design conditions. For expansion joints operating below 200°F, Style 200G packing with rubber and fiberglass sealing rings shall be used in lieu of Style 150 packing. Expansion joints as manufactured by Adsco and Yarway will be approved if they conform to all features specified above.
 - (g) Packed joints used for steam over 15 psig shall be 100% radiographed at factory.
2. Expansion joints shall be designed to accommodate an amount of traverse as shown in expansion joint designation as indicated on drawings or a total traverse greater than the combined extension and compression that must be accommodated after the expansion joint is installed including allowance for frame shortening in buildings with concrete columns. Submittal drawings are to indicate amount of factory precompression as well as available movement in compression and extension from the installed position.

H. Packed Flexible Ball Joints:

1. Packed flexible ball joints shall be weld and type designed for injection of semi-plastic packing under full line pressure and shall be the manufacturer and model number indicated on drawings incorporating the features indicated below:
- (a) Ball sphere shall be dual chrome plated with a minimum of 1 mil hard chrome over 1 mil of crack free hard chrome. Plating thickness shall be verified by Permascope inspection in accordance with ASTM Standard B-499 and certification shall be furnished with expansion joint.
 - (b) Ball socket shall be one piece with integral socket/retainer to eliminate the need for threaded caps or bolted retainer flanges.
 - (c) Ball socket shall incorporate packing cylinders in quantities as indicated below. Packing cylinder shall be welded in place, be a minimum of 2" in diameter with internal acme threads with a discharge tip having a check valve effect to prevent blow back and permit adding packing under full line pressure all furnished with a matching plunger having a 3/4" diameter tip. Expansion joints operating over 200 psig shall be furnished with packing cylinders having an integral stainless steel plug type safety valve for positive blow back protection.

Ball Joint Size	Qty. Parking Cylinders
3/4" to 4"	1
5" & 6"	2
8" & 10"	3
12" to 18"	4

Ball Joint Size	Qty. Parking Cylinders
18" to 20"	6
24"	8
30"	12

- (d) Stuffing box shall contain compression seals of ductile iron, teflon-graphite containment seals and flake Grafoil injectable packing. Teflon-asbestos and teflon semi-plastic injectable packings are not acceptable and shall not be used.
 - (e) Each expansion joint shall be furnished with a minimum of two (2) plugs of spare flake Grafoil semiplastic injectable packing for each packing cylinder. For system operating over 200 psig where expansion joints are furnished with packing cylinders having an integral stainless steel plug type safety valve, a tool shall be furnished to safely remove under full line pressure the impacted packing between safety valve and discharge tip. Where project contains more than one (1) expansion joint operating above 200 psig, a minimum of one (1) such tool shall be furnished for every five (5) expansion joints operating above 200 psig.
 - (f) Expansion joints shall be as manufactured by Advanced Thermal Systems and shall be Type P2-SWW up to 150 psig or Type P2-SWW-150G-70-20B with Style GB Saf-T-Packer for systems operating above 150 psig. Packed flexible ball joint manufacturer to submit calculations verifying that length of spool piece between ball joints is ample to properly accommodate expansion and contracting including allowance for frame shortening in buildings with concrete columns.
2. Packed flexible ball joint manufacturer to submit calculations verifying that length of spool piece between ball joints is ample to properly accommodate expansion and contraction including allowance for frame shortening in buildings with concrete columns.

I. Bellows Expansion Joints and Expansion Compensators:

- 1. Bellow expansion joints and expansion compensators shall be the type, manufacturer and model number indicated on drawings and shall incorporate the following:
 - (a) Expansion joints in sizes 3" and over shall consist of Inconel 600 bellows formed from seamless tubing or tubing with longitudinal seam weld no greater than 10% thicker than parent material with flanged ends suitable for operating pressure and temperature.
 - (b) Bellows elements 3" and over may be externally pressurized or internally pressurized with supplemental reinforcing by means of external rings, if necessary. Internally pressurized bellows with three (3) or more corrugations shall be furnished with internal sleeves or liners. Bellows elements shall be designed in accordance with

standards of the Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association (EJMA) for 7000 full cycles, unless otherwise indicated and calculations in accordance with EJMA standards are to be furnished with submitted drawings.

- (c) Expansion joints in sizes 2-1/2" or less shall be "Expansion Compensator" type with externally pressurized bellows. For use with steel pipe, bellows shall be Inconel 600 and casing and threaded nipple ends shall be carbon steel. For use with bronze pipe or copper tubing, compensator casing and bellows shall be all bronze construction with threaded or sweat type ends. Expansion compensators shall be capable of accommodating 1-3/4" compression and 1/4" extension and shall be so placed in system that movements do not exceed these limits.
- 2. Expansion joints shall be designed to accommodate an amount of traverse greater than the combined extension and compression that must be accommodated after the expansion joint is installed including allowance for frame shortening in building with concrete columns. Submittal drawings are to indicate amount of factory precompression as well as available movement in compression and extension from installed position.

2.5 HANGERS, SUPPORTS, ANCHORS, AND GUIDES

A. See "Seismic Design" and comply as follows:

- 1. See "Foundations, Vibration Isolation, and Supports for Rigidly Supported Equipment (Seismic Design)."
- 2. As noted in "Seismic Design", the HVAC contractor shall engage the services of a professional engineer with experience in the field of equipment support and seismic restraints (or an approved piping expert who has specialized in piping design). The Engineer shall select and coordinate the restraints and supports based on the final coordinated drawings showing exact location of piping and equipment and shall coordinate with the structural engineer to ascertain that the connections to the structure will resist the horizontal forces to which they might be subjected. He shall submit details and calculations as required to demonstrate compliance.
- 3. Seismic Restraints shall be installed to restrain and protect piping in the event of an earthquake and shall be installed in addition to pipe hangers, brackets and supports. Seismic Restraints shall not be used in lieu of regular hangers and supports as are otherwise required to support the piping.
- 4. Anchors shall be designed to accommodate seismic forces plus any forces imposed by expansion joints or pipe bends and loops. Loads and details of attachment to structure shall be submitted to structural engineer for coordination and approval.

B. In all cases, attachments to structure shall be approved by the Structural Engineer. Loads and details of attachment to structure shall be submitted to structural engineer for coordination and approval.

- C. All required supports, hangers, anchors, and guides shall be provided and installed by this contractor. Shop drawings shall be submitted indicating the following.
1. Riser anchors shall not be fixed to building until floors are poured, due to possible settling.
 2. Methods of hanging or supporting all mechanical equipment & piping furnished by this trade.
 3. Insert locations intended for the hanging of any mechanical equipment shall note the weight to be hung from each insert.
 4. Insert locations intended for the hanging of piping over 5" or equipment shall also note the weight to be hung from each typical insert.
 5. Where other methods are used, beam clamps or fish plates, for example, weights shall be similarly shown.
 6. Multiple piping whether by other trades or not, if included on a trapeze type hanger furnished by this trade shall similarly indicate weights.
 7. Note that mechanical equipment is not limited to pipe connected equipment, but includes fans, coils, etc.
 8. Although piping under 6" need not be shown, furnish information upon request at any time during the course of the installation.
 9. The indication of weights will not be waived unless there is reason to accept a general statement, approved in writing by the Architect and/or the Structural Engineer.
 10. The structural engineer must approve the method of hanging before work is commenced.
- D. All pipe supports shall be of type and arrangement as shown on "Pipe Hanger and Support Schedule" on drawings and hereinafter specified. They shall be so arranged as to prevent excessive deflection and avoid excessive bending stresses between supports.
- E. All bracket clamp and rod sizes indicated in this specification are minimum sizes only. This trade shall be responsible for structural integrity of all supports. All structural hanging materials except variable spring units shall have a safety factor of 5 built in.

Pipe Hanger Schedule			
	C&P	F&M	Grinnell
Beam Clamp	268	282	--
Clevis Hanger	100	239	260
Clevis Roller Hanger	140	272	181

Pipe Hanger Schedule			
Welded Steel Bracket	84	151 or 155	195 or 199
Welded Beam Attachment	113A	–	66
Insert	266	–	280
Continuous Slotted Insert	1480	190	--
Metal Deck Ceiling Bolt	143		

- F. Pipe supports shall be of the following type and figure number, as manufactured by C & P, F & M, Grinnell or as approved, and as hereinafter indicated:

Pipe Hanger Schedule			
	C&P	F&M	Grinnell
180 Shield	265P	–	–
Beam Clamp	268	282	--
Clevis Hanger	100	239	260
120 Shield	265P	80	--
Pipe Saddle	354 355 356	170 & 1700 Series	180 Series
Clevis Roller Hanger	140	272	181
Two Rod Roller Hanger	142	170	171
Rigid Trapeze	371	–	Std. 45
U-Bolt	283	176	137
C.I. Roll Stand	17	160	271
Adj. C.I. Roll Stand	53	161	274
Adj. Steel Pipe Stanchion	101	291	259
Welded Steel Bracket	84	151 or 155	195 or 199
Single Bolt Riser Clamp	126	241	261
Double Bolt Riser Clamp	126	–	Std. 40
Base Elbow Support	375	–	–
Double Bolt Pipe Clamp	304	261	295
Welded Beam Attachment	113A	–	66
Welded Beam Attachment W/B&N	113B	251	66

Pipe Hanger Schedule			
Insert	266	–	280
Continuous Slotted Insert	1480	190	--
Metal Deck Ceiling Bolt	143		

- G. Anchor points as shown on drawings or as required shall be located and constructed to permit the piping system to take up its expansion and contraction freely in opposite directions away from the anchored points.
- H. Guide points for expansion joints shall be located and constructed wherever required or shown on drawings and at each side of an expansion joint or loop, to permit only free axial movement in piping systems but first guides shall not be further than 3 pipe diameters on each side of joint and second guides (and subsequent guides) shall be placed no further than 17 pipe diameters along length of pipe. Guides for pipe with expansion joints shall be of the four roller heavy duty type securely welded to structural steel.
- I. Guides shall be of sufficient length to contain a pipe movement 30% greater than actual pipe movement.
- J. Variable spring hangers shall be located and constructed for points subject to vertical movement.
- K. Maximum spacing between pipe supports, for steel pipe to prevent excessive stress: This does not apply where there are concentrated loads between supports.

Pipe Size	Max. Span/Ft.	Pipe Size	Max. Span/Ft.
1/2"	5	4"	14
3/4"	6	5"	16
1"	7	6"	17
1½"	9	8"	19
2"	10	10"	22
2½"	11	12" over	23
3"	12		

- L. Maximum weights on hanger rods assuming a maximum operating temperature of 450°F shall be such that stress in tension shall not exceed 9000 psi, using root area of threaded portion. In no case shall hanger size be less than 3/8" for pipe up to 2", 1/2" for pipe 2-1/2" to 3-1/2", 5/8" for pipe 4" to 5", 3/4" for pipe 6", 7/8" for pipe 8" to 12".
- M. Double bolt riser clamps shall be F&S, F&M, Grinnell or approved and shall be subject to approval.
- N. Back to back channel loads shall be limited to the following:

1. 3" (4.1#) channel - 2900 lbs up to 36" C To C.
2. 3" (4.1#) channel - 1700 lbs over 36" C To C.
3. 4" (5.4#) channel - 5100 lbs up to 36" C To C.
4. 4" (5.4#) channel - 3000 lbs over 36" C To C.

O. Pipe stanchion supports for horizontal pipes shall be as follows:

Run Size	Base
2½" to 3½"	2½"
4" to 12"	3"
14" to 16"	4"
18" to 36"	6"

- P. Pipe supports at the base of a vertical riser shall be pipe riser size.
- Q. For copper tubing, supports shall follow schedule and specifications. Supports for uncovered lines shall be especially designed for copper tubing, and shall be of exact O.D. diameter of tubing and shall be copper plated.
- R. Roller type supports shall be used for pipes subject to axial movement. They shall be braced so that movement occurs in roller rather than support rods.
- S. Provide shields at hangers for cold insulated piping and saddles welded to pipe at hangers for hot insulated piping.
- T. Provide all steel required for support of pipes and equipment other than steel shown on structural engineer's drawings. Submit calculations of anchor design.
- U. All hangers on piping including clevis hangers, rods, inserts, clamps, stanchions, brackets, shall be dipped in Zinc Chromate Primer before installation.
- V. All pipe supports shall be designed to avoid interferences with other piping, hangers, electrical conduits and supports, building structures and equipment.
- W. Pipe hangers shall be connected to building structure as follows:

Building Structure Type	Pipe Support Method
Poured concrete floor slabs.	Galvanized steel inserts and/or fishplates of sufficient area to support twice the calculated dead load.
Building Structure Steel.	Beam Attachments, etc.

Building Structure Type	Pipe Support Method
Precast concrete floor slabs.	Fishplates of sufficient area to support twice the calculated dead load, approved type specialty hanger accessories manufactured for the specific purpose of attaching to precast floors.
Metal deck floor slabs with concrete fill.	Galvanized steel inserts, fishplates of sufficient area to support twice the calculated dead load, approved type specialty hanger accessories manufactured for the specific purpose of attaching to metal deck floors.
Concrete slabs where piping revisions are required and approved after slabs are poured.	Piping 3" and smaller may be supported at intermediate points by "Phillips", or other approved 3/4" expansion bolts and shields, provided main supports are welded to structural steel and such main supports are welded to structural steel and such main supports are not less than 20 feet on centers. Intermediate supports for piping 4" and larger shall be attached to concrete beams or columns by means of 4" x 4" x 3/8" thick clip knee angles with 3/4" expansion bolts in shear (horizontal) and supporting rod at 90 from anchor bolt.

2.6 THERMOSTATIC RADIATOR CONTROL VALVE

- A. Provide a thermostatic radiator control valve at each perimeter heating water horizontal branch pipe and as indicated on the drawings and details.
- B. The Thermostatic Radiator Control Valve shall be selected to perform accurate temperature control by preventing overheating.
- C. The size, type and configuration must be applicable to the system operating conditions, including pressures.
- D. The operator (control) must be of the bellows type with either a liquid or vapor fill. The valve must be nickel-plated and must contain an EPDM disc and O ring gland seal.
- E. The seal must be replaceable without special tools while the system is in operation.
- F. The operators shall be with built-in sensors.

2.7 FLOW MEASURING FOR WATER SYSTEMS

- A. Furnish and install flow measuring system.
- B. Venturi System:
 - 1. Furnish and install one complete Venturi Metering System as manufactured by Barco-Rinco Division of Aeroquip Corporation, Barrington, Illinois, Preso Industries Corporation. This shall be a coordinated system, including individual Venturi Flow Stations and Portable Master Meter, supplied by one manufacturer. Each Venturi station shall be complete with safety shut off valves, fill line size bypass with shut-off valve metal identification tag on chain, giving pipe size, Venturi series station identification, and meter reading at specified flow rate. Entire station shall have same pressure ratings as specified for valves. Venturi size and series shall be selected so that the design flow rate shall be between 10 and 40 inches of water pressure differential on a 0 - 50 meter or 12" - 80" on a 0 - 100" meter, with permanent pressure loss of not more than 10% of indicated flow rate differential pressure. Upstream pipe diameters shall be five (5), and downstream pipe diameters shall be two (2) as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Master Meter shall consist of dry type meter supplied with scale reading from zero (0) to 50 inches or zero (0) to 100 inches of water differential pressure, and shall be mounted in a portable carrying case, complete with two (2) 10 ft. lengths of checking hoses, blow down valves, installation and operating instructions, and capacity curves.
- C. Turbine Meter:
 - 1. The meter shall be an insertion turbine flow meter. The turbine meter shall have a linearity of $\pm 1.0\%$ and repeatability of 0.25% with a rangeability of 10:1. (There shall be an indicating meter on the local control panel that will indicate rate of flow and total flow and provide an input signal to the microprocessor controllers.)
 - 2. Provide flow measuring stations for each of the following systems:
 - (a) _____
 - (b) _____

2.8 STEAM SPECIALTIES

- A. Provide steam traps, Armstrong, Spirax-Sarco or approved equal, for venting and draining of steam condensate. Locate at ends of mains, bottom of risers, outlet of steam equipment, and all other points where condensate and air may collect, every 200 feet or less. Traps shall pass condensate and air automatically without passing steam. Test in factory to insure operation. Provide strainer at inlet to each trap.
- B. Size trap capacities for 200% of steam loads at a maximum drop of $\frac{1}{2}$ psi. Trap capacity should be rated in general accordance with ANSI PTC 39.1 or FCI 87-1. Traps shall be sized with condensate at steam temperature.

- C. Thermostatic traps shall be of the corrugated bellows balanced pressure type, bellows of red brass or phosphor bronze.
- D. Traps up to and including 2-1/2" shall have flanged or threaded connections. Traps 1" and less shall have union connections.
- E. Each steam heating unit, regardless of type, shall be installed with shut-off valve at inlet. Each radiator or convector shall have at its supply inlet, a bronze body valve of packless quick-opening type which shall pass sufficient steam when fully opened to fully heat the radiator surface with the lowest pressure carried in the mains.
- F. For each system with 100% outside air provide a thermal drain on each float and thermostatic trap set to open when condensate in trap drops below 75°F. Drain shall be Spirax-Sarco "Thermoton" or approved.
- G. Low Pressure Thermostatic Traps (0 PSI - 15 PSI)
 - 1. Low pressure (0-15 psi) Thermostatic traps are to have cast or forged brass bodies suitable for 125 psi pressure and shall be provided with a union connection at the inlet. Self-aligning valve heads and seats for the low pressure traps shall be of suitable, non-corrosive material. Seats shall be removable, similar to Spirax-Sarco Type T or approved equal.
- H. Low Pressure Combination Float & Thermostatic Traps (0 PSI - 15 PSI)
 - 1. Combination Float and Thermostatic Traps shall have a valve mechanism, the position of which is controlled by a closed, stainless steel ball float. The seat of the valve will be watertight at all times. The action of this type of trap must discharge the condensate as soon as it enters the trap and its rate of discharge must be proportionate to the rate of the flow of condensate to the trap.
 - 2. The traps shall be provided with an automatic, thermostatic air by-pass of the balanced pressure, multiple bellows types, or diaphragm capsule.
 - 3. All working parts shall be of non-corrosive metal, (hard bronze, monel or stainless steel) and shall be removable without disconnecting the piping. Floats to be of stainless steel. Valve heads and seats are to be of stainless steel.
 - 4. Body and cover to be of high grade cast iron suitable for 125 psi pressure for a 0-15 psi line, similar to Spirax-Sarco FT-15, or Armstrong Series "B."
- I. Inverted Bucket Traps for Medium & High Pressure Steam 16 PSI to 250 PSI:
 - 1. Provide inverted bucket steam traps with stainless steel internals and ability to have bent hole in bucket be self cleaning. Trap to shut tight on no load and work well over long period of time.
 - 2. Trap must shut tight on no load and must discharge charge air and/or condensate as soon as condensate reaches the trap.
 - 3. Thermo-Dynamic traps or other equivalent type shall not be used on equipment employing modulating control valves.

J. Thermodynamic Disc Traps:

1. Thermodynamic disc type, stainless steel body, disc and cap with only one moving part. Integral seat design with three equally spaced balanced outlet ports, non-gasketed sealing caps and Rockwell 50C hardened disc and integral seat working surfaces. Trap to operate close to saturated steam temperature without steam loss at all pressures from 3.5 psig to 1740 psig and against back pressures up to 80% of inlet pressure. Spriax-Sarco Model TD/TDS.

K. Schedule of Steam Trap Types

Drips for 0 to 30 psig mains and risers:	FT
Drips for mains and risers over 30 psig:	TD
Radiators, convectors, fin-tube radiators:	T
Air heating, blast coils, preheaters and reheaters:	FT
Hot water heaters:	FT
Tank heaters:	FT
Unit heaters:	FT
Flash tank discharge:	F
Heat exchangers:	FT
Absorption refrigeration machine:	FTB

Code:

FT	-	Float and Thermostatic Trap
TD	-	Thermo-Dynamic Trap
T	-	Thermostatic Trap
FTB	-	Float and Thermostatic Trap (high capacity)
IB	-	Inverted Bucket
F	-	Float Trap

2.9 STEAM HUMIDIFIERS

- A. Humidifier shall receive steam at supply pressure and discharge at atmospheric pressure.
- B. Separating chamber shall be of a volume and design that will disengage and remove all water droplets and all particulate matter larger than 3 microns when humidifier is operating at maximum capacity. A stainless steel filtering medium shall be included, to remove particulate matter in the chamber.

- C. The metering valve shall be steam heated and shall have a plug, capable of modulating flow of steam to provide full control over the entire stroke of the operator. Hysteresis of the valve shall be less than 1/2 psig over 100% of valve travel.
- D. The internal drying chamber shall receive steam at essentially atmospheric pressure and be jacketed by steam at supply pressure. Asbestos shall not be used anywhere in the humidifier.
- E. The silencing chamber shall be steam jacketed and utilize a stainless steel silencing medium.
- F. The distribution manifold or manifolds shall provide uniform distribution over its entire length and be jacketed by steam at supply pressure to assure that vapor discharged is free of water droplets. A full length stainless steel internal silencing screen shall be provided if required for sound control.
- G. Humidifier shall be equipped with an interlocked temperature switch to prevent the humidifier from operating before start-up condensate is drained.
- H. Humidistats specified under "Automatic Controls" will control electric control valve.
- I. Provide steam piping, two gate valves, strainer, check valve, and inverted bucket steam trap for each humidifier.
- J. Spill condensate from humidifier to drain pans in unit where applicable.
- K. Where more than two manifolds are required, the piping shall be as follows. The manifolds shall be jacketed and trapped separately from the humidifier. The humidifier shall receive steam directly from the steam supply line. The trap for the manifolds shall be an F & T trap. The trap for the humidifier shall be an inverted bucket type.
- L. Number of manifold and control valves as required by humidifier manufacturer for various duct or air handling unit heights.

2.10 ELECTRIC EVAPORATIVE HUMIDIFIER

- A. Humidifier shall be a VAPORSTREAM, Humidifier UL Listed, electric hot element evaporative humidifier as manufactured by DRI-STEEM Humidifier Company, Eden Prairie, MN, or approved equal. having the following features and devices.
- B. Stainless Steel Construction: Vaporizing chamber, gasketed cover and fittings shall be constructed of 304 stainless steel with heli-arc welded seams. Chamber shall be capable of operating under a pressure of at least 18" W.C. without steam or water leaks.
- C. Standard/DI Water: The humidifier shall run on standard water, however, it shall have the capability of being field converted to run on demineralized water without being removed from the installation. This shall be accomplished through the use of a universal prove/float assembly and a software change.

- D. Quick Removal Cover: The cover shall be secured by quick removal threaded knobs. The gasket shall be held in place by flanges that are formed as part of the cover and as part of the evaporating chamber. These flanges shall interlock in such a way that the sealing gasket is locked between them.
- E. Immersion Heater(s): Heater(s) shall be Incoloy alloy sheathed resistance type heater(s) designed for no more than 95 watts per square inch. They shall be fastened through the top of the evaporating chamber thus providing for convenient removal for inspection.. The two threaded ends of each heater element shall pass through the top of the evaporating chamber and be secured with threaded nuts to buss bars. Design of heater shall provide for expansion and contraction, thus flaking off scale as it accumulates.
- F. Thermal Overload Protection: A manual reset temperature switch shall be factory mounted and wired above a heating element offset to a level above the other heating elements in the evaporating chamber ensuring heater protection in the event of liquid level failure.
- G. Heating Element Terminal Cover: A factory mounted and wired door interlock safety switch shall de-energize the heaters when the cover is removed. This provides easy access to quick change heating elements.
- H. Inspection Plate/Sediment Tray: Provide tray to catch and hold minerals to facilitate periodic clean-out. This tray rests on the floor of the evaporating chamber. The scale that is shed by the heaters is caught in the tray and the tray is easily removed through the inspection opening for emptying.
- I. Electronic Water Level Control for Hard or Softened Water: System shall provide for automatic refill, low water cut off and adjustable skimmer bleed-off functions. System shall consist of:
 - 1. A water level sensing unit comprised of three metallic probes screwed into a threaded probe head. Probe head shall incorporate probe isolation skirts to eliminate short circuiting between probes caused by mineral coating of probe head. Probe head shall be mounted on the top of the vaporizing chamber.
 - 2. A solenoid operated fill valve, brass body type, factory mounted on the front of the humidifier. A cleanable strainer with fine mesh screen shall be mounted upstream of valve. Fill opening shall be 1-1/2" above overflow.
 - 3. Microprocessor Control System.
- J. Surface Skimmer/Overflow: Shall be provided which is electronically adjustable to provide for optimum mineral removal with minimum water waste.
- K. Control Cabinet: Shall be UL/CSA Listed JIC enclosure. Control devices shall be mounted on a removable sub-panel within the enclosure. Control devices shall include Microprocessor Control System, SCR Controller for each heater, control circuit transformer, fuse set for each heating stage, numbered terminal strip and such other optional devices as hereinafter specified and all interconnecting wiring. A wiring diagram is to be included and attached inside of cabinet door.

- L. Microprocessor Control System: Shall be factory mounted and wired in the humidifier control panel with humidity sensors to be shipped loose for field installation by this contractor. Provide necessary contacts for remote monitoring/control by BMS. Mounting instructions and a wiring diagram shall be included and provide the following features and functions:
1. LED "heartbeat" fault indicator. Performs software self-diagnosis at every start-up.
 2. Water make-up valve control and low water safety shutdown.
 3. Auto drain-flush sequence whereby microprocessor accumulates actual humidifying "ON" time, and activates auto drain/flush sequence.
 4. End of season drain function which activates when there has been no demand for humidification over a 72 hour period.
 5. Four position functional slide switch on microprocessor board with stops at, "AUTO", "STANDBY", "DRAIN", AND "TEST".

Electrical contactors shall be cycled equally for long life.

Microprocessor Control System Keypad/Digital Display Module: Shall be housed in a thermoplastic enclosure (4-1/2"w x 6"h x 1-1/2"d). Module shall be shipped loose for field mounting (wiring by this contractor) and shall provide the following features:

- M. The alphanumeric digital display portion shall continuously scroll all system functions including:
1. Actual space R.H. (via remote sensor located within the tenant space served by the system, furnished by this contractor)
 2. Humidistat set point R.H. (Humidistat furnished by this contractor)
 3. Discharge duct R.H. (Humidistat furnished by this contractor)
 4. High limit humidistat set point R.H. (Humidistat furnished by this contractor)
 5. Per heater demand % (or humidifier % multiple humidifier system). Total system demand (in % of total humidifier capacity) total system output (lbs/hr or kg/hr).
 6. "Time until service" message
 7. High limit Stat and air flow proving circuit condition.
 8. Aquastat for freeze protection. (Aquastat furnished by this contractor)
- N. The keypad portion shall enable the user to reset or adjust the following functions:
1. Humidistat R.H. setpoint
 2. Humidistat R.H. high limit setpoint

3. Auto drain/flush frequency interval
4. Auto drain duration
5. Auto flush duration
6. PID loop
7. Throttling range adjustment
8. Time to go until next auto drain/flush sequence
9. Setting of cycle and delay times for proportional control device
10. Electronic skim timer
11. Humidity and temperature transmitter trim adjustments

Factory Mounted Control Cabinet: Cabinet shall be factory attached to side of humidifier and all wiring between cabinet and humidifier shall be completed at factory.

Dual Keypad/Digital Display Modules: Provide two keypad/digital display units, one for local display in the immediate vicinity of the humidifier and the other at a remote location. In addition provide for interface with the BMS (all wiring by this contractor).

O. Master/Slave Control Option:

1. System shall consist of a Master and Slave control management system to control multiple humidifier units (up to 4 humidifiers, 16 heater groups). Heater groups shall be energized or de-energized sequentially while one group modulates, thus providing vernire control. System shall automatically rotate modulating duty between all heater group to equalize operational time and sequence drain/ flush cycles to allow only one humidifier to drain at a time.

P. Control Accessory:

1. Air Flow Proving Switch:

Vane Type: A vane operated "sail switch" shall be provided for field installation.

2. Duct High Limit Humidistat: A high limit humidistat having a range of 15% to 95% shall be shipped loose for field installation. Humidistat shall sense humidity level within the duct and protect against saturation of air stream.
3. VAV Control Package: Two modulating electronic humidity sensors (one space mounted, the other duct mounted downstream of the humidifier) shall be shipped loose for field installation. Each shall transmit its sensing to the Microprocessor Control System which, in turn, shall modulate the humidifier output thereby maintaining the highest duct humidity possible at all air flow volumes, without saturation of the air stream.

- Q. SCR Controllers: Provide SCR controllers for all humidifiers. Provide in control panel, a 100% solid state, power controller. Matching low voltage humidistats shall be shipped loose for field installation (by this contractor). Entire system shall modulate from zero to 100% of rated load.
- R. Factory Insulation: Humidifier shall be covered with 1" thick, rigid, foam duct insulation. Insulation shall be covered with reinforced aluminum foil. All surfaces under the removable heater access panel shall be covered.
- S. Support Legs: Four support legs, of length to provide 24" between underside of humidifier and floor, shall be provided
- T. Dispersion Tube System: Furnish and install a Dispersion Tube System in each of the air handling units. Each tube bank shall consist of a header/separator and required quantity of dispersion tubes necessary to achieve the required steam capacity and absorption distance. Header/separator shall span the width of the duct, be constructed of stainless steel and be fitted with nipples for dispersion tube connections. Steam dispersion U-tubes shall be 1-1/2" OD, .049" wall, type 304 stainless steel. The dispersion tubes shall extend the width of the duct/air handling unit and shall be fitted with two rows of tubelets centered on the diametric line and spaced 1-1/2" apart. These tubelets shall be made of non-metallic material designed for steam temperatures. Each tubelet shall extend through the wall of and into the center of the dispersion tube and incorporate a properly sized calibrated orifice. For securing the Upper ends of the tubes a 1x1 1/2" channel shall be furnished which the installer shall attach to the duct or housing.
- U. Heater Thermostat: A manual reset overheat temperature thermostat mounted in humidifier for redundant protection to main controller.
- V. NEMA 12 Rated Fan Ventilation: To provide fan ventilation for humidifier controls installed in the control cabinet. Control enclosure is provided with electric operated exhaust fan, inlet filter grill and step down transformer all mounted and wired (by this contractor).
- W. Cold Snap Offset Option: Provide and install on an appropriate window surface a temperature sensor. Sensor shall transmit its signal to the VAPOR-LOGIC which shall lower the indoor RH to a level 5% below the dew point RH thus preventing window condensation. The indoor RH shall be automatically returned to the normal setting when the glass temperature rises.
- X. Provide a tempering device similar to Drane Kooler. The device shall temper the hot water or condense steam being drained from the humidifier. The device shall include a mixing chamber and fittings constructed of 304 stainless steel with welded seams. It shall include a self contained brass body tempering valve which shall be temperature adjustable and charged bulb type. The unit shall also include a 3/4" brass bold type drain valve and vacuum breaker. Connect to cold water supply.

2.11 CONVERTORS & EXCHANGERS

- A. Furnish and install on suitable pipe frame on structural steel supports, convertors and exchangers of size and capacity as scheduled on the drawings. Manufacturer shall be as noted on drawings or approved equal.
- B. Convertors:
 - 1. Steam to water convertors shall be water tube hot water heaters of the U-type with steam in the shell and water in the tube. Heater shell shall be constructed of carbon steel plate of ample thickness for the specified pressure with one bumped head, and flange at the other end of the shell. Tube sheet shall be of heavy steel or cast iron, accurately drilled for all tubes. All heating surfaces shall be composed of 3/4" diameter #18 B.W.G. seamless drawn copper U-tubes securely expanded into the tube sheet at one end and properly supported at the other end. All parts of the heater shall be designed for a working pressure of at least 125 p.s.i. in the steam spaces and suitable for the system working pressure in all water spaces. Heater shall have all necessary outlets, drain and vent connections.
 - 2. Furnish and install for each convertor the following appurtenances:
 - (a) Steam trap of ample capacity in the return connection (of Webster, or approved, heavy duty trap) with approved Relief valve or valves (Watts Regulator or approved) for connection with the water outlet pipe (between the heater and the shut-off valve). Relief valves shall be furnished by exchanger manufacturer and shall comply with ASME Code. Valves shall be sized to relieve the full output of the convertor in BTU per hour. A vacuum breaker valve shall be mounted on the shell of the heat exchanger.
 - 3. Water to Water Exchangers (Chilled Water to Chilled Water) shall conform to the following: Primary water through tubes, secondary water in baffled shell. Channel type construction with removable cover plate for inspection of tubes with breaking pipe connections. Straight tube construction with fixed tube sheet at each end of shell. Removable return head at far end. Shell and channel shall be fabricated steel ASTM A-285 Gr. C. Tubes shall be Seamless Copper 3/4" OD x 18 Ga. Shell flanges and cover plate shall be steel ASTM A-201 Gr.B. Baffles to be steel. Provide relief valve or valves on secondary water side between exchanger and shut-off valves set 15 p.s.i. above the normal working water pressures at the exchanger. Relief valves shall be furnished by exchanger manufacturer in conformance with applicable codes.
- C. This Contractor shall furnish and install all auxiliary steel required for support of all convertors and exchangers.
- D. All heat exchangers shall be selected for .0005 fouling factor.
- E. Convertors shall be A.S.M.E. constructed and furnished with insurance certificates.

2.12 EXPANSION & COMPRESSION TANKS

- A. One or more tanks as required shall be provided for each water system and shall be of the sizes noted on the drawings. Expansion tanks shall be constructed of steel, welded, in accordance with the ASME Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels for a working pressure of 125 psig or 150 percent of maximum operating pressure, whichever is greater. Tanks shall be installed horizontally or vertically as shown on drawings.
- B. Each expansion tank shall be piped and fitted in accordance with standard details.
- C. Tanks shall be provided with cast iron or steel saddles and structural steel supports from floor except that tanks may be supported from the ceiling structure when load points are detailed on structural drawings. Horizontal tanks of not over 250-gallon capacity may be supported from the ceiling by means of solid steel straps, secured as required for pipe hangers. 80-gallon capacity or smaller tanks may also be supported on cast iron or steel brackets properly secured to walls or columns.
- D. Compression tanks shall have one or more ASME rated pressure relief valves set 10% above system working pressure.

2.13 CONDENSATE RECEIVING TANKS & FLASH TANKS

- A. One or more tanks as required shall be provided of the sizes noted on the drawings. Tanks shall be constructed of steel, welded, in accordance with the ASME Code for Unfired Pressure Vessels for a working pressure of 125 psig or 150 percent of maximum operating pressure, whichever is greater. Tanks shall be installed horizontally or vertically as shown on drawings.
- B. Each tank shall be piped and fitted in accordance with standard details.
- C. Tanks shall be provided with cast iron or steel saddles and structural steel supports from floor except that tanks may be supported from the ceiling structure when load points are detailed on structural drawings. Horizontal tanks of not over 250-gallon capacity may be supported from the ceiling by means of solid steel straps, secured as required for pipe hangers. 80-gallon capacity or smaller tanks may also be supported on cast iron or steel brackets properly secured to walls or columns.
- D. Each tank not vented to the atmosphere shall have one or more ASME rated pressure relief valves set 10% above system working pressure.
- E. Internal piping if required by details shall be stainless steel.

2.14 PROPELLER TYPE UNIT HEATERS & ENTRANCE HEATING UNITS (HOT WATER)

- A. Furnish and install all unit heaters as shown on the drawings.
- B. Unit heaters shall be of the propeller type, suspended as indicated and arranged for horizontal discharge of air. Unit heaters shall be of sizes and capacities as scheduled on the drawings. Heaters shall be of manufacture as noted on drawings or approved.

- C. Heating elements shall be copper tube coil with aluminum fins mechanically bonded to copper tubes, shall be properly pitched for drainage, and shall be designed for a working pressure of 200 psi or greater as per system pressures required for valves and fittings.
- D. The casing shall be solidly and rigidly built, and finished with lacquer or enamel.
- E. Propeller type fans shall be driven by motors of adequate horsepower. Motors shall be provided with thermal overload protection.
- F. Furnish and connect to the return of each steam unit heater a float and thermostatic trap of ample capacity, a hand valve, and unions for trap removal.
- G. The heaters shall be controlled automatically by means of thermostats located where shown on the drawings which shall start and stop the fans as described under "Automatic Temperature Controls".
- H. Furnish and install entrance heating units as shown on the drawings with controls as described under "Automatic Controls".

2.15 PROPELLER TYPE UNIT HEATERS & ENTRANCE HEATING UNITS (ELECTRIC)

- A. Furnish and install all unit heaters as shown on the drawings.
- B. Unit heaters shall be of the propeller type, suspended as indicated and arranged for horizontal discharge of air. Unit heaters shall be of sizes and capacities as scheduled on the drawings. Heaters shall be of manufacture as noted on drawings or approved.
- C. The casing shall be solidly and rigidly built, and finished with lacquer or enamel.
- D. Propeller type fans shall be driven by motors of adequate horsepower. Motors shall be provided with thermal overload protection.
- E. The heaters shall be controlled automatically by means of local thermostats which shall start and stop the fans as described under "Automatic Temperature Controls."
- F. Entrance heating units to be of a capacity as specified in the schedule. Provide fan section and casing construction as outlined in other sections of the specification. Provide 30% medium efficiency filters.
- G. Lobby heating units shall be provided with electric heating coil sections with capacities as scheduled on the plans.
 - 1. Electric heaters and controls shall be constructed in accordance with U.L. and NEC requirements.
 - 2. Electric heater frame shall be constructed of heavy duty galvanized steel. All wire terminals and nuts shall be stainless steel. Element wires shall be of A-grade resistance (80% nickel, 20% chromium) and shall be derated to a limit of 35 watts per square inch.

- H. Each heater shall be supplied with a built-in automatic reset thermal cut for primary safety protection, replaceable cutouts for secondary safety protection, airflow switch, fan interlock relay, magnetic type contractors (one per step), fuses per NEC, transformer and step controller.
 - 1. Manufacturer to provide a discharge sensor to control leaving air temperature. Provide 3 steps of control as a minimum.
 - 2. All controls shall be housed in a unit mounted control panel with hinged doors, capable of interlock with remote space thermostat.
 - 3. All wiring, control and power, shall be factory installed to terminals such that field wiring is limited to power connections and extension of control terminals to the room thermostat and sail switch.

2.16 CABINET CONVECTORS

- A. The convector elements shall consist of seamless copper tubes, non-ferrous fins and mild steel headers. No soldered or welded joints or compression couplings permitted. The convectors shall be designed for a working pressure as per system requirements for valves and fittings.
- B. Convector elements shall be supported by the enclosure with approved brackets.
- C. Convector shall be suited to the space conditions and shall be of manufacturer as indicated on the drawings or approved.
- D. Furnish and install convector enclosures for all convectors. Enclosure shall be constructed as follows: Top, back, sides and bottom of cabinets shall be not less than No. 18 USS gauge steel, fronts shall be not less than No. 14 USS gauge steel, enclosure shall have inlet and outlet grilles.
- E. All fully recessed and semi-recessed convectors shall be provided with 16 gauge frame or Perma-lap (top, bottom and sides). All convectors shall be prime coat finish.
- F. All enclosures shall be braced to provide stiffness. Convectors shall be securely bolted to the wall. Provide 1/2 inch of rigid insulation on sides, top, bottom and back of all convectors installed in outside walls.
- G. All convectors without thermostatic control shall be provided with a knob operated gear type damper.
- H. Where indicated on drawings heating elements shall be installed in enclosures provided under another division of the work. This trade shall furnish and install the sheet metal lining and insulation, inlet grilles and outlet registers.

2.17 CABINET UNIT HEATERS

- A. Furnish and install of manufacturer as shown on the plans, or approved, cabinet heaters of size and type indicated. Design system pressures as per valves and fittings.

- B. Unit Casings - Casings shall be constructed of die-formed, heavy gauge steel parts, phosphatized for rust resistance, front and all exposed surfaces shall be brushed aluminum finish. All hardware used in the casing shall be plated for rust resistance. Cabinets shall be constructed with well-rounded corners, and shall be equipped with a removable front for access to the interior.

C. Heating Elements

Heating elements shall be constructed of copper tubes and aluminum plate-type fins. Tubes are to be 1/2" O.D., and shall be joined to the supply and return header by silver brazing. Headers are to be fabricated from heavy gauge steel with provision for receiving an air vent. The aluminum fins shall be spaced by means of an integral collar to insure proper spacing. The joint between fin and tube shall be obtained by mechanically expanding the tube within the collar to affect a permanently tight thermal contact. The heating elements shall be of the multi-pass serpentine type, with the supply and return connections both located at the same end of the unit.

1. Heating elements shall be held rigidly in the unit casing, yet provisions shall be made to allow freedom for expansion and contraction within the casing.

- D. Fans - Fans shall be forward-curved, double-inlet aluminum, mounted on a large-diameter steel shaft. The shaft shall be carried by two permanently lubricated, rubber-mounted ball bearings at shaft ends. Fans, shaft, bearings and fan housings shall be mounted as an integral assembly on a heavy steel fan board which is bolted to the unit. Fan drive shall be the V-belt type employing a fixed-pitch fan shaft sheave and an adjustable pitch motor sheave. Motor sheave adjustment shall permit a 30% adjustment of fan speed. All motors shall be provided with built-in thermal overload protection of the automatic reset type, with on-off-automatic control switch.

- E. Filters - All cabinet unit heaters shall be provided with dry type filters. Furnish 2 spare filters for each unit.

2.18 FINNED PIPE RADIATION AND ENCLOSURES (SILLINE)

- A. Furnish and install where shown on the plans, silline radiation complete with one piece back panel, one-piece front enclosures, heating element, hangers and accessories. Silline radiation shall be of manufacturer as indicated on the drawings or approved. Design system pressures as per valves and fittings.
- B. Enclosure front shall consist of a one-piece No. 16 gage steel cabinet, with curved, streamline louvre discharge grille and die-formed bottom air-inlet openings. Each enclosure front shall be rigidly braced by integral vertical channel braces. Each front shall extend to the wall and be fastened to the back panel at both top and bottom. Each front enclosure shall have two spring-loaded thumb screw fasteners, spot-welded in position for quick installation or shall be snap-on type. Back panel shall be of one-piece, 20 gage steel. Back panel shall be prepunched for fastening to wall and attaching heating element hangers.

- C. Support brackets for the heating elements shall attach to the back panel. They shall be vertically adjustable for pitch, and shall provide for free longitudinal movement for expansion and contraction. Hanger bars shall be installed with nylon trim to prevent noise during expansion and contraction of heating element.
- D. No sheet metal screws or other fastenings devices shall be visible when enclosure is installed below eye level. Where two or more enclosure sections are joined end to end, rolled enclosure edges shall form a neat butt joint without butt straps or other concealing devices. No unfinished metal edges of the ensemble shall be visible.
- E. Heating elements shall be constructed of corrugated 015" aluminum fins mechanically expanded to seamless type "M" copper tubing. One end of each heating element shall be provided with swaged ends to permit end-to-end jointing.
- F. Enclosures and accessories shall be finished in a hard baked (in a color selected by the architect) enamel finish. Enclosure and accessories shall be cleaned and phosphate coated before finishing.
- G. All accessories shall be die-formed of 18-gage steel, and shall be shaped to match the enclosure form. All corners shall be rounded and all surfaces smooth. Accessories shall have no exposed metal edges, and fastening devices shall not be visible in below-eye-level installation. All necessary accessories shall be provided to permit wall-to-wall installation without cutting enclosures.
- H. End Caps - Where one or more sill line enclosures are shown on the plans in a short-of-wall installation, the ensemble shall be finished at either end with a smooth rounded end cap. End cap shall provide a bottom or back knockout for piping as required.
- I. Corners - Where two enclosures meet at a 90° inside or outside corner, rounded corner pieces shall be used.
- J. Sleeves - Where sill-line ensemble runs wall-to-wall or corner-to-corner, fitted sleeves shall be used in conjunction with wall strips or corner pieces. Sleeves shall have rounded edges, and shall be shaped to telescope over enclosure, concealing variations between the overall enclosure length and the actual room length. Sleeves shall be arranged on combination with properly selected enclosure lengths to permit unbroken wall-to-wall installation without cutting enclosures.
- K. Wall Strip - Where sill-line installations run wall-to-wall, wall strips shall be used to finish out the ensemble to the end walls. Wall strips shall provide a neat, tight groundjoint between the sleeve and the end wall.
- L. Full Access Valve Compartment - For access to valves, balancing fittings, etc., a one foot piece of sill-line enclosure shall be provided. This one foot piece of enclosure shall match the sill-line ensemble and be complete with two spring loaded, thumb screw fasteners, spot welded in position for easy removal of and replacement of the enclosure.

- M. Column Enclosures - Where indicated on the plans, piping around columns shall be concealed in column enclosures provided by the radiation manufacturer. These enclosures shall consist of one-piece back panels, rounded front panels, and trim strips. Hangers for supporting piping shall be included. Column enclosures shall be suitable for cutting and fitting at the job site to conform to column dimensions, and shall be finished to match the enclosure.
- N. Dampers - Each enclosure without thermostatic control shall be provided with a knob-operated screw mechanism and shall be modulating control of the convective heating capacity.

2.19 BURIED HOT WATER PIPING

- A. All underground and aboveground hot water lines with fluid temperatures up to 250° shall be the POLY-THERM type, as manufactured by PERMA-PIPE.
- B. All straight sections, fitting, anchors and other accessories shall be factory fabricated to job dimensions and designed to minimize the number of field welds.
- C. Each system layout shall be computer analyzed by the piping system manufacturer to determine stress on the carrier, pipe, and anticipated thermal movement of the service pipe. The system design shall be in strict conformance with ANSI B31.1, latest edition. Factory trained field technical assistance shall be provided for critical periods of installation; unloading, field joint instruction, and testing.
- D. Internal piping shall be standard weight carbon steel. All joints shall be butt-welded for 2 ½" and greater, and socket or butt-welded for 2" and below. Where possible, straight sections shall be supplied in 18' or longer random lengths with 8" of piping exposed at each end for field joint fabrication.
- E. All system components shall be designed and factory fabricated to prevent the ingress of moisture into the system.
- F. Carrier pipe insulation shall be spray applied nominal 2 pound per cubic foot density, polyurethane foam for straight sections and performed polyurethane foam for all fittings. To ensure no voids are present, all insulation shall be inspected by one of the following three methods: visually checked prior to application of the protective jacket; infrared inspection of the entire length; or x-ray inspection of the entire length. The insulation thickness shall not be less than as specified under another section.
- G. All straight sections of the insulated piping system shall be fully jacketed in a filament wound, polyester resin/fiberglass reinforcement composite directly applied on the insulating foam. Thermoplastic casing material, e.g., PVC or PE, shall not be allowed.
- H. The minimum thickness for FRP jacket shall be as follows: For jacket diameter up to 15.5 inches-thickness = 0.055 inches; jacket diameter between 15.6 and 24.5 inches-thickness = .085 inches; jacket diameter between 24.6 and 31.0 inches-thickness = .110 inches; and jacket diameter between 31.1 and 40.0 inches-thickness = .140 inches.

- I. All fittings of the insulated piping system shall be prefabricated to minimize field joints and jacketed in a chopped spray-up, polyester resin/fiberglass reinforcement composite, directly applied onto the insulating foam to a thickness related to the filament wound jacket thickness.
- J. Field Joints:
 - 1. The internal pipe shall be hydrostatically tested to 150 PSIG or 1½ times the operating pressure, whichever is greater. Insulation shall then be poured in place into the field weld area. All field applied insulation shall be placed only in straight sections. Field insulation of fittings shall not be acceptable. The mold for the polyurethane shall be made of clear adhesive backed polyester film. The installer shall seal the field joint area with wrappings of glass reinforcement fully saturated with a catalyzed resin identical in properties to the factory-applied resin. Backfilling shall not begin until after the jacket has cured. All insulation and coating materials for making the field joint shall be furnished by PERMA-PIPE.
- K. Backfill:
 - 1. A 6" layer of sand or fine gravel shall be placed and tamped in the trench to provide a uniform bedding for the pipe. The entire trench width shall be evenly backfilled with a similar material as the bedding in 6 inch compacted layers to a minimum height of 12 inches above the top of the insulated piping system. The remaining trench shall be evenly and continuously backfilled in uniform layers with suitable excavated soil.

2.20 SNOW MELTING SYSTEM

- A. The system shall consist of pumps, convertors, piping, controls, anti-freeze, etc.
- B. Provide for each grid section factory lubricated teflon coated plug valve on supply and return lines.
- C. Piping shall be securely supported at maximum 6'-0" O.C. with proper alignment and pitch for draining. The system shall be tested for leaks with air or nitrogen at 25 psig minimum.
- D. The heating medium shall be 42.7% ethylene glycol.
- E. Wherever possible single length of piping shall be used for all grids. Welding will be permitted only if single length piping is not available. Couplings will not be permitted. Grid piping shall be welded into headers in a manner to insure freedom from weld drips maintaining clean full area bores.
- F. Entire piping system shall be electrically checked for freedom from stray current. (No electrical grounding to the system will be permitted).
- G. Provide cathodic protection in the form of two magnesium anodes with test leads to a convenient terminus.

2.21 UNDERGROUND STEEL CONDUIT

A. Conduit:

1. All conduit straight lengths shall be welded smoothwall of not less than 10 gauge wall thickness black steel for all sizes and shall be tested at the factory to insure air and watertight welds prior to any fabrication or application of resin coatings. Conduit surfaces, inside and outside, shall be cleaned and made free of all loose scale and mill coatings by sand blasting to clean bright metal, and care shall be taken to maintain the surfaces free of oil and grease, before application of coatings. After sandblasting, the conduit surfaces, inside and outside, shall be given a prime coat of epoxy resin modified for the purpose intended and in preparation for the finish coats. Finish coat of epoxy resin on interior surface shall be applied in one pass to effect a final minimum coating thickness of not less than 6 mils. Exterior finish coat shall be applied to a minimum thickness of 20 mils by the additional application of two alternately applied layers of glass cloth and in such a manner as to fully impregnate each layer with resin as the layers are applied.
2. All primer coats and finish coats shall be of the catalytic epoxy type, unmodified except for necessary dispersants and flow control agents, total modification not to exceed five percent of the vehicle solids. No modification or substitution of additional coatings of other types is permissible. The iron-oxide-zinc chromate catalyzed primer shall contain not less than 60 per cent solids after mixing the two components but before reduction. Of these solids the iron oxide pigment shall be 1.50 - 2.00 pounds per gallon and shall contain not less than 75 percent ferric oxide. The zinc chromate shall be .50 pounds per gallon minimum and the magnesium silicate 1.5 to 2.0 pounds per gallon. The vehicle portion of the primer shall consist of 65 percent epoxy resins (Shell 1001) and 35 per cent resinous curing agent with no more than 5 per cent of the vehicle as stabilizer and flow control agents.
3. The finish coat shall contain not less than 60 percent solids after mixing the two components but before reduction. The pigment shall consist of 2 pounds per gallon of chromium oxide with the addition of not more than 3 percent of the pigment as dispersants and suspending agents. The finish coat vehicle shall consist of (Shell 1001) epoxy resin and a resinous Nitrogen containing curing agent in the ratio of 65 per cent epoxy resin to 35 per cent curing agent with the addition of not more than 5 per cent of stabilizers and flow control agents.
4. Final outside coating shall be subjected to a spark test and be capable of maintaining dielectric strength of 10,000 volts.
5. Conduit closures of suitable length complete with pipe insulation shall be furnished by the system manufacturer and shall be cylindrical in form of 10 gauge steel with a single horizontal side split. Closures shall be supplied with necessary prime coating and one finish coat, inside and outside, of epoxy resin same as conduit.
6. Installation of closures shall occur in the field by the Contractor at points of field joints between straight units or fabricated fittings, and shall be welded centrally over conduit ends between such adjacent units.

7. After welding a pressure testing using 15 lbs. air shall be made, and all welds shall be examined and checked for leaks by applying a soapy solution to the weld area. Any leaks shall be rewelded and the system retested until airtight at 15 lbs. pressure.
8. The Contractor shall furnish all necessary equipment and labor to perform the air test, including air compressor, gauges, conduit caps, temporary pipe and connections, etc., and complete the test to the satisfaction of the architect and/or engineer.
9. Upon completion of test and as soon thereafter as possible, all field welds on closures shall be cleaned of all welding slag, burned coating, mud, etc., by wire brushing.
10. Coupler shall then be finish coated in accordance with the system manufacturer's instructions, using materials supplied.
11. Finished coating shall then be spark tested as hereinbefore specified for straight units.
12. Additional conduit accessories as hereinafter specified shall have all exposed surfaces coated with resin same as conduit.
13. The whole system, prior to backfill, shall be subjected to a final spark test, and any electrical leaks caused by scuffing or other physical damage to coating shall be made good.

B. Pipe and Pipe Supports

1. All piping in conduit shall be as specified for the service required. All field pipe joints shall be welded by competent mechanics and hammer tested under hydrostatic pressure of 250 psi or twice the working pressure, whichever is greater, unless otherwise specified. Concealed pipe welds in fabricated conduit fittings shall be factory tested the same as specified for field welds, prior to assembly.
2. Piping shall be suitably spaced in the conduit and shall be supported in such a manner to avoid stress on wear on the pipe and/or insulation. Pipe supports shall consist of full, round insulating discs with specially corrugated steel band outer periphery to allow free air passage within the casing from one side to the other and to afford minimum line contact with inner surface of conduit. Supports shall be spaced on not more than 10'-0" centers with metal surfaces of supports protected with epoxy resin coating same as for conduit.

C. Expansion Loops, Ells and Tees

1. Prefabricated ells, loops and tees shall be furnished and installed where shown on plans and shall consist of pipe, insulation, and conduit conforming to the same specification as hereinbefore specified for straight runs. Expansion loops shall be of proper design in accordance with stress limits indicated by A.S.M.E. Code for pressure piping, District Heating Section. Loop piping shall be installed in conduit suitably sized to handle indicated pipe movement.

D. End and Gland Seals

1. Terminal ends of conduits inside manholes, pits or building walls shall be equipped with end seals consisting of a steel bulk head plate welded to the pipe and conduit. Where there is no anchor within five feet of a terminal end, conduits shall be equipped with gland seals consisting of a packed stuffing box and gland follower mounted on a steel plate welded to end of conduit. End seals or gland seals shall be equipped with drain and vent openings located diametrically opposite on the vertical center line of the mounting plate and shall be shipped to the job site with plugs in place.

E. Waterstops or Leakplates

1. All conduits shall terminate 1" beyond inside face of manhole or building walls to prevent condensation drip from spilling over exposed piping insulation in pits. Conduit shall be equipped with leak plates or water stops located in wall approximately 5" from terminal ends to provide effective moisture barrier.

F. Anchors

1. Prefabricated plate anchors shall be furnished and installed where shown on plans and shall consist of a steel plate, welded to pipe and conduit. The steel plate shall be 3/8" thick for 6" to 10" conduit, 1/2" thick for 11-1/8" to 20" conduit and 3/4" thick for conduit over 20".
2. A concrete block shall be cast over the plate and conduit and shall be large enough for firm anchorage into undisturbed trench sidewalls. The concrete block to be at least 30" in length and extend a minimum of 9" beyond the top and bottom of anchor plate.

G. Pipe Insulation

1. All pipe or pipes in conduit, as hereinafter specified, shall be insulated with machine-molded 1-1/2" fiberglass cloth jacket. Side joints of insulation jackets shall be double stitch sewn with fiberglass thread and with end joints telescoped not less than 2 inches when applied. For chilled water piping, refer to insulation section.
2. The factory prefabricated insulated pipe conduit specified above shall be Imperial Line as supplied by Ric-Wil Incorporated, Barberton, Ohio, or equal, and installed under the supervision of a factory installation supervisor.

H. Cathodic Protection

1. Cathodic protection shall be provided for the buried systems furnished under these specifications.
2. The cathodic protection system consists of furnishing the design and materials, and performing all operations necessary to provide a flow of direct current from sacrificial anodes to the underground heating and cooling distribution systems.

3. The manufacturer of the heating conduit system shall be responsible for furnishing the design and materials for the cathodic protection of their particular system.
4. The system shall be designed with not less than 7% of the heating conduit surface considered bare and not less than 2 milliamps of current per square foot of bare surface. Seventeen pound magnesium anodes shall be used, sufficient for a 30 year life.
5. Test stations shall be provided along the conduit, not more than 500 feet apart, to test performance after installation. Terminate test leads at ground surface in a cast-iron housing encased in concrete, with approximately 18" of slack lead. Where buildings or structures are close by, test leads shall be housed in electrical conduit and terminated in waterproof junction boxes affixed to the structure.
6. Arrangements shall be made to electrically isolate the heating and cooling distribution piping under cathodic protection from other buried structures.
7. Special attention shall be given to buried electrical connections. These connections must be carefully checked and protected before backfilling. Backfill material around buried wires shall be free of stone and other sharp objects.
8. Before commencement of the installation, an earth resistivity survey shall be undertaken along the line of conduit, employing specialists in that field. At this time, samples of soil at anticipated pipe depth shall be obtained and the chemical analysis and electrical resistivity for each sample determined. Chemical analysts shall include pH, percentage of water soluble salts, chloride content and sulphate content. A minimum number of five samples shall be taken from representative locations along the route.
9. Before final acceptance of the cathodic protection system, a detailed, dimensional drawing shall be furnished showing exact locations of all anodes, test stations and the routes of all connecting cables. Methods of installing the materials shall also be detailed on this drawing.
10. The system shall be tested after installation has been completed and a report submitted. Additional anodes or alterations shall be provided as required for satisfactory operation of the system.
11. Proper installation of the cathodic protection system in accordance with the drawings shall be the responsibility of the contractor. However, a technically qualified representative from the designers of the cathodic protection system shall be present during the installation of the anodes and the test stations. The representative shall report in writing to the consulting engineers any work not in conformance with his recommendations. On completion of the work, the company responsible for the design of the cathodic protection system shall submit a certified letter stating that the installation has been made in accordance with the specifications and their recommendations.

12. The system under this section of the specifications shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from date of acceptance thereof. Upon receipt of notice of failure of any part of the system, during the guaranty period, the affected part or parts shall be replaced promptly with new parts by and at the expense of the contractor.

2.22 THERMOMETERS AND PRESSURE GAUGES

- A. Furnish and install pipe thermometers with separable sockets in the following locations. This applies to all systems described in the specification. Thermometers to be rated at minimum range 150% and maximum 200% of working temperature.
 1. In and out of each cooling tower.
 2. In and out of each refrigerant condenser and chiller. Thermometers as required under "Refrigeration Equipment".
 3. In and out of each converter and water to water exchangers (on water side).
 4. In return secondary water and in mixed water line after bleed valves on all bleed systems.
 5. In and out of each chilled water coil. A vertical bank of coil sections may have one thermometer on inlet header and one on outlet header. For these systems with two vertical banks of coils, then each bank shall have a thermometer on inlet and outlet headers.
 6. In and out of each heating coil in main air supply rig. A vertical coil bank section may have one thermometer on inlet header and one on outlet header. For those systems with two vertical banks of coils, then each bank shall have a thermometer on inlet and outlet headers.
 7. In condensate receiving or dilution tanks.
- B. Furnish and install pressure gauges in the following locations on water lines:
 1. At inlet and outlet of each circulating pump and upstream of inlet strainer. One gauge may be used in lieu of two on suction side of pump with suitable valves and piping. Pressure gauges to be rated at minimum 150% and maximum 200% of working pressure. If suction head on pump is below 5 PSI, furnish a compound gauge. Pumps to be provided with gauges in tapping provided for by pump vendor in pump nozzles.
 2. At inlet and outlet of refrigerant water chiller.
 3. At inlet and outlet of refrigerant condenser.
 4. At inlet and outlet of each converter and water to water exchanger (on water side).

5. At inlet and outlet of each coil bank. For those systems with two banks of three coils each, each bank shall have separate gauges. Locate gauges immediately downstream of shut-off valve on supply line, and immediately upstream of shut-off valve on return line.
 6. On discharge of condensate pumps.
 7. As required for compressed air lines described under automatic controls.
- C. See "Automatic Controls" for description of air thermometers to be provided by automatic control manufacturer.
- D. Thermometers for water systems shall be direct red reading, 9" vertical scale, 1 degree increments, manufactured by Weksler, Moeller, or Taylor and shall be minimum 4-1/2 inch dial type, aluminum flangeless case.
1. Pipe insertion dial thermometers shall have separable sockets of a material suitable for each given installation. Sockets for insulated lines shall have 2-1/2" extension necks.
 2. They shall be of the adjustable angle type to permit easy adjustment of the thermometer case, to facilitate reading after installation.
- E. Pressure gauges shall have 4-1/2" diameter dials, cast aluminum case, wide phosphor bronze bourdon, stainless steel movement, micrometer adjustment pointer, 1/2 of 1% accuracy, ranges as required. Shut-off cock shall be provided between each gauge and piping to permit removing gauge while system is under pressure. All gauges on steam piping shall be provided with syphons. All gauges on pumps shall be provided with pressure snubbers. Gauges as specified above shall be TRERICE 500X series, WEKSLER AAI series, WEISS PG series, ASCHROFT Duragauge series, or approved equal. Mount gauges so that they are clearly visible from floor level. Provide extension tubing as required.

2.23 PLATE HEAT EXCHANGER

- A. The plate heat exchangers shall be shipped to the site as completely assembled units. The exchangers shall be pressure tested and flushed clean at the factory prior to shipment. All nozzle connections shall be factory sealed prior to shipment to prevent the entrance of foreign matter into the heat exchangers during shipment, storage and installation.
- B. Applicable Codes and Standards:
1. The plate heat exchangers shall be factory tested in accordance with the requirements of Section VIII, Div. I of the ASME Code.
 2. Flanged nozzle connections shall conform to ANSI B16.5 standards, and shall be of the pressure rating design as indicated on the schedule. Pressure ratings assume full pressure on one side and zero pressure on the other side. Studded port construction is not acceptable.

C. Design Requirements:

1. Heat exchanger performance and design shall be in accordance with the schedule. Surface area shown per plate heat exchanger is the minimum acceptable. All performance calculations must include a minimum of ten percent (10%) additional surface for fouling. Calculated heat transfer surface area, with and without the additional fouling surface, must be indicated on the manufacturer's submitted performance calculation data sheets. Heat transfer rates fouled in excess of 750 BTU/HR/FT²/Deg. F are not acceptable.
2. Pressure drops in pounds per square inch across each circuit of the plate heat exchanger indicated on the schedules are the maximum allowed.
3. Heat exchanger design is to be of diagonal flow to optimize fluid flow distribution across the plate surfaces.

D. Construction Requirements:

1. Plates shall be fabricated from SA312-304 stainless steel having a 2B finish. Pattern shall be Chevron and shall be of a minimum thickness as indicated for the following Design/Test Pressure requirements:
 - (a) 150 psi design/225 psi test - .024 inches minimum plate thickness.
2. Gaskets shall be of a one piece molded design formulated of Nitrile rubber. Inactive port gasket areas shall be vented to the exterior in such a manner that no mixing can occur between fluid circuits.
3. Nozzles shall be flanged and shall comply with the requirements of ANSI B 16.5 for a 300 pound - 150 pound rating where applicable.
4. Heat exchanger frames shall have a minimum of two external lifting lugs per frame.
5. Each heat exchanger shall be fitted with a removable galvanized steel plate pack shroud with attached lifting handles; and shall completely enclose the plate pack, front/rear covers, and tie bars.
6. Plates shall be supported from an upper carrying bar and positioned by a lower guide bar. Plates shall not require the use of additional hanging clips for either support or positioning.
7. Frame shall be constructed of carbon steel in sufficient thickness and strength to operate within the designated design and test pressures. Design strength calculations are to be submitted at the Engineer's request.
8. Frame tightening bolts shall receive a rust-protective coating of molybdenum grease and shall also be covered with plastic sleeves.
9. All exposed frame parts shall be surface prepared to an SSP-6 finish, receive two prime coats of a glycerophthalic zinc chromate primer and two finish coats of an epoxy enamel to a minimum dry film thickness of 3mm.

E. Testing and Certification:

1. All factory hydrostatic testing of the plate heat exchangers is to be scheduled in conjunction with the Engineer to determine if the Engineer deems it necessary to have his representative available.
2. The plate heat exchanger manufacturer is required to make factory representation available should field thermal and/or pressure testing be required.

F. Approved Manufacturers:

1. Plate heat exchangers are as manufactured by American Vicarb Corporation.
2. Other manufacturers' plate heat exchanger equipment will be considered for approval providing:
 - (a) All design, construction and performance specifications are strictly adhered to; and
 - (b) Sufficient reference material can be supplied by the manufacturer exhibiting a minimum of five years similar industry experience.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping before welding.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Installation of Appurtenances and Sensors in Piping:

1. Provide all fittings, wells and openings required for installation of devices to indicate flow, temperature, pressure, etc., in piping systems.

B. Piping Systems - General:

1. The drawings indicate schematically the size and location of piping. Piping shall be set up and down and offset to meet field conditions and coordination between trades without additional cost. Piping shall conform to the latest revisions of ANSI/ASME B31.9 - "Building Services Piping."
2. Pipework shall conform fully to the following requirements:
 - (a) Provide proper provision for expansion and contraction in all portions of pipework, to prevent undue strains on piping or apparatus connected therewith. Provide double swings at riser transfers and other offsets wherever possible, to take up expansion. Arrange riser branches to take up motion of riser.

- (b) Approved bolted, gasketed, flanges (screwed or welded) shall be installed at all apparatus and appurtenances, and wherever else required to permit easy connection and disconnection. Screwed unions with steel faces can be used on piping 1" or less.
 - (c) All piping connections to coils and equipment shall be made with offsets provided with screwed or welded bolted flanges so arranged that the equipment can be serviced or removed without dismantling the piping.
 - (d) If, after plant is in operation, any coils or other apparatus are stratified or air bound (by vacuum or pressure), they shall be repiped with new approved and necessary fittings, air vents, or vacuum breakers at no extra cost. If connections are concealed in furring, floors, or ceilings, this trade shall bear all expenses of tearing up and refinishing construction and finish, leaving same in as good condition as before it was disturbed.
3. Pitch steam and condensate lines downward in direction of flow to ensure adequate flow and prevent noise and water hammer. At low points of steam lines provide traps adequately sized to collect condensate. Mains shall be dripped at least every 100 feet of run. All supply mains shall be dripped and trapped on any vertical lift. Provide capped dirt pockets at all traps, riser heels, and wherever dirt and scale may accumulate. To meet job conditions, mains shall set up (with drip connections to return line) to maintain headroom, clear other pipes, etc. Steam mains are to be installed as high as possible. System is to be arranged to secure venting of air to the return line at all low points in steam mains, without permitting ingress of air. In any case, where return or drip piping, to meet job conditions, may have to set down under stoops, doors, etc., and again rise after passing these, the sets shall be made up with 45 degree fittings and with Y-laterals at each end, with brass plugs to permit easy cleaning of trapped portions of pipe. At any points where return mains have to rise again, after being depressed, provide also approved overhead "air lines" (not smaller than 3/4" in size) with adjusting valves, and connect with two high sides. Any turns in water sealed lines shall be made with crosses, with brass plugs in unused outlets to facilitate cleaning. All apparatus subject to high temperature differentials and high steam demand loads such as outdoor air heating coils, domestic hot water heaters and steam-water converters, shall have a vacuum breaker installed as shown on details.
 4. Pitch water piping upward in direction of flow to ensure adequate flow without air binding, and to prevent noise and water hammer. Branch connections to mains are to be made in such a manner to prevent air trapping and permit free passage of air. To meet job conditions mains shall set up to maintain headroom, and clear other trades. Provide oversized float operated automatic air vent (with valve & strainer) at all high points particularly at the highest points of return mains and risers and high points of supply risers. Avoid 90 degree lift set-ups in supply lines by using 45 degree ells. Where 90 degree lifts exceed 12" install automatic air vent in supply lines. All lifts in return lines shall be installed with automatic air vents. Pipe outlet of all automatic air vents to an open sight drain if the vent is concealed, or to within two feet of the floor within machine rooms.

5. Miscellaneous drains, vents and reliefs are to be provided as follows:

- (a) Provide 1" drain valves with caps at the heel of all interior main water risers. Provide 1/2" drain valves with caps at the heel of all perimeter water risers.
- (b) Miscellaneous drains, vents, reliefs, and overflows from tanks, equipment, piping relief valves, pumps, etc., shall be run to the nearest open sight drain or roof drain. Provide drain valves whenever required for complete drainage of piping, including the system side of all pumps.
- (c) Provide domestic water connections from valved outlets to any equipment requiring same.
- (d) Provide automatic relief valves set 50# psi below rating pressure of all hot water heating vessels on vessel or in leaving hot water line on vessel side of any valve.
- (e) Contractor shall cap or plug in all systems, all open ended valves for future connections, drains and vents. Also, in order to prevent a dead leg of water and consequent corrosion, provide a 1" open bypass from supply to return with balancing valve in all open condenser water systems.

6. Screwed piping shall conform to the following:

- (a) Pipe nipples - Any piece of pipe 3" in length and less shall be considered a nipple. All nipples with unthreaded portion 1-1/2" and less shall be extra heavy. Only shoulder nipples shall be used. No close nipples will be provided.
- (b) Screw threads shall be cut clean and true; screw joints made tight without caulking. No caulking will be permitted. A non-hardening lubricant will be permitted. No bushings shall be used. Reductions, otherwise causing objectionable water or air pockets, to be made with eccentric reducers or eccentric fittings. All pipe shall be reamed out after cutting to remove all burrs.

END OF SECTION 15500

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 15881 - UNDERGROUND DUCTWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This section includes all the rectangular, round and flat-oval metal ducts and plenums for the complete heating, ventilating and air conditioning systems in all pressure classes. In addition, this section includes the following:
 - 1. Refer to other Division 15 sections for air distribution devices and accessories required in conjunction with this work.
 - 2. Leakage testing, Air Distribution System.
 - 3. Underground Ductwork

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section:
 - 1. Section 15010 - Basic Mechanical Requirements.
 - 2. Section 15050 - Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods.
 - 3. Section 15250 - Mechanical Insulation.
 - 4. This section is a part of each Division 15000 Section.
 - 5. Division 16 - Electrical.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. SMACNA.
- B. ASHRAE.
- C. NFPA
- D. NBS (National Bureau of Standards).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualify joining processes and installers in accordance with manufacturer's training requirements.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with the following NFPA Standards:
 - 1. NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," except as indicated otherwise.
 - 2. SMACNA - HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Latest Edition.
 - 3. SMACNA - "Thermoset FRP Duct Construction Manual."
 - 4. The contractor must comply with the specification in its entirety.

5. At the discretion of the Owner, sheet metal gauges, and reinforcing may be checked at various times to verify all duct construction is in compliance. If on inspections, changes have been made without prior approval, the contractor will make the applicable changes to comply with this specification, at the contractor's expense.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Submit duct fabrication standards and methods of installation, in compliance with SMACNA, NBS PS 15-69 and these specifications, for review by Architect. Clearly indicate the combination of wall thickness and reinforcement intended for each pressure classification. Duct fabrication shall not be allowed until a satisfactory review of this Standard has been performed.
- C. Include product description, list of materials for each service, and locations.
- D. Product data including details of construction relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes for the following items:
 1. Duct Materials
 2. Sealing Materials
 3. Insulation.
 4. Fire-Stopping Materials.
 5. Dampers, turning vanes, access doors, plenums, flexible connectors, etc.
- E. Shop drawings from duct fabrication shop, drawn to scale not smaller than 1/4 inch equals 1 foot, detailing:
 1. Fabrication, assembly and installation details, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.
 2. Duct layout for all areas of work, indicating pressure classifications and sizes in plan view. Include duct invert elevations, slopes, and bedding detail.
 3. Fittings.
 4. Reinforcing details and spacing.
 5. Seam and joint construction details.
 6. Penetrations through slabs, fire-rated and other partitions.
 7. Termination and riser transitions installations.
 8. Temporary capped duct termination details.
 9. Hangers and supports, underground bedding, including methods for building attachment, seismic restraint, vibration isolation, and duct attachment.
 10. Welding certificates including welding procedures specifications, welding procedures qualifications test records, and welders qualifications test records complying with requirements specified in "Quality Assurance" above.

1.6 DEFINITIONS

- A. Sealing Requirements Definitions: For the purposes of duct systems sealing requirements specified in this Section, the following definitions apply.

- B. Seams: A seam is defined as jointing of two longitudinally (in the direction of airflow) oriented edges of duct surface material occurring between two joints. All other duct surface connections made on the perimeter are deemed to be joints.
- C. Joints: Joints include girth joints, branch and subbranch intersections; so-called duct collar tap-ins; fitting subsections, louver and air terminal connection to ducts; access door and access panel frames and jambs; duct, plenum and casing abutments to building structures.

1.7 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide a duct system with minimum resistance to airflow. Take-offs shall be throated and transitions made as gradual as possible. 'Bullhead' or sharp take-offs are not acceptable. Branch take-offs shall be 45 deg entry type. Straight tap or butt flanged connections are not acceptable. Clinch lock connections are preferred.
- B. The duct system design, as indicated, has been used to select and size air moving and distribution equipment and other components of the air system. Changes or alterations to the layout or configuration of the duct system must be specifically approved in writing. Accompany requests for layout modifications with calculations showing that the proposal layout will provide the original design results without increasing the system total pressure.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. GENERAL

- A. Duct dimensions indicated on drawings are clear, inside dimensions.
 - B. Drawings are diagrammatic and indicate the arrangement of the principal apparatus, ductwork and piping and shall be followed as closely as possible. All offsets, rises, drops, fittings and accessories are not indicated on drawings, but shall be provided as required to install system. Carefully investigate structure, finish conditions, and the work of other sections affecting sheet metal work, including work associated with testing, adjusting and balancing, in order to arrange all items accordingly. Provide best possible arrangement so as to provide maximum headroom and maintenance clearances.
- B.
 - C. In addition to underground ductwork specified herein, furnish and install, or install as furnished by other sections, accessories and devices including air distribution devices, smoke detectors, plenums, canopy hoods, and blank-off panels at unused louver areas.
- C.
 - D. Furnish and install sheet metal duct transitions and temporary capped duct terminations.
- D.
 - E. Except as noted, all reinforcement shall be internal. External protection and slab reinforcement shall be coordinated with the structural drawings.

3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCTWORK

- A. All underground ductwork installed in a direct bury application shall be watertight fiber reinforced plastic (FRP) including all fittings.
- B. The duct and fittings, as a finished composite, shall meet the Flame and Smoke requirements of a Class 1 duct per UL 181 and UMC 10-1. Performance shall be verified by an ASTM E-84 testing laboratory recognized by ICBO or IBC.
- C. Wall thickness shall comply with SMACNA and PS 15-69 duct standards. The ductwork shall be furnished with the following minimum wall thickness:
 - 1. 0.125" for ducts up to 20" in diameter
 - 2. 0.187" for ducts 21" to 36" diameter
 - 3. 0.25" for ducts 37" to 60" diameter
- B. All underground ductwork shall be pre-insulated double wall construction with 1" insulation having a minimum R-value of 5. Duct outer wall thickness shall be equal to that indicated above.
- C. Resin shall be high grade thermosetting polyester, suitable for corrosion against all normal soil, backfill, and moisture conditions.
- D. Inner Lining shall be UL listed Class 1 for flame spread and smoke developed.
- E. Structural layer shall be filament wound of resin and glass to meet the specified working pressures and depths of burial requirements.
- F. Fittings shall be fabricated from straight duct and have the same working pressure and will be corrosion and moisture resistant. Reducers shall be filament wound as specified for ductwork.
- G. Field joints are to be water tight by using an internal galvanized sheet metal sleeve secured with screws. Joints shall then be of wet lay-up type in strict accordance with the manufacturers specifications. This includes thoroughly cleaning and sanding areas to be joined and using polyester resin and fiberglass mat.
- H. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Perry
 - 2. Spundstrand
 - 3. Foremost
 - 4. Or approved equal

3.1 ACCESS DOORS IN SHEET METAL WORK (FOR REFERENCE ONLY)

- A. This Contractor shall provide suitable access doors and frames to permit inspections, operation and maintenance of all underground duct distribution system low points as indicated on the drawings. All such doors shall be of double construction of not less than No. 20 gauge sheet metal and shall have sponge rubber gaskets around their entire perimeter. Doors in insulated ducts or insulated casings shall have rigid fiberglass insulation between the metal panels.
- B. All access doors in sheet metal ducts shall be hung on heavy flat hinges and shall be secured in the closed position by means of cast zinc clinching type latches. Where space conditions preclude hinges, use four heavy window type latches. Doors into ducts shall in general not be smaller than 18" x 18" except for access door to fire dampers which will depend on size of fire damper. Submit samples for approval.
- C. In no case shall access to any items of equipment requiring inspections, adjustment, or servicing require the removal of nuts, bolts, screws, wing nuts, wedges, or any other screwed or loose device.
- D. Each sheet metal chamber shall have access doors for access to all parts of the system. Doors shall be fitted with cast zinc door latches, two per door. Latches shall be operable from both sides of casing. Hinges shall be extra heavy, zinc plated hinges, minimum of two per door. The doors shall be felted or provided with rubber gaskets so as to make them airtight. The doors shall be made with inner and outer shells 2 inches apart so that they may be properly insulated and properly operated. Doors shall be a minimum size of 20" x 48".

PART 3 - INSTALLATION

3.1 GENERAL DUCTWORK INSTALLATION

- A. The specifications refer to SMACNA standards, which shall be considered minimal. If local codes require other standards than described in SMACNA, local codes shall govern.
- B. Ductwork shall be coordinate with all structural foundations, piping and utilities.
- C. Provide necessary offsets, transitions and streamliners to avoid interference with the building construction, piping, or equipment.
- D. Provide fittings, branches, inlets and outlets in such a manner that air turbulence is reduced to a minimum.
- E. Provide a duct system with minimum resistance to airflow. Take-offs shall be throated and transitions made as gradual as possible. 'Bullhead' or sharp take-offs are not acceptable. Branch take-offs shall be 45 deg entry type. Straight tap or butt flanged connections are not acceptable.

- F. Tees and laterals at 90 deg or round ducts shall be 45 deg lateral or 90 deg tee with oval to round tap. 90 deg tee fitting or 90 deg tap is not acceptable. Conical tees are acceptable.
- G. Transition fittings to sheet metal duct shall be constructed per manufacturer's recommendations for dry connection method. See 15880 Metal Ductwork for sheet metal duct requirements. Transitions shall be above final finished floor slab elevation.
- H. All auxiliary work of any kind, necessary to make the various air conditioning, ventilating and heating systems of the building complete and ready for operation, shall be furnished and installed.

3.2 DUCT SEALANTS

- A. All duct sealant shall be at joint construction per the wet lay-up method in strict accordance with manufacturer's specification. An allowable exception of the dry - type joint method per manufacturer's specification for sheet metal transition.

3.3 DUCTWORK CLEANER AND DISINFECTANT

- A. Required chemical cleaning prior to final connection to air-handling system risers shall utilize only bio-degradable approved for use by the duct manufacturer.

3.4 LEAKAGE TESTING, AIR DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

- A. The underground system is to be leak tested to 0 leakage before backfilling per standard SMACNA procedures. Leakage test port shall be above final grade elevation and sealed closed after completion of test.

3.5 UNDERSLAB DUCT INSTALLATIONS

- A. Install duct in graded trench with good drainage on minimum 4" bed of pea gravel with sand or pea gravel used as back-fill (see structural drawings). Joints shall then be of wet lay-up type in strict accordance with the manufacturers specifications. Thickness of the overwrap shall be equal to or greater than the outer layer wall thickness.
- B. Ductwork shall be ballasted per manufacturer's recommendation to secure in place up to completion of structural slab installation above ductwork.
- C. Verify undamaged conditions of duct prior to enclosure with fill or encasement.
- D. Install underslab ducts in accordance with SMACNA "HVAC Metal Duct Construction Standards.," Figures 3-11 and 3-12, as indicated.
- E. Protect ducts from damage by powered vibrators and other equipment used in placement of backfill or concrete on or around ducts. Do not allow storage of equipment, materials, or construction vehicle traffic above buried duct, including structural slab, unless authorized by structural engineer.

- F. Caulk annular of all slab penetration water tight. See architectural specifications for acceptable caulking materials and methods. Caulk shall be re-inspected and repaired as required prior to construction above structural slab.
- G. Provide temporary protection for duct openings (see drawings).

END OF SECTION 15881

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 15991 - PLUMBING
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes testing, adjusting, and balancing plumbing systems to produce design objectives, including the following:
 - 1. Balancing hot water circulation flow within distribution systems, including submains and/or branches.
 - 2. Measuring electrical performance of plumbing equipment.
 - 3. Setting quantitative performance of plumbing equipment.
 - 4. Verifying that automatic control devices are functioning properly.
 - 5. Reporting results of the activities and procedures specified in this Section.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Testing and adjusting requirements unique to particular systems and equipment are included in the Sections that specify those systems and equipment.
 - 2. Field quality-control testing to verify that workmanship quality for system and equipment installation is specified in system and equipment Sections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Adjust: To regulate fluid flow rate at the terminal equipment, such as to adjust balancing valves.
- B. Balance: To proportion flows within the distribution system, including submains, branches, and terminals, according to design quantities.
- C. Procedure: An approach to and execution of a sequence of work operations to yield repeatable results.
- D. Report Forms: Test data sheets for recording test data in logical order.
- E. Static Head: The pressure due to the weight of the fluid above the point of measurement. In a closed system, static head is equal on both sides of the pump.
- F. Suction Head: The height of fluid surface above the centerline of the pump on the suction side.

- G. System Effect: A phenomenon that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
- H. System Effect Factory: Allowances used to calculate a reduction of the performance ratings of a fan when installed under conditions different from those presented when the fan was performance tested.
- I. Terminal: A point where the controlled medium, such as fluid or energy, enters or leaves the distribution system.
- J. Test: A procedure to determine quantitative performance of a system or equipment.
- K. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing: The entity responsible for performing and reporting the testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Quality-Assurance Submittals: Within 30 days from the Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 2 copies of evidence that the testing, adjusting, and balancing and this Project's testing, adjusting, and balancing team members meet the qualifications specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article below.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 45 days from the Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 2 copies of the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3 of this Section.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days from the Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 2 copies of the testing, adjusting, and balancing strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in Part 3 "Preparation" Article below. Include a complete set of report forms intended for use on this Project.
- D. Certified Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Reports: Submit 2 copies of reports prepared, as specified in this Section, on approved forms certified by the testing, adjusting, and balancing Agent.
- E. Sample Report Forms: Submit 2 sets of sample testing, adjusting, and balancing report forms.
- F. Warranty: Submit 2 copies of special warranty specified in the "Warranty" Article below.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Conference: Meet with the Owner's and the Architect's representatives on approval of the testing, adjusting, and balancing strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Ensure the participation of testing, adjusting, and balancing team members, equipment manufacturers' authorized service representatives, plumbing controls Installer, and other support personnel. Provide 7 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the efforts of factory-authorized service representatives for systems and equipment, Plumbing controls installers, and other mechanics to operate plumbing systems and equipment to support and assist testing, adjusting, and balancing activities.
- B. Notice: Provide 7 days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: The national project performance guarantee specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Contract Documents to become familiar with project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems and equipment.
 - 1. Contract Documents are defined in the General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract.
 - 2. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- B. Examine approved submittal data of plumbing systems and equipment.
- C. Examine project record documents described in Division 1 Section "Project Record Documents."
- D. Examine Architect's and Engineer's design data, including plumbing system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about plumbing system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual

Specification Sections have been performed.

- F. Examine system and equipment test reports.
- G. Examine plumbing system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and properly installed, and their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.
- H. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.
- I. Examine strainers for clean screens and proper perforations.
- J. Examine 3-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows (if required).
- K. Examine open-piping-system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- L. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.
- M. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:
 - 1. Valves, and other controlled devices operate by the intended controller.
 - 2. Valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
 - 3. Integrity of valves for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions.
 - 4. Automatic modulating and shutoff valves, including 2-way valves and 3-way mixing and diverting valves, are properly connected (if required).
 - 5. Thermostats and humidistats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
 - 6. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
 - 7. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
 - 8. Controller set points are set at design values. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from design values.
 - 9. Interlocked systems are operating.
- N. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a testing, adjusting, and balancing plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

- B. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:
 - 1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
 - 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
 - 3. Equipment access doors are securely closed.
 - 4. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.

3.3 GENERAL TESTING AND BALANCING PROCEDURES

- A. Mark equipment settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including valve indicators, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.

3.4 FUNDAMENTAL PROCEDURES FOR HOT WATER CIRCULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
 - 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
 - 2. Check expansion tank liquid level.
 - 3. Check makeup-water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
 - 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation and set at design flow.
 - 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type, unless several terminal valves are kept open.
 - 6. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
 - 7. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.5 HOT WATER CIRCULATION SYSTEMS' BALANCING PROCEDURES

- A. Determine water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures, except for positive-displacement pumps:
 - 1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Verify with the pump manufacturer that this will not damage pump. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on the manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and confirm that the pump has the intended impeller size.

2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark the pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on the pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 5 percent of design.

3.6 WATER HEATERS

- A. Measure entering- and leaving-water temperatures and water flow.

3.7 TEMPERATURE-CONTROL VERIFICATION (MIXING VALVES)

- A. Verify that controllers are calibrated and commissioned.
- B. Check transmitter and controller locations and note conditions that would adversely affect control functions.
- C. Record controller settings and note variances between set points and actual measurements.
- D. Verify operation of limiting controllers (i.e., high- and low-temperature controllers).
- E. Verify free travel and proper operation of control devices such as valve operators.
- F. Verify sequence of operation of control devices. Note air pressures and device positions and correlate with airflow and water-flow measurements. Note the speed of response to input changes.
- G. Confirm interaction of electrically operated switch transducers.
- H. Confirm interaction of interlock and lockout systems.
- I. Verify main control supply-air pressure and observe compressor and dryer operations.
- J. Record voltages of power supply and controller output. Determine if the system operates on a grounded or nongrounded power supply.
- K. Note operation of electric actuators using spring return for proper fail-safe operations.

3.8 TOLERANCES

- A. Set plumbing system water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 1. Heating-Water Flow Rate: 0 to minus 10 percent.

3.9 REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article above, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to plumbing systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

3.10 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing testing, adjusting, and balancing, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

END OF SECTION 15991

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 16050 - BASIC ELECTRICAL
MATERIALS AND METHODS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this and the other sections of Division 16.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general requirements for electrical installations. These requirements are applicable to all Division 16 work. The following requirements are included in this Section to expand the requirements specified in Division 1:
 - 1. Submittals.
 - 2. Coordination drawings.
 - 3. Record documents.
 - 4. Maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Rough-ins.
 - 6. Electrical installations.
 - 7. Cutting and patching.
 - 8. Codes, Permits and Inspections.
 - 9. Separation of Work Between Trades.
 - 10. Definitions and Interpretations.
 - 11. Energy Conservation Rebate Programs.

1.3 SUSTAINABLE DESIGN

- A. Sustainable Design Intent: Comply with project requirements intended to achieve a Certified Rating, measured and documented according to the LEED Green Building Rating System, of the US Green Building Council.
- B. LEED Certification Documentation: Submit documentation from the manufacturer highlighting LEED requirements for materials and products of this Section.

- C. Comply with the requirements of Division 1 Section "LEED REQUIREMENTS".
- D. Construction Waste Management: Comply with the requirements of Division 1, Section "Construction Waste Management", for removal and disposal of construction debris and waste.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Follow the procedures specified in Division 1 Section "SUBMITTALS."
- B. Additional copies may be required by individual sections of these Specifications.

1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Prepare coordination drawings in accordance with Division 1 to a scale of 1/4"=1'-0" (1:50) or larger; detailing major elements, components, and systems of electrical equipment and materials in relationship with other systems, installations, and building components in all electric rooms including 1st floor main electrical room, 2nd floor electrical room and 3rd floor electrical room. Indicate locations where space is limited for installation and access and where sequencing and coordination of installations are of importance to the efficient flow of the Work, including (but not necessarily limited to) the following:
 - 1. Indicate the proposed locations of major raceway systems, equipment, and materials. Include the following:
 - (a) Clearances for servicing equipment, including space for equipment disassembly required for periodic maintenance.
 - (b) Exterior wall and foundation penetrations.
 - (c) Fire-rated wall and floor penetrations.
 - (d) Equipment connections and support details.
 - (e) Sizes and location of required concrete pads and bases.
 - 2. Indicate scheduling, sequencing, movement, and positioning of large equipment into the building during construction.
 - 3. Prepare floor plans, and details to indicate penetrations in floors, walls, and ceilings and their relationship to other penetrations and installations.
- B. Project Coordination Drawings
 - 1. This Trade shall add to Coordination Drawings prepared by the HVAC Contractor showing all of the electrical work (equipment, conduit, etc.) to be installed as part of the work of this section of the specifications.

2. Requirements for vibration isolation and seismic restraints shall be shown on the coordination drawings by each trade.
3. This Trade after showing all of the electrical work shall forward the completed reproducible Coordination Drawings to the General Contractor/Construction Manager.
4. The Electrical Contractor shall attend a series of meetings arranged by the General Contractor/Construction Manager to resolve any real or apparent interferences or conflicts with the work of the other Contractors.
5. The Electrical Contractor shall then make adjustments to his work on the Coordination Drawings to resolve any real or apparent interferences or conflicts.
6. After any real or apparent interferences and conflicts have been incorporated into the Coordination Drawings, the Electrical Contractor shall "sign-off" the final Coordination Drawings.
7. The Electrical Contractor shall not install any of this work prior to "sign-off" of final Coordination Drawings. If the electrical work proceeds prior to sign-off of Coordination Drawings, any change to the electrical work to correct the interferences and conflicts which result will be made by the Electrical Contractor at no additional cost to the project.

1.6 RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Prepare record documents in accordance with the requirements in Division 1. In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, comply with the following:
 1. A complete set of "as-built" or record electric drawings shall be made up and delivered to the Architect.
 2. The drawings shall show:-
 - (a) All electric work installed exactly in accordance with the original design.
 - (b) All electric work installed as a modification or addition to the original design.
 - (c) The dimensional information necessary to delineate the exact location of all circuitry and wiring runs (other than lighting and appliance branch circuitry and small control, signal and communications runs) which are so buried or concealed as to be untraceable by inspection through the regular means of access established for inspection and maintenance.

- (d) The numbering information necessary to correlate all electrical energy consuming items (or outlets for same) to the panel or switchboard circuits from which they are supplied.
- 3. The drawings shall be produced using AutoCAD software. The design drawing files will be made available should it be determined that such files would serve as suitable backgrounds for the "as-built" drawings. These documents remain the property of Cosentini Associates and may be used for no other purpose without expressed, written consent. The contractor shall assume all liabilities resulting from unauthorized use or modifications to the drawings.
- 4. "As-built" information shall be submitted as follows:
 - (a) CADD drawing files on CD-R in AutoCAD format.
 - (b) One (1) set of reproducible drawings.
 - (c) Two (2) sets of blueprints.
- 5. The quantity of design drawings which are made available shall in no way be interpreted as setting a limit to the number of drawings necessary to show the required "as-built" information.
- 6. Progress prints of record drawings shall be submitted monthly during the construction period for Architect's approval.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Prepare maintenance manuals in accordance with Division 1. In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, include the following information for major equipment items such as engine generator set(s), UPS equipment, alarm system(s), communications systems, transformers, busways, switchgear, switchboards, panelboards, automatic transfer switches, lighting fixtures, and other items as specified elsewhere.
 - 1. Description of function, normal operating characteristics and limitations, performance curves, engineering data and tests, and complete nomenclature and commercial numbers of replacement parts.
 - 2. Manufacturer's printed operating procedures include start-up, break-in, and routine and normal operating instructions; regulation, control, stopping, shutdown, and emergency instructions.
 - 3. Maintenance procedures for routine preventative maintenance and troubleshooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly; aligning and adjusting instructions.
 - 4. Servicing instructions.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to the project properly identified with names, model numbers, types, grades, compliance labels, and other information needed for identification.

1.9 CODES, PERMITS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. All work shall meet or exceed the latest requirements of all national, state, county, municipal, and other authorities exercising jurisdiction over electrical construction work and the project.
- B. All required permits and inspection certificates shall be obtained, paid for, and made available at the completion of the work.
- C. Any portion of the work which is not subject to the requirements of an electric code published by a specific authority having jurisdiction shall be governed by the National Electrical Code and other applicable sections of the National Fire Code, as published by the National Fire Protection Association.
- D. Equipment, material, layout and installation provided as part of the electrical work shall conform to the requirements of all agencies having jurisdiction. Include as part of the electrical work all required filings and submissions for approval. Equipment furnished separate from - but installed as part of - the electrical work, which does not have all necessary approvals, shall not be installed until approvals are obtained by the parties furnishing the equipment.
- E. Installation procedures, methods and conditions shall comply with the latest requirements of the Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA).
- F. All equipment furnished as part of the electrical work shall comply with the latest editions of all applicable state and municipal "energy codes." Provide certification from the equipment suppliers for all energy-consuming equipment that the equipment fully complies with these codes. Equipment submissions will not be accepted for review unless accompanied by such certification in writing.

1.10 GUARANTEES AND CERTIFICATIONS

- A. All work shall be guaranteed to be free from defects. Any defective materials or workmanship as well as damage to the work of all trades resulting from same shall be replaced or repaired as directed for the duration of stipulated guaranteed periods.
- B. The duration of guarantee periods following the date of beneficial use of the system shall be one year. Beneficial use is defined as operation of the system to obtain its intended use.
- C. The date of acceptance shall be the date of the final payment for the work or the date of a formal notice of acceptance, whichever is earlier.

- D. Non-durable items such as electric lamps, shall be replaced up to the date of acceptance, such that they shall have had no more than 100 hours use prior to this date.
- E. Certification shall be submitted attesting to the fact that specified performance criteria are met by all items of electrical equipment for which such certifications is required.

1.11 SEPARATION OF WORK BETWEEN TRADES

- A. The specifications for the overall construction delineate various items of work under separate trade headings. The list below sets forth this delineation to the extent that it affects the electric work.
- B. In the absence of more detailed information, the list shall be taken as a specific instruction to the electrical trade to include the work assigned to it.
- C. Indications that any trade is to perform an item of work means that it is to perform the work for its own accommodation only, except as specifically noted otherwise.

Oth = Other than electrical or mechanical.

Plb = Plumbing

FP = Fire Protection

Htg = Heating, Ventilating & Air Conditioning

Elec = Electrical.

f = Furnished.

i = Installed.

p = Provided (furnished and installed).

Item	Oth	Plb	FP	Htg	Elec	Note
Motors for mechanical equipment.		p	p	p		
Motor controllers for: Htg				f	i	Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions. Includes motor control centers if applicable.
Plb		f			i	
FP			f			

Item	Oth	Plb	FP	Htg	Elec	Note
Motor control devices for: Htg Plb FP		p	p	p		Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions. Control devices for mounting within controller are provided integral with controller.
Power wiring for motors: Htg Plb FP					p p	
Control wiring for motor controllers: Htg Plb FP				p	p p	Specifications and drawings delineate exceptions.
Temporary light and power.	p					See General conditions specifications. To accommodate all trades.
Temporary water.	p					
Temporary heat.	p					
Temporary toilets.	p					
Hoisting.					p	
Rigging.					p	
Bracing and dunnage for safe rigging.					p	
Cutting, chasing and patching.	p					Cost where due to late installation or improper coordination of work is the responsibility of the electric.

Item	Oth	Plb	FP	Htg	Elec	Note
Framed slots and openings in walls, decks and slabs.	p					Coordination drawings are required from the electric.
Sleeves through non-waterproof slabs, decks and walls.					p	Includes drilling of holes when required.
Sleeves through waterproof slabs, decks and walls.					p	Includes drilling of holes for other than field poured concrete.
Waterproof sealing of sleeves through waterproof slabs, decks and walls.					p	
Fireproof sealing (fire-stopping) excess opening spaces in slabs, decks and fire-rated walls.					p	
Excavation and backfill inside buildings.	p					
Excavation and backfill outside buildings.					p	
Concrete encasement of conduits.					p	Red coloring for concrete encasing primary voltage runs included in electric.
Electric manholes and handholes.					p	Furnishing of covers, associated frames and other hardware included in electric.
Fastenings.					p	
Supports.					p	
Flashing of electric conduits through roof (pitch pockets).	p					
Concrete foundations, pads and bases inside buildings.	p					Furnishing of anchors and vibration mounts included in the electric.
Concrete foundations, pads and bases outside buildings.					p	Furnishing of anchors and vibration mounts included in the electric.
Concrete lined trenches in building foundation.	p					

Item	Oth	Plb	FP	Htg	Elec	Note
Field touch-up painting of damaged shop coats.					p	
Field rustproof painting of supporting steel members, frames and racks.					p	
Finish painting of exposed work.	p					Red coloring of exposed fire protection alarm systems circuitry included in electric. Red and white striping of exposed primary voltage runs included in electric.
Finished wall and ceiling access doors, panels and supporting frames.	i				f	Supplying list of locations where required included in electric.
Permanent catwalks to equipment.	p					Supplying list of locations where required included in electric.
Permanent ladders to equipment.	p					Supplying list of locations where required included in electric.
Opening frames for ceiling recessed lighting fixtures and other electrical items.					p	
Luminous ceilings.	p					Lamp strips and lamps included in electric.
Electric duct heaters (heaters installed in air ducts).				p		Line and control connections included in electric.
Electric heaters with integral fans, (unit heaters, cabinet heaters, fan coil units and the like.)				p		Line and control connections included in electric.
Electric radiators (baseboard, sill line and convactor type heaters).					p	
Electric water heaters.		p				Line and control connections included in electric.

Item	Oth	Plb	FP	Htg	Elec	Note
Electric boilers.				p		Line and control connections included in electric.
Through wall sleeve type air conditioning and electric heating units.					p	
Electric heater cables for radiant space heating.					p	
Electric heater cables for snow melting.					p	
Electric heater cables for mechanical system pipe tracing.					p	
Electric power consuming items and controls for same not referred to above.	p	p	p	p		Line and control connections to equipment included in electric.
Rubbish removal.					p	Removal of the shipping and packing materials of electrical items is included in the electric regardless by whom the items are furnished.
Special tools for maintenance of equipment furnished as part of electric work.					f	

- D. Include in the electrical work all necessary supervision and the issuing of all coordination information to any other trades who are supplying work to accommodate the electrical installations.
- E. For items of equipment which are to be installed but not purchased as part of the electrical work, the electrical work shall include:
1. The coordination of their delivery.
 2. Their unloading from delivery trucks driven in to any point on the property line at grade level.
 3. Their safe handling and field storage up to the time of permanent placement in the project.
 4. The correction of any damage, defacement or corrosion to which they may have been subjected.

5. Their field make-up and internal wiring as may be necessary for their proper operation.
 6. Their mounting in place including the purchase and installation of all dunnage, supporting members, and fastenings necessary to adapt them to architectural and structural conditions.
 7. Their connection to building wiring including the purchase and installation of all "crown boxes" or other type of termination junction boxes necessary to adapt and connect them to this wiring. Included also shall be the purchase and installation of any substitute lugs or other wiring terminations as may be necessary to adapt their terminals to the building wiring as called for and to the connection methods set forth in these specifications.
- F. Items of equipment which are installed but not purchased as part of the electrical work shall be carefully examined upon delivery to the project. Claims that any of these items have been received in such condition that their installation will require procedures beyond the reasonable scope of the electric work will be considered only if presented in writing within one week of the date of delivery to the project of the items in question. The electric work includes all procedures, regardless of how extensive, necessary to put into satisfactory operation, all items for which no claims have been submitted as outlined above.

1.12 DEFINITIONS AND INTERPRETATIONS

- A. As used in the drawings and specifications for electrical work, certain non-technical words shall be understood to have specific meanings as follows regardless of indications to the contrary in the General Conditions or other documents governing the electric work.

"Furnish" -- Purchase and deliver to the project site complete with every necessary appurtenance and support, all as part of the electrical work. Purchasing shall include payment of all sales taxes and other surcharges as may be required to assure that purchased items are free of all liens, claims or encumbrances. Payment of sales taxes is, however, specifically excluded.

"Install" -- Unload at the delivery point at the site and perform every operation necessary to establish secure mounting and correct operation at the proper location in the project, all as part of the electrical work.

"Provide" -- "Furnish" and "install."

"New" -- Manufactured within the past two years and never before used.

Regardless of their usage in codes or other industry standards, certain words as used in the drawings or specifications for the electrical work, shall be understood to have the specific meanings ascribed to them in the following list:-

"Circuitry" -- Any electric work (not limited to light and power distribution) which consists of wires, cables, raceways, and/or specialty wiring method assemblies taken all together complete with associated junction boxes, pull boxes, outlet boxes, joints, couplings, splices and connections except where limited to a lesser meaning by specific description.

"Wiring" -- Same as Circuitry.

"Circuit" -- Any specific run of circuitry.

"Branch Circuit" -- Any light and power distribution system circuit which, at its load end, is directly connected to one or more electrical energy consuming items with no overcurrent protection devices interposed, other than (where required) those protecting the energy consuming items from overloading or overheating.

"Appliance Panel" -- Any panel, used in a light and power distribution system, containing single pole and/or multipole branches rated in various sizes.

"Lighting Panel" -- Any panel used in a light and power distribution system, having all (or the majority) of its branches single pole and rated the same.

"Lighting and Appliance Branch Circuitry" -- All or any portion of branch circuits outgoing from a lighting or appliance panel.

"Feeder" -- Any item of light and power circuitry used in a distribution system which is not lighting and appliance branch circuitry.

"Main Feeder" -- Any feeder which, at its supply end, is connected through its own overcurrent protection (and switching) device, and none other, directly to a main service or a main service overcurrent protection (and switching) device.

"Branch Feeder" -- A feeder, other than a main feeder, which complies with the definition of a branch circuit.

"Submain Feeder" -- Any feeder which is neither a main feeder nor a branch feeder.

"Distribution Panel" -- Any panel, used in a light and power distribution system, containing only multi-pole branches and with all (or the majority) of its branches used for feeders supplying other panels.

"Power Panel" -- Same as distribution panel, except with all (or the majority) of its branches used for feeders which do not supply other panels.

"Motor Power Circuit" -- Any circuit which operates nominally at 100 volts or more, and which carries electrical input energy to a motor.

"Motor Control Circuit" (used in conjunction with a motor for which a magnetic starter is supplied) -- Any circuit (other than a motor power circuit), which operates nominally at 100 volts or more, and which carries current intended for directing or indicating the performance of a motor starter.

"Motor Control Circuit" (used in conjunction with a motor for which a manual starter is supplied) -- Any circuit containing an extension of power circuit wires, other than those constituting the direct connection between source of supply, starter and motor.

"Motor Control Actuating Device" -- Any device which performs a switching function in a motor control circuit (pushbuttons, automatic contacting devices, etc.).

"Motor Control Actuated Device" -- Any device which functions in response to voltage received from a motor control circuit (pilot lights, solenoids, etc.)

"Package Unit" -- An item of equipment having one or more motors or other electric energy consuming elements integrally factory mounted on a single base, complete with all associated control devices and interconnecting wiring.

"Low Voltage" -- Below 50 volts.

"Process Control System" -- An overall control and/or logging system of a low voltage, electronic or pneumatic type available as a fully installed "package" from specialty manufacturers (commonly referred to as a "Temperature Control System" or an "Automatic Control System" or a "Building Management System" where used in conjunction with air conditioning).

"Grade Slab" -- A building floor slab which is in contact with or directly over grade (earth).

"Building Confines" -- The extent of a building, as defined by the outside surfaces of its peripheral walls, the top surface of its roof, and the underside surface of its grade slab.

"Distribution Switch" -- Any switch used in a light and power system other than a tumbler, toggle or specialty switch in the "wiring device" category.

"Normal Electric Work Conditions" -- Locations within building confines which are neither damp, wet nor hazardous and which are not used for air handling.

"Underground" -- Subsurface and exterior to building foundations.

"At Underside of Grade Slab" -- Under a grade slab and integrated into it.

"Below Grade Slab" -- Under a grade slab but not integrated into it.

"Standard" (as applied to wiring devices) -- Not of a separately designated individual type.

"Raceway" -- Any pipe, duct, extended enclosure, or conduit (as specified for a particular system) which is used to contain wires, and which is of such nature as to require that the wires be installed by a "pulling in" procedure.

"Specialty Cast-in-Floor Raceway" -- Underfloor duct, cellular deck and the like.

"Concealed" (as applied to circuitry) -- Covered completely by building materials, except for penetrations (by boxes and fittings) to a level flush with the surface as necessitated by functional or specified accessibility requirements.

"Exposed" (as applied to circuitry) -- Not covered in any way by building materials.

"Subject to Mechanical Damage" -- Exposed within seven feet of the floor in mechanical rooms, vehicular spaces, or other spaces where heavy items (over 100 pounds) are moved around or rigged as a common practice or as required for replacement purposes.

"Primary" (as applied to light and power distribution) -- Over 600 volts.

"Secondary" (as applied to light and power distribution) -- Under 600 volts.

"Assembly" -- A defined set of elements of electric work.

- B. The following shall be treated as damp or wet locations within building confines, regardless of whether or not a high ambient moisture level is found to exist:-
1. Spaces where any designations indicating weatherproof (WP) or vapor-proof (VP) appear on the drawings.
 2. Cooling tower areas.
 3. Below waterproofing in slabs applied directly on grade.
 4. Kitchens up to a height of 18" above finished floor.
 5. Outside of waterproofing in foundation walls in contact with grade.
 6. Above waterproofing in slabs having no building above.
 7. Above waterproofing in fill on slabs having no building above.
 8. Spaces containing equipment owned and/or maintained by the electric utility company.
- C. Electric work in slabs, walls or suspended ceilings which bound on a space defined as a damp or wet location shall meet the damp or wet location requirements if it enters into, or opens into the damp or wet location in any way.
- D. Where the word "conduit" is used without specific reference to type, it shall be understood to mean "raceway".

- E. Except where modified by a specific notation to the contrary, it shall be understood that the indication and/or description of any electrical item in the drawings and specifications for electrical work carries with it the instruction to furnish, install and connect the item as part of the electrical work regardless of whether or not this instruction is explicitly stated.
- F. It shall be understood that the specifications and drawings are complementary and are to be taken together for a complete interpretation of the work. Where there are conflicts between the drawings and specifications or within the specifications or drawings themselves, the items of higher standard shall govern.
- G. To the extent that they govern the basic work, the specifications also govern change order work if any.
- H. No exclusion from or limitation in, the symbolism used on the drawings for electrical work or the language used in the specifications for electrical work shall be interpreted as a reason for omitting the appurtenances or accessories necessary to complete any required system or item of equipment.
- I. The drawings for electrical work utilize symbols and schematic diagrams which have no dimensional significance. The work shall, therefore, be installed to fulfill the diagrammatic intent expressed on the electrical drawings, but in conformity with the dimensions indicated on the final working drawings, field layouts and shop drawings of all trades. In particular, information as to the exact size, location and electrical connection points for mechanical equipment shall be derived by reference to HVAC and Plumbing documents.
- J. Certain details appear on the drawings for electrical work which are specific with regard to the dimensioning and positioning of the work. These are intended only for general information purposes. They do not obviate field coordination for individual items of the indicated work.
- K. Information as to general construction and architectural general construction and architectural features and finishes shall be derived from structural and architectural drawings and specifications only.
- L. The use of words in the singular shall not be considered as limiting where other indications denote that more than one item is referred to.
- M. Ratings of devices, materials and equipment specified without reference to specific performance criteria shall be understood to be nominal or nameplate ratings established by means of industry standard procedures.

- N. The restriction of conductors in wires to copper, as specified elsewhere, shall be understood to also apply to all conductors (wire, cable or bus as applicable), including those provided as part of factory assembled components such as transformers, switchboards, panelboards, panelettes, bus duct, switchgear, power centers], overcurrent protection and switching devices. This restriction shall apply equally to all such equipment regardless of indications (or lack thereof) elsewhere to the contrary. Aluminum will not be acceptable.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TOUCH UP PAINT

- A. For Equipment: Equipment manufacturer's paint selected to match installed equipment finish.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Zinc-rich paint recommended by item manufacturer.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS IN FINISHED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Access doors as required for operation and maintenance of concealed equipment, valves, controls, etc. will be coordinated by general contractor.
1. Access doors shall be of ample size, minimum of 16 inches x 16 inches (40 cm. x 40 cm.).
- B. Furnish (confirm with GC) access doors as required for operation and maintenance of concealed equipment, valves, controls, etc., and coordinate their delivery with the installing Trade.
1. Coordinate and prepare a location, size, and function schedule of access required and deliver to a representative of the installing Trade.
 2. Doors shall be minimum size 16 inches x 16 inches (40 cm. x 40 cm.) as manufactured by Karp Associates, Inland Steel Products "Milcor", "MIFAB" or other approved in accordance with the following schedule:

Location	Type	Catalog Number
Plaster Ceiling	Recessed Door Panel	Karp DSC-210-PL Milcor Style AP MIFAB-CAD-PL
Acoustic Tile Ceiling	Recessed Door Panel for Tile	Karp DSC-210 Milcor Style AT MIFAB-CAD
Plaster Wall	Flush Door Panel	Karp DSC-214-PL Milcor Style K MIFAB-CAD-PL-PL

Drywall	Flush Door Panel	Karp DSC-214-M Milcor Style DW MIFAB-MDW
Drywall	Recessed Door Panel	Karp-RDW-210 MIFAB-CAD-FL
Ceramic Tile Walls	Flush Door Panel	Karp DSC-214-M Milcor Style M MIFAB-UA
Masonry Wall	Flush Door Panel	Karp DSC-214-M Milcor Style M MIFAB-UA
3-Hour Rated Masonry Shaft	Flush Door Panel	Karp DSC-211-FRT MIFAB-MPFR-SD
1-1/2 Hour Rated Shaft	Flush Door Panel	Karp KRP-150-FR Milcor Fire Door Rated Access Door Panel MIFAB-MPFR

3. Doors and frames shall be given a factory prime coat of corrosion resistant paint.
4. Type shall be as approved by Architect.
5. Frames shall be welded minimum I4 gauge steel, mitered corners ground smooth with anchors.
6. Finish shall be as selected and approved by Architect.
7. Doors shall be minimum 14 gauge steel, heavy hinges flush with frame, invisible when closed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ROUGH-IN

- A. Verify final locations for rough-ins with field measurements and with the requirements of the actual equipment to be connected.
- B. Refer to equipment specifications in Divisions 2 through 16 for rough-in requirements.

3.2 ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS

- A. General: Sequence, coordinate, and integrate the various elements of electrical systems, materials, and equipment. Comply with the following requirements:

1. Coordinate electrical systems, equipment, and materials installation with other building components.
 2. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.
 3. Arrange for chases, slots, and openings in other building components during progress of construction, to allow for electrical installations.
 4. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and sleeves to be set in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components, as they are constructed.
 5. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Give particular attention to large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
 6. Where mounting heights are not detailed or dimensioned, install systems, materials, and equipment to provide the maximum headroom possible.
 7. Install systems, materials, and equipment to conform with approved submittal data, including coordination drawings, to greatest extent possible. Conform to arrangements indicated by the Contract Documents, recognizing that portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Where coordination requirements conflict with individual system requirements, refer conflict to the Architect.
 8. Install systems, materials, and equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, where installed exposed in finished spaces.
 9. Install electrical equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. As much as practical, connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations.
 10. Coordinate location of access panels or doors where outlet boxes, junction boxes, or equipment are concealed behind finished surfaces.
 11. Install systems, materials, and equipment giving right-of-way priority to systems required to be installed at a specified slope.
- B. Coordinate electrical service connections to components furnished by utility companies.
1. Coordinate installation and connection of exterior underground and overhead utilities and services.
 2. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and of utility company providing electrical power and other services.

- C. Locations of all devices, fixtures, and other visible components shall be as indicated on the architectural drawings. Mounting heights shall be as specified in Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes".
- D. Each piece of mechanical equipment located outside the building or on the roof shall be within 25 feet (7 m) of a duplex outlet. Where necessary to meet this criteria, provide duplex outlets in addition to those devices shown on the drawings. Each shall be complete with waterproof cover and integral GFI protection, and 20 ampere circuitry to the nearest 120 volt panel on the proper electric meter.

3.3 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to cable and raceway penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to achieve fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 7 Section "Firestopping."

3.4 FOUNDATIONS

- A. General
 - 1. All equipment, including but not limited to Switchgear, Switchboards, Motor control centers, Generators, Uninterruptible power supplies and battery racks, Automatic transfer switches, transformers shall be provided with foundations.
 - 2. Furnish shop drawings showing adequate concrete reinforcing steel details and templates for all concrete foundations and supports, and all required anchor bolts and other appurtenances necessary for the proper installation of this equipment. All concrete work shall be shown in detail on the shop drawings, prepared by this trade.
 - 3. Each piece of equipment shall be set on a concrete base minimum 4 inches (10 cm.) high and extending 3 inches (8 cm.) beyond the equipment in all directions. Bases shall be integrally keyed to structural slab.

3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Perform cutting and patching in accordance with Division 1 Section "Cutting and Patching." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Perform cutting, fitting, and patching of electrical equipment and materials required to:
 - (a) Uncover Work to provide for installation of ill-timed Work.
 - (b) Remove and replace defective Work.

- (c) Remove and replace Work not conforming to requirements of the Contract Documents.
 - (d) Upon written instructions from the Architect, uncover and restore Work to provide for Architect observation of concealed Work.
- 2. Protection of Installed Work: During cutting and patching operations, protect adjacent installations.
- 3. Patch finished surfaces and building components using new materials specified for the original installation and experienced Installers.
- B. Identify for future use with a tag at each unterminated end all low voltage (audio, data, Class 2, Class 3, PLTC, fire alarm, optical fiber, communications, coaxial, and network) cables.

3.6 REFINISHING AND TOUCH UP PAINTING

- A. Clean damaged and disturbed areas and apply primer, intermediate, and finish coats to suit the degree of damage at each location.
- B. Follow paint manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation and for timing and application of successive coats.
- C. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touch up coating recommended by manufacturer.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect installed components for damage and faulty work, including the following:
 - 1. Cutting and patching for electrical construction.
 - 2. Touch up painting.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. On completion of installation, including outlets, fittings, and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, paint spots, and construction debris.
- B. Protect equipment and installations and maintain conditions to ensure that coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 16050

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 16060 - GROUNDING AND BONDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes grounding of electrical systems and equipment. Grounding requirements specified in this Section may be supplemented in other sections of these Specifications.
- B. Related sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."
 - 2. Division 16 Section "Raceways and Boxes."
 - 3. Division 16, Section "Underground Ducts and Utility Structures."
 - 4. Division 16, Section "Lightning Protection."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. Ground rods.
- B. Field Test Reports: Written reports specified in Part 3.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.
- B. Comply with UL 467.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes.
- D. Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system.
- E. Comply with applicable BICSI standards.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Erico Products, Inc.
 2. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 3. Kearney.
 4. O-Z/Gedney Co.
 5. Racco, Inc.
 6. Thomas & Betts, Electrical

2.2 GROUNDING CONDUCTORS

- A. For insulated conductors, comply with Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."
- B. Material: Copper
- C. Equipment Grounding Conductors: Insulated with green-colored insulation.
- D. Isolated Ground Conductors: Insulated with green-colored insulation with yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, use colored tape - alternating bands of green and yellow tape to provide a minimum of three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- E. Grounding Electrode Conductors: Stranded cable.
- F. Underground Conductors: Bare, tinned, stranded, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Bare Copper Conductors: Comply with the following:
1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 2. Assembly of Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
- H. Copper Bonding Conductors: As follows (except where otherwise indicated):
1. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG copper conductor, 0.25-inch (6.4 mm) in diameter.
 2. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded copper conductor.

3. Bonding Jumper: Bare copper tape, braided bare copper No. 30 AWG conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1.625 inch (42 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) thick.
4. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided copper No. 30 AWG conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (42 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) thick.
- I. Grounding Bus: Bare, annealed copper bars of rectangular cross section, 1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm) in cross section, unless otherwise indicated; with mounting insulators.

2.3 CONNECTOR PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with IEEE 837 and UL 467; listed for use for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and connected items.
- B. Connectors: Bolted-pressure-type connectors, or compression type.
- C. Bolted Clamps: Heavy-duty type.
- D. Pressure Connectors: High-conductivity-plated units.
- E. Main Grounding System - Welded Connections: Exothermic-welded type, in kit form, and selected per manufacturer's written instructions for the specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items to be connected.
 1. Manufacturer: Erico "Cadweld" system.

2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel with high-strength steel core and electrolytic-grade copper outer sheath, molten welded to core.
 1. Size: 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 by 3000 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Equipment Grounding Conductor Application: Comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes, for sizes and quantities of equipment grounding conductors except where specific types, larger sizes or more conductors are indicated.
 1. Provide equipment grounding conductors with circuit conductors for all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Signal and Communications: For telephone, alarm, voice and data and other communication systems, provide a #4 AWG minimum green insulated copper conductor in raceway from the grounding electrode system to each service location, antenna, terminal cabinet, wiring closet and central equipment location.

- C. The ground bus of switchboards and switchgear shall be connected to the main grounding electrode by means of insulated grounding electrode conductors run in intermediate metallic conduit and sized as per Code.
- D. The neutral bar of each individually enclosed service switch shall be bonded to its enclosure on the line side of a removable link (included therein), and connected to the main grounding electrode by means of insulated grounding electrode conductors run in intermediate metallic conduit and sized as per Code.
- E. The emergency generator system neutral shall be grounded by means of a connection from the [neutral bar in the generator main circuit breaker enclosure to the main grounding electrode by means of an insulated grounding electrode conductor run in intermediate conduit and sized as per Code. Include a bonding connection from the neutral to the equipment enclosure.
- F. The Uninterruptible Power Source (UPS) system neutral shall be grounded by means of a connection from the neutral bar in the UPS main circuit breaker enclosure to the main grounding electrode by means of an insulated grounding electrode conductor run in intermediate conduit and sized as per Code. Include a bonding connection from the neutral to the equipment enclosure.
- G. The main grounding electrode shall be an accessible point on the nearest metallic main water service pipe. Connection shall be made on the street side of the main valve utilizing a ground clamp of a type specifically manufactured for the purpose. Bonding jumpers shall be provided around the water meters (if provided) and around insulating joints and/or sections, utilizing conductors sized as per Code and run in IMC. Bond the structural steel to the grounding electrode system.
- H. The water pipe ground shall be supplemented by an additional "made" electrode consisting of buried ground rods, and provided in sufficient quantity so as to have a measured resistance to ground of not more than 5 ohms. Establish a bonding connection from the "made" electrode consisting of green insulated conductors run in IMC and sized as per Code.
- I. Bond the reinforcing bars in concrete to the nearest grounding electrode. Where reinforcing bars are installed in building foundations and footings protect the bonding conductor during construction. Arrange for inspection by the authority having jurisdiction prior to placement of concrete.
- J. The neutral of secondary winding of each low voltage (i.e., less than 600 volts) transformer shall be grounded to the grounding electrode as specified hereinafter by means of an insulated grounding conductor sized as per Code and run in IMC. The neutral of each transformer shall be bonded to the transformer enclosure by means of an insulated conductor sized as per code. If not factory installed the jumper shall be field installed within the transformer enclosure.
- K. At each secondary voltage to secondary voltage transformer, bond the metallic water piping system to the transformer neutral at the nearest available location utilizing conductors sized equal to the grounding electrode conductor and run in conduit.

- L. The grounding electrode for each low voltage (both windings 600 volts or less) transformer shall be the main water service pipe entering the building taken at a point on the street side of its main valve. Utilize a common ground clamp on the main water pipe, with means for connecting the multiple separate grounding conductors from the various transformers. In lieu of multiple separate grounding conductors, multiple connection to a "ground bus cable" may be utilized. The ground bus cable shall consist of a 500 MCM green coded insulated copper conductor run in 1-1/2 inch (DN 41) threaded steel conduit from the street side of the main water service valve, throughout the building to all dry type transformer locations requiring grounding. The ground bus cable shall be connected to the main water pipe by means of a ground clamp of a type specifically manufactured for the purpose. At each transformer location, establish a "grounding electrode" connection point by arranging a break in the "ground bus cable" conduit exposing the cable for not more than a twelve inch length. Ends of conduit at the break shall be equipped with bushings. The connection shall be made by means of an irreversible compression connector listed for the purpose or an exothermic weld.
- M. Include a properly sized green insulated grounding conductor within the conduit for each feeder supplying a panel containing an isolated ground bus (i.e., insulated from ground). Increase indicated conduit size if necessary to accommodate this conductor. Connect to the neutral grounding facility for feeders originating at the service entry point or at 480-120/208 volt stepdown transformers as applicable.
- N. Bond metallic conduits containing grounding electrode conductors and main bonding conductors to the ground bus service enclosure and/or grounding electrode at both ends of each run utilizing grounding bushings and jumpers. Bonding jumpers shall be sized equal to the grounding electrode conductors.
- O. Provide grounding bonds for all metallic conduits of the light and power system which terminate at (or in pits below) distribution equipment for which a ground bus is specified. Accomplish this by equipping the conduits with bushings of the grounding type connected individually to the ground bus.
- P. Provide supplementary ground bonding to maintain continuity of the equipment and raceway grounding system as follows:
 - 1. Bonding jumpers shall be applied where wiring devices (receptacles and switches) are not equipped with approved self-grounding features. Include any necessary field modifications for termination of the bonding jumpers so as to insure grounding continuity.
 - 2. Bonding jumpers shall be applied to insure that grounding continuity does not depend solely on the supporting screws fastening metallic enclosures together.
 - 3. Include any necessary field modifications for termination of the bonding jumpers so as to insure grounding continuity.

- Q. Provide grounding of raised metallic floors used to contain wiring to computers and/or other equipment. Where the floor system is of a type that is specifically designed by the manufacturer to maintain ground continuity through its metallic structural support system, the grounding may be accomplished by means of no fewer than (8) bonding connections spaced equally about the perimeter but in no case more than 100 feet (30 m) apart. Utilize #8 AWG green insulated copper conductors for the connection of the bonding locations to the ground bus in the panel serving the equipment and the service ground point. If the raised floor is to be used as an air handling plenum, the insulation shall be of a fluoropolymer type suitable for use in plenums without raceway. If the floor system is not designed to maintain ground continuity through the metallic structural support system, alternating support pedestals in each direction must be connected to the bonding conductors.
- R. Provide a ground connection for each 100 feet (30 m) of run of cable tray, and for each isolated run of less than 100 feet (30 m), by means of a #6 AWG green coded insulated copper conductor run in 3/4 inch (DN 21) conduit. The grounding electrode for each run of cable tray requiring same shall consist of a cadweld connection to adjacent structural steel at a point where only fireproofing and not structural concrete is applied to it or the nearest cold water pipe if steel is not available. Utilize ground clamps of a type specifically manufactured for the purpose.
- S. Provide supplementary ground bonding for each motor control center (MCC) as follows:
1. Provide equipment grounding conductors as required to insure that all sections (including attached integral or field installed pullboxes) are bonded together by means of these conductors and by means of the MCC ground bus (if a ground bus is included in the MCC).
 2. Provide grounding bushings and jumpers as required to insure that all conduits and any contained equipment grounding conductors are bonded to the enclosure grounding conductors (or ground bus).
- T. Where specifically noted on the drawings, or described hereinbefore in this Section, include insulated equipment and raceway grounding conductors run within the raceways. Where insulated equipment grounding conductors required for feeders have not been included in the quantities of conductors indicated on the drawings, incorporate such conductors in accordance with the electrical code. Adjust conduit sizing if required.
- U. Common Ground Bonding With Lightning Protection System: Bond electric power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electric service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system ground conductor and installed in conduit.
- V. Grounding Underground Distribution System Components complies with IEEE C2 grounding requirements and the following. Provide additional grounding if required to comply with Utility Company standards.

1. **Grounding Manholes and Handholes:** Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, non-shrink grout.
2. **Grounding Connections to Manhole Components:** Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields as recommended by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
3. **Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches:** Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with pad mounted equipment by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. **General:** Ground electrical systems and equipment according to NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes, except where Drawings or Specifications exceed such requirements.
- B. **Grounding Rods:** Locate a minimum of 1-rod length from each other and at least the same distance from any other grounding electrode.
 1. Drive until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade, except as otherwise indicated.
 2. Interconnect with grounding-electrode conductors. Use exothermic welds, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated. Make these connections without damaging copper coating or exposing steel.
- C. **Grounding Conductors:** Route along the shortest and straightest paths possible, except as otherwise indicated. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- D. **Underground Grounding Conductors:** Use bare copper wire. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.

- E. Metal Water Service Pipe: Provide insulated copper grounding conductors, sized as indicated, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes by grounding-clamp connectors. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor to street side of fitting. Provide a grounding jumper with the same size conductor across dielectric fittings. Bond grounding-conductor conduit to conductor at each end.
- F. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with grounding-clamp connectors.
- G. Bond interior metal piping systems and metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated pumps, fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Use braided-type bonding straps.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. General: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact will be galvanically compatible.
 - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to assure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
 - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
 - 3. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.
- B. Exothermic-Welded Connections: Use for connections to structural steel and for underground connections, except those at test wells. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Welds that are puffed up or that show convex surfaces indicating improper cleaning are not acceptable.
- C. Equipment Grounding-Wire Terminations: For No. 8 AWG and larger, use pressure-type grounding lugs. No. 10 AWG and smaller grounding conductors may be terminated with winged pressure-type connectors.
- D. Noncontact Metal Raceway Terminations: Where metallic raceways terminate at metal housings without mechanical and electrical connection to housing, terminate each conduit with a grounding bushing. Connect grounding bushings with a bare grounding conductor to grounding bus or terminal in housing. Bond electrically noncontinuous conduits at both entrances and exits with grounding bushings and bare grounding conductors, except as otherwise indicated.
- E. Tighten screws and bolts for grounding and bonding connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. Where these requirements are not available, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

- F. Compression-Type Connections: Use hydraulic compression tools to provide correct circumferential pressure for compression connectors. Use tools and dies recommended by manufacturer of connectors. Provide embossing die code or other standard method to make a visible indication that a connector has been adequately compressed on grounding conductor.
- G. Moisture Protection: Where insulated grounding conductors are connected to grounding rods or grounding buses, insulate entire area of connection and seal against moisture penetration of insulation and cable.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage an independent electrical testing organization to perform tests described below.
- B. Tests: Subject the completed grounding system to a megger test at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal.. Measure ground resistance not less than 2 full days after the last trace of precipitation, and without the soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance. Perform tests by the fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
- C. Maximum grounding resistance shall be less than or equal to 5 ohms.
- D. Excessive Ground Resistance: Where resistance to ground exceeds specified values, provide additional grounding to achieve required results.
- E. Report: Prepare test reports, certified by the testing organization, of ground resistance at each test location. Include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results.
- F. Field Test Reports: Submit written test reports to include the following:
 - 1. Test procedures used.
 - 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

END OF SECTION 16060

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 16075 - ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes electrical identification materials and devices required to comply with ANSI C2, NFPA 70 - as amended by state and local codes, OSHA standards, and the requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.
- B. Schedule of Nomenclature: An index of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.
- C. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes.
- B. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and NFPA 70 for color-coding.
- C. Comply with ANSI Z535-2, Z535-4, and NFPA 70E.
- D. Comply with ANSI C2.
- E. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in the Contract Documents, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual, and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 16075 - ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RACEWAY AND CABLE LABELS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1, Table 3, for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
 - 1. Color: Black letters on orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicates voltage and service.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- C. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- D. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, **2 inches (50 mm)** long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- E. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; **2 inches (50 mm)** wide; compounded for outdoor use.

2.2 CONDUCTOR AND COMMUNICATION- AND CONTROL-CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than **3 mils (0.08 mm)** thick by **1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm)** wide.
- B. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- C. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels: Cut from **0.014-inch- (0.35-mm-)** thick aluminum sheet, with stamped, or embossed legend, and fitted with tabs and matching slots for permanently securing around wire or cable jacket or around groups of conductors.

- D. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking nylon tie fastener.
- E. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and polyester or nylon tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
 - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

2.3 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Description: Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, polyethylene tape.
 - 1. Not less than 6 inches (150 mm) wide by 4 mils (0.102 mm) thick.
 - 2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
 - 3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
 - 4. Printed legend shall indicate type of underground line.

2.4 WARNING LABELS, NAMEPLATES AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Engraved Plastic Warning Labels, Nameplates and Signs: Engraving stock, melamine plastic laminate, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.
 - 1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs for Interior Use: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for the application. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
- D. Exterior, Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs: Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).
- E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
 - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 48 INCHES (1200 MM)". Adjust clearance dimensions as required for system voltage and equipment configuration.

3. Arc Flash Warning: "POTENTIAL ARC FLASH HAZARD - APPROPRIATE PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT AND TOOLS REQUIRED WHEN WORKING ON THIS EQUIPMENT."

- F. Fasteners for Nameplates and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or No. 10/32, stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, one-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.
 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 2. Tensile Strength: 50 lb (22.3 kg) minimum.
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- B. Paint: Formulated for the type of surface and intended use.
 1. Primer for Galvanized Metal: Single-component acrylic vehicle formulated for galvanized surfaces.
 2. Primer for Concrete Masonry Units: Heavy-duty concrete masonry unit block filler.
 3. Primer for Concrete: Exterior concrete and masonry primer.
 4. Enamel: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Accessible Raceways and Cables of Auxiliary Systems: Identify the following systems with color-coded, self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands or with snap-around, color-coding bands:
 1. Fire Alarm System: Red.
 2. Telecommunication System: Green and yellow.
 3. Control Wiring: Green and red.
- B. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification: For primary and secondary conductors No. 1/0 AWG and larger in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes use aluminum wraparound marker labels or non-ferrous metal tags. Identify source and circuit number of each set of conductors. For single conductor cables, identify phase in addition to the above.

- C. Branch-Circuit Conductor Identification: Where there are conductors for more than three branch circuits in same junction or pull box, use aluminum wraparound marker labels. Identify each ungrounded conductor according to source and circuit number.
- D. Ground fault interrupter outlets: Identify receptacles supplied by ground fault interrupter circuit breakers or by upstream ground fault interrupter receptacles. Use engraved letters on device plate.
- E. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source and circuit number.
- F. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, signal, sound, intercommunications, voice, and data connections.
 - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
 - 2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 - 3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- G. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
- H. Warning Labels for Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145 and apply warning signs. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 1. Equipment with Multiple Power or Control Sources: Apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
 - (a) Power transfer switches.
 - (b) Controls with external control power connections.
 - 2. Equipment Requiring Workspace Clearance According to NFPA 70: Unless otherwise indicated, apply to door or cover of equipment but not on flush panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
 - 3. Switchboards, Panelboards, Equipment Control Panels, Meter Socket Enclosures, and Motor Control Centers: Labeled to warn of potential electric arc flash hazards. The label shall be located so as to be clearly visible before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment.

I. Instruction Signs:

1. Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
2. Emergency Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch- (10-mm-)** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer or for load shedding.

J. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:

- (a) Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch- (13-mm-)** high letters on **1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-)** high label; where 2 lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches (50 mm)** high.
- (b) Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

- (a) Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
- (b) Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
- (c) Electrical switchgear and switchboards.
- (d) Transformers.
- (e) Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
- (f) Motor-control centers.
- (g) Disconnect switches.
- (h) Enclosed circuit breakers.
- (i) Motor starters.
- (j) Push-button stations.

- (k) Power transfer equipment.
- (l) Contactors.
- (m) Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- (n) Battery racks.
- (o) Power-generating units.
- (p) Voice and data cable terminal equipment.
- (q) Master clock and program equipment.
- (r) Intercommunication and call system stations.
- (s) Television/audio components, racks, and controls.
- (t) Fire-alarm control panel and annunciators.
- (u) Monitoring and control equipment.
- (v) Uninterruptible power supply equipment.
- (w) Terminals, racks, and patch panels for voice and data communication and for signal and control functions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Attach signs and plastic labels with screws and auxiliary hardware appropriate to the location and substrate.
- E. System Identification Color Banding for Raceways and Cables: Each color band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V and Less: Use the colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
 - 1. Color shall be factory applied the entire length of conductors, except the following field-applied color-coding methods may be used instead of factory-coded wire for sizes larger than No. 10 AWG:

- (a) Colored, pressure-sensitive plastic tape in half-lapped turns for a distance of **6 inches (150 mm)** from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Use **1-inch- (25-mm-)** wide tape in colors specified. Locate tape bands to avoid obscuring cable identification markings.
 - (b) Colored cable ties applied in groups of three ties of specified color to each wire at each terminal or splice point starting **3 inches (76 mm)** from the terminal and spaced **3 inches (76 mm)** apart. Apply with a special tool or pliers, tighten to a snug fit, and cut off excess length. Locate bands to avoid obscuring cable identification markings.
- 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - (a) Phase A: Black.
 - (b) Phase B: Red.
 - (c) Phase C: Blue.
- 3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - (a) Phase A: Brown.
 - (b) Phase B: Orange.
 - (c) Phase C: Yellow.
- G. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- H. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at **6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm)** below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds **16 inches (400 mm)** overall.
- I. Painted Identification: Install painted identification according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Clean surfaces of dust, loose material, and oily films before painting.
 - 2. Prime surfaces using type of primer specified for surface.

END OF SECTION 16075

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 16119 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS
AND UTILITY STRUCTURES**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes underground conduits and ducts, duct banks, pull boxes and handholes , manholes , and other underground utility structures .

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Underground Ducts: Plastic conduit encased in concrete.
- B. Manholes: Cast-in-place concrete.
- C. Manholes: Underground, precast concrete utility structures.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For metal accessories for manholes and handholes, conduit and duct, duct bank materials, and miscellaneous components.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show details and design calculations for precast manholes and handholes, including reinforcing steel. Stamp drawings with seal of registered professional structural engineer.
- C. Certificate for concrete and steel used in underground precast concrete utility structures, according to ASTM C 858.
- D. Product Test Reports: Indicate compliance with ASTM C857 and ASTM C858
- E. Record Documents: Show dimensioned locations of underground ducts, handholes, and manholes.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Listing and Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are Underwriters Laboratories listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in the "National Electrical Code," Article 100.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes.

- C. Comply with ANSI C2.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver ducts to site with ends capped. Store nonmetallic ducts with supports to prevent bending, warping, and deforming.
- B. Store precast concrete units at site as recommended by manufacturer to prevent physical damage. Arrange so identification markings are visible.
- C. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
 - 1. Notify Architect not less than 2 days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
 - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Architect's written permission.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, manholes, and handholes with final arrangement of other utilities as determined in the field.
- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes and handholes with final profiles of conduits as determined by coordination with other utilities and underground obstructions. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering the specified products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures:
 - (a) Precast Division; Carder Concrete Products.
 - (b) Christy Concrete Products, Inc.
 - (c) Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.

- (d) Riverton Concrete Products.
- (e) A. Rotondo & Sons, Inc.
- (f) Rotondo/Penn-Cast, Inc.
- (g) Smith-Midland Corp.
- (h) Utility Vault Co.
- (i) Wausau Concrete Co.

2. Frames and Covers:

- (a) Campbell Foundry Co.
- (b) East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
- (c) McKinley Iron Works, Inc.
- (d) Neenah Foundry Co.

3. Nonmetallic Ducts:

- (a) Arnco Corp.
- (b) Breeze-Illinois, Inc.
- (c) CANTEX, Inc
- (d) Carlon; Lamson & Sessions Company.
- (e) Pipe & Plastic Group; Certaineed Products Corp.

2.2 CONDUIT AND DUCT

- A. Rigid Plastic Underground Conduit: UL 651A, Type EB PVC.
- B. Rigid Plastic Conduit: NEMA TC 2, Schedule 40 or Schedule 80 PVC, rated for use with 90 deg C conductors under all installation conditions.
- C. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1, galvanized.
- D. Plastic-Coated Rigid Steel Conduit and Fittings: NEMA RN 1.
- E. PVC Conduit Fittings: NEMA TC 3.
- F. Manufactured Bends: Not less than 36-inch (900 mm.) radius.

2.3 PULL BOXES AND HANDHOLES

- A. Cast Metal Boxes: Cast aluminum, sized as indicated, with outside flanges and recessed, gasketed cover for flush mounting. Nonskid finish on cover.
- B. Cover Legend: High voltage, electric, signal or other as directed by the Architect.

2.4 UNDERGROUND PRECAST CONCRETE UTILITY STRUCTURES

- A. Where field poured manholes or handholes have been indicated on the drawings, precast units of equivalent size may be substituted, subject to compliance with all requirements specified in this Section.
- B. Precast Units: Interlocking, mating sections, complete with accessory items, hardware, and features as indicated. Include concrete knockout panels for conduit entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
- C. Design structure according to ASTM C 858.
- D. Structural Design Loading: ASTM C 857, Class A-16.
- E. Fabricate according to ASTM C 858.
- F. Joint Sealant: Continuous extrusion of asphaltic butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand the maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground water level at grade.
- G. Source Quality Control: Inspect structures according to ASTM C 1037.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Supports: Rigid PVC spacers selected to provide minimum duct spacings and concrete cover depths indicated, while supporting ducts during concreting.
- B. Frames and Covers: Cast iron with cast-in legend ELECTRIC or SIGNAL or other as directed. Machine cover-to-frame bearing surfaces.
- C. Sump Frame and Grate: Comply with FS RR-F-621, Type VII for frame and Type I for cover.
- D. Pulling Eyes in Walls: Eyebolt with reinforcing bar fastening insert. 2-inch (50 mm) diameter eye, 1-inch (25 mm) by 4-inch (100 mm) bolt. Working load embedded in 6-inch (150 mm), 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) concrete: 13,000 pounds (6,000 kg.) minimum tension.
- E. Bolting Inserts for Cable Stanchions: Flared, threaded inserts of noncorrosive, chemical resistant, nonconductive thermoplastic material; 1/2-inch (12 mm) internal diameter by 2-3/4 inches (68 mm) deep, flared to 1-1/4 inch (30 mm) minimum at base. Tested ultimate pull-out strength: 12,000 pounds (5,500 kg.) minimum.

- F. Expansion Anchors for Installation After Concrete is Cast: Zinc-plated carbon steel wedge type with stainless-steel expander clip 1/2-inch (12 mm) bolt size, 5,300-pound (2,400 kg.) rated pull-out strength, and 6,800-pound (3,100 kg) rated shear strength minimum.
- G. Cable Stanchions: Hot-rolled, hot-dipped galvanized "T" section steel, 2-1/4-inch (56 mm) size, punched with 14 holes on 1-1/2-inch (35 mm) centers for cable arm attachment.
- H. Cable Arms: 3/16-inch (5 mm) thick hot-rolled, hot-dipped galvanized sheet steel pressed to channel shape, approximately 12 inches (300 mm) wide by 14 inches (350 mm) long and arranged for secure mounting in horizontal position at any position on cable stanchions.
- I. Cable Support Insulators: High glaze, wet-process porcelain arranged for mounting on cable arms.
- J. Ground Rods: Solid copper clad steel, 3/4-inch (18 mm) diameter by 10-feet (3 m) length.
- K. Ground Wire: Stranded bare copper, No. 6 AWG minimum.
- L. Ladder: UL-listed, heavy-duty wood, specifically designed for electrical manhole use. Minimum length equal to the distance from the deepest manhole floor to grade plus 3 feet (1 m).
- M. Duct Sealing Compound: Nonhardening, safe for human skin contact, not deleterious to cable insulation, workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F (1 deg C), withstands temperature of 300 deg F (149 deg C) without slump, and adheres to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduits, conduit coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and the common metals.

2.6 CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS

- A. Brick: Conform to ASTM C 55, concrete brick Type I, Grade N.
- B. Mortar: Conform to ASTM C 270, Type M, except for quantities less than 2.0 cu. ft. (60 L), where packaged mix complying with ASTM C 387, Type M may be used.
- C. Concrete: Conform to Division 16 Section "Basic Electric Materials and Methods" for concrete and reinforcing.
 - 1. Strength: 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) minimum 28-day compressive strength.
 - 2. Aggregate For Duct Encasement: 3/8-inch (10 mm) maximum size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Underground Duct Banks: Concrete encased rigid plastic underground conduit, except as noted below.

- B. Duct Banks Under Paved Areas open to regular vehicular traffic: Reinforced concrete encased rigid plastic underground conduit.
- C. Duct Banks Passing Under Buildings: Concrete encased rigid steel conduit.
- D. Single Tier Duct Banks: Direct buried Schedule 40 PVC rigid plastic conduit, except utilize plastic coated rigid steel conduits where under buildings.
- E. Manholes (and Handholes): Cast-in-place concrete or underground precast concrete utility structures.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine site to receive ducts and manholes for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the underground ducts and manholes. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Conform to Division 16, Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and reestablish original grades except as otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod as soon as possible after backfilling is completed. Restore all areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, or mulching.
- C. Restore disturbed paving. Refer to "Cutting and Patching" in Division 1.

3.4 CONDUIT AND DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Install nonmetallic conduit and duct as indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Slope: Pitch ducts minimum of 4 inches per 100 feet (1:300) to drain toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between 2 manholes to drain in both directions.
- C. Curves and Bends: Use manufactured elbows for stub-ups at equipment and at building entrances. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 25 feet (7.5 m) both horizontally and vertically at other locations.
- D. Make joints in ducts and fittings watertight according to manufacturer's instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in the same plane.

- E. Duct Entrances to Manholes and Handholes: Space end bells approximately 10 inches (250 mm) on center for 5-inch (125 mm) ducts and varied proportionately for other duct sizes. Change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line. Grout end bells into manhole walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- F. Building Entrances: Transition from underground duct to conduit 10 feet (3 m) minimum outside the building wall. Use fittings manufactured for the purpose. Follow appropriate installation instructions below.
 - 1. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Install reinforcing in duct banks passing through disturbed earth near buildings and other excavations. Coordinate duct bank with structural design to support duct bank at wall without reducing structural or watertight integrity of building wall.
 - 2. Direct-Buried, Nonencased Duct Entering Nonwaterproofed Walls: Install a Schedule 40 galvanized-steel pipe sleeve for each duct. Caulk space between conduit and sleeve with duct-sealing compound on both sides for moisture-tight seal.
 - 3. Waterproofed Wall and Floor Entrances: Install a watertight entrance-sealing device with the sealing gland assembly on the inside. Anchor device into masonry construction with 1 or more integral flanges. Secure membrane waterproofing to the device to make permanently watertight.
- G. Separation Between Direct-Buried, Nonencased Ducts: 3 inches (75 mm) minimum for like services, and 6 inches (150 mm) minimum between power and signal ducts.
- H. Concrete-Encased Nonmetallic Ducts: Support on plastic separators coordinated with duct size and required duct spacing, and install according to the following:
 - 1. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, and secure separators to the earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 - 2. Concreting: Spade concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct bank application. Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in 1 continuous operation. When more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch (18 mm) reinforcing rod dowels extending 18 inches (450 mm) into the concrete on both sides of joint near the corners of the envelope.
 - 3. Reinforcing: Reinforce duct banks where they cross disturbed earth, where they cross over or under underground utilities or other obstructions and where indicated.

4. Forms: Use the walls of the trench to form the side walls of the duct bank where the soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions, otherwise, use forms.
5. Minimum Clearances Between Ducts: 3 inches (75 mm) between ducts and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches (50 mm) between ducts for like services, and 4 inches (100 mm) between power and signal ducts.
6. Depth: Except as otherwise indicated, install top of duct bank at least 30 inches (750 mm) below finished grade. Increase cover where required by field conditions. Clearance may be reduced (to a minimum of 18" (450 mm)) where passing over other utilities or obstructions or where necessary to avoid low points. Reinforce the concrete where clearance is so reduced.
- I. Stub-Ups: Use rigid steel conduit for stub-ups to equipment. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete pads, extend steel conduit a minimum of 5 feet (1.5 m) from edge of pad. Install insulated grounding bushings on the terminations. Couple steel conduits to the ducts with adapters designed for the purpose and then encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
- J. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that are wired under this Project. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15 psi (1.03 MPa) hydrostatic pressure.
- K. Pulling Cord: Install 100-pound (45 kg) test nylon cord in ducts, including spares.

3.5 UNDERGROUND UTILITY STRUCTURE INSTALLATION

- A. Elevation: Install manholes with roof top at least 15 inches (375 mm) below finished grade. Install handholes with depth as indicated. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame directly into roof of handhole and set roof surface 1 inch (25 mm) above grade.
- B. Access: Install cast-iron frame and cover. For manholes, use 30-inch (750 mm) cover except as indicated. Use 30-inch (750 mm) cover for handholes, except use 24-inch (600 mm) covers for 24-inch (600 mm) by 24-inch (600 mm) handholes. Install brick chimney to support frame and cover and to connect cover with roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for cast-iron frame to chimney. Set frames in paved areas and traffic ways flush with finished grade. Set other frames 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- C. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cable and conductors and as indicated.
- D. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches (96 mm) for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of 2 anchors for each cable stanchion.

- E. Grounding: Install ground rod through floor in each structure with top protruding 4 inches (100 mm) above floor. Seal the floor opening against water penetration with waterproof nonshrink grout. Ground exposed metal components and hardware with bare copper ground conductor. Train conductors neatly around corners. Install on walls and roof using cable clamps secured with expansion anchors.
- F. Cast-In-Place Underground Structure Installation: Conform to applicable requirements of Division 16 Section "Basic Electric Materials and Methods."
 - 1. Finish interior surfaces with a smooth troweled finish.
 - 2. Windows for Future Duct Connections: Form and pour concrete knock-out panels 1-1/2 to 2 inches (37 to 50 mm) thick, arranged as indicated.
- G. Precast Concrete Underground Structure Installation: Install as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and ASTM C 891.
 - 1. Install units plumb and level and with orientation and depth coordinated with arrangement of connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
 - 2. Support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from the 1-inch (25 mm) sieve to the No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UNDERGROUND CONDUIT BANKS

- A. Slope sides of excavations to comply with local codes and ordinances. Shore and brace as required for stability of excavation.
- B. Shoring and Bracing: Establish requirements for trench shoring and bracing to comply with local codes and authorities. Maintain shoring and bracing in excavations regardless of time period excavations will be open.
 - 1. Remove shoring and bracing when no longer required. Where sheeting is allowed to remain, cut top of sheeting at an elevation of 30 inches (750 mm) below finished grade elevation.
- C. Install sediment and erosion control measures in accordance with local codes and ordinances.
- D. Dewatering: Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from flowing into excavations and from flooding project site and surrounding area.
 - 1. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Remove water to prevent softening of bearing materials. Provide and maintain dewatering system components necessary to convey water away from excavations.
 - 2. Establish and maintain temporary drainage ditches and other diversions outside excavation limits to convey surface water to collecting or run-off areas. Do not use trench excavations as temporary drainage ditches.

- E. Material Storage: Stockpile satisfactory excavated materials where directed, until required for backfill or fill. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles for proper drainage.
 - 1. Locate and retain soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip-line of trees indicated to remain.
 - 2. Remove and legally dispose of excess excavated materials and materials not acceptable for use as backfill or fill.

- F. Excavation for Underground Vaults and Electrical Structures: Conform to elevations and dimensions shown within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.25 foot (75 mm); plus a sufficient distance to permit placing and removal of concrete form work, installation of services, other construction, and for inspection.
 - 1. Excavate, by hand, areas within drip-line of large trees. Protect the root system from damage and dry-out. Maintain moist conditions for root system and cover exposed roots with burlap. Paint root cuts of 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter and larger with emulsified asphalt tree paint.
 - 2. Take care not to disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before concrete reinforcement is placed.

- G. Trenching: Excavate trenches for electrical installations as follows:
 - 1. Excavate trenches to the uniform width, sufficiently wide to provide ample working room and a minimum of 6 to 9 inches (150 to 225 mm) clearance on both sides of raceways and equipment.
 - 2. Excavate trenches to depth required to accommodate the installation of conduit (duct banks) in compliance with the requirements of Section 16119.
 - 3. Limit the length of open trench to that in which installations can be made and the trench backfilled within the same day.
 - 4. Where rock is encountered, carry excavation below required elevation and backfill with a layer of crushed stone or gravel prior to installation of raceways and equipment. Provide a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) of stone or gravel cushion between rock bearing surface and electrical installations.

- H. Cold Weather Protection: Protect excavation bottoms against freezing when atmospheric temperature is less than 35 deg F (1 deg 2 C).

- I. Backfilling and Filling: Place soil materials in layers to required subgrade elevations for each area classification listed below, using materials specified in Part 2 of this Section.
 - 1. Under walks and pavements, use a combination of subbase materials and excavated or borrowed materials.
 - 2. Under building slabs, use drainage fill materials.

3. Under piping and equipment, use subbase materials where required over rock bearing surface and for correction of unauthorized excavation.
 4. For raceways less than 30 inches (750 mm) below surface of roadways, provide 4-inch (100mm)thick concrete base slab support. After installation of raceways, provide a 4-inch (100mm)thick concrete encasement (sides and top) prior to backfilling and placement of roadway subbase.
 5. Other areas, use excavated or borrowed materials.
- J. Backfill excavations as promptly as work permits, but not until completion of the following:
1. Inspection, testing, approval, and locations of underground utilities have been recorded.
 2. Removal of concrete formwork.
 3. Removal of shoring and bracing, and backfilling of voids.
 4. Removal of trash and debris.
- K. Placement and Compaction: Place backfill and fill materials in layers of not more than 8 inches (200 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by heavy equipment, and not more than 4 inches (100 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- L. Before compaction, moisten or aerate each layer as necessary to provide optimum moisture content. Compact each layer to required percentage of maximum dry density or relative dry density for each area classification specified below. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
- M. Place backfill and fill materials evenly adjacent to structures, piping, and equipment to required elevations. Prevent displacement of raceways and equipment by carrying material uniformly around them to approximately same elevation in each lift.
- N. Compaction: Control soil compaction during construction, providing minimum percentage of density specified for each area classification indicated below.
1. Percentage of Maximum Density Requirements: Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of maximum density for soils which exhibit a well-defined moisture-density relationship (cohesive soils), determined in accordance with ASTM D 1557 and not less than the following percentages of relative density, determined in accordance with ASTM D 2049, for soils which will not exhibit a well-defined moisture-density relationship (cohesionless soils).

- (a) Areas Under Structures, Building Slabs and Steps, Pavements: Compact top 12 inches (300 mm) of subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 90 percent maximum density for cohesive material, or 95 percent relative density for cohesionless material.
 - (b) Areas Under Walkways: Compact top 6 inches of subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 90 percent maximum density for cohesive material, or 95 percent relative density for cohesionless material.
 - (c) Other Areas: Compact top 6 inches (150 mm) of subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill material to 85 percent maximum density for cohesive soils, and 90 percent relative density for cohesionless soils.
- 2. Moisture Control: Where subgrade or layer of soil material must be moisture conditioned before compaction, uniformly apply water. Apply water in minimum quantity necessary to achieve required moisture content and to prevent water appearing on surface during, or subsequent to, compaction operations.
- O. Subsidence: Where subsidence occurs at electrical installation excavations during the period 12 months after Substantial Completion, remove surface treatment (i.e., pavement, lawn, or other finish), add backfill material, compact to specified conditions, and replace surface treatment. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of surface or finish to match adjacent areas.

3.7 CONCRETE ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND CONDUIT BANKS

- A. Utilize the sides of the trench in formwork for underground conduit banks to the maximum extent possible. Utilize a splashboard to divert the concrete flow away from the trench sides to avoid dislodging soil and stones.
- B. Provide reinforcement where required. Verify that any required reinforcement is installed prior to commencing placement of concrete.
- C. Place concrete in accordance with the following:
 - 1. General: Comply with ACI 304, "Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete," and as specified.
 - 2. Deposit concrete continuously or in layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened sufficiently to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as specified. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation at its final location.
 - 3. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with provisions of ACI 306 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions or low temperatures.

4. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40°F (4°C), uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50°F (10°C) and not more than 80°F (27°C) at point of placement.
 - (a) Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 - (b) Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise accepted in mix designs.
- D. Installation of Fire-Stopping Sealant: Install sealant, including forming, packing, and other accessory materials, to fill openings around electrical services penetrating floors and walls, to provide fire-stops with fire-resistance ratings indicated for floor or wall assembly in which penetration occurs. Comply with installation requirements established by testing and inspecting agency.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements upon completion of installation of underground duct and utility structures.
 1. Grounding: Test manhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of bonding and grounding connections. Measure ground resistance at each ground rod and report results. Use an instrument specifically designed for ground-resistance measurements.
 2. Duct Integrity: Rod ducts with a mandrel 1/4 inch (6 mm) smaller in diameter than internal diameter of ducts. Where rodding indicates obstructions in ducts, remove the obstructions and retest.
 3. Water Tightness: Make internal inspection of manholes 3 months after completion of construction for indications of water ingress. Where leakage is noted, remove water and seal leak sources. Reinspect after 2 months and reseal remaining leak sources. Repeat process at 2 month intervals until leaks are corrected.
- B. Inspect installed components for damage and faulty work, including the following:
 1. Concrete for underground conduit runs.
 2. Excavation for underground conduit runs.
- C. Correct installations where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance. Otherwise, remove and replace defective products and retest.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Pull brush through full length of ducts. Use round bristle brush with a diameter 1/2 inch (12 mm) greater than internal diameter of duct.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 16119

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 16120 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes building wires and cables and associated splices, connectors, and terminations for wiring systems rated 600 volts and less.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: for each type of product indicated.
- B. Field Quality Control Test Reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Listing and Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are Underwriters Laboratories listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed and Labeled": As defined in the "National Electrical Code," Article 100.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Available Manufacturers:
 - 1. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.

2. General Cable Corporation.
 3. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
 4. Southwire Company.
 5. Belden, Division Cooper Industries.
 6. Cable & Wire Division, AT&T.
 7. Pyrotenax.
- B. Refer to Part 3 "Conductor and Insulation Applications" Article for insulation type, cable construction, and ratings.
1. Conductor Material: Copper, complying with NEMA WC 5 or 7; solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
 2. Conductor Insulation Types: Type THHN, THWN, XHHW complying with NEMA WC 5 or 7.
- C. Electrical Circuit Protective System Cable: Where required by code, or where indicated on the drawings, feeders and circuitry are a fire rated cable system, except where enclosed within equivalent fire rated construction indicated on the architectural drawings. Mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI.

2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Available Manufacturers:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
 2. AMP Incorporated/Tyco International.
 3. Hubbell/Anderson.
 4. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
 5. 3M Company; Electrical Products Division.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRE AND INSULATION APPLICATIONS

- A. Utilize copper conductors with THWN, THHN or XHHW insulation, except provide THHW-2, THWN-2 or XHHW-2 insulation for conductors 1/0 and larger in "wet" locations. Conductors utilized in underground installations are UL Listed for use in wet locations. Conductors are run in raceways as described in Section 16 "Raceways and Boxes". Type THHW and THHW-2 are not utilized where excluded by conduit sizing. Type THWN are not utilized for connection to 100 percent rated overcurrent devices.
- B. Electrical circuit protective system cable is utilized for feeders and circuitry which is required to be fire rated and which is not enclosed within equivalent fire rated construction indicated on the architectural drawings.

1. A one-hour rating is required for:
 - (a) Feeders for Emergency Systems except where run within space directly protected by sprinklers.
 - (b) Normal and emergency feeders to fire pump.

- C. In general, cable ampacities are based on a 60 degree C rating for cables #1 AWG and smaller and on a 75 degree C rating for larger cables. In conjunction with this, note the following:
 1. 75 degree C ratings may be utilized for cables #1 AWG and smaller where overcurrent protection and switching devices (OCD's), wiring devices and solidly connected equipment connected to such cables are listed and identified for use with 75 degree C rated conductors. (Note that these specifications require all OCD's - regardless of ampere rating to be suitable for use with 75 degree C rated conductors).
 2. Increase indicated cable (and raceway) sizing as required for circuitry where conductors #1 AWG and smaller will connect directly to solidly connected utilization equipment whose load current will exceed the 60 degree C rating of the cable, and for which manufacturer's approval for cable terminations is less than 75 degrees C, or to receptacles whose ampere rating exceeds the 60 degree C rating of the connected cables unless such receptacles are listed for use with 75 degree C rated conductors. Note that accessible intermediate tap boxes may be utilized adjacent to 60 degree C rated terminations to allow conductor "upsizing" locally so as to comply with such termination requirements.

- D. For low voltage systems where circuits are power limited in accordance with Class 2 or Class 3 requirements (as defined in Article 725 of the National Electrical Code) utilize cables having characteristics as follows:
 1. Cables are of a fluoropolymer type having adequate fire-resistant and low-smoke producing characteristics and are U.L. listed for plenum use (Type CL2P for Class 2 circuits, type CL3P or CMP for Class 3 circuits), except that where run in conduit, they may be U.L. type CL3, or where run in cable trays they are U.L. type CMP.

- E. For low voltage systems whose circuits are not power limited Class 2 or Class 3 (in accordance with the requirements of Article 725 of the National Electrical Code), and which are not telecommunications circuitry (in accordance with Article 800 thereof), utilize copper conductors having TFN insulation for sizes #16 AWG and smaller, and type THHN or THWN for sizes #14 AWG and larger. Wires are run in electric metallic tubing.

- F. Low voltage circuits intended for the distribution of voice or data utilize communications cables (complying with requirements of Article 800 of the National Electrical Code) having characteristics as follows:
 - 1. Cables are of a fluoropolymer type having adequate fire-resistant and low-smoke producing characteristics and are U.L. listed for plenum use (Type CMP), except that where run in conduit, they may be U.L. type CM.
 - 2. Refer to Division 16, Section "Fire Protective Alarm System" for fire alarm system wiring.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables, parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Division 16 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
- F. Seal around cables penetrating fire-rated elements according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- G. Identify wires and cables according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification" and Division 16 Section "Supporting Devices".

3.3 CONNECTIONS:

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Maintain all splices and joints in removable cover boxes or cabinets where they may be easily inspected.
- D. Locate each completed conductor splice or joint in the outlet box, junction box, or pull box containing it, so that it is accessible from the removal cover side of the box.

- E. Join solid conductors #8 AWG and smaller by securely twisting them together and soldering, or by using insulated coiled steel spring "wire nut" type connectors. Exclude "wire nuts" employing non-expandable springs. Terminate conductors #8 AWG and smaller by means of a neat and fast holding application of the conductors directly to the binding screws or terminals of the equipment or devices to be connected. Terminals and connectors are U.L. approved specifically for the application.
- F. Join, tap and terminate stranded conductors #6 AWG and larger by means of solder sleeves, taps and lugs with applied solder or by means of pressure indent type connectors, or mechanical connectors utilizing ball tipped set screws. Apply pressure indent type connectors, utilizing tools manufactured specifically for the purpose and having features preventing their release until the full pressure has been exerted on the lug or connector. Factory installed equipment or device terminals are of types UL approved specifically for the application.
- G. Except where wire nuts are used, build up insulation over conductor joints to a value equal both in thickness and dielectric strength to that of the factory applied conductor insulation. Insulation of conductor taps and joints are by means of half-lapped layers of rubber tape, with an outer layer of friction tape; by means of half-lapped layers of approved plastic electric insulating tape; or by means of split insulating casings manufactured specifically to insulate the particular connector and conductor, and fastened with stainless steel or non-metallic snaps or clips.
- H. Exclude splicing procedures for neutral conductors in lighting and appliance branch circuitry which utilize device terminals as the splicing points.
- I. Exclude joints or terminations utilizing solder in any conductors used for grounding or bonding purposes.
- J. Exclude all but solder or pressure indent type joints in conductors used for signaling or communications purposes.

3.4 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.

- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.5 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.6 FIREPROOFING WIRES AND CABLES:

- A. Beyond the termination of raceways, apply fireproofing over the unprotected insulation and/or splices of the following:-
 - 1. All service feeder cables ahead of main service overcurrent protection devices within all the pits, cable chambers or pull boxes they pass through and elsewhere where they are not enclosed in raceways.
 - 2. Fire pump feeder cables wherever they extend beyond the termination of raceways.
 - 3. All feeder wires and cables emanating from different secondary service connections or both normal and emergency supplies which, due to indications on the drawings or unavoidable field conditions are forced to enter the same unbarriered compartment of a cable chamber, cable pit, pull box or junction box.

- B. Fireproofing of wires and cables is by means of a half-lapped layer of Scotch 77 fire and arc-proofing tape. The wrapped tape is secured by a band consisting of two layers of glass cloth electrical tape. Fireproofing is extended up into raceways. Fireproofing is applied in an overall manner to raceway groupings of conductors.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF CIRCUITRY FOR MISCELLANEOUS LOW VOLTAGE SYSTEMS:

- A. Comply with requirements described in applicable subsections of this Section. In particular, note the following circuitry requirements for low voltage systems:
 1. Wiring for miscellaneous low voltage systems may be run without conduit - subject to the approval of the local authorities - except where prohibited by other sections of these specifications or by indications on the drawings.
 2. Where conduit is required, it is steel electric metallic tubing (EMT), except that it is galvanized intermediate steel conduit where located within 8 feet (2.4 m) of the floor in mechanical spaces (or is otherwise exposed to mechanical damage), or is intended for embedment in concrete.
 3. Wires and cables have characteristics - in compliance with Articles 725 and/or 800 (as applicable) of the National Electrical Code - as described elsewhere in the specifications or drawings for this project, and are U.L. listed in accordance therewith.
 4. Where wires and cables are permitted to be run without conduit, they are independently supported from the building structure or ceiling suspension systems at intervals not exceeding four feet on center, utilizing cable supports specifically approved for the purpose. Wires and cables do not rest on or depend on support from suspended ceiling media (tiles, lath, plaster, as well as splines, runners or bars in the plane of the ceiling), nor are they supported from pipes, ducts or conduits. Where cables are bundled together, separate bundles are provided separately for each type of cabling and separately for each independent system. Bundling and/or supporting ties are of a type suitable for use in a ceiling air handling plenum regardless of whether or not installed in a plenum.
 5. Cables are tagged or labeled at each termination point and in each intermediate junction box, pull box or cabinet through which they pass.
 6. Comply with applicable requirements for locating and routing circuitry, for installing circuitry, and for fire-stopping as described in other sub-section of this Section.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:
 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.3.1. Certify compliance with test parameters.

- B. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 2 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 16120

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 16130 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.
- B. Related sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 16 Section "Underground Ducts and Utility Structures" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
 - 2. Division 16 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods" for firestopping.
 - 3. Division 16 Section "Supporting Devices" for raceway and box supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. ENT: Electrical non-metallic tubing.
- C. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- D. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- E. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metallic conduit.
- F. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of raceways, boxes, enclosures, cabinets and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering Products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2.2 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING:

- A. Available Manufacturers
 - 1. Alflec Corp
 - 2. Grinnell Co./Tyco International; Allied Tube and Conduit Div.
 - 3. LTV Steel Tubular Products Company.
 - 4. Wheatland Tube Co.
 - 5. Triangle PWC, Inc.
- B. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1
- C. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- D. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated IMC.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- E. EMT and Fittings: ANSI C80.3.
 - 1. Fittings: Set-screw or compression.

- F. FMC: Zinc coated steel.
- G. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
- H. Fittings: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
 - (a) Fittings for EMT: Die-cast compression type.
 - (b) Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- I. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Schedule 40 and Schedule 80 PVC.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS

- A. Available Manufacturers:
 - 1. Hoffman.
 - 2. Square D
 - 3. The Wiremold Company
- B. Material and Construction: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated.
 - 1. Dry locations: NEMA 250, Type1.
 - 2. Damp or Wet locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for a complete system.
- D. Select features, unless otherwise indicated, as required to complete wiring system and to comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type.
- F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Surface Metal Raceway: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Finish with manufacturer's standard prime coating and paint finish as selected by the architect.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - (a) Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - (b) Walker Systems, Inc; Wiremold Company (The)

(c) The Wiremold Co., Electrical Sales Division.

- B. Types, sizes and channels as indicated and required for each application, with fittings that match and mate with raceways.

2.5 BOXES, ENCLOSURES AND CABINETS

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. Of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Emerson/General Signal; Appleton Electric Company.
3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Co.
4. Hoffman.
5. Hubbell, Inc.; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co.
6. O-Z/Gedney; Unit of General Signal.
7. RACO; Division of Hubbell, Inc.
8. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Co.
9. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
10. Walker Systems Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).

B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

C. Cast Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 2.

E. Floor Boxes: Cast metal, fully adjustable, rectangular.

F. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

G. Cast Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA FP 1 cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

H. Cabinets: NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and associated hinge. Key latch to match panelboards. Include metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage and include accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

I. Pull boxes for Telephone and Signal System Raceways: ANSI/EIA/TIA-569A

2.6 FACTORY FINISHES

- A. Finish: For raceway, enclosure, or cabinet components, provide manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Use the following wiring methods, except as specifically noted otherwise.
 - 1. Exposed: Rigid steel or IMC.
 - 2. Concealed: Rigid steel or IMC.
 - 3. Underground, Single Run: RNC.
 - 4. Underground, Grouped: RNC.
 - 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (including transformers and hydraulic, pneumatic, electric solenoid, or motor driven equipment): LFMC.
 - 6. Exposed within 30 feet (10 meters) chiller: PVC coated steel conduit.
 - 7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R or 4.
- B. Indoors: Use the following wiring methods:
 - 1. IMC for all purposes and in all applications except where specifically excluded, or where alternate methods are specified below.
 - 2. Normal and emergency feeders to fire pumps: Rigid steel conduit. Feeder conduit encased in 2 inches (5cm) of concrete (or other code approved equivalent) where conduits are not physically routed outside the building. Exclude concrete for jockey pumps and/or auxiliary pumps.
 - 3. Control circuitry to fire pumps: Rigid steel conduit.
 - 4. Utilize EMT for:
 - (a) Main and submain feeders.
 - (b) Branch feeders.
 - (c) Lighting and appliance branch circuitry.
 - 5. Exposed lighting and appliance branch circuitry runs in finished spaces Surface metal raceway.
 - 6. Refer to appropriate Sections of Division 16 for additional requirements relating to wiring methods for control/signal transmission, fire alarm systems, telecommunications, and other communication and alarm system distribution.
 - 7. Wiring methods listed above shall be restricted as follows:
 - (a) Exclude EMT from concrete embedment, from locations where subject to mechanical damage and from exposed locations in finished spaces.

- (b) Exclude surface metal raceway from concealed installations, from locations where subject to mechanical damage and from wet or damp locations.
 - (c) Utilize only intermediate or rigid steel conduit from runs in (or opening into) hazardous areas. Comply with electric code requirements regarding sealing fittings, boxes, enclosures as appropriate for the conditions of atmospheric contamination.
8. The following shall be treated as damp or wet locations within building confines, regardless of whether or not a high ambient moisture level is found to exist:
- (a) Spaces where any designations indicating weatherproof (WP) or vaporproof (VP) appear on the drawings.
 - (b) Parking garage areas.
 - (c) Loading docks.
 - (d) Chiller areas.
 - (e) Below waterproofing in slabs applied directly on grade.
 - (f) Kitchens up to a height of 18inches (45 cm) above finished floor.
 - (g) Outside of waterproofing in foundation walls in contact with grade.
 - (h) Above waterproofing in slabs having no building above.
 - (i) Above waterproofing in fill on slabs having no building above.
 - (j) Spaces containing equipment owned and/or maintained by the electric utility company.
 - (k) Electric work in slabs, walls or suspended ceilings which bound on a space defined as a damp or wet location shall meet the damp or wet location requirements if it enters into, or opens into the damp or wet location in any way.
 - (l) Tug ramps, tug tunnels and other similar areas.

9. The following shall be interpreted as being "hazardous" locations regardless of actual condition of atmospheric contamination.
 - (a) The entire floor to ceiling volume of space where any designations indicating "explosion proof" (EP) are shown.
 - (b) Gas meter rooms.
 - (c) The volume included between the floor and a height of 18 inches (45 cm) above the floor throughout all space designated for parking, including all associated above grade vehicular ramps and access ways, and all spaces on the floor not separated from the parking space by partitions.
 - (d) The entire floor to ceiling volume of all spaces designated for the storage of flammable anesthetics.
 - (e) The volume included between the floor and a height of 60 inches (150 cm) above the floor throughout all spaces designated for the administration of flammable anesthetics.
 - (f) The entire interior volume of any paint spray booth and its associated ductwork.
 - (g) The entire volume of any space falling within 20 feet (6 meters) of the open face of any paint spray booth, and which is not cut off by air tight, unpierced walls, partitions, slabs or other general construction elements.
 - (h) The entire floor to ceiling volume of any space designated for painting by means of open spraying or tank dipping.
 - (i) Electric work located in slabs, walls or suspended ceilings which bound on a space defined as a hazardous location shall meet the hazardous location requirements if it enters into, or opens into, the hazardous location in any way.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4 inch (DN 21) trade size.
- D. Indicated Raceway Size: Raceway sizes indicated are based on non-flexible conduit. Where flexible type raceways are specified, increase raceway size as required to maintain code mandated maximum conduit fill.
- E. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. EMT: Where embedded in concrete, utilize concrete compression type couplings, connectors and fittings of a type which assures ground continuity.

3. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- B. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- C. Support raceway as specified in Division 16 Section "Supporting Devices."
- D. Install temporary closures to prevent foreign matter from entering raceway.
- E. Protect stub-ups from damage where conduits rise through floor slabs. Arrange so curved portion of bends is not visible above the finished slab.
- F. Make bends and offsets so the inside diameter is not reduced. Unless otherwise indicated, keep the legs of a bend in the same plane and the straight legs of offsets parallel.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Install concealed raceways with a minimum of bends in the shortest practical distance, considering type of building construction and obstructions, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Install exposed raceways parallel to or at right angles to nearby surfaces or structural members, and follow the surface contours as much possible.
 1. Run parallel or banked raceways together on common supports.
 2. Make parallel bends in parallel or banked runs. Use factory elbows only where elbows can be installed parallel; otherwise, provide field bends for parallel raceways.
- I. Join raceways with fittings designed and approved for the purpose and make joints tight.
 1. Use insulating bushings to protect conductors.
- J. Tighten set screws of threadless fittings with suitable tool.
- K. Equip all raceways, including those embedded in concrete which cross building expansion or control joints, with expansion fittings having flexible grounding bonds bypassing sliding parts. Arrange expansion fittings on concrete embedded raceways so that sliding action is not impeded.
- L. Terminations:

1. Where raceways are terminated with locknuts and bushings, align the raceway to enter squarely, and install the locknuts with dished part against the box. Use two locknuts, one inside and one outside box.
 2. Where terminating in threaded hubs, screw the raceway or fitting tight into the hub so the end bears against the wire protection shoulder. Where chase nipples are used, align the raceway so the coupling is square to the box, and tighten the chase nipple so no threads are exposed.
- M. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use No. 14 AWG zinc-coated steel or monofilament plastic line having not less than 200-lb (90 kg) tensile strength. Leave not less than 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of the pull wire.
- N. Telephone and Signal System Raceways 2-Inch Trade Size (DN 53) and Smaller: In addition to the above requirements, install in maximum lengths of 100 feet (30 m) and with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent. Install pull or junction boxes where necessary to comply with these requirements. Pull or junction boxes shall be sized in accordance with ANSI/EIA/TIA-569A guidelines.
- O. Install raceway sealing fittings according to the manufacturer's written instructions. Locate fittings at suitable, approved, accessible locations and fill them with UL-listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points and elsewhere as indicated:
1. Where conduits pass from warm locations to cold locations, such as the boundaries of refrigerated spaces and air-conditioned spaces.
 2. Where otherwise required by the NFPA70.
- P. Stub-up Connections: Extend conduits through concrete floor for connection to freestanding equipment. Install with an adjustable top or coupling threaded inside for plugs set flush with finished floor. Extend conductors to equipment with rigid steel conduit; FMC may be used 6 inches (150 mm) above the floor. Install screwdriver-operated, threaded plugs flush with floor for future equipment connections.
- Q. Flexible Connections: Use maximum of 6 feet (1.8 m) of FMC for recessed and semirecessed lighting fixtures; for equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for all motors. Use LFMC in wet or damp locations. Install separate ground conductor across flexible connections.
- R. Surface Raceways: Install a separate, green, ground conductor in raceways from junction box supplying raceways to receptacle or fixture ground terminals.
- S. Set floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- T. Install hinged cover enclosures and cabinets plumb. Support at each corner.
- U. Raceways Embedded in Slabs: Embedment of circuitry in field poured concrete slabs and fill will be permitted subject to the approval of the structural engineer, compliance with the "pour schedule" established for the project, and to the following

criteria:

1. They shall be routed in such a manner as to coordinate with the structural requirements of the building. Submit proposed routing to structural engineer for approval. Raceways proposed to be embedded in concrete which are not approved by the structural engineer shall be installed in another manner (in accordance with these specifications).
2. Note that embedment of conduit in field poured concrete slabs and/or fill will not be permitted in tenant areas and other spaces where the location of all electrical lighting, power and signal outlets are not shown on the electrical drawings.
3. Maximum outside diameter of raceways shall not exceed one third of concrete thickness. Raceways shall be run in a "single layer" with their outside surface no closer than 1 inch (25mm) to any surface of the concrete.
4. Install in middle 1/3 of slab thickness.
5. Provide support for raceways independent of reinforcing rods.
6. Secure raceways to reinforcing rods to prevent sagging or shifting during concrete placement.
7. Space raceways laterally to prevent voids in the concrete.
8. Run raceway larger than 1 inch (DN 27) trade size parallel to or at right angles to main reinforcement. When at right angles to reinforcement, place raceway close to slab support.
9. They shall not be spaced closer than 3 diameters on center, with a minimum of 3 inches (75mm) between the outside surfaces of the raceways, except at tees, crosses or other single level wide angle junction points.
10. Where crossovers or close groupings are unavoidable, circuitry shall either be dog-legged out of the concrete or be carefully field coordinated so as not to cause structural weakness. Where in metal deck or subfloor type of construction, crossovers shall occur only in valleys.
11. Where turned up or down into a wall or partition they shall, before entering same, be routed parallel for a long enough distance to assure that no relocation of the wall or partition will be necessary to conceal the required bend.
12. They shall be routed in accordance with field instructions issued by the Architect where such instructions differ from specifications set forth herein.

- V. To the extent that circuitry cannot be embedded in concrete slabs and fill, floor and wall mounted outlets shall be supplied in conformance with so-called "poke through system" criteria as described below. Outlets supplied from a specialty cast-in-floor raceway system constitute an exception to this criteria.
- W. Criteria for the "poke through" system of circuitry are as follows:-
 - 1. Circuitry shall be run in the hung ceiling space of the story which it serves or in the hung ceiling space of the story immediately below, utilizing openings cut through the floor slab when necessary.
 - 2. The running of circuitry, at the story below the one served, shall be held to an absolute minimum, and shall be used only for tying floor outlets to their nearest adjacent outlets or for other such unavoidable purposes.
 - 3. Circuitry serving a given story shall emanate from local supply or central facilities on the same story and none other.
 - 4. Openings through floor slabs shall be cut, patched and "firestopped" as part of the electrical work. "Firestopping" shall include the filling in of excess opening spaces as well as the utilization of approved, fire-rated through-floor fittings for all floor outlets. These fire-rated fittings shall each be of the "dual service" type, complete with integral floor stanchion which can accommodate 120 volt and telephone and/or signal) circuitry and devices. All "firestopping" shall be performed as directed in the field. General instructions establishing cutting, patching and "firestopping" separate from the electric work are not applicable to the poke through system of circuitry.
 - 5. Openings through floor slabs shall not be spaced closer together than 2 feet (61 cm), and no more than one fire-rated fitting per 65 square feet (6 square meters) of floor area in each span shall be utilized.

3.3 LOCATING AND ROUTING CIRCUITRY

- A. All circuitry shall be run concealed except that it shall be run exposed:-
 - 1. Horizontally at the ceiling of permanently unfinished spaces which are not assigned to mechanical or electrical equipment.
 - 2. Horizontally and vertically in mechanical equipment spaces.
 - 3. Horizontally and vertically in electric equipment rooms.
 - 4. Where specifically noted on the drawings.
- B. Concealed circuitry shall be so located that building construction materials can be applied over its thickest elements without being subject to spalling or cracking.

3.4 INSTALLING JUNCTION, PULL AND OUTLET BOXES:

A. Apply junction and pull boxes in accordance with the following:-

1. Include pull boxes in long straight runs of raceway to assure that cables are not damaged when they are pulled in.
2. Include junction and pull boxes to assure a neat and workmanlike installation of raceways.
3. Include junction and pull boxes to fulfill requirements pertaining to the limitations to the number of bends permitted in raceway between cable access points, the accessibility of cable joints and splices, and the application of cable supports.
4. Where the wires and cables following the same routing are indicated as running through separate pull boxes, it shall be understood that a segregation of the wires and cables is required. Separately indicated pull boxes may be incorporated into single boxes on condition that segregation is maintained by barriers of the type hereinafter specified.
5. Include all required junction and pull boxes regardless of indications on the drawings (which, due to symbolic methods of notation, may omit to show some of them).

B. Apply outlet boxes in accordance with the following:-

1. Unless noted below or otherwise specifically indicated, include a separate outlet box for each individual wiring device, lighting fixture and signal or communication system outlet component. Outlet boxes supplied attached to lighting fixtures shall not be used as replacements for the boxes specified herein unless they are specifically rated to accept "through circuit" building wires.
2. A continuous row of fixtures of the end-to-end channel type, designed for "through wiring," and wired in accordance with the specifications hereinafter pertaining to circuitry through a series of lighting fixtures, may be supplied through a single outlet box.
3. A series of separate fixtures, designed for "through wiring," spaced not more than 2 feet (600mm) apart, and interconnected with conduit or raceway and circuitry which is in accordance with the specifications hereinafter pertaining to circuitry through a series of lighting fixtures, may be supplied through a single outlet box.
4. Connection to recessed ceiling fixtures supplied with pigtails may be arranged so that more than one, but not more than four, such fixtures are connected into a single outlet box. When adopting this procedure:-
 - (a) Utilize an outlet box no smaller than 4-11/16 inches (119mm) square by 2-1/8 inches (54 mm) deep.
 - (b) Allow no fixture to be supplied from an outlet box in another room.

5. Multiple local switches indicated at a single location shall be gang mounted in a single outlet box.
 6. Include all required outlet boxes regardless of indications on the drawings (which due to symbolic methods of notation, may omit to show some of them).
 7. Regardless of any indications on the drawings, flush wall mounted outlet boxes shall not be set back-to-back in fire rated walls or partitions, even if they are displaced vertically. Such outlets shall be offset horizontally by 24 inches (610mm) or as otherwise required to maintain the fire rating.
 8. Exclude "through-the-wall" collar type outlet boxes for flush devices indicated back-to-back in non-fire rated partitions or walls. Where necessary to accommodate box depths, outlets shown back-to-back shall be horizontally offset.
- C. Install junction boxes, pull boxes and outlet boxes in accordance with the following:-
1. Exclude surface mounted outlet boxes in conjunction with concealed circuitry.
 2. Exclude unused circuitry openings in junction and pull boxes. In larger boxes each such opening shall be closed with a galvanized sheet steel plate fastened with a continuous weld all around. In small outlet type boxes, utilize plugs as specified for such boxes.
 3. Close up all unused circuitry openings in outlet boxes. Unused openings in cast boxes shall be closed with approved cast metal threaded plugs. Unused openings in sheet metal boxes shall be closed with sheet metal knock-out plugs.
 4. Pack "through the wall" collar type outlet boxes with a sound deadening, non-hardening, non-hygroscopic, non-combustible, high dielectric stuffing material manufactured specifically for the purpose.
 5. Outlet boxes for switches shall be located at the strike side of doors. Indicated door swings are subject to field change. Outlet boxes shall be located on the basis of final door swing arrangements.
 6. Boxes and plaster covers for duplex receptacles shall be arranged for vertical mounting of the receptacle.
 7. Equip outlet boxes used for devices which are connected to wires of systems supplied by more than one set of voltage characteristics with barriers to separate the different systems.
- D. Barriers in junction and pull boxes of outlet size shall be of the same metal as the box.

- E. Barriers in junction and pull boxes which are larger than outlet size shall be of polyester resin fiberglass of adequate thickness for mechanical strength but in no case less than 1/4 inch (6.5mm). Each barrier shall be mounted, without fastenings, between angle iron guides so that they may be readily removed.

3.5 MOUNTING HEIGHTS

- A. Heights of all wall mounted outlets and equipment shall be in accordance with the following list. (Dimensions are above finished floor unless noted.)
 1. Receptacle or telephone outlet in field constructed wall, partition or column unless otherwise specified below -- 18 inches (45 cm) to centerline.
 2. Receptacle or telephone outlet in factory fabricated wall or partition, unless otherwise specified below -- Dimension determined by wall or partition construction.
 3. Receptacle or telephone outlet in mechanical spaces, electric switchboard rooms, electric closets -- 60 inches (150 cm) to centerline.
 4. Toggle switch outlet in field constructed wall partition or column -- 46 inches (117 cm) to centerline.
 5. Toggle switch outlet in factory fabricated wall or partition -- Dimension determined by wall or partition construction.
 6. Bracket lighting outlets, except for "over door" -- 90 inches (228 cm) to centerline.
 7. Bracket lighting outlet over door -- as required to center outlet between top surface of door lintel and underside of ceiling.
 8. Wall exit sign except for over door -- 90 inches (228 cm) to centerline.
 9. Exit sign over door -- As required to center sign between top surface of door lintel and underside of ceiling.
 10. Outlet for any signal system device other than fire alarm station requiring manual operation -- 46 inches (117 cm) to centerline.
 11. Manual fire alarm station -- 46 inches (117 cm) to centerline.
 12. Outlet for any signal system visual or sounding device other than fire alarm visual device or visual/sounding device -- As required for device to clear underside of ceiling by 1 inch (25 mm).
 13. Outlet for fire alarm visual device -- Visual device 80 inches (203 cm) AFF, except as otherwise noted.
 14. Clock outlet -- As required for clock to clear underside of ceiling by 1 inch (25 mm).
- B. Architectural drawings and field instructions issued by the Architect take precedence

over the above list and shall be adhered to.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, to ensure that coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touch-up coating recommended by the manufacturer.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished raceways and boxes, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION 16130

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 16190 - SUPPORTING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes secure support from the building structure for electrical items by means of hangers, supports, anchors, sleeves, inserts, seals, and associated fastenings.
- B. Related sections include the following:
 - 1. Refer to other Division 16 sections for additional specific support requirements that may be applicable to specific items.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for each type of product specified.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Component Standard: Components and installation comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes.
- B. Electrical components are listed and labeled by UL, ETL, CSA, or other approved, nationally recognized testing and listing agency that provides third-party certification follow-up services.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Slotted Metal Angle and U-Channel Systems:
 - (a) B-Line Systems, Inc.

- (b) Haydon Corp.
- (c) Kin-Line, Inc.
- (d) Unistrut Diversified Products

2. Conduit Sealing Bushings:

- (a) Cooper Industries, Inc.
- (b) L.E. Mason Co.
- (c) O-Z/Gedney
- (d) Racco, Inc.
- (e) Spring City Electrical Mfg. Co.
- (f) Thomas & Betts Corp.

2.2 COATINGS

- A. Coating: Supports, support hardware, and fasteners are protected with zinc coating or with treatment of equivalent corrosion resistance using approved alternative treatment, finish, or inherent material characteristic. Products for use outdoors are hot-dip galvanized.

2.3 MANUFACTURED SUPPORTING DEVICES

- A. Raceway Supports: Clevis hangers, riser clamps, conduit straps, threaded C-clamps with retainers, ceiling trapeze hangers, wall brackets, and spring steel clamps.
 - 1. Fasteners: Types, materials, and construction features as follows:
 - 2. Expansion Anchors: Carbon steel wedge or sleeve type.
 - 3. Toggle Bolts: All steel springhead type.
- B. Powder-Driven Threaded Studs: Heat-treated steel, designed specifically for the intended service.
- C. Conduit Sealing Bushings: Factory-fabricated watertight conduit sealing bushing assemblies suitable for sealing around conduit, or tubing passing through concrete floors and walls. Construct seals with steel sleeve, malleable iron body, neoprene sealing grommets or rings, metal pressure rings, pressure clamps, and cap screws.
- D. Cable Supports for Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug for nonarmored electrical cables in riser conduits. Provide plugs with number and size of conductor gripping holes as required to suit individual risers. Construct body of malleable-iron casting with hot-dip galvanized finish.

- E. U-Channel Systems: 16-gauge steel channels, with 9/16-inch (14 mm) diameter holes, at a minimum of 8 inches (20 cm) on center, in top surface. Provide fittings and accessories that mate and match with U-channel and are of the same manufacture.

2.4 FABRICATED SUPPORTING DEVICES

- A. General: Shop- or field-fabricated supports or manufactured supports assembled from U-channel components.
- B. Steel Brackets: Fabricated of angles, channels, and other standard structural shapes. Connect with welds and machine bolts to form rigid supports.
- C. Pipe Sleeves: Provide pipe sleeves of one of the following:
 - 1. Sheet Metal: Fabricate from galvanized sheet metal; round tube closed with snaplock joint, welded spiral seams, or welded longitudinal joint. Fabricate sleeves from the following gauge metal for sleeve diameter noted:
 - (a) 3 inch (8 cm) and smaller: 20-gauge.
 - (b) 4 inch (10 cm) to 6-inch (15 cm): 16-gauge.
 - (c) over 6-inch (15 cm): 14-gauge.
 - 2. Steel Pipe: Fabricate from Schedule 40 galvanized steel pipe.
 - 3. Plastic Pipe: Fabricate from Schedule 80 PVC plastic pipe.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install supporting devices to fasten electrical components securely and permanently in accordance with Electrical Code requirements.
- B. Coordinate with the building structural system and with other electrical installation.
- C. Raceway Supports: Comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes, and the following requirements:
 - 1. Conform to manufacturer's recommendations for selection and installation of supports.
 - 2. Strength of each support is adequate to carry present and future load multiplied by a safety factor of at least four. Where this determination results in a safety allowance of less than 200 lbs (90 kg), provide additional strength until there is a minimum of 200 lbs (90 kg) safety allowance in the strength of each support.

3. Install individual and multiple (trapeze) raceway hangers and riser clamps as necessary to support raceways. Provide U-bolts, clamps, attachments, and other hardware necessary for hanger assembly and for securing hanger rods and conduits.
 4. Support parallel runs of horizontal raceways together on trapeze-type hangers.
 5. Support individual horizontal raceways by separate pipe hangers. Spring steel fasteners may be used in lieu of hangers only for 1-1/2-inch (DN 41) and smaller raceways serving lighting and receptacle branch circuits above suspended ceilings only. For hanger rods with spring steel fasteners, use 1/4 inch (6 mm) diameter or larger threaded steel. Use spring steel fasteners that are specifically designed for supporting single conduits or tubing.
 6. Support exposed and concealed raceway within 1 foot (30 cm) of an unsupported box and access fittings. In horizontal runs, support at the box and access fittings may be omitted where box or access fittings are independently supported and raceway terminals are not made with chase nipples or threadless box connectors.
 7. In vertical runs, arrange support so the load produced by the weight of the raceway and the enclosed conductors is carried entirely by the conduit supports with no weight load on conductor terminals.
- D. Vertical Conductor Supports: Install simultaneously with installation of conductors.
- E. Miscellaneous Supports: Support miscellaneous electrical components as required to produce the same structural safety factors as specified for raceway supports. Install metal channel racks for mounting cabinets, panelboards, disconnects, control enclosures, pull boxes, junction boxes, transformers, and other devices.
- F. In open overhead spaces, cast boxes threaded to raceways need not be supported separately except where used for fixture support; support sheet metal boxes directly from the building structure or by bar hangers. Where bar hangers are used, attach the bar to raceways on opposite sides of the box and support the raceway with an approved type of fastener not more than 24 inches (60 cm) from the box.
- G. Sleeves: Install in concrete slabs and walls and all other fire- rated floors and walls for raceways and cable installations. For sleeves through fire rated-wall or floor construction, apply UL- listed firestopping sealant in gaps between sleeves and enclosed conduits and cables in accordance with "Firestopping" requirement of Division 16 Section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods."
- H. Conduit Seals: Install seals for conduit penetrations of slabs on grade and exterior walls below grade and where indicated. Tighten sleeve seal screws until sealing grommets have expanded to form watertight seal.

- I. Fastening: Unless otherwise indicated, fasten electrical items and their supporting hardware securely to the building structure, including but not limited to conduits, raceways, cables, busways, cabinets, panelboards, transformers, boxes, disconnect switches, and control components in accordance with the following:
 - 1. Fasten by means of wood screws or screw-type nails on wood, toggle bolts on hollow masonry units, concrete inserts or expansion bolts on concrete or solid masonry, and machine screws, welded threaded studs, or spring-tension clamps on steel. Threaded studs driven by a powder charge and provided with lock washers and nuts may be used instead of expansion bolts and machine or wood screws. Do not weld conduit, pipe straps, or items other than threaded studs to steel structures. In partitions of light steel construction, use sheet metal screws.
 - 2. Holes cut to depth of more than 1-1/2 inches (4 cm) in reinforced concrete beams or to depth of more than 3/4 inch (2 cm) in concrete do not cut the main reinforcing bars. Fill holes that are not used.
 - 3. Ensure that the load applied to any fastener does not exceed 25 percent of the proof test load. Use vibration- and shock- resistant fasteners for attachments to concrete slabs.
- J. In general, walls and partitions are not suitable for supporting the weight of panelboards, dry type transformers and the like. Include supporting frames or racks extending from floor slab to ceiling slab for all such items unless specifically instructed otherwise by the Architect.
- K. Include supporting frames or racks for equipment, intended for vertical surface mounting, which is required in a free standing position.
- L. Supporting frames or racks are of standard angle, standard channel or specialty support system steel members. They are rigidly bolted or welded together and adequately braced to form a substantial structure. Racks are of ample size to assure a workmanlike arrangement of all equipment mounted on them.
- M. No work intended for exposed installation in damp locations is mounted directly on any building surface. In such locations, flat bar members or spacers are used to create a minimum of 1/4 inch (6 mm) air space between the building surfaces and the work.
- N. Support vertical runs of bus duct at intervals no greater than the floor to floor height, or 13 feet (4 m), whichever is smaller. Support horizontal runs of bus duct at intervals no greater than 5 feet (150 cm).
- O. Nothing (including outlet, pull and junction boxes and fittings) depends on electric conduits, raceways or cables for support except that threaded hub type fittings having a gross volume not in excess of 100 cubic inches (1600 cc) may be supported from heavy wall conduit, where the conduit in turn is securely supported from the structure within 5 inches (12 cm) of the fitting on two opposite sides.

- P. Nothing rests on, or depends for support on, suspended ceiling media (tiles, lath, plaster, as well as splines, runners, bars and the like in the plane of the ceiling). Vertical members which suspend the ceiling (together with their horizontal bracing which occurs above the ceiling), however, may be used for support, subject to the following criteria:
1. Supporting procedures are in accordance with the ceiling system manufacturer's instructions.
 2. Supporting members for circuitry are rigid. Wires may not be used for such supports.
 3. The ceiling is not fire rated.
- Q. In conjunction with lighting fixtures or other items weighing less than 40 pounds (18 kg), the above restriction against supporting from suspended ceiling splines, runners or bars in the plane of the ceiling may be waived for ceilings which have been specifically approved for the weight and arrangement of fixtures being applied. Any support members, mechanical fastening means (i.e., bolts, screws or rivets), or other appurtenances, however, required to tie in or adapt to the fixtures and their ceiling opening frames (if any) to the ceiling in the approved manner are included as part of the electric work.
- R. As a minimum procedure, support surface or pendant mounted lighting fixture:-
1. From its outlet box by means of an interposed metal strap, where weight is less than 5 pounds (2 kg).
 2. From its outlet box by means of a hickey or other direct threaded connection, where weight is from 5 pounds (2 kg) to 50 pounds (20 kg).
 3. Directly from structural slab, deck or framing member, where weight exceeds 50 pounds (20 kg).
- S. As a minimum procedure, support recessed lighting fixtures as follows:
1. From ceiling suspension members, as described above, where weight is 80 pounds (35 kg) or less. Fluorescent fixtures are provided with clips to secure the fixtures to the ceiling members at two opposite ends of each fixture.
 2. Directly from structural slabs, decks or framing members where weight is more than 80 pounds (35 kg).
- T. Include in the electric work channel sills or skids for leveling and support of all floor mounted electrical equipment.
- U. Where permitted loading is exceeded by direct application of electrical equipment to a slab or deck, include in the electric work proper dunnage as required to distribute the weight in a safe manner.

END OF SECTION 16190

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 16424 - FEEDERS AND BRANCH
CIRCUITRY**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes basic requirements for the installation of light and power feeders and circuitry run at less than 600 volts.
- B. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - 1. Division 16, Section "Raceways and Boxes."
 - 2. Division 16, Section "Conductors and Cables."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Circuited up "as-built" drawings and panel directories as called for in the Division 16 related sections.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. Products shall be as specified in the Division 16 related sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF FEEDERS

- A. Feeder connections shall be in the phase rotation which establishes proper operation for all equipment supplied.

- B. Feeders consisting of multiple cables and raceways shall be arranged such that each raceway of the feeder contains one cable for each phase leg (and one neutral cable if any).
- C. Each individual tap off a feeder which consists of multiple cables per phase (and neutral if any) shall be arranged so that all of the cables of a phase leg (and neutral if any) of the feeder are connected to the corresponding phase leg (and neutral if any) of the individual tap.
- D. Indications of conductor sizing for three phase and three phase/four wire feeders shall, unless otherwise noted on the drawings, be understood as follows:
 - 1. (3) equally sized conductors represents a three phase feeder.
 - 2. (4) equally sized conductors represents a three phase/4 wire feeder with 100% neutral.
 - 3. (3) equally sized conductors plus (1) smaller conductor represents a three phase/three wire feeder plus ground wire.
 - 4. (4) equally sized conductors plus (1) smaller conductor represents a three phase/four wire feeder plus ground wire).
 - 5. (3) equally sized conductors plus (1) larger conductor or (2) equally sized conductors represents a three phase/4 wire feeder with neutral oversized to accommodate "harmonic-rich loads."
 - 6. (3) equally sized conductors plus (1) larger conductor or (2) equally sized conductors and one smaller conductor represents a three phase/four wire feeder with neutral oversized to accommodate "harmonic-rich" loads plus a ground wire.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH CIRCUITRY

- A. Circuitry indicated without sizing shall be understood to be lighting and appliance branch circuitry protected at 20 amps or less.
- B. Conform all lighting and appliance branch circuitry (regardless of whether protected above or below 20 amps) to the following:-
 - 1. Except as noted below, circuitry shall be multi-wire utilizing common neutrals arranged so that no neutral conductor acts as a common wire for more than one circuit conductor connected to the same phase leg of the supply system.
 - (a) Common neutrals shall not be utilized for circuitry runs emanating from panel branches having ground fault interrupting features regardless of any indication to the contrary on the floor plans.
 - (b) Common neutrals shall not be utilized for circuitry runs containing more than (6) 120 volt receptacle circuits within a single raceway (conduit, underfloor duct).

2. Conductors used as common neutrals for multiple (2 or 3) 120 volt branch circuits protected at 20 amps or less shall be #10 AWG where such circuits supply receptacles which are dedicated to - or may be utilized for - "harmonic-rich" loads such as personal computers, computer terminals, word processors, printers and the like. Accordingly, common neutrals supplying receptacles shall be understood to be #10 AWG under the following conditions:
 - (a) Wherever so indicated (by note or otherwise) on the drawings.
 - (b) Throughout all office areas, computer rooms or other data processing spaces and laboratories.
 3. Branch circuitry supplying relay controlled lighting fixtures shall be understood to include all necessary interconnections between the control panels containing the relays and the associated lighting or appliance panels.
 4. Under no condition shall any local switch break a neutral conductor.
 5. At any location where lighting and appliance branch circuitry is extended from a flush mounted panelboard to a suspended ceiling immediately above, at least four 1-inch empty conduits shall be included (in addition to those required for active circuitry) to permit future wiring escape from the panelboard. The empty conduits shall extend up from the panel and shall terminate in a threaded conduit cap immediately after turning out into the hung ceiling space.
 6. Raceway sizes shall conform to standard maximum permissible occupancy requirements except where these are exceeded by other requirements specified elsewhere.
 7. Two and three pole branches in panels shall be used respectively for individual single phase load items connected line to line and individual three phase load items. Where circuitry indications require the use of 2-pole and/or 3-pole branch breakers which have not been scheduled, provide in the panelboards the required multi-pole breakers in lieu of the equivalent number of single pole branch breakers. Required quantities of single, two and three pole branch breakers shall be confirmed prior to ordering panels.
- C. Conform lighting and appliance branch circuitry, indicated as being protected at 20 amps or less, to the following:-
1. 120 volt circuitry shall be supplied from 20 amp panel branches except as indicated otherwise.
 2. 277 (265) volt circuitry shall be supplied from 20 amp panel branches except as indicated otherwise.
 3. Except as specified below, minimum conductor size shall be #12 AWG.

4. Common neutrals shall not be utilized for circuitry runs containing more than (6) 120 volt receptacle circuits within a single raceway (conduit, cellular deck, underfloor duct]) except as noted below.
5. For circuitry run in underfloor raceway systems (cellular deck, underfloor duct), comply with the following:
 - (a) Utilize #10 AWG phase leg conductors and #8 AWG neutral conductors for runs contained in branch cells or ducts (i.e., cells or ducts intended for the direct supplying of receptacles or other outlets from after-set inserts or pre-set inserts mounted on them).
 - (b) Utilize #8 AWG conductors for home run circuitry contained in main runs (i.e., trench headers, junction headers or header ducts).
 - (c) Common neutrals shall be utilized for all circuitry contained in main runs and branch runs. Neutral conductors shall be tapped and reduced in insert outlet boxes to #10 or #12 AWG for direct connection to receptacles.
6. Conductors for 120 volt circuitry extending in excess of 75 feet, from the point of supply, to the first outlet shall be #10 AWG (minimum) copper to the first outlet. Increase beyond #10 AWG if required for compliance with code-mandated voltage drop restrictions.
7. Conductors for 277 (265) volt circuitry extending in excess of 150 feet, from the point of supply, to the first outlet shall be #10 AWG (minimum) copper to the first outlet. Increase beyond #10 AWG if required for compliance with code-mandated voltage drop restrictions.
8. Conductors used in runs consisting of more than six wires (exclusive of grounding conductors) in a single raceway shall be #10 AWG copper minimum. Increase beyond #10 AWG as required to comply with code-mandated derating factors, and as specified hereinbefore.
9. Circuits supplying receptacles which are not of the ground fault circuit interrupting type, and are located as noted below, shall be connected to panel branches that are equipped with ground fault interrupting features:
 - (a) Receptacles located in bathrooms. Bathrooms shall be defined as spaces containing a basin plus a toilet, tub or shower.
 - (b) Receptacles located within 6 feet of any sink and intended to serve counter top surfaces.
 - (c) Receptacles in commercial and institutional kitchens.
 - (d) All receptacles mounted on building exterior surfaces.
 - (e) All receptacles mounted in garages.

- (f) All receptacles mounted in elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces and pits.

10. Circuits supplying pipe tracing cable, snow melting cable, gutter melting cable and HWAT cable shall be connected to panel branches equipped with 30 ma interrupting features for equipment protection.

- D. Where circuitry has not been delineated for lighting fixtures, receptacles, switches and miscellaneous items intended for protection at 20 amps, such items shall be provided with circuitry conforming to the requirements listed below. Prior to installation of circuitry, submit for review floor plans showing circuit numbers, home runs, and interconnecting circuitry for all such items.

1. When circuiting up recessed ceiling lighting fixtures, connect fixtures on the basis of more than one fixture to a single outlet box, in an approved manner, as required to insure that circuits will not be unnecessarily lightly loaded due to mandated, restrictions on the maximum number of outlets per circuit. Except with special permission, unnecessarily light loading shall be understood to mean, less than 1000 volt amps (VA) on a 120 volt circuit and less than 3200 VA on a 277 volt circuit.
2. The total load on a circuit shall be computed by ascribing volt-amps to individual items on the basis of the following:-

<u>ITEM</u>	<u>VOLT-AMPS (VA)</u>
Any lighting fixture.	Input volt-amps as per lighting fixture schedule.
Any outlet with no specific wattage or circuiting instruction indicated.	180 volt amperes
Any outlet (other than for resistance heating) with wattage indicated.	1.15 x Indicated wattage
Any resistance heating outlet with wattage indicated.	1.0 x Indicated wattage
Any fractional HP motor with HP indicated.	2500 x Indicated HP
Any outlet with amps indicated.	120 x Indicated amps

3. Not more than 1300 total VA shall be applied to any 15 amp, 120 volt panel branch circuit nor more than 1450 VA to any 20 amp, 120 volt branch circuit. Not more than 4000 VA shall be applied to any 277 (265) panel branch circuit.
4. A separate 20 amp panel branch circuit supplying no other outlets shall be used for each outlet indicated as an "individual appliance circuit" or "heavy duty" outlet.

5. Lighting fixture shall be connected to 20 amp panel branch circuits. Solidly connected equipment less than 1300 VA shall be connected to 15 amp panel branch circuits except as indicated or noted herein.
6. Lighting fixtures and receptacles shall not be connected to the same branch circuit.
7. Any installed lighting and appliance branch circuitry, found (as a result of unnecessarily light loading of conductors) to make excessive use of panel branches, shall be rearranged.
8. Circuits shall be balanced on phases at their supply point as evenly as possible.
9. The final arrangement of lighting and appliance branch circuitry shall be fully delineated on the record, or "as-built" drawings called for elsewhere.

END OF SECTION 16424

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 16496 - PROVISIONS FOR ELEVATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes power, lighting, communications and alarm provisions for elevators.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 for devices and installation.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Provide products that are Underwriter's Laboratories listed and labeled for their applications and installation conditions and for the environments in which installed.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in the National Electrical Code, Article 100.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Products shall be as specified in other Sections of Division 16.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. In addition to the power feeder and disconnect switch at the entry to the room (whether incorporated in a power panelboard or individually mounted) for each elevator, as shown on the drawings, further electrical work is required as described hereinafter.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. An additional disconnect switch shall be provided for any elevator where the hoist motor is not "in sight" of the disconnect switch (individual or in panelboard) located at the entry to the room. This switch shall be interposed in the feeder to the elevator controller at a suitable location approved as "in sight" by the authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. For elevators supplied from panels not located in the elevator machine room, the disconnects switches located at the entry to the room shall be of the switch and fuse type regardless of any indication to the contrary on the drawings. Fuses shall be sized equal to those upstream of the switches.
- C. For each hydraulic elevator, provide a relay (mounted adjacent to the elevator disconnect switch) with wiring so arranged as to prevent the normal "elevator lowering when power fails" sequenced during periods when the elevator controller is manually de-energized for maintenance or other purposes.
- D. Unless exceeded by requirements shown on the drawings, or elsewhere in the specifications, provide equipment, circuitry and/or roughing for elevator appurtenances as follows:
 - 1. For each elevator, provide a single circuit 20 amps, 120 volt supply including a fused padlockable disconnect switch located in the elevator machine room or machine space, from an emergency lighting/appliance panel to the elevator controller, numbered to correspond to the identifying number on the elevator cab.
 - 2. For each elevator, provide a single circuit 20 amp, 120 volt supply from an emergency lighting/appliance panel to a "top of shaft trail cable outlet box".
 - 3. For each elevator, provide a vaportight switch, GFCI duplex receptacle and 100 watt lighting fixture with globe and guard. Devices shall be mounted in elevator pit at location as directed in field. Provide circuitry as required.
 - 4. For each elevator provide a "run/by" switch, receptacle and light of type described above. Provide circuitry as required.
 - 5. For each elevator provide secondary (sheave) level switch light and receptacle, complete with circuitry, as described hereinbefore.
 - 6. For each elevator provide top of shaft communication and alarm facilities as follows:
 - (a) Telephone outlet box, complete with 3/4" empty conduit to nearest telephone closet facility.
 - (b) Fire protective alarm (FPA) system outlet box complete with cable for loudspeaker and intercom station (warden's station) furnished as part of FPA system for installation in elevator cab. Cable should be run to nearest appropriate FPA system equipment cabinet.
 - (c) Closed circuit TV (CCTV) outlet box at top of shaft, complete with 3/4" conduit extension to CCTV junction box located in elevator machine room as described hereinafter.
 - 7. For the group controller in each electric hoist elevator machine room, provide a 30 amp, 3 phase, wire supply from the power panel supplying the elevators.

8. For each elevator machine room provide a single 20 amp, 120 volt emergency circuit to the elevator intercom panel (or to the group controller if there is not separate intercom panel).
9. Provide a fused disconnect switch, adjacent to the controller for each connection to a controller or group controller as described hereinbefore.
10. From each elevator shaft (including hydraulic elevators) provide empty conduit (intended for elevator communication, signaling and alarm) to the elevator dispatcher's panel in accordance with the following:

Up to (4) cars per shaft -- (2) 2 ½" conduits
11. For each elevator machine room provide a 2" empty conduit (intended for closed circuit TV cables) run to the concierges desk security office or elsewhere as directed by the Architect. Conduit shall terminate in CCTV junction box at both ends of run.
12. For each elevator machine room, provide ceiling fixed temperature 135°F heat detectors giving total coverage for the room. Provide similar detectors at the top of each elevator shaft. Connect the detectors together and into the fire alarm system. If any of the heat detectors goes into alarm, after a short, adjustable time delay, a signal shall be transmitted to shut down the power for all elevators served by the machine room. If any of the detectors at the top of the shaft goes into alarm, after a short, adjustable time delay, a signal shall be transmitted to shut down the power to all elevators in the bank. All elevator power shall be able to be re-energized from the fire command station. Provide appropriate electrically operated devices required for the elevator shut-down.

END OF SECTION 16496

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

SECTION 16670 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes lightning protection for buildings and associated structures and requirements for lightning protection system components.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Protect entire building and outlying electro/mechanical equipment.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data for each component specified.
- C. Shop Drawings detailing lightning protection system. Include air terminal locations, conductor routing and connections, and bonding and grounding provisions. Include indications for use of raceway and data on how concealment requirements will be met.
- D. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include data on listing or certification by Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) or trade association. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- E. Certification, signed by Contractor, that roof adhesive for air terminals is approved by manufacturers of both the terminal assembly and the single-ply membrane roofing material.
- F. Field inspection reports indicating compliance with specified requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who is Underwriters Laboratories listed.

- B. Listing and Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are Underwriters Laboratories listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in the National Electrical Code, Article 100.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70, as amended by state and local codes.
- D. Comply with NFPA 780.
- E. Comply with UL 96 and UL 96A.
- F. Provide UL Master Label to owner.

1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate installation of lightning protection with installation of other building systems and components, including electrical wiring, supporting structures and building materials, metal bodies requiring bonding to lightning protection components, and building finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Approved Lightning Protection Co., Inc.
 - 2. Harger Lightning Protection, Inc.
 - 3. Heary Bros. Lightning Protection Co.
 - 4. Thompson Lightning Protection Co.

2.2 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. System Materials: Copper, with solid air terminals, except as otherwise indicated.
- B. Air Terminals for Single-Ply Membrane Roof Mounting: Units with bases especially designed for single-ply membrane roof materials.
- C. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel with a minimum of 27 percent of rod weight in copper cladding.
 - 1. Diameter: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
 - 2. Length: 10 feet (3 m).
- D. Arresters, Protectors and Antenna-Discharge Units: Comply with UL 1449.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of lightning protection. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lightning protection as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Comply with UL 96A, and NFPA 780.
- C. Conform to the most stringent requirements when more than one standard is specified.
- D. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid sharp bends and narrow loops. Where concealed, run conductors in nonmetallic raceway - Schedule 40 minimum.
- E. Conceal system conductors.
- F. Conceal conductors from normal view from exterior locations at grade within 200 feet (60 m) of building.
- G. Provide notification at least 48 hours before concealing lightning protection components.
- H. Cable Connections: Use approved exothermic-welded connections for all conductor splices and connections between conductors and other components, except those above single-ply membrane roofing.
- I. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with adhesive manufacturer's installation instructions.
- J. Bond extremities of vertical metal bodies exceeding 60 feet (18 m) in length to lightning protection components.
- K. Bond ground terminals to counterpoise conductor.
- L. Bond grounded metal bodies on building within 12 feet (4 m) of ground to counterpoise conductor.
- M. Bond grounded metal bodies on building within 12 feet (4 m) of roof to counterpoise conductor.
- N. Bond grounded metal bodies on building within 12 feet (4 m) of roof to interconnecting loop at eave level or above.

- O. Bond lightning protection components to grounded metal bodies on building at every 60 feet (18 m) with intermediate-level interconnection loop conductors.
- P. Install lightning arresters, protectors and antenna discharge units on all incoming electrical and telecommunication services and antenna lead-ins.

3.3 CORROSION PROTECTION

- A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture, unless moisture is permanently excluded from the junction of such materials.
- B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions would cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. UL Inspection: Apply for inspection by UL as required for UL master labeling of system. Provide additional components as required to obtain UL Master Label at no additional cost to owner.

END OF SECTION 16670

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 16721 - FIRE PROTECTIVE
ALARM SYSTEM**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes a Fire Protective Alarm (FPA) system of the addressable initiating device type, consisting essentially of the following components:
 - 1. Central equipment (also referred to as head end equipment) including Fire Command Station (FCS).
 - 2. A graphic annunciator.
 - 3. Outlying analog-addressable smoke (and smoke-heat) sensor/detectors.
 - 4. Outlying addressable manual fire alarm stations.
 - 5. Outlying addressable heat detectors.
 - 6. Outlying sprinkler and fire standpipe alarm and supervisory devices furnished and installed separate from the work of this section.
 - 7. Outlying addressable modules (monitoring or control) in addressable module boxes or cabinets.
 - 8. Outlying loudspeaker stations; each with integrally mounted visual fire warning (strobe) except as otherwise specified.
 - 9. Outlying visual warning signals (strobes).
 - 10. Outlying intercom stations (floor warden stations).
 - 11. Outlying "area of rescue assistance" intercom stations.
 - 12. Outlying annunciator(s).
 - 13. Outlying system equipment control cabinets (also referred to as equipment control cabinets).
 - 14. Central damper control panel.

15. Interfaces with pre-action sprinkler systems, clean agent systems, or other standalone sub-systems.
 16. Printer.
 17. Interconnecting circuitry and control circuit extensions (i.e., final connections to controlled equipment from addressable module boxes).
- B. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
1. Division 15 Section "Electric-Drive, Horizontal Fire Pumps" for coordinating fire alarm system interconnections.
 2. Division 15 Section "Standpipes and Hoses" for coordinating flow, pressure, and valve tamper switch requirements.
 3. Division 15 Section "Pre-action Sprinkler System" for coordinating fire alarm system interconnections.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. FCS: Fire Command Station. Used interchangeably with FACP (see below)
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel (see above).

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General: Zoned, noncoded, addressable, microprocessor-based fire-detection and alarm system with manual and automatic alarm initiation, analog addressable smoke detectors, and automatic alarm verification for alarms initiated by certain smoke detector zones as indicated.
- B. Signal Transmission: Multiplex signal transmission dedicated to fire alarm service only.
- C. Audible Alarm Notification: By sounding of "alert" tone signals followed by voice messages, followed by "alarm" signals for zones as described hereinafter.
- D. Visual Alarm Notification: By xenon-strobe-type units.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product Data for each type of system component specified including dimensioned plans and elevations showing minimum clearances and installed features and devices. Include list of materials and Underwriters Laboratories and Factory Mutual listing data.

- C. Shop Drawings showing details of graphic annunciator.
- D. Wiring diagrams from manufacturer differentiating clearly between factory- and field-installed wiring. Include diagrams for equipment and for system with all terminals and interconnections identified. Make all diagrams specific to this Project and distinguish between field and factory wiring.
- E. Device Address List: Coordinate with final system programming.
- F. System operation description covering this specific Project, including method of operation and supervision of each type of circuit and sequence of operations for all manually and automatically initiated system inputs and outputs. Manufacturer's standard descriptions for generic systems are unacceptable.
- G. Operating instructions for mounting at the FACP (FCS).
- H. Product certificates signed by manufacturers of fire alarm system components certifying that their products comply with specified requirements.
- I. Maintenance data for fire alarm systems to include in the operation and maintenance manual specified in Division 1. Include data for each type of product, including all features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual. Include recommendations for spare parts to be stocked at the site. Provide the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of service organizations that carry stock of repair parts for the system furnished.
- J. In addition to routine submission of above materials, make all filings with the Building Department, Fire Department, and any other agencies having jurisdiction. Where filings require the engineer's signature, documents will be submitted for his review and signature. This responsibility will include furnishing of required quantities of floor plans, descriptive notes and/or specifications, wiring diagrams, shop drawings and amendment forms, as well as the payment of any required filing fees.
- K. Permits necessary for installation of the work will be obtained prior to the commencement of the work. All permit costs and inspection fees will be included as part of the required work.
- L. Record of field tests of system.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installing contractor has at least 5 years experience in the installation of multiplexed fire alarm systems. Provide services of a NICET Level IV technician supplied by the fire alarm system manufacturer to supervise installation, adjustments and tests of system.
- B. Single-Source Responsibility: Obtain fire alarm components from a single source who assumes responsibility for compatibility of system components.
- C. Compliance with Local Requirements: Comply with the applicable building code, local ordinances, and regulations, and the requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction.

- D. Comply with NFPA 70 as amended by state and local codes.
- E. Comply with NFPA 72.
- F. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).
- G. Listing and Labeling: Provide fire alarm systems and components specified in this Section that are listed and labeled by Factory Mutual and Underwriters Laboratories.
- H. The system is complete with all components and wiring required for compliance with all applicable codes and regulations, and for its operation as described hereinafter. No exclusion from or limitation in the symbolism used on the drawings or the language used in these specifications will be interpreted as a reason for omitting any appurtenances or accessories required to enable the system to perform the specified functions.
- I. Early completion of the Fire Protective Alarm system will be required so as to permit a certificate of occupancy to be obtained in a timely manner, in accordance with a schedule established by the Architect.
- J. Upon completion of the installation (and as directed by the Architect), the work includes making all arrangements and providing any assistance necessary for inspection and test as required for approval by the Fire Department. Modifications, adjustments and/or corrective work necessary to obtain approval along with subsequent inspection and test resulting from the issuance of a "Notice of Defect" will precede any consideration of formal acceptance by the Architect. In conjunction with the above, training as deemed necessary to instruct authorized building personnel in the proper operation of the system also forms a part of the required work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Edwards Systems Technology; General Signal Unit.
 - 2. Simplex Fire Alarm, Inc.
 - 3. Firecom, Inc.
 - 4. Siemens Building Technologies, Inc.

2.2 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

- A. Include system functions and operating features as described below, plus those additional functions and features required by the authorities having jurisdiction. System design is such that neither the failure of the normal power source, the transfer to an emergency source, nor the retransfer to the normal source causes a change in system status (i.e., initiation of alarm signals or operation of equipment control relays).

- B. The central equipment of the system incorporates redundant components so that the failure of any component does not interfere with system operation as described hereinafter. Submission of the system for approval includes a detailed description of how compliance with this requirement is accomplished.
- C. System supervision is such that the ability of all addressable alarm initiating devices and addressable modules to communicate with the central equipment is constantly monitored, and such failure results in an audible signal at the Fire Command Station (FCS) and outlying annunciator(s) and a visual annunciation identifying the faulted device or module.
- D. The system utilizes a cathode ray tube (CRT) for the display of all required alarm and equipment status information, and an associated keyboard to permit manual access to the system. For fire department use, selector switch and pilot light modules are also included at the Fire Command Station for status and manual access to fans and dampers. A liquid crystal display (LCD) or electro-luminescent display capable of displaying at least 20 lines, with 80 characters per line, will be considered acceptable as an alternate to the CRT. System response time is such that alarm indications are displayed within 10 seconds of occurrence. No portion of the "executive" program is stored on magnetic media. It is entered into the system by means of "firmware."
- E. Smoke detection devices (variously identified herein as "smoke detectors," "smoke sensors" and "smoke sensor/detectors") are understood to be of the analog addressable smoke sensor type, for which the decision to initiate an alarm in response to the presence of smoke is software-driven from the fire protective alarm system central equipment. Provisions are incorporated at the central equipment to manually test and/or adjust the sensitivity of each smoke detector individually by means of a keyboard or keypad without requiring any replacement of equipment and/or "burning in" of firmware, and to print out a record thereof. The system also incorporates "alarm verification" features enabling a time-delayed re-check of any smoke detection signal prior to acknowledging a smoke alarm condition and acting thereon.
- F. Circuitry for the system complies with the following:
 - 1. Circuits are of the following types:
 - (a) Signaling line circuits (SLC's) are utilized for the transmission of multiple signals from outlying addressable initiating devices, addressable control modules and addressable monitoring modules.
 - (b) "Trunk" signaling line circuits are SLC's originating directly from the system head-end equipment.
 - (c) "Branch" signaling line circuits are SLC's which are tapped off the "trunk" SLC's. Such circuits originate at outlying system equipment control cabinets, and are intended for the direct connection of outlying addressable initiating devices and/or modules.
 - (d) Initiating device circuits (IDC's) are utilized for the connection of non-addressable devices (such as sprinkler water flow switches) to their associated addressable modules.

- (e) Notification appliance circuits (NAC's) are utilized for the connection of outlying alarm notification devices as follows:
 - (1) "Audible" NAC's are intended for the connection of loudspeakers.
 - (2) "Visual" NAC's are intended for the connection of strobes.

2. "Trunk" SLC's comply with the following:

- (a) They are NFPA 72, Style 7 (Modified) incorporating isolators to limit the loss of signal transmission in the presence of wiring faults as describe hereinafter.
- (b) They originate at the system head-end equipment, and each consist of a Class "A" loop, the sending portion of which feed through outlying equipment control cabinets in which "branch" SLC's are tapped from the loop. The return portion of the loop is run directly - without intervening connections - back to the head-end equipment for termination.
- (c) The loop conductors are run in raceways (as specified hereinafter) throughout. The "sending" portion of the loops are physically separated from the "return" by a distance of not less than 50 feet (15 meters) except where they come together at the FACP, and each is 2-hour rated as hereinafter specified.
- (d) Within each outlying equipment control cabinet, and at the "sending" and "return" connections at the system head-end equipment, each loop incorporates isolators to sectionalize the loops. Two isolators per loop are provided in each outlying equipment control cabinet. They are so arranged that the wiring within the cabinet and the outgoing branch circuits can be completely isolated from upstream or downstream faults on the trunk loops.
- (e) The trunk SLC's - in conjunction with their associated isolators and head end equipment - function so as to provide bi-directional signal transmission enabling receipt of alarms and signals at the fire command station (FCS), and activation of addressable control modules from the FCS, in the event of a single open, a single ground, a wire-to-wire short or an open and a ground anywhere on the circuit. The only loss of transmission is for devices and/or modules connected to that portion of the loop (between isolators within the ECC) on which the wiring fault has occurred. Wiring faults on the loops, result in trouble signals at the FCS which identifies the location of the faults.

3. "Branch" SLC's comply with the following:

- (a) They are NFPA72, Style 6, arranged to limit the loss of signal transmission as described hereinafter.

- (b) They originate at outlying system equipment control cabinets (ECC's), and each consist of a Class "A" loop which is tapped from - and returns to - a "trunk" SLC, together with any transponders or other electronic components required to properly interface "trunk" and "branch" SLC's. Sending and return conductors are separated by a distance of not less than 20 feet (6 meters) except where they come together at ECC's, devices or modules.
 - (c) Where required for the accommodation of auxiliary control relays associated with outlying addressable control modules as described in later subsections, incorporate additional supervised power supply conductors originating at the ECC's.
 - (d) Include multiple "branch" SLC's within outlying system equipment control cabinets (ECC's) as required to insure that no more than 50 alarm initiating devices and/or addressable monitoring modules associated with non-addressable alarm or supervisory initiating devices are connected to a single "branch" SLC. Each "branch" SLC is tapped from a "trunk" SLC by means of isolators which will disconnect it from the "trunk" SLC in the event of a wire-to-wire short (and will initiate a trouble signal identifying the fault at the FCS) so as to allow the remaining "branch" SLC's originating within the same ECC to function normally.
 - (e) The loop conductors are run in raceways (as specified hereinafter)
 - (f) The "branch" SLC's function in conjunction with upstream circuitry and head-end equipment so as to provide bi-directional signal transmission enabling receipt of alarms and monitoring signals at the FCS, and activation of addressable control modules from the FCS, in the event of a single open, a single ground or an open and a ground on the circuit. Wiring faults on the circuits result in trouble signals at the FCS, identifying the faulted circuit.
4. Initiating device circuits (IDC's) comply with the following:
- (a) They are NFPA72, Style B, so arranged in conjunction with field installed end-of-line devices as to be operational in the event of a single ground, and transmit trouble signals to the FCS via their associated monitoring modules (AMM's) in the event of an open or ground on the circuit. Such signals identify the AMM.
 - (b) Conductors for IDC's are installed in accordance with the requirements specified above for "branch" SLC's.

5. Notification appliance circuits (NAC's) comply with the following:
 - (a) They are NFPA72 Style Y circuits, originating at the associated equipment control cabinets, and so arranged in conjunction with end-of-line devices as to permit audible or visual signal operation in the event of a single ground. Wiring faults cause receipt of trouble signals at the FCS identifying the faulted circuit.
 - (b) Conductors for NAC's are installed in accordance with the requirements specified above for "branch" SLC's, with the additional requirement that each is 2-hour rated as hereinafter specified until they enter the evacuation signaling zone that they serve. .
6. Circuits supplying outlying intercom stations (floor wardens stations) and outlying annunciators comply with the requirements specified hereinbefore for notification appliance circuits (NAC's).
7. Alternate circuitry and equipment arrangements which provide equal reliability (i.e., the ability to transmit and receive signals in the event of wiring faults) will be considered acceptable subject to proof of the reliability equivalence. In particular, systems employing dual communications buses will be considered if automatic transfer between buses without the loss of existing information - occurs in the event of a wiring fault or equipment failure associated with one bus.
8. Risers or trunk circuits supplying multiple floors are so arranged as to protect against the inability to initiate evacuation signals on more than one floor (or zone) in the event of fire on a single floor. To accomplish this, sending and return portions of loops or dual communications buses are so located as to be separated by a distance of not less than 50 feet (15 meters), and each is 2-hour rated as hereinafter specified.
9. Note that the use of "T-taps" or other such wiring techniques that limit the ability of addressable devices, addressable modules, loudspeaker, strobes or other devices to function normally in the event of wiring faults as described hereinbefore will not be allowed.
10. Provide the following as 2-hour rated cable or cable system except where enclosed within 2-hour rated construction as indicated on the architectural drawings:-
 - (a) Trunk signalling line circuits (Trunk SLC's).
 - (b) Notification appliance circuits (NAC's) until they enter the evacuation signaling zone that they serve.
- G. System equipment is of a type which insures that all signal and communication circuits are of the "power limited fire protective limited fire protective signaling type" as defined in Article 760 of the National Electrical Code.

- H. Outlying system equipment control cabinets (also referred to as equipment control cabinets or ECC's) are distributed throughout the project and incorporate all required circuit isolators, transponders, notification appliance addressable control and monitoring modules, power supplies, terminal strips and other equipment and wiring as required to provide all specified system features and functions. ECC's supplying multiple floors will be considered acceptable if they are contained, together with associated conductors in a two hour rated enclosure or space, and if they comply with the following:
1. Each floor supplied by an ECC is served by a separate "branch" SLC (or more than one if needed to comply with other criteria specified hereinafter), and such "branch" SLC(s) serve only that floor.
 2. A cabinet is provided on each floor, complete with interconnecting circuitry to the ECC from which it derives, to make available (at a similar location on each floor) terminals for the connecting of circuitry extensions to all devices (addressable initiating devices, addressable modules, loudspeakers, strobes, intercom stations, sub-system interfaces, and other items) which maybe required for the floor when it is fully occupied and fitted out. Terminals and interconnecting circuitry are as required to permit all system features and functions described within this Fire Protective Alarm System specification to be incorporated for each floor.
- I. ECC's are not located in electric closets. They are located in suitable 2-hour rated spaces as approved by the Engineer and/or where specifically shown on the drawings. Provide (coordinate with GC) 2-hour rated access panels where required. ECC's incorporate NEMA 1 enclosures, hinged lockable doors, electric supervision against unauthorized access and the removal of any components, and each have an attached engraved nameplate identifying the cabinet. If (as described hereinafter) distributed amplification for the fire evacuation public address system is optionally provided in lieu of the specified central amplification system, all required equipment is incorporated as part of the outlying ECC's - either in the same cabinets - or in separate supervised cabinets mounted adjacent thereto.
- J. Outlying addressable module boxes (or cabinets) are distributed throughout the project and contain addressable monitoring and/or control modules as follows:
1. An addressable monitoring module ("initiating device" type, i.e., AMM/ID) is provided adjacent to each sprinkler or standpipe waterflow device and each non-addressable alarm or supervisory initiating device.
 2. An addressable control module (ACM) is provided adjacent to each fan motor controller (or other device controller) for equipment whose operation must be automatically and/or manually controlled by the fire alarm system. Where two items are to be controlled at the same location, two such ACM units are provided.

3. An addressable monitoring module ("status" type, i.e., AMM/S) is provided adjacent to each fan motor controller (or other device controller) for equipment whose operational status must be monitored by the Fire Alarm System. Where two status indications are to be monitored for equipment items (such as smoke purge dampers), two such AMM/S units are provided.
 4. Auxiliary relays are provided to comply with requirements specified hereinafter.
- K. System supervision of outlying circuitry and equipment incorporate the following:
1. Supervision against circuitry wiring faults as described hereinbefore.
 2. Supervision against unauthorized access and/or removal of components at ECC's as described hereinbefore.
 3. Supervision of addressable alarm initiating devices, addressable control or monitoring modules, and other outlying devices against removal, or - as described hereinbefore - against malfunction.
 4. Supervision of power supplies. Failure of any system power supply causes a trouble signal at the FCS identifying the affected power supply.
 5. Supervision of smoke detector/sensor device sensitivity so as to provide a "dirty head" notification at the FCS identifying the affected device.
 6. Supervision against loss of voltage at any system component requiring power for its proper operation. Such failure causes a trouble signal at the FCS identifying the location of the affected device(s).
 7. Supervision against "off-normal" manually initiated actions at the FCS. Any such action causes an identifying trouble signal at the FCS.
- L. Power supplies serving visual warning signals are of the regulated type having an output of 28 VDC (adjustable to 30 VDC) ± 3 percent.
- M. The system incorporates alarm (and other) operating features as follows:
- N. Reset of all alarm initiating device circuits, alarm notification circuits, and equipment control relays is accomplished from the fire command station. Manual fire alarm stations require local reset before central reset from the fire command station is possible. In no case will the above alarm reset procedure cause the re-setting of equipment control relays. Such devices require separate reset from the fire command station.
- O. It is possible to disconnect any floor, or any device or combination of devices on any floor, from the system to allow for maintenance, repairs, or the addition of system devices and wiring without disabling any other floor. Such disconnection causes a visual "disabled" annunciation at the fire command station identifying the floor and/or devices.

- P. Each manual station, smoke or heat detector, sprinkler/standpipe alarm or supervisory actuating device, and sub-system alarm or supervisory initiating device constitutes a separate zone for reporting to the fire command station. For display at the fire command station (FCS) and at outlying annunciator(s), each reporting zone (i.e., device) is individually identified, except that multiple smoke detectors (or multiple heat detectors) located within a single space may be identified by a common display. It is possible to separately identify and display the address of the individual detector(s) in alarm within any such space by means of an appropriate command at the FCS keyboard or keypad.
- Q. The system provides for intercom and fire evacuation public address features as follows:-
1. The system is of a dual channel type, capable of automatically broadcasting alert tones followed by recorded announcements repetitively to all floors followed by evacuation tones. No tone signals is broadcast in stairwells.
 2. Manual "on-off" control from the fire command station of evacuation tone signals, recorded announcements and flashing of strobes through loudspeaker stations on any or all floors. Manual deactivation of the loudspeaker evacuation tones from the fire command station does not deactivate flashing strobes.
 3. Initiation of voice announcements from the fire command station through loudspeaker stations on any or all floors, and separately through loudspeaker stations in stairwells.
 4. Intercom between fire command station and any floor warden station, such intercom being controlled from the fire command station. Call initiation from warden stations to fire command station is possible.
 5. Intercom use does not interfere with simultaneous broadcasting of evacuation signals, alert tones or voice announcements over system loudspeakers.
 6. Patching in of voice announcements from any floor warden station to the loudspeaker stations on any or all floors, such patching in being controlled from the fire command station.
- R. The fire evacuation public address equipment in the system includes the following features and functions:
1. Amplifiers are sized to accommodate a quantity of speakers equal to that shown on the drawings, plus an additional bulk quantity of 10 speakers intended for installation at locations as directed throughout the system. Sizing is based on an average requirement of 2.0 watts per speaker.
 2. Amplifiers have a frequency response range of ± 1.5 dB from 30 to 10,000 hertz and at rated output, less than 2 percent distortion over the frequency range of 60 to 15,000 hertz.

3. Failure of a power amplifier shuts down the amplifier and indicate a trouble condition. Amplifiers are arranged in such manner, either by pairing or automatic switchover, to provide redundancy.
 4. Tone oscillators, microphone circuits and ancillary equipment are paired in a similar fashion to the amplifiers and be provided with either automatic or manual switchover to the redundant system.
 5. Where the audio path consists of twisted pair "riser cables," it includes double the number of required pairs (as determined by the total number of speakers called for). Connections at the amplifiers are arranged to readily allow their "transfer" to future amplifiers as necessary.
- S. In lieu of the central amplification system described above, distributed amplification may be provided, however, such equipment conforms to the redundancy requirements described hereinbefore, and the outlying equipment must derive its power from the central equipment.
- T. Provide an outlying annunciator at each location shown on the drawings. Each outlying annunciator duplicates visually and audibly all "alarm," "trouble" and "supervisory" signals received at the fire command station. Each outlying annunciator also includes a master intercom station to duplicate all functions of the master intercom station at the fire command station. The annunciators are of the cathode ray tube type or of the LCD type as utilized at the FCS. If local code authorities require other means of display, modify annunciator type so as to fully comply.
- U. Each floor warden station is semi-recessed. The station is painted Fire Department red and is clearly identifiable as to its function. It contains detailed operating instructions on a plate or label which is clearly visible when the station is opened. The body of the station contains: a telephone handset, call-in pushbutton or alternate call initiation method, indicator lamp, circuit electronics, and terminal strips. The handsets are red molded thermoplastic with stainless steel armored cord, and utilize commercial type transistor components. In rooms with fire pumps or fire water tanks, stations incorporate a long extension cord and take up reel for "remote" handset operation. Furnish a warden station for each elevator, and turn over to the elevator manufacturer for flush mounting in each cab.
- V. Whether indicated on the drawings, or not, a "rescue type" fire warden's station is provided in each "area of rescue assistance". Refer to the Architectural drawings for locations of such areas. "Rescue type" stations comply with the requirements for general floor warden's stations and additionally include a visual "call acknowledged" signal to indicate to hearing impaired persons that the call has been received at the fire command station. Include provisions at the fire command station to transmit an acknowledgment signal to "rescue type" fire warden's stations.
- W. Loudspeakers are wall mounted (or column mounted) as noted on the drawings. They are approved for "Fire Alarm Service," with an audio power rating of at least 2 watts and a frequency response of 400 to 4,000 Hz. They have a typical sound pressure rating of at least 90 dBA at 10 feet (3 meters) when measured in an anechoic chamber. Where greater sound pressure levels are required to insure audibility, speakers of higher wattage are utilized. In particular, 15 watt speakers

are utilized in mechanical rooms where the ambient sound level exceeds 70 db. Loudspeakers comply with UL Standards applicable to loudspeakers for fire alarm use. The speaker is able to withstand 150 degrees F (55 degrees C) for three hours and still operate. The speaker is equipped with a multi-tapped matching transformer and a line supervision capacitor. The work of this section includes coordination of matching transformers and field settings of taps as required to insure code compliant audibility throughout. Each loudspeaker incorporates a visual warning signal (strobe) except as described hereinafter.

- X. Loudspeaker enclosures are in accordance with the following:
1. Each loudspeaker enclosure assembly except those in stairs incorporates an integral visual warning signal (strobe) as described hereinafter.
 2. Where indicated as being of the flush mounted type, they each consist of a round or square grille plate and flush mounting back box.
 3. Where indicated as being of the surface mounted type, they each consist of an integral assembly of grille and enclosure, fully enclosing the speaker and matching transformer.
 4. Where indicated as being of the bracket type, they each consist of an assembly of bracket mounting frame and speaker enclosure. Where two loudspeakers are shown in a back to back configuration, or where the speaker is called-out as bi-directional, the two speakers are incorporated into a single assembly.
 5. Loudspeaker enclosures are finished in red.
- Y. A visual fire warning device is incorporated as part of each loudspeaker assembly except as noted hereinbefore.

Visual fire warning devices are as follows:

1. They are suitable for synchronized operation at a flash rate of 1 to 1.1 flashes per second, and are of the self-synchronizing type or are suitable for use with synchronizing control units integral with the power supplies, or interpolated in the circuitry between power supplies and strobes (visual warning devices). Where not of the self-synchronized type, provide a sufficient quantity of synchronizing control units to fully utilize the installed power supply capacity for the project.
2. Each visual warning device consists of a U.L. approved xenon flash tube (strobe) with matching socket, integral factory mounted diode or other device (to permit the supervision of circuitry) and domed plastic lens to flash the word FIRE when activated. The strobes have a U.L. 1971 listed intensity of at least 75 candela. Where installed in corridors or in a room having no dimension greater than 20 feet (6 meters), a strobe having a U.L. 1971 listed intensity of 15 candela and a near-axis (i.e., non-polar distribution) intensity of at least 75 candela may be utilized.
3. Strobes are suitable for operation at a nominal voltage of 24 volts D.C. from power supplied by the system.

4. Strobes continue to flash until the system is reset.
 5. If approved speaker/strobe units are not available in timely fashion, separately mounted strobe units may be provided, installed at adjacent locations as approved by the Architect. Under no circumstances are ceiling mounted strobe units be installed unless specific approval has been received in writing from the authorities having jurisdiction. Relocate any strobes indicated as ceiling mounted to locations approved by the Architect.
- Z. Where separately mounted visual fire devices are indicated on the drawings, each device is of the type described above for the combined loudspeaker/strobe unit except that it is equipped with backbox and mounting plate intended for flush or surface wall mounting as directed. Unit is finished as directed.
- AA. Two or more loudspeaker circuits are provided to supply loudspeaker stations in each evacuation signaling zone. Loudspeakers in stairs are circuited separately from those on floors. Strobes are circuited as required, with no less than two circuits per evacuation signaling zone. Both speakers and strobes are connected to these circuits so that adjacent speakers are connected to different circuits, and similarly for strobes.
- BB. In addition to the loudspeakers shown on the drawings, provide a bulk quantity of loudspeakers (each with integral or adjacent strobe) complete with circuitry as required, and installed at locations as directed, throughout the project. Information does not exist at this time as to the proper locations at which these loudspeakers are to be installed. The system includes adequate capacity to accommodate these loudspeakers and strobes from adjacent outlying equipment cabinets, assuming an equal distribution among the system cabinets. The work of this section includes the responsibility for determining such locations based on tenant occupancy space planning drawings on a floor by floor basis as they are prepared by the Architect and/or interior designers or space planners. As noted hereinafter, this bulk quantity of loudspeakers is not to be included in the base bid quotation, but is to be included as part of a separate "breakout" quotation.
- CC. In addition to the loudspeakers described above, furnish one loudspeaker for each elevator cab, and turn over to the elevator manufacturer for flush recessed mounting in the cabs.
- DD. In addition to the loudspeakers described hereinbefore, provide one weatherproof loudspeaker/strobe at each exit on to each roof. The speakers are each complete with circuitry and are exterior mounted over or adjacent to the bulkhead door.
- EE. Each manual station is of the non-coded, electrically supervised type. The station is semi-flush, finished fire alarm red. The station is clearly labeled as to function and operation. The stations each include an integral addressable monitor module (AMM) to permit a separately identifiable signal to be transmitted to the fire command station via signaling line circuits as described hereinbefore. The station's "electronics" are mounted behind the body of the station, accessible by authorized personnel only. Alternately, the AMM may be separately mounted adjacent to the manual station and interconnected thereto, as described hereinafter. Manual stations located in unheated spaces have their associated AMM located in a nearby heated space as indicated or as directed by the architect.

- FF. Smoke detectors (also referred to as smoke sensors or sensor/detectors) are of the analog-addressable spot detector type. They are UL approved and installed in accordance with the manufacturers recommendations as to spacing and suitability for use in the specific application with consideration for the number of air changes per hour, ceiling height, ceiling profile, normal space environment (i.e., office space as compared to boiler rooms, etc.) and the type of risk. Detectors, for ceiling mounting in finished spaces, are of the semi-flush type. It is understood that semi-flush mounting requires the device to be suitable for application to a concealed outlet box.
- GG. Except as noted below, smoke detectors are of the ionization principle dual chamber type with UL approved field adjustable sensitivity features.
- HH. Smoke or heat detection devices indicated in kitchens and boiler rooms are of the 190 degrees F (88 degrees C) "fixed temperature only" type.
- II. Smoke detection devices in laboratories and maintenance shops and [garage areas are of the photoelectric cell type.
- JJ. Smoke detectors indicated in mechanical equipment rooms are of the combination photocell plus fixed temperature/rate-of-rise type.
- KK. Smoke detection devices have integrally mounted pilot lamps giving a "triggered" indication.
- LL. Smoke detection devices which are mounted in ducts or under raised floors or in ceiling plenums are supplied with remote "triggered" indication pilot wired in parallel, in an approved manner, with the similar pilots included integrally with detection units. The pilots for duct detectors are each flush or surface mounted within 15 feet (4.5 meters) circuiting distance of its associated detector. Mounting and location are as directed by the Architect. The pilots for detectors under raised floors or in ceiling plenums are remotely mounted in a graphic annunciator panel at a location within the computer space as directed.
- MM. Smoke detectors mounted in rooms with doors are each equipped with a remote "triggered" indication light wired in parallel with the pilot light integral with the detector. These remote pilot lights flush mounted in the corridor over or adjacent to the door to the room as directed by the Architect.
- NN. Smoke detectors indicated as being located in floor or ceiling cavities of the air handling type are equipped with "air shields" where air velocities are such as to require these appurtenances for the proper detection of smoke.
- OO. Heat detectors located in sprinklered elevator machine rooms or elevator shafts are of the 135 degrees F (57 degrees C) "fixed temperature only" type.

PP. Duct smoke detectors are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations as to suitability for use in the specific application with consideration to air changes, size of duct and location within duct, and include sampling chambers and pick up tubes where required. Where installed within ducts and/or above ceilings in air plenums, the provision of access doors and mounting holes in such ducts and plenums will be separate from this work. The installation of the tubes and sampling chambers, however, is part of the work of this section. In addition, responsibility for supplying detailed drawings showing exact dimensional locations of sampling tubes, etc., in the plenums and ducts, as required for the optimum operation will be part of this work. Where duct configuration is such as to interfere with laminar air flow, special provisions are included as follows:

1. For unducted return systems, provide area type detectors, suitable for 500 feet per minute (150 meters per minute) air velocity, pipe mounted in the ceiling at the entry to the fan room. While every attempt has been made to properly define the required quantity of detectors (labeled "d"), at each such location, it is understood that detectors are provided on the following basis, regardless of the indicated quantities:

Duct width	Quantity of detectors
not more than 36 inches (91 cm)	1
greater than 36 inches (91 cm) but not more than 72 inches (182 cm)	2
greater than 72 inches (182 cm)	2 + (1) per each additional 24 inches (61 cm)

QQ. Where combination photo-electric or ionization, plus heat, detectors are called for, separate units may be optionally substituted and their locations adjusted accordingly.

RR. Control and monitoring of audible and visual alarm notification devices (loudspeakers and strobes) and associated circuitry is by means of addressable modules located in outlying system control cabinets.

SS. Reporting of all required alarms and supervisory signals to the Fire Command Station (FCS) from initiating devices of the non-addressable type, including (but not limited to) sprinkler and standpipe waterflow and supervisory devices, manual fire alarm stations, sub-system (e.g., clean agent, pre-action sprinkler, etc.) alarm and supervisory contacts, and the like is accomplished in conjunction with addressable monitoring modules of the initiating device type (i.e., AMM/ID). AMM/ID's are of a type intended for connection of NFPA 72, Style 6 "branch" signaling line circuits (SLC) as described hereinbefore and are connected to the appropriate SLC on the floor on which they are located. Except where incorporated as part of manual fire alarm stations (or in the outlet boxes on which they are mounted), AMM/ID's are mounted adjacent to the associated initiating devices in outlying addressable monitor module boxes and are complete with engraved red nameplate. Each AMM/ID is interconnected to its associated initiating device by means of an initiating

device circuit (IDC) as described hereinbefore. Provide an end-of-line resistor at each initiating device so as to permit supervision of the interconnecting circuitry. Terminals are incorporated in each addressable module box for the accommodation of all entering conductors.

- TT. Control (automatic and/or manual) and status reporting (monitoring) of equipment via the fire protective alarm system as specified hereinafter is accomplished by means of addressable control modules (ACM's) and addressable monitoring modules of the status reporting type (AMM/S's) located within 3 feet (1 meter) of the controlled equipment in outlying addressable monitor boxes similar to those specified above for the AMM/ID's. Addressable modules (ACM's and AMM/S's) are provided in accordance with the following:
1. ACM's and AMM/S's are of a type intended for connection to NFPA 72, Style 6 "branch signaling circuits (SLC's) as described hereinbefore, and are connected to the appropriate SLC serving the floor on which they are located.
 2. Each ACM provides (2) SPDT contacts suitable for use at voltages up to 250 VAC and capable of interrupting 10 amperes inductive, and derives its operating and supervisory current at 24VDC from the SLC. If necessary, these contact ratings are accommodated by means of auxiliary control relays mounted within or adjacent to the same addressable monitor boxes as the ACM's, and deriving their operating power from the associated ACM's, or directly from the associated ECC via separate supervised power supply conductors.
 3. Each AMM/S functions so as to provide a readily identifiable status indication at the FCS in response to a 120 or 208 VAC signal from the associated controlled equipment. Incorporate an auxiliary status (monitoring) relay for each AMM/S to convert a 120 or 208 VAC AC signal to a "dry" contact if the AMM/S requires a "dry" contact for proper status signal initiation. Auxiliary status relays, if required, are mounted in the same outlying addressable module boxes as their associated AMM/S's.
 4. At locations where multiple equipment controllers are installed, the addressable modules (and any associated auxiliary relays) may be grouped in common addressable module boxes.
- UU. System operation is such as to provide automatic and/or manual control of fans larger than 2,000 CFM (56 cubic meters per minute), and of dampers and other equipment in response to alarm initiation, as well as central status reporting. Additionally, any fans over 2,000 CFM (56 cubic meters per minute) which are found not to require automatic control by the FPA system are provided with manual control (and status reporting) from FCS. Controls are provided in accordance with a schedule on the drawings and/or as described hereinafter. Include provisions at the FCS in outlying system equipment control cabinets, and in outlying addressable module boxes (or cabinets) - each located within 3 feet (1 meter) of the associated motor controller, smoke purge damper control device or other equipment control device, control circuitry extensions (i.e., final connections) from the addressable module boxes to the controlled equipment and connections, all as required to achieve this control.

- VV. Outlying addressable module boxes, each complete as indicated, are provided for equipment requiring automatic or manual control by the FPA system on the basis of the following:-
1. One box including two ACM's ("stop", start") and one AMM/S ("running") for each fan over 2,000 CFM (56 cubic meters per minute) (including fans in self-contained air conditioning units).
 2. One box including two ACM's ("purge", "override purge") and two AMM/S's ("open"/"closed") for each smoke purge damper system. Refer to HVAC floor plans and risers for quantity of smoke purge damper systems (i.e., one system for each penetration of any multi-floor duct which will be used for smoke purge, and for each fan system which includes direct outside exhaust provisions).
 3. One addressable module box for each damper requiring individual manual control from the central damper control panel (specified hereinafter for normal after-hours control), but for which direct manual or automatic control by the fire alarm system is not specified. Include one ACM ("closed") and one AMM/S ("closed").
 4. One addressable module box, including three ACM's ("recall", "recall to alternate floor", and "elevator not safe for use") and one AMM/S ("elevators recalled") for each bank of elevators. Alternate floor recall: is initiated only in response to detector activation on the terminal floor. Elevator not safe for use: is initiated only in response to detector activation in associated elevator machine room or elevator shaft. Provide two additional ACM's ("de-energize/re-energize elevator power panel) for each bank of elevators if the elevator machine room and/or associated shaft is sprinklered. Also, include one AMM/S per bank ("panel de-energized").
 5. One addressable box, including one ACM for the fire stair door unlocking system.
 6. One addressable module box, including one ACM, for the fire/smoke door release system.
 7. One addressable module box, including one ACM for each fire stair or elevator machine room smoke vent.
 8. One addressable module box, including one ACM for each escalator controller.
 9. Additional addressable module boxes as necessary to comply with the scheduled control of equipment in response to system alarm actuating devices.
- WW. System operation includes manual over-ride control from -- and status reporting at -- the fire command station for each item of "controlled equipment" (such as fans, dampers, fire doors, elevators, etc.) which is to be automatically controlled in response to the operation of system alarm actuation devices as scheduled elsewhere, and for each smoke exhaust (purge) damper system and smoke purge fan. Re-start of fans shut down by an alarm is possible without clearing the alarm

condition, (so as to assist in the smoke control) but only if a Fire Department key has been inserted in the Fire Command Station. Manual control of elevators will not be required, however, status reporting will be required on a per bank basis. Additional "manual only" control of certain fans and dampers (plus status) reporting) is provided if specified herein or scheduled on the drawings. To accomplish the aforementioned status reporting and manual control, include all required switching and status reporting devices at the Fire Command Station, and other necessary equipment at outlying equipment control cabinets and addressable module boxes, and all associated wiring, interwiring and final connections.

- XX. Provide interface circuitry for each damper requiring individual after hours control from the central damper control panel as described hereinafter, run from the fire command station to the central damper control panel. Provide relay contacts and other necessary components, and connect as required to establish "over-ride" open/close control of the dampers from the fire command station regardless of any actions occurring at the central damper control panel.
- YY. The project contains multiple smoke exhaust (purge) systems, each requiring automatic purge initiation. Manual "purge" and "override purge" control will be required and is such as to require resetting at the fire command station for each attempt to "purge" or "override". Any re-attempts to "purge" or "override" subsequent to failure of dampers to operate requires manual resetting, as does the restoration of the fire alarm system to "normal" after an "alarm" condition. To accomplish smoke purge, include:
 - 1. Manual switching and status reporting devices, automatic control devices and other necessary equipment and wiring, at the fire command station (FCS) to automatically or manually re-open, on a floor-by-floor (or zone-by-zone) basis, dampers which have been automatically closed in response to smoke (and which must be opened to permit purge) and to open normally closed smoke exhaust dampers. Where multiple damper systems require control for purge of a single floor or zone, they are controlled as a group.
 - 2. Include damper "open"/"closed" group status indications for the purge dampers and separately for the isolation dampers on a floor by floor basis.
 - 3. Equipment and wiring at the fire command station to automatically or manually start the smoke exhaust system motors and to indicate system status as well. Where multiple fans are required for purge of a single floor or zone they are controlled as group. Where the smoke exhaust shafts are normally used for other purposes (minimum outside air, return, etc.), the starting of the smoke exhaust fan system motors is preceded by the automatic shutdown of all other fans served by the shaft. Include equipment and wiring at the fire command station to accomplish this.
 - 4. Addressable modules at outlying system equipment central cabinets and addressable module boxes and interconnecting circuitry and control circuit extensions, as required to accomplish the aforementioned operation of motors and dampers in conjunction with smoke purge, as described hereinbefore.

ZZ. Control of smoke exhaust system dampers has been specified hereinbefore on a system by system basis. For the purpose of quantifying the systems, it is understood that a separate system is required for:-

1. Each fan system including recirculating air systems, which includes provisions for exhaust directly to the outside.
2. For each fan used for smoke exhaust, include three (3) additional damper systems.

Refer to HVAC air flow riser diagrams, control diagrams and/or floor plans for information as to the required smoke exhaust dampers. Refer to "Smoke Exhaust System Wiring Diagram" for detailed information regarding wiring arrangement. "No cost" modifications to this wiring arrangement will be considered for approval.

AAA. Include in the central equipment the means of controlling damper operation so as to allow smoke purge operation at any floor or combination thereof for all control fan systems.

BBB. Manual control of supply and return floor isolation dampers on each floor will be required for normal building after-hours operation from a central damper control panel (CDCP), utilizing fire protective alarm system central equipment, outlying equipment control cabinets and circuitry as described hereinbefore. Additionally, these dampers will require manual override from the fire command station (FCS) and automatic control of dampers for smoke control as described below and/or specified hereinbefore. Note that the automatic control sequences and the manual control from the FCS overrides the CDCP control. To accomplish this control, include as part of the fire alarm system:

1. The central damper control panel (CDCP) consists of a code gauge sheet steel housing incorporating an open/close control switch and status pilot light for all dampers on each floor requiring individual floor manual control. It also includes all encoder transponders, power modules, equipment control and status reporting relays and ancillary devices as required for the proper operation of the dampers via the aforementioned tie to the fire command station as follows:
2. Open/close control and status reporting for each floor group of dampers. Control is so arranged that it will be overridden by fire alarm system automatic operation or by manual operation from the fire command station.
3. The central damper control panel is located adjacent to the Central Mechanical Panel as directed.
4. Addressable modules (and other necessary items) at the outlying cabinets and addressable boxes, control circuit extensions and interconnecting circuitry as specified hereinbefore, and/or as otherwise needed to provide the specified control functions.

- CCC. For each central multi-floor system supply fan whose return ductwork will be used for smoke purge provide (at the fire command station), equipment and wiring as required to automatically close all supply and return dampers on the floors served by the system, in response to alarm initiation, and to make available a control source (via a system "master" E.P. or process control device) for selectable floor by floor damper operation for smoke control. Provide a control module in the appropriate equipment control cabinet and control circuit extension to the "master" device. Modules for the individual dampers have been specified before.
- DDD. At the fire command station, include devices to provide status reporting of the emergency generator ("running," "off") and each automatic transfer switch "normal," "emergency") plus manual control thereof. In addition, include an (8) wire control circuit extension from the fire command station to the emergency generator and each transfer switch and connect as required for status reporting and manual control. Include auxiliary relays if required.
- EEE. At the fire command station, include devices to provide time delayed (adjustable 0-180 seconds) automatic "de-energize control" of each elevator power panel in response to EMR or elevator shaft heat detector operation, plus status indication and manual re-energize control therefrom.
- FFF. Provide all system equipment and circuitry as required to provide supervisory indications at the fire command station in response to operation of fire suppression equipment contacts (furnished by others) as follows:
1. The fire pump.
 - (a) "Pump running".
 - (b) "Failure of Power."
 2. Each water tank used for fire fighting purposes.
 - (a) "Low Water Level".
 - (b) "High Water Level".
 3. Refer to sprinkler and/or plumbing drawings for location of fire pumps and water tanks.
- GGG. The fire command station (i.e., the display and control section of the central equipment which requires operator interface) includes all components necessary for the system to function as specified, and incorporates a custom built display panel arranged to match the main lobby decor as directed by the Architect. The display panel is arranged to enable a minimum of four (4) simultaneous alarms to be displayed and include an overflow indicator and alarm advance feature. The display panel incorporates a back illuminated flashing fire sign module with 3 inch (76 mm) high red letters. Components of the central equipment which do not require operator interface are mounted in racks or cabinets. If space conditions so require such equipment is remotely located within 50 feet (15 meters) of the fire command station in a nearby, unfinished, ventilated space (as directed by the Architect). All required interconnections are included and are run in conduit.

- HHH. Overall system supervision is accomplished by means of the response to continuous interrogating signals transmitted from the central equipment. The signal transmission rate is such that an "alarm" or "trouble" signal is processed and displayed within the 10 second maximum response time specified hereinbefore, and that subsequent initiation of automatic actions (fan shutdown, e.g.) is similarly initiated within 10 seconds.
- III. Cathode ray tubes (or LCD displays) and keyboards are "user friendly" incorporating the following features:
1. English language display.
 2. Visually displayed prompts for access to "help screens," "system status files," etc.
 3. Keyboard includes special function keys whose functions are clearly evident, e.g., "purge," "pressure," "start," "stop," "open," "close," "status," "fans," "damper," "help."
- JJJ. System software is such that the use of the aforementioned special function keys enable commands to be carried out with minimum effort. For example, purging of the 4th floor is accomplished by typing "4" followed by depressing the "purge" key. This either initiates all required control functions or displays any further action required for the purge.
- KKK. In lieu of the special function keys and associated software as described above, system software may be of a type which permits direct "English language" keyboard entries (without the need for look-up tables) as required for the manual control of fans and dampers for smoke purge and other smoke control functions.
- LLL. System display is prioritized so as to display alarms, controlled equipment status, supervisory indications and system test reports in a sequence and format as approved by the architect and by all authorities having jurisdiction. Specifically:
1. Equipment status display is derived from addressable monitoring modules controlled by limit switches or auxiliary contacts as indicated elsewhere.
 2. Equipment status and/or changes in equipment status is not automatically displayed except that changes in status of equipment may be automatically displayed if they result from a fire alarm initiation event.
 3. Where the status of equipment controlled by alarm initiation is not automatically displayed, the manual steps necessary to provide this display appear on the CRT along with the alarms.
- MMM. Display formats which employ mnemonic codes and/or which depend upon written text material in order to properly operate the system are not considered as meeting these specifications.

- NNN. The provisions for manual control and status reporting required at the Fire Command Station to comply with the specification requirements expressed hereinbefore, in addition to the CRT and keyboard control and status features, consist of maintained contact selector switches and pilot lights, assembled complete with engraved nameplates, into a readily accessible panel section of the Fire Command Station. Include all required equipment, devices and circuitry as necessary to interface with the central equipment of the system. Status is continuously displayed, and manual control of motors, dampers and other devices is possible without resorting to the use of the keyboard and/or keypad associated with the CRT display. Lamp test provisions is incorporated for the pilot lights. If this panel section cannot be accommodated within the confines of the enclosure allocated for the Fire Command Station, then it is separately wall (or other) mounted at an adjacent location approved by the Architect and the authorities having jurisdiction, and all required interwiring is included.
- OOO. The fire command station includes a graphic annunciator panel in addition to the CRT or LDC display specified hereinbefore. The panel displays:
1. Each fire reporting zone (at least one zone per floor) an LED (or other) status indication for each of the reporting device types (i.e., manual station area smoke detector, duct smoke detector, heat detector, waterflow device, subsystem alarm).
 2. All fans and the areas served by each, with a status LED for each.
 3. All smoke purge or pressurization dampers with a status LED for each.
- The panel display complies in all respects with Fire/Building Department requirements regarding size, format, construction and display.
- PPP. Provide detailed dimensional shop drawings of the fire command station to the party responsible for providing the enclosure. It is understood that the installation of the fire command station equipment within such enclosure is part of this work.
- QQQ. Include at the Fire Command Station (FCS) a Fire Department approved key switch which must be operated in order to permit manual initiation of smoke purge and any other smoke control sequences, including the re-start of equipment shut down by a system alarm prior to the clearing of the alarm condition. This key is in addition to the basic required means of securing the entire FCS against tampering by unauthorized personnel.
- RRR. As part of this work, each outlying component requiring a power supply for its proper operation receives this supply over wires extended from the central equipment in a code approved manner. Power supply circuitry is 2-hour rated cable or cable system except where enclosed within 2-hour rated construction as indicated on the architectural drawings.
- SSS. The system includes the following features associated with the analog addressable smoke detectors (sensors):

1. An independent "alarm verification" feature for each individual smoke detector. In response to activation of a detector, the system does not go into alarm until the detector has been reset, and has gone into alarm once again. A suitable, adjustable, time delay is incorporated into the reset procedure. Provisions are incorporated to bypass this alarm verification feature for any or all detectors so as to comply with Fire Department requirements.
 2. An independent "maintenance alert" feature for each individual detector, providing a notification at the FCS identifying any detector which is operating at or above a pre-determined adjustable percentage of its alarm threshold.
 3. An independent "sensitivity adjustment" feature for each individual detector, allowing the adjustment to be made from the FCS.
 4. An independent "test" feature for each individual detector, allowing detector operation to be checked from - and its sensitivity reported at - the FCS.
 5. A "status report" feature which provides status reports and detector sensitivity reports for each individual detector. Status reports include a summary of any initiating devices (smoke detectors or other) which have been manually disabled by operator action. Such reports are printed out in response to a command from the FCS.
- TTT. The central equipment is supplied with an emergency power unit including batteries and battery charging equipment which maintains this cabinet and all outlying equipment that it subfeeds operational without any change in status for a minimum period of twenty-four (24) hours. The emergency power unit is sized to meet the following minimum requirements: operating in normal (supervisory) mode, twenty-four (24) hours, followed by 4 hours of emergency operation, except that voice alarm signaling need operate for only (15) minutes at maximum connected load. Increase if necessary to conform to additional requirements imposed by code enforcement agency. Optionally, emergency power to supply outlying equipment may be provided by local battery and charger units contained within the equipment. Battery low voltage alarm contacts activates "trouble" indication at the central equipment. Batteries are of the sealed maintenance free type.
- UUU. The central equipment and outlying equipment cabinets incorporate power supply provisions capable of accommodating strobes (either individually mounted or incorporated integrally with loudspeakers) on the basis of the indicated quantity of strobes, including any strobes specified in bulk, plus 50 percent spare. Risers are sized to accommodate an "all call" arrangement for strobe operation. Emergency power for the strobes is provided by means of batteries and chargers located in the outlying equipment cabinets, and sized for 5 minutes of continuous operation after 24 hours of supervision. Batteries are of the sealed maintenance free type.
- VVV. The system includes a station for manually activating the relay (called for elsewhere) at the central equipment intended for transmission of an alarm signal and to put the building fire protective alarm system into alarm. This station is located at the telephone switchboard (or at a location as specifically directed in the field) and includes all required circuitry.

- WWW. Central equipment, signal transmission facilities and outlying control cabinets has capacity to handle spare points (which are in addition to those required for all functions hereinbefore specified and/or indicated in the drawings) in accordance with the following criteria:
1. "Trunk" and "branch" signaling line circuits (SLC's) are capable of accommodating enough spare alarm or supervisory initiating device points and spare equipment control points for future growth. Each equipment control point is understood to consist of two independent control functions plus two independent monitoring (i.e., "status") functions.
 2. System equipment control cabinets accommodate trunk and branch circuits adequate for the required active points plus the spare points and devices specified above, and power supplies contained therein are adequate for these quantities.
 3. The central equipment has capacity for the spare points described above, plus an additional capacity equal to 25 percent of those described above. The central equipment contains all equipment and devices necessary to activate these spare points. Any software necessary to support these points is also be included.
- XXX. The system incorporates a "fail safe" control feature accounting for a lack of response to a fire alarm indication at the fire command station. The feature incorporates an "acknowledge" button on the fire command station, which if not depressed (following the appearance of a fire alarm indication) within a preset time period as stipulated by the Fire Department, will cause the evacuation tone signal to be sounded through all loudspeaker stations on the system.
- YYY. The system is equipped with a "hard copy" printer located at the Fire Command Station or at another location as directed by the Architect. It incorporates the following features:-
1. It duplicates all alarm supervisory and trouble signals automatically generated by the system or operator action.
 2. Changes in the status of fans, dampers and other equipment are not printed unless the change was automatically generated by an alarm initiation.
 3. Print format is of alpha-numeric character which includes the month, day, year and time of occurrence, and the type and location of alarm, supervisory and trouble conditions which exist. Alarm, supervisory and trouble data are portrayed in English or mnemonic code which is readily identifiable (as approved by the Architect).
 4. It prints out status and sensitivity reports for the analogue addressable smoke sensors automatically generated by the system or by the operator. It also prints out on command a listing of any indicating devices which have been "disabled" by the system operator.
 5. It includes a carriage which accepts standard (6 inch (150 mm) minimum width) roll or fan fold paper with tractor feed.

6. It operates at a print speed of a minimum of 30 characters per second and have a print density of 10 characters per inch (4 characters per cm).
- ZZZ. The printer is supplied with paper feed features (bails, baskets and the like) and a suitable printer stand.
- AAAA. Physical features of the Fire Protective Alarm System complies with the following:-
1. Components indicated on the drawings are located where shown. Components which are required for proper operation, but which are not indicated on the drawings are located in mechanical or electrical rooms, at accessible locations within suspended ceilings or at locations for which express permission of the Architect has been obtained.
 2. The visual aspect of all components of the system which are exposed to view is acceptable to the Architect.
 3. Consoles are for desk or wall mounting or for setting into an architectural wall, cabinet or table as directed by the Architect.
- BBBB. Unauthorized access to operable components at the Fire Command Station is prevented by means of lockable hinged doors on panels.
- CCCC. Operating instructions are provided within the FCS or mounted beyond glass in a frame adjacent thereto.
- DDDD. For the Central Station Service, provide a 3/4 inch (DN 21) empty rigid conduit from the Fire Command Station to the telephone frame room. Also provide a 2 #12 THWN in 3/4 inch (DN 21) conduit run from a 20 amp fuse cutout in the Fire Signaling System cutout panel to the telephone frame room. Terminate both runs as directed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

- A. Submit a separate "breakout" price quotation for the bulk quantity of loudspeakers (with integral strobes) specified hereinbefore. As noted hereinbefore, this price is not to be included in the total base bid price, and is intended only to identify the bulk quantity cost should the Owner choose to exercise the option either partially or totally. This cost includes furnishing, installation and circuitry as described hereinbefore. The unit price quotation requested below is equal to the "breakout" price divided by the bulk quantity.
- B. Submit separate unit price for each of the items listed below. Each unit price quotation is for complete work, furnished, installed, complete with pro-rata interconnecting circuitry as required for its proper operation. Equipment, materials and installation methods are same as for base bid. Quotations are suitable for both additions and deductions. Unit price quotations are required for:

Item No. <u>1</u>	Loudspeaker (with integral strobe unit)
Item No. <u>2</u>	Manual fire alarm station
Item No. <u>3</u>	Smoke detector for flush or surface mounting
Item No. <u>4</u>	Smoke detector (with sampling tubes) for duct mounting
Item No. <u>5</u>	Wardens intercom station
Item No. <u>6</u>	Individually mounted strobe unit

- C. Include as part of the base bid quotation the cleaning and sensitivity adjustment of smoke detectors and sampling tubes as needed during the warrantee period and the periodic regular testing of system devices to comply with Building Department and Fire Department requirements, during the warrantee period.
- D. In addition to the base bid price quotation, submit separate quotations for each of the "Service Contract" components described hereinafter. It is understood that these quotations are for a one (1) year period commencing with the expiration of the warrantee period. The "contract" is renewable, at the Owner's option, for one (1) year periods up to a total of five (5) years. The renewal contracts are based on the original, escalated by the national C.P.I. index. The quotations are for the following:
1. Inspection and Test - Provide all material and labor to test system by actuating all outlying alarm initiating devices, all manual control devices at the fire command station and annunciators, as well as verifying operation of all loudspeakers/strobes and wardens stations. Adjust as required to provide optimum system performance. Cleaning and adjusting of smoke detectors is excluded. Parts and labor for repairs and/or replacements is also excluded. Provide unit prices for all components of the system, installed in place. This service is provided at regular intervals complying with the requirements of the Building Department and the Fire Department.
 2. Cleaning and Adjusting Smoke Detectors - Provide all material and labor for cleaning and adjusting the sensitivity of all area and duct type smoke detectors and sampling tubes. Cleaning is performed every six months. The sensitivity is checked once per year, and adjusted as required to insure compliance with UL requirements. Where detectors cannot be adjusted to so comply, they are replaced. Quotations are on a per unit basis for the cleaning and adjusting, with a separate quotation for replacement of any head that cannot be field adjusted to be within UL specified limits.
 3. Repairs and Replacement - Provide all labor and parts as necessary to repair and/or replace any and all defective equipment components.
- E. If the fire alarm system is not manufactured locally, but is supplied by a local distributor, the manufacturer will provide a "letter of support" stipulating that when - in the opinion of the engineer - the distributors efforts require backup, the manufacturer will provide at no cost to the Owner, all required technical support manpower in a timely manner during the installation period, and for a one year two year warrantee period thereafter.

- F. The fire alarm system manufacturer stipulates to the following:
1. Upon acceptance of the system, the manufacturer, or his factory authorized distributor will turn over to the Owner the job-specific program information (on disk) to enable the servicing, repair and expansion of the system by any factory-approved service agency the Owner opts to utilize.
 2. Prior to award of contract, the manufacturer will furnish the names of (3) factory approved service agencies located within 50 miles of the project. Such agencies are capable of providing all levels of maintenance servicing and programming as may be required. Failure to comply will be sufficient grounds for disqualifying the system manufacturer.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install system according to NFPA standards referred to in Parts 1 and 2 of this Section.
- B. Each outlying component requiring a power supply for its proper operation receives this supply over wires extended from the central equipment in a code approved manner.
- C. Comply with the applicable requirements of other sections of Division 16 for locating and routing circuitry, for installing circuitry, for firestopping and for identification.
- D. Adjust the sensitivity of all smoke detector (sensors) on the basis of the actual environment to which each will be subjected (i.e., air movement, ambient dust/dirt levels and temperature, humidity levels) in accordance with manufacturers instructions.
- E. Paint the outside parts of all equipment cabinets and all junction boxes, pull boxes and outlet boxes red.

3.3 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Manual Pull Stations: Mount semiflush in recessed back boxes with top of operating handles 48 inches (122 cm) above the finished floor or lower as indicated.
- B. Water-Flow Detectors and Valve Supervisory Switches: Connect for each sprinkler valve station required to be supervised.
- C. Smoke Detectors: Install ceiling-mounted detectors not less than 4 inches (10 cm) from a side wall to the near edge. Install detectors located on the wall at least 4 inches (10 cm), but not more than 12 inches (30 cm) below the ceiling. For exposed solid-joist construction, mount detectors on the bottom of the joists. On smooth ceilings, install detectors not over 30 feet (9 meters) apart in any direction. Install detectors no closer than 60 inches (150 cm) from air registers.

- D. Loudspeaker/Strobes: Install 80 inches (203 cm) (to bottom of device) above the finished floor nor less than 6 inches (15 cm) below the ceiling. Install on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille or as indicated. Provide box extension and furnish collar where wall depth cannot accommodate flush backbox. Combine audible and visual alarms at the same location into a single unit.
- E. Control Panels: Surface mount with tops of cabinets not more than 72 inches (182 cm) above the finished floor. Conduits are not permitted to enter the top of control cabinets. Only side and bottom entries are permitted.
- F. Provide final connections (i.e., control circuit extensions) from each addressable module box to the equipment "controller" it services, utilizing THWN wires run in conduit in accordance with the following:-
 - 1. From each box supplying a fan motor, provide a 5 #14 control circuit run in conduit to the motor controller and connect as indicated on the drawings.
 - 2. From each box supplying a supply or return damper which must be closed by the FPA system to isolate a floor served by multi-floor fan system which will be allowed to run during a fire, provide a 5 #14 THWN run in conduit to the damper control device and end switch. Provide, for each box, a 120 volt supply from a normal panel. Connect for damper closure and status indication in response to automatic alarm initiation on the floor or manual control from the Fire Command Station. Provide a 2 #14 in conduit circuitry run to an interface control device (relay or other) for each damper. Device will be provided within 10 feet (3 meters) of the damper as part of the automatic temperature control work. Connect as directed.
 - 3. From each box supplying a damper requiring individual manual control from the central damper control panel (CDCP), but for which direct manual or automatic control by the FPA system is not specified, provide a 5 #14 run in conduit to the damper control device and end switch. Provide, for each box, a 120 volt supply from a "normal" panel. Connect for damper closure and status indication in response to manual control from the CDCP. Provide a 2 #14 in conduit circuitry run to an interface control device (relay or other) for each damper. Device will be provided within 10 feet (3 meters) of the damper as part of the automatic temperature control work. Connect as directed.
 - 4. From each box supplying elevators, provide a 8 #14 run in conduit to the elevator group controller, and connect so that elevators are recalled to the terminal floor - or alternate floor - in response to operation of waterflow switch, elevator lobby detector, or elevator room smoke or heat detector, an "elevators recalled" status signal is activated at the FPA system central equipment, and an "elevators not safe for use" signal is activated in the elevators in response to operation of detectors in the elevator machine room or elevator shaft. If the elevator machine room and/or associated shafts are sprinklered, provide an additional 6#14 run in conduit from the box to an upstream device, arranged so as to provide a time delayed (adjustable 0 - 180 seconds) shutdown of the power to the elevator power panel, to permit a remote manual restoration of power from the FCS, and a "status" indication at the FCS.

5. From the box supplying the fire stair door unlocking system, provide a 2 #12 run in conduit to an adequate 120 volt supply and a 2 #12 extension in conduit to all fire stair door unlocking mechanisms. Provide any necessary low voltage supplies, and connect so that all doors are unlocked in response to the operation of any automatic alarm initiating device on the system or in response to all "elevators recalled" status signal generated by these automatic devices or by operation of the Firemen's Service key for Phase I recall. Include a 3 #12 run in conduit to a switch and pilot light station located adjacent to the FCS and manual unlocking.
6. From the box supplying the fire/smoke door release system, provide a 2 #12 run in conduit to an adequate 120 volt supply and a 2 #12 extension in conduit to all fire/smoke door release mechanisms. Provide door release mechanisms and any required low voltage power supplies, and connect so that all doors are released in response to the operation of any automatic alarm initiating device on the system. Include a 3 #12 run in conduit to a switch and pilot light station and connect for manual door release.
7. From each box supplying a fire stair or elevator machine room smoke vent, a 4 #12 run in conduit to the smoke vent release mechanism and limit switch. Include a release in response to a local smoke detector and status indication.
8. From each box supplying an escalator controller, a 4 #14 run in conduit to the controller and connect for shutdown and status indication in response to operation of any waterflow switch or smoke detector on the system.

3.4 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal raceway in accordance with the following. Conceal raceway except in unfinished spaces and as indicated. Note that certain circuitry has been specified hereinbefore as 2-hour rated. These requirements are in addition to the requirements that follow.
 1. Cable is run in conduit throughout, and conforms to the requirements for nonpower-limited fire protective signaling circuit cable as expressed in Article 760 of the National Electrical Code, and is U.L. classified to conform to these requirements. For conductors #14 AWG and larger, cable insulation types THHN, THHW or XHHW is considered as fulfilling these requirements. Smaller size conductors have insulation types specifically U.L. approved as type NPLF, and so identified by markings on the outer surface of the cable at regular intervals. Conduit is electric metallic tubing or threaded metallic conduit subject to the restrictions hereinbefore specified for light and power circuitry throughout the project.
- B. Minimum conductor size for circuitry supplying loudspeakers or strobes is #16 AWG copper and for all other circuitry not specifically sized elsewhere minimum conductor size is #18 AWG copper.

- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to the sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train the conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with the fire alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to the system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- D. Conduits are not permitted to enter the top of control cabinets. Only side and bottom entries are permitted.
- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull or outlet boxes, cabinets, or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.
- F. Color Coding: Color-code fire alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color code for alarm circuit wiring and a different color code for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-notification circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visual alarm-notification circuits. Paint fire alarm system junction boxes and covers red.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Ground cable shields and equipment according to system manufacturer's instructions to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize, to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
- B. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment rack or cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
- C. Connect to grounding electrode specified in Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding." Install grounding electrode conductors of type, size, location, and quantity as indicated. Comply with installation requirements of Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- D. Ground equipment and conductor and cable shields. For audio circuits, minimize, to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Provide services of a factory-authorized service representative to supervise the field assembly and connection of components and the pretesting, testing, and adjustment of the system.
- B. Include the services of an independent certified testing agency acceptable to the local fire department, where so required by the fire department or local regulations, for pretesting and final testing. Include costs to perform testing outside of normal working hours if required by fire department or by project schedule.

- C. Pretesting: After installation, align, adjust, and balance the system and perform complete pretesting. Determine, through pretesting, the conformance of the system to the requirements of the Drawings and Specifications. Correct deficiencies observed in pretesting. Replace malfunctioning or damaged items with new ones and retest until satisfactory performance and conditions are achieved. Prepare forms for systematic recording of acceptance test results.
- D. Report of Pretesting: After pretesting is complete, provide a letter certifying the installation is complete and fully operable, including the names and titles of the witnesses to the preliminary tests.
- E. Final Test Notice: Provide a 10-day minimum notice in writing when the system is ready for final acceptance testing.
- F. Minimum System Tests: Test the system according to the procedures outlined in NFPA 72. Minimum required tests are as follows:
 - 1. Verify the absence of unwanted voltages between circuit conductors and ground.
 - 2. Test all conductors for short circuits using an insulation-testing device.
 - 3. With each circuit pair, short circuit at the far end of the circuit and measure the circuit resistance with an ohmmeter. Record the circuit resistance of each circuit on the record drawings.
 - 4. Verify that the control unit is in the normal condition as detailed in the manufacturer's operation and maintenance manual.
 - 5. Test initiating and notification circuits for proper signal transmission under open circuit conditions. One connection each should be opened at not less than 10 percent of the initiating and notification devices. Observe proper signal transmission according to class of wiring used.
 - 6. Test each initiating and notification device for alarm operation and proper response at the control unit. Test smoke detectors with actual products of combustion.
 - 7. Test the system for all specified functions according to the approved operation and maintenance manual. Systematically initiate specified functional performance items at each station, including making all possible alarm and monitoring initiations and using all communications options. For each item, observe related performance at all devices required to be affected by the item under all system sequences. Observe indicating lights, displays, signal tones, and annunciator indications. Observe all voice audio for routing, clarity, quality, freedom from noise and distortion, and proper volume level.
 - 8. Test Both Primary and Secondary Power: Verify by test that the secondary power system is capable of operating the system for the period and in the manner specified.

- G. Retesting: Correct deficiencies indicated by tests and completely retest work affected by such deficiencies. Verify by the system test that the total system meets the Specifications and complies with applicable standards.
- H. Report of Tests and Inspections: Provide a written record of inspections, tests, and detailed test results in the form of a test log. Submit log upon the satisfactory completion of tests.
- I. Tag all equipment, stations, and other components at which tests have been satisfactorily completed.

3.7 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Cleaning: Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Touch up scratches and marred finish to match original finish. Clean unit internally using methods and materials recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjusting: Adjust sensitivity of each detector based on the environment to which it will be subjected.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Startup Services: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to provide startup service and to demonstrate and train Owner's maintenance personnel as specified below.
 - 1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules related to startup and shutdown, troubleshooting, servicing, adjusting, and preventive maintenance. Provide a minimum of 16 hours training.
 - 2. Training Aid: Use the approved final version of the operation and maintenance manual as a training aid.
 - 3. Schedule training with Owner with at least 7 days advance notice.

3.9 ON-SITE ASSISTANCE

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within one year of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sound levels, controls, and sensitivities to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to 3 requested adjustment visits to the site for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 16721

**NEW PASSENGER TERMINAL
DULUTH INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
DULUTH, MINNESOTA**

**SECTION 16741 - TELECOMMUNICATIONS
DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes telecommunications distribution systems, including a provision for service by the telephone utility organization.
- B. Related Sections: The following Division 16 Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - 1. "Raceways and Boxes" for telecommunications raceways, including conduit, tubing, wireways, and surface raceways.
 - 2. "Basic Materials, Methods and Requirements (Electrical)."
 - 3. "Electric Identification."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for system components.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Provide materials that are Underwriters Laboratories listed and labeled.
 - 1. The Terms "Listed" and "Labeled": As defined in the "National Electrical Code," Article 100.
- C. Coordination of Work: Coordinate the Work of this Section with the requirements of the Owner's telecommunications system suppliers and of the telephone utility organization.
 - 1. Meet jointly with the representatives of the above organization and the Owner's representative to exchange information and agree on details of installation interfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FACILITIES FOR ACCOMMODATION OF TELECOMMUNICATIONS WIRE AND DEVICES

- A. Outlets for telecommunications wiring shall conform to the specifications for standard convenience receptacle outlets, except that they are to be without wiring devices and shall have:-
1. Raised single gang cover (where flush wall mounted) and blank plate. For wall telephone units, include provision for support of unit.
 2. For each stanchion type floor outlet -- a stanchion with a bushed hole plate and capacity to handle telecommunications wiring and devices. Where supplied from circuitry run concealed in the ceiling below, each stanchion shall be of the "dual service" type, integrated with an approved fire-rated through-floor fitting capable of accommodating 120 volt and telecommunications wiring and devices.
 3. For each flush type floor outlet [which does not occur integrally within the preset inserts of the specialty cast-in-floor raceway systems] -- a 3" high by 1" I.P.S. standpipe with proper adapter for a flush floor outlet.
- B. Raceways: Comply with Division 16 Section "Raceways."
- C. Except where specifically indicated otherwise, raceway for telecommunications wiring shall be:-
1. For main runs Electric Metallic Tubing
 2. For branch runs Electric Metallic Tubing
to outlets and/or Surface Metal Raceway
- all raceway materials being subject to the same limitations in usage as hereinbefore specified.
- D. Exclude EMT where located within 8'-0" of the floor in mechanical spaces (or otherwise exposed to mechanical damage), or intended for embedment in concrete.
- E. Boxes and Cabinets: Comply with Division 16 Section "Cabinets, Boxes, and Fittings."
- F. Telecommunications cabinets shall consist of code gauge galvanized sheet metal cabinets, complete with interior plywood backboards, and flush, inset covers, and prepunched knock-outs on the top, bottom and sides.
- G. Backboard: 3/4-inch (19 mm) interior grade plywood. Where installed in wire closet, height and width must cover entire wall up to 8 feet (2.5 m) above floor, except as otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Telephone Service: Comply with telephone utility organization requirements as to details of the telephone service.
- B. Distribution System: Install completely so system will be fully operational when telephone instruments and switching equipment are connected.
- C. Comply with applicable requirements for locating and routing circuitry, for installing circuitry, and for fire-stopping as described in other sub-section of Section 16050.
- D. Raceway: Install telecommunications service and distribution raceway where indicated as specified in Division 16 Section "Raceways."
- E. No more than two (2) 90° bends (or the equivalent thereof) in conduit for telecommunications wiring will be permitted between junction boxes, pull boxes, cabinets or other cable access points. Radius of bends in all runs other than branch runs to outlets shall be 48" minimum.
- F. Wall Outlets: Install blank covers only on devices which are not to be wired at this time under another Contract. Turn over blank covers to the Owner.

3.2 RACEWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Outlets for telecommunications wiring are to be circuited up with "empty conduit circuitry" in accordance with the following:-
 - (a) For one outlet -- 3/4"
 - (b) For two outlets -- 3/4"
 - (c) For first of three outlets -- home run only or to outlet ahead -1"
 - (d) or first of four outlets -- home run only -1-1/4"
- B. At any location where empty conduit telecommunications outlet circuitry is extended from a flush mounted telecommunications cabinet to a suspended ceiling immediately above, at least four 1-inch empty conduits shall be included (in addition to those required for present outlets) to permit future connections from the cabinet. The empty conduits shall extend up from the panel and shall terminate in a threaded conduit cap immediately after turning out into the hung ceiling space.
- C. All conduits provided for telecommunications wiring terminate in approved bushings.
- D. All empty conduit, circuitry or raceways for telecommunications wiring shall be provided with a minimum of nylon drag cords secured at each end.

3.3 GROUNDING

- A. Install ground terminal at service location and connect in accordance with Division 16 Section "Grounding."

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify telecommunications system backboards and cabinets with the legend "Telecommunications." Perform all identification in accordance with Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. All junction boxes for telecommunications wiring shall be clearly identified as to their function (e.g., tel, data).

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Prior to final acceptance, clean system components and protect from damage and deterioration.

END OF SECTION 16741